

## License Information

**Translation Notes (unfoldingWord)** is based on: unfoldingWord® Translation Notes, [unfoldingWord](#), 2022, which is licensed under a [CC BY-SA 4.0 license](#).

This PDF version is provided under the same license.

## Translation Notes (unfoldingWord)

### Genesis - Introduction

#### *Part 1: General Introduction*

In the book of Genesis, God communicates to all people the early history of the universe. He begins with how he created everything from nothing, including the earth and all the heavenly bodies (sun, moon, stars), all the plants and animals, and especially how he created human beings in his image to be in a relationship with him. This book also explains how sin and death came into the world and what God's plan is to save people from that. In fact, all the important teachings in the Bible begin in Genesis. That makes this book **foundational** and important for everyone so that they can know and understand the truth about God and his plan for their lives.

Beginning with verse 1, the book of Genesis is a **narrative** that tells the history of events that actually happened. This is confirmed by the fact that the conjunctions and the forms of the verbs that are used in the Hebrew text reflect the Hebrew narrative style, which is used to narrate historical accounts. In the same way, those who translate the book of Genesis should also use grammatical structures in their languages that are used for true, historical narratives. God uses narrative, which is one of the most interesting styles of communication, to not only tell people about the events in the early history of the world, but also to teach them about himself and about the way he interacts with people as their loving Creator.

Genesis provides the **vital context** for the rest of God's Word, especially the gospel message about Jesus, and so it helps people to understand their need for him to be their Savior. In fact, without Genesis, it would not be clear why everyone needs to trust in Jesus as the only one who can save them from sin and its consequences, so that they can associate with God and be part of his eternal family.

In light of all that, Genesis should be one of the first books of the Bible that is translated into every language that needs a translation. May God guide and bless you and your translation team as you undertake this important task together by his power.

#### Author and date of writing

Moses was the human author of the first five books of the Bible, including the book of Genesis (Exodus 24:3–4; Deuteronomy 31:9, 24; John 1:45). The Holy Spirit is the one who inspired what Moses wrote in those books (2 Peter 1:21), so ultimately God is the author, and these books are part of his Message to mankind. Those five books are sometimes referred to as the Torah (a Hebrew word that means “teaching,” “instruction,” or “law”) or the Pentateuch (a Greek word that means “five books”). In the New Testament this set of books is also referred to as “the Law” (John 1:45) or “the Law of Moses” (Acts 28:23), and Jesus himself affirmed that Moses wrote them (John 5:46–47; 7:23).

Moses was born in the country of Egypt around 1526 B.C. (Exodus 2:1–10). According to the genealogies in Genesis, his birth was about 1,000 years after the Flood (which was about 1,650 years after creation). Moses may have written much of the Pentateuch during the forty years that he led the people of Israel as they wandered in the wilderness (around 1446 B.C.—1406 B.C.).

The very first verse in Genesis assumes that God (the author guiding the human author) has always existed and that he has no beginning and no end (also see Genesis 21:33; Deuteronomy 33:27; Psalm 90:2). He uses his personal name “Yahweh” for the first time in Genesis 2:4. The name “Yahweh” means “he is” and indicates that God is eternal. His name also means that he is unchanging and that he is always present.

#### Book outline

In all, Genesis covers a span of about 2200 years of history. After the world's early history, the rest of Genesis tells about the ancestors of God's people, with special focus on Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph (and their families). Genealogies are an important part of what ties the book together from beginning to end.

The following outline shows these two main divisions in the book of Genesis: (1) Early World History, and (2) The History about the Ancestors of God's Chosen People. Those two divisions each have roughly four main subdivisions, which are based on four key events (in the first division) and

four key ancestors (in the second division). Some scholars prefer to divide the book up into ten divisions that are introduced by the Hebrew phrase that means “these are the generations of...” In the outline below, **asterisks** mark the sections that contain that phrase. The phrase is found in Genesis 2:4 (heavens and earth), 5:1 (Adam), 6:9 (Noah), 10:1, 32 (sons of Noah), 11:10 (Shem), 11:27 (Terah), 25:12 (Ishmael), 25:19 (Isaac), 36:1, 9 (Esau), and 37:2 (Jacob).

**Bolded words** in the outline show which sections contain promises and covenants from God and also mark who the main ancestors were in the various sub-divisions.

The history about **Abraham** [Genesis 11:10–25:11]

### *Division 1: Early World History*

#### Creation

- God creates the universe and everything in it (1:1–2:3)
- Adam and Eve and the Garden of Eden (2:4–25)\\*

#### The Fall

- The first sin and God’s judgment; prophecy of Christ (3:1–24) - **promise**
- Cain and Abel: the first murder; Cain’s descendants (4:1–26)
- The descendants of Adam to Noah (5:1–32)\\*

#### The Flood

- God destroys the world with a flood, puts rainbow in the sky - **covenant** (6:1–9:17)\\*
- Noah curses his son Ham and his grandson Canaan, blesses other sons (9:18–27)
- The descendants of Noah’s sons Shem, Ham, and Japheth (10:1–32)\|

#### Tower of Babel

- Mankind rebels against God at Babel, so God creates many different languages and scatters the people over the earth (11:1–9)

### *Division 2: The History about the Ancestors of God’s Chosen People*

- The descendants of Shem to Abram (11:10–26)\\*
- Terah and his three sons' families in Haran; Terah dies (11:27–32)\\*
- Abram travels to Canaan with Sarai and his nephew Lot (12:1–9) - **promise**
- Abram lies about Sarai to Pharaoh, king of Egypt (12:10–20)
- Back in the Negev Desert, Abram and Lot part ways (13:1–18) - **promise**
- War of the kings; Abram rescues Lot and the other citizens of Sodom (14:1–17)
- Melchizedek blesses Abram; Abram refuses bounty from king of Sodom (14:18–24)
- God's **covenant** with Abram (15:1–21) - **promise**
- Hagar and Ishmael (16:1–16)
- New names: Abraham and Sarah; **covenant** of circumcision (17:1–27) - **promise**
- Three men visit Abram, Yahweh renews promise, Sarah laughs (18:1–15) - **promise**
- Abram pleads with Yahweh to spare Sodom (18:16–33)
- Lot and two daughters escape destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (19:1–29)
- Lot's grandsons: the ancestors of the Moabites and Ammonites (19:30–38)
- Abraham lies about Sarah to Abimelech, king of the Philistines (20:1–18)
- Isaac is born to Sarah; Ishmael grows up in the desert (21:1–21)
- Abraham makes a treaty with King Abimelech at Beersheba (21:22–34)

- God tests Abraham by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac (22:1–19) - **promise**
- Sarah dies and Abraham buys burial property in the land of Canaan (23:1–20)
- God provides Rebekah as a wife for Isaac (24:1–67)
- Abraham's descendants by second wife Keturah (25:1–6)
- Abraham dies and is buried by Isaac and Ishmael (25:7–11)

The history about **Ishmael** and **Isaac** [Genesis 25:12–35:29]

- Ishmael's descendants and his death (25:12–18)\\*
- Isaac's sons Esau and Jacob; Esau sells his birthright (25:19–34)\\*
- Isaac lies about Rebekah to Abimelech, king of the Philistines (26:1–22) - **promise**
- God's **covenant** with Isaac in Beersheba; treaty with Abimelech (26:23–33)

The history about **Esau** and **Jacob** [Genesis 26:34–36:43]

- Jacob steals Esau's blessing; Esau plans revenge (26:34–27:46)
- Jacob flees and heads to Haran; stairway to heaven at Bethel (28:1–22) - **promise**
- Jacob works for Laban to marry his wives Leah and Rachel (29:1–30)
- Jacob's wives have his first eleven sons (29:31–30:24)
- Jacob becomes wealthy while working for Laban (30:25–43)
- Jacob and his family flee from Laban; Jacob's treaty with Laban (31:1–55)
- Jacob wrestles with God, who names him **Israel** (32:1–32)
- Jacob and Esau reconcile, and Jacob settles in the city of Shechem (33:1–20)
- Shechem rapes Dinah, and Jacob's sons take revenge (34:1–31)
- God blesses Jacob at Bethel (35:1–15) - **promise**
- Rachel dies giving birth to Benjamin (35:16–20)
- List of Jacob's twelve sons; Isaac dies and is buried by Esau and Jacob (35:16–29)
- Esau's descendants, the Edomites (36:1–43)\

The history about **Jacob** and **Joseph** [Genesis 37–50]

- Jacob's family; Joseph's dreams anger his brothers (37:1–11)\*
- Joseph sold as a slave and taken to the country of Egypt (37:12–36)
- **Judah** and his daughter-in-law Tamar have children (38:1–30)
- Potiphar's wife falsely accuses Joseph, and he is imprisoned (39:1–23)
- In the prison, Joseph interprets dreams for Pharaoh's officials (40:1–23)
- Joseph interprets Pharaoh's dreams about famine (41:1–40)
- As governor over Egypt, Joseph stores up grain; he has two sons (41:41–57)
- Joseph's brothers come to Egypt to buy grain, then return to Jacob (42:1–38)
- All Joseph's brothers return to Egypt and have a meal with him (43:1–34)
- Joseph tests his brothers with his silver cup (44:1–17)
- Judah pleads with Joseph for Benjamin's freedom (44:18–34)
- Joseph reveals his identity to his brothers; they give the news to Jacob (45:1–28)
- Jacob and his family move to Egypt; list of his descendants (46:1–27)
- Joseph settles Jacob and his family in the land of Goshen (47:1–12)
- Joseph sells grain to all the people of Egypt (37:13–31)
- Jacob blesses Joseph's sons Ephraim and Manasseh (48:1–22)
- Jacob blesses each of his 12 sons (49:1–28)
- Jacob's death (49:29–33)
- Joseph has his father Jacob embalmed and buries him in Canaan (50:1–14)

- Joseph reassures his brothers that he has forgiven them (50:15–21)
- Joseph's death (Gen 50:22–26)

### Special formatting

The book of Genesis sometimes uses poetic language to emphasize what is being said. Many translations use a special format to identify these passages as poetry by indenting each clause on a new line. Many other translations do not do this, but rather use regular paragraph formatting everywhere, including for poetry. It may be helpful to look at a translation in the national language of your country that uses poetry formatting, to help you decide whether or not you want to do something similar in your translation. Some translations put some of the following passages in poetry format since these verses have certain features of poetry such as parallelisms and metaphors: Genesis 1:27; 2:23; 3:14–16, 17b-19; 4:23–24; 8:22; 9:6, 25–27; 12:2–3; 14:19–20; 15:1; 16:11–12; 24:60; 25:23; 27:27–29, 39–40; 48:15–16, 20; 49:1–27. You may not want to put all these passages in poetry format since some of them have parallelisms that are not necessarily poetry but may just be emphasizing certain events in the narrative or certain points in a prophecy.

## Genesis - Chapter 1 Introduction

### Possible titles for this book:

- "Genesis"
- "The Book of Genesis"
- "Genesis: The First Book By Moses"
- "Genesis: The Book About Beginnings"
- "The First Book That God's Prophet/Spokesman Moses Wrote: Genesis"

The English title "Genesis" is a transliteration of a Greek word that means "origin" or "beginning" or "birth"; the ancient Greek translation of the Hebrew scriptures (the Septuagint) uses this word for the first time in Genesis 2:4. The Hebrew title of this book בְּרֵאשִׁית (pronounced "bereshith") is the first Hebrew word in verse 1 and literally means "In the beginning." The Latin translation of the Bible (the Latin Vulgate) was the first translation to

use the title "The Book of Genesis." Since that time, many other translations include "Genesis" in the book title because people are familiar with that name. Sometimes as part of the title, translators also include the fact that Moses was the author and that he was inspired by God. Do what is best in your language.

### Genesis 1:1 (#1)

#### "In the beginning"

The first chapter of Genesis is a true historical narrative (which is indicated by the Hebrew language structures that are used throughout the chapter), and verse 1 records the first event in that history. This is confirmed by the wider context of the Scriptures, which teach us that God created everything out of nothing at the very beginning of the world (Psalm 33:6, 9; Hebrews 11:3). Some languages must use a verb ("began") in verse 1 rather than an abstract noun (**beginning**). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "At the beginning of time"

See: Abstract Nouns

### Genesis 1:1 (#2)

#### "God"

Translate the title **God** in a way that refers to the Supreme Being who created everything, who has complete power, who knows everything and is present everywhere. He is the only true God and has always existed.

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 1:1 (#3)

#### "created"

In the Hebrew Bible, the verb "create" refers to an activity that only God does, and it often implies (as it does here) that he made something out of nothing. Also, the forms of the verbs in the Hebrew text (and the conjunctions) show that chapter 1 is a narrative that tells about true history and events in the order that things actually happened. Make sure that your translation does the same thing. Alternate translation: "made"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 1:1 (#4)****"the heavens"**

This phrase refers here to the region where all the stars and planets would later exist. Keep that in mind as you translate this term. Alternate translation: "the sky"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 1:1 (#5)****"and the earth"**

This phrase refers to the planet earth.

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 1:2 (#1)****"Now the earth"**

The author pauses here to describe what the earth and the heavens were like after God first created them (verse 1). Some languages use a conjunction like **Now** to introduce that information; other languages do not use a conjunction here. Do what is natural in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translated **the earth** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "Now at first after that, the earth"

**Genesis 1:2 (#2)****"was formless and empty"**

It is not clear what the earth looked like at that time, but it did not have its present shape and order. Also, the Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "was formless/shapeless and empty/desolate," or "did not have its present form, and there was nothing living on it yet," or (2) "completely empty/desolate," which treats the text as a hendiadys. However, it is best to keep both terms separate in your translation (as they are in the Hebrew text).

**Genesis 1:2 (#3)****"and darkness {was} over the surface of the deep {waters}"**

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "It was completely dark, there was deep water everywhere," or "There was deep water everywhere that was surrounded by total darkness,"

**Genesis 1:2 (#4)****"and the Spirit of God was hovering"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "and God's Spirit was hovering/moving" or (2) "and a wind from God was blowing" or (3) "and a powerful wind was blowing". The first interpretation is most likely, since the Hebrew verb **hovering** does not describe what wind does.

**Genesis 1:2 (#5)****"over the surface of the waters"**

Throughout this chapter, the word **waters** is in the plural in the Hebrew text. For some languages it is more natural to use the singular "water". Do what is best in your language in each context. Alternate translation: "over the surface of the water." or "above the waters"

**Genesis 1:3 (#1)****"Then God said"**

What God says in verse 3 is a command. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to make that explicit in this quote margin. Alternate translation: "Then God commanded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 1:3 (#2)****"Let there be light"**

This is a command, not a permission or a suggestion. It is a direct quote of what God actually said, and it is usually put between quotation marks in a translation. If you use an exclamation point



with this command in your translation, make sure it does not mean or imply that God was angry. Also, the way you translate **light** should refer to what shines from a source of light; it does not refer here to the source itself. Alternate translation: “Let light exist.” or “I command there to be light.”

## Genesis 1:3 (#3)

### "And there was light"

Light began to shine immediately as a result of God's command. Alternate translation: “So immediately there was light.” or “And so light started shining.”

## Genesis 1:4 (#1)

### "And God saw"

Notice that Hebrew frequently uses a conjunction such as **And** or **Then** at the beginning of a sentence. Some languages do not use conjunctions as frequently as Hebrew uses conjunctions. Do what is accurate and natural in your language in each context. Alternate translation: “And he saw” or “He saw”

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

## Genesis 1:4 (#2)

### "the light, that {it was} good"

In the Bible, **good** is an important theme. Throughout chapter 1, it especially means that what God created was high quality, complete, and had no defects; in other words, it had all the characteristics and functions that God intended it to have. It also includes the idea that what God created was untainted by sin and reflected his good character (Psalm 19:1; Romans 1:20). The focus here is not on how pleased or satisfied God was. Alternate translation: “that the light was good”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

## Genesis 1:4 (#3)

### "Then God separated"

In order to produce an accurate and natural translation, it is important in each context to make

sure that nouns (such as **God**) and pronouns (such as “he”) are used properly in your language. In the Hebrew text, **God** is repeated frequently in chapter 1 to emphasize him and show that he is in focus. For some languages it is more natural to say **God** only once at the beginning of each paragraph or section, and then use pronouns to refer to him the rest of the time (or most of the time). Throughout chapter 1, do what is best in your language each time that you refer to God.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 1:4 (#4)

### "Then God separated between the light and the darkness"

Alternate translation: “Then he separated the light from the darkness so that each had its own time.” or “Then he caused the light to have its own time and the darkness to have its own time.” or “Then he separated the light from the darkness so that it would be light for a number of hours, and then dark for a number of hours.”

## Genesis 1:5 (#1)

### "And God called"

Some languages omit the connecting word **And** or **Then** here. Consider what is the best way in your language to connect this sentence with the previous one. Alternate translation: “Then God called” or “God named”

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

## Genesis 1:5 (#2)

### "the light Day"

Notice that in this context the word **Day** refers only to the time when the sun is shining, not to the 24-hour time period that makes up a complete day. Make sure that this is clear in your translation. Throughout chapter 1, some translations use quote marks around the names that God gives the different things he created. Do what is best in your language.

**Genesis 1:5 (#3)****"and the darkness he called Night"**

In the Hebrew text, **the darkness** is first in this clause to emphasize the contrast between the light and the darkness. Consider what is the best way to translate this clause in your language. Alternate translation: "and the darkness he called Nighttime." or "and he named the darkness Nighttime."

**Genesis 1:5 (#4)****"Then there was evening, and there was morning"**

The evening and the morning are the parts of a 24-hour day that separate the hours of daytime (light) from the hours of nighttime (darkness): Evening came at the end of each daytime after God finished his work of creating. Then after about 12 hours of nighttime, morning came, which began the next 12 hours of daytime when God did more work. Make sure your translation does not sound like morning came immediately after evening. Some languages have a one-word conjunction that means "and then" or "and later" and would fit well here. Alternate translation: "Then evening came, and then morning came,"

See: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

**Genesis 1:5 (#5)****"one day"**

Here **day** refers to a full 24-hour day. Also, the Hebrew text uses a cardinal number (**one**) here, but then uses ordinal numbers ("second," "third," and so on) for the rest of the days of the creation week. Some languages need to use an ordinal number ("first") here too. Other languages use cardinal numbers throughout ("day one," "day two," and so on). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and that was day one."

See: Ordinal Numbers

**Genesis 1:6 (#1)****"Then God said"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: "Then God commanded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 1:6 (#2)****"Let there be an expanse"**

The Hebrew word for **expanse** here describes a large space that is "spread out." It was not solid, but rather it was open and empty and could be seen through and flown through (verse 20). It was probably also curved, following the spherical shape of the earth. See how you translated **Let there be** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "Let there be a vast space" or "I command there to be a vast space" or "I command a vast space to form"

**Genesis 1:6 (#3)****"in the middle of the waters"**

See how you translated **waters** in verse 2.

**Genesis 1:6 (#4)****"and let it separate the waters from the waters"**

Alternate translation: "and let it divide the water above it from the water below it." or "so that it separates the waters into two different places."

**Genesis 1:7 (#1)****"So God made"**

Verse 7 explains what God's command in verse 6 caused to happen, and it repeats some of the same words and phrases. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like God created the expanse twice. Alternate translation: "In that way God made" or "That is how he made"

**Genesis 1:7 (#2)****"the expanse"**

Alternate translation: "a vast space"

**Genesis 1:7 (#3)****"and separated"**

Alternate translation: "and divided" or "and used it to separate"

**Genesis 1:7 (#4)****"between the waters that {were} under the expanse and the waters that {were} above the expanse"**

For some languages it is more natural to use a pronoun (**it**) here to refer to the expanse, since it was just mentioned earlier in the verse. Each language has its own system of when to use nouns or pronouns to refer to people, places, and things. In each context, do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "the water that was below the expanse from the water that was above it." or "the water that was under it from the water that was above it."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 1:7 (#5)****"And it was so"**

Alternate translation: "That is the way it happened." or "Everything was exactly as he commanded it to be"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 1:8 (#1)****"And God called"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here (with or without a conjunction) or to continue the sentence that began at the end of verse 7. Also see how you translated this phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: "He called" or "and he called"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 1:8 (#2)****"the expanse"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 6 and 7. Alternate translation: "the vast space"

**Genesis 1:8 (#3)****"Heavens"**

This word probably refers here to the atmosphere above the earth's surface where clouds are and where birds fly, as well as the space where the sun, moon, and stars are now. Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 1.

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 1:8 (#4)****"Then there was evening, and there was morning"**

See how you translated this sentence in verse 5, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "Then evening came, and then morning came,"

**Genesis 1:8 (#5)****"the second day"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use an ordinal number (**second**) here or a cardinal number ("two"). Alternate translation: "and the second day ended." or "and that was the end of day two."

See: Ordinal Numbers

**Genesis 1:9 (#1)****"Then God said"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 3 and 6. Alternate translation: "Then God commanded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 1:9 (#2)****"Let the waters under the heavens be gathered"**

Consider whether it is better here in your language to use a passive form of the verb (**be gathered**) or

an active form (“gather” or “come”). Alternate translation: “Let the water that is under the sky come together” or “I command the water that is below the heavens to come together”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 1:9 (#3)

#### "to one place"

Alternate translation: “in one area” or “into one area”

### Genesis 1:9 (#4)

#### "and let the dry ground appear"

The water had been covering the land, so when the water receded from it, the land became exposed and dried off. Make sure that the way you translate **dry ground** does not sound like the land was dry while it was under the water. Alternate translation: “so that there is dry land.” or “so that dry land can be seen.” or “so that land is uncovered and dries off.”

### Genesis 1:9 (#5)

#### "And it was so"

See how you translated this sentence in verse 7. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “And it was exactly as God commanded it to be”

### Genesis 1:10 (#1)

#### "And God called"

Alternate translation: “Then he named”

### Genesis 1:10 (#2)

#### "the dry ground"

Alternate translation: “the dry land” or “the land that had dried off”

### Genesis 1:10 (#3)

#### "Land"

This is the same Hebrew word that is translated as “earth” in verse 1, but here it refers to the dry land or ground (in contrast to the water), and not to the entire planet. Alternate translation: “Ground,”

### Genesis 1:10 (#4)

#### "and the gathered waters he called"

See how you translated a sentence in verse 5 that is similar in structure to this sentence. Alternate translation: “and the waters that he had gathered together he named” or “and he called the gathered waters” or “and he called the waters that had come together”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 1:10 (#5)

#### "Seas"

At that time there was probably just one very large body of water and one very large land mass on the earth (as verse 9 indicates). So a singular noun that refers to the largest body of water, such as “Ocean” or “Sea”, could be used here in your translation. Alternate translation: “Oceans.”

### Genesis 1:10 (#6)

#### "And God saw"

Decide whether it is more natural in your language to use a noun (**God**) or a pronoun (**he**) in this context. See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: “And he saw” or “He saw”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 1:10 (#7)

#### "that {it was} good"

Some languages cannot use a pronoun (**it**) here, but have to specify what was good. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated the word **good** in verse 4, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: “that what he had

made was good” or “that the land and the seas were good”

### Genesis 1:11 (#1)

**"Then God said"**

Alternate translation: “Then God commanded,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 1:11 (#2)

**"Let the land sprout vegetation"**

The Hebrew word for **vegetation** refers generally here to any kind of green plant and includes the plants and trees that are mentioned next in this verse. Also, see how you translated “Land” in verse 10. Alternate translation: “I command the ground to grow green plants,” or “The ground must now be covered with green plants,”

### Genesis 1:11 (#3)

**"every} plant yielding seed"**

This phrase refers to many different kinds of plants, not just one plant or one seed. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Also, these kinds of plants have soft stems and include vegetable plants, herbs and other plants that produce edible seeds, such as rice, corn, and wheat. Alternate translation: “including every kind of plant that has seeds” or “including all kinds of plants that have seeds”

### Genesis 1:11 (#4)

**"every} fruit tree bearing fruit according to its kind"**

The phrase **according to its kind** emphasizes that each different kind of tree produces its own kind of fruit and seeds, which grow and become only that kind of tree. For example, apple trees always produce apples with apple seeds, never peaches or cherries, or any other kind of fruit or seeds. Alternate translation: “and fruit trees that bear fruit, each according to its own kind” or “and every kind of fruit tree that bears its own kind of fruit” or

“and all kinds of fruit trees that bear their own kind of fruit”

### Genesis 1:11 (#5)

**"that {has} its seed inside it"**

Alternate translation: “that has seeds inside,” or “with its own kind of seeds inside it,”

### Genesis 1:11 (#6)

**"on the earth"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “Let the land sprout vegetation on/throughout the earth ...” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “throughout the earth.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 1:11 (#7)

**"And it was so"**

Either a period or a colon can be used here, but a colon more clearly shows that verse 12 gives the details of what happened. This is different from verse 7, where the details of what happened come before **And it was so**, and from verse 9, where no additional details are given. Alternate translation: “And it happened exactly as God commanded it to happen:”

### Genesis 1:12 (#1)

**"So the land brought out vegetation"**

Verse 12 explains what God’s command in verse 11 caused to happen, and it repeats some of the same words and phrases. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like God created the plants twice. Alternate translation: “The land sprouted plants,” or “The land started growing green plants,”

### Genesis 1:12 (#2)

**"every} plant yielding seed according to its kind"**

Alternate translation: “including plants that have seeds, each according to its own kind” or “including every kind of plant that has seeds that grow into the same type of plant,” or “including all kinds of plants that have their own type of seeds,”

### Genesis 1:12 (#3)

**"and {every} tree bearing fruit that {has} its seed inside it, according to its kind"**

Alternate translation: “and trees that bear fruit with seeds inside, each according to its own kind.” or “and every kind of tree that has fruit with seeds that grow into the same kind of tree.” or “and all kinds of trees that have their own kind of seed-bearing fruit.”

### Genesis 1:12 (#4)

**"And God saw"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin this sentence with a conjunction. Alternate translation: “And he saw” or “He saw”

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 1:12 (#5)

**"that {it was} good"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 10. Some languages have to specify what was good. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “that what he had made was good” or “that all the plants and trees were good”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 1:13 (#1)

**"Then there was evening, and there was morning"**

See how you translated this sentence in verses 5 and 8. Alternate translation: “Then evening came, and then morning came,”

### Genesis 1:13 (#2)

**"the third day"**

Alternate translation: “and the third day ended.” or “and that was the end of day three.”

See: Ordinal Numbers

### Genesis 1:14 (#1)

**"Then God said"**

Alternate translation: “Then God commanded,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 1:14 (#2)

**"Let there be lights"**

These lights refer to the sun, moon and stars that give off light. But it is important to keep this general in your translation (like the Hebrew text does) and not specify the names of these lights. Alternate translation: “Let lamps exist” or “Let there be objects that give light”

### Genesis 1:14 (#3)

**"in the expanse of the heavens"**

The expanse is the same thing as the heavens (verse 8), so some translations leave **the expanse of** implied here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “in the space of the sky” or “in the open space of the sky” or “in the heavens”

### Genesis 1:14 (#4)

**"to separate"**

Alternate translation: “to divide” or “that separate”

### Genesis 1:14 (#5)

**"between the day and the night"**

See how you translated “Daytime” and “Nighttime” in verse 5.

**Genesis 1:14 (#6)****"And let them be for signs"**

Alternate translation: "Let those lamps also be" or "They will also serve as" or "I also command those lamps to serve as"

**Genesis 1:14 (#7)****"And let them be for signs"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "signs/markers of special/important events, and they must/will mark" or "They must/will also mark/indicate when important things happen, and they must/will mark/show" or (2) "signs/markers that mark/indicate/show". The word **signs** means that the lights are to mark certain times of the year. Following the first interpretation, the lights are to also mark special events (such as the star that signaled Jesus' birth and the darkened sun at Jesus' death).

**Genesis 1:14 (#8)****"and for seasons, and for days and years"**

The sun and moon show the passing of time. For example, the 30-day month is determined by the phases of the moon, and the 365-day year is determined by the time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun. Seasons are regular times of the year, such as seed-planting and harvesting times, and the seasons of spring, summer, fall and winter (Genesis 8:22), as well as the special festivals which God appointed for his people to meet with him. You could put some of that information in a footnote.

**Genesis 1:15 (#1)****"And let them be as lights"**

Alternate translation: "And they will be sources of light" or "They will serve as lights" or "Their purpose is to serve as sources of light"

**Genesis 1:15 (#2)****"in the expanse of the heavens"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 14. Alternate translation: "in the space called the sky" or "in the open space of the sky" or "in the heavens"

**Genesis 1:15 (#3)****"to shine on the earth"**

See how you translated **the earth** in verses 1–2. Alternate translation: "to shine light on the earth." or "so that they give light to the earth."

**Genesis 1:15 (#4)****"And it was so"**

Alternate translation: "And it was exactly as he commanded it to be"

**Genesis 1:16 (#1)****"So God made"**

Verses 16–18 explain what God's commands in verses 14–15 caused to happen. Make sure your translation of these verses does not sound like he created the lights twice. See how you translated **So God made** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "In that way God made" or "That is how he made"

**Genesis 1:16 (#2)****"the two great lights"**

This phrase refers to the sun and the moon, which are the two brightest objects in the earth's sky. However, the author intentionally does not use their names, so you should not include their names in your translation either. Alternate translation: "the two big lights,"

**Genesis 1:16 (#3)****"the greater light"**

The focus is on the relative brightness or strength of the lights, not on their size. Alternate translation: "the stronger light"

**Genesis 1:16 (#4)****"to rule the day"**

The word **rule** is a figure of speech that means each light has the greatest effect during a particular time period because it is the brightest light that is shining then. For some languages, nonliving objects like the sun and the moon cannot **rule** because only people can do that. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "to govern the day,"

See: Personification

**Genesis 1:16 (#5)****"and the lesser light"**

Alternate translation: "and the dimmer light"

**Genesis 1:16 (#6)****"to rule the night"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **rule** previously in this verse. Alternate translation: "to govern the night,"

**Genesis 1:16 (#7)****"and the stars"**

The verb **made** that is used earlier in the verse is implied here. Translate this in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "and he also made the stars." or "That is also when he created the stars."

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 1:17 (#1)****"And God set them"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to God and the lights at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "God put them" or "God placed the lights"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 1:17 (#2)****"in the expanse of the heavens"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: "in the space called the sky" or "in the open space of the sky" or "in the heavens"

**Genesis 1:17 (#3)****"to shine on the earth"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15. Alternate translation: "to provide light to the earth,"

**Genesis 1:18 (#1)****"and to rule over the day and over the night"**

Make sure that your translation of the word **day** refers here to the daytime hours, not an entire 24-hour day. Also see how you translated **rule** in 1:16. Alternate translation: "and to dominate the daytime or the nighttime," or "and to shine during the daytime and during the nighttime,"

See: Personification

**Genesis 1:18 (#2)****"and to separate between the light and the darkness"**

Consider again how you translated **separate** in verses 4, 6–7, 14 and 18. Alternate translation: "and to distinguish the light from the darkness." or "and to separate the time of light from the time of darkness."

**Genesis 1:18 (#3)****"And God saw"**

Alternate translation: "And he saw" or "He saw"

**Genesis 1:18 (#4)****"that {it was} good"**



Some languages need to specify what was good. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “that what he had made was good” or “that the lights in the sky were good”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 1:19 (#1)

**"Then there was evening, and there was morning"**

Alternate translation: “Then evening came, and then morning came,”

### Genesis 1:19 (#2)

**"the fourth day"**

Alternate translation: “and the fourth day ended.” or “and that was the end of day four.”

See: Ordinal Numbers

### Genesis 1:20 (#1)

**"Then God said"**

Alternate translation: “Then God commanded,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 1:20 (#2)

**"Let the waters swarm {with} swarm{s} of living creature{s}"**

Alternate translation: “I command the water to be full of large groups of living creatures,” or “I command there to be large numbers of water animals that live everywhere in the water,”

### Genesis 1:20 (#3)

**"and let bird{s} fly"**

The Hebrew word for **birds** can also be more general and refer to “winged/flying creatures,” which includes birds, bats, flying insects and even flying reptiles that are now extinct. Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “and let there

be birds that fly” or “Also let there be winged creatures that fly”

### Genesis 1:20 (#4)

**"above the earth across the face of the expanse of the sky"**

Alternate translation: “above the earth, through the air.” or “across the sky above the earth.”

### Genesis 1:21 (#1)

**"So God created"**

See how you translated **created** in verse 1. Alternate translation: “That is how he made” or “In that way he made”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 1:21 (#2)

**"the great sea creatures"**

These include whales, sharks, giant squid, crocodiles, and leviathans (Psalm 74:13–14, Isaiah 27:1), which were probably swimming reptiles that are now extinct. Alternate translation: “the huge ocean animals”

### Genesis 1:21 (#3)

**"and every living creature that moves"**

Alternate translation: “and every kind of fish and every other animal that lives” or “and all the fish and other kinds of animals that live”

### Genesis 1:21 (#4)

**"which the waters swarm with"**

Alternate translation: “throughout the ocean in large groups,” or “in the water and fills it,” or “all over the place in the ocean,”

### Genesis 1:21 (#5)

**"according to their kind"**

This phrase emphasizes that each different kind of creature has its own distinct kind of offspring/young. For example, whales always give birth to whales, and never give birth to cats or cows or any other kind of creature. Alternate translation: “each according to its own kind” or “each that has its own kind of young,”

### Genesis 1:21 (#6)

#### "and"

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here, so that the previous sentence is not too long. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “and how he made” or “That is also how he created”

### Genesis 1:21 (#7)

#### "every winged bird"

See how you translated “birds” in verse 20. Alternate translation: “every kind of bird” or “all the different kinds of birds” or “every kind of winged creature”

### Genesis 1:21 (#8)

#### "according to its kind"

See how you translated this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: “each according to its own kind” or “each that has its own kind of young.”

### Genesis 1:21 (#9)

#### "And God saw"

Alternate translation: “And He saw” or “He saw”

### Genesis 1:21 (#10)

#### "that {it was} good"

Some languages need to specify what was good. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “that what he had made was good” or “that the water animals and the birds were good”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 1:22 (#1)

#### "Then God blessed them"

For some languages it is necessary to specify what **them** refers to. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Then God caused them all to prosper” or “Then God blessed the water creatures and the birds”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 1:22 (#2)

#### "saying"

God blesses the water animals first. If that is not clear, you could make that explicit here in the quote margin or at the beginning of what God says. Alternate translation: “and said first to the water animals,”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 1:22 (#3)

#### "Be fruitful"

God speaks directly to the water animals using the second person (“you”), then later in the verse speaks about the birds in the third person (**the birds**). For some languages it is necessary to use either second person for both or third person for both, to prevent confusion. Do what is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: “Reproduce” or “You water animals will produce many young”

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 1:22 (#4)

#### "and multiply"

Alternate translation: “so that you and your offspring will multiply greatly in number” or “so that you and your offspring will become very many”

See: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

**Genesis 1:22 (#5)****"and fill"**

Alternate translation: "and live throughout"

**Genesis 1:22 (#6)****"the waters in the seas"**

For some languages, "water in the seas" is too repetitive, so it is more natural here to just say "seas/sea" or "ocean" or "water". Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "the water of the sea"

**Genesis 1:22 (#7)****"and let the bird{s} multiply"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated **multiply** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "And the birds will also increase greatly in number" or "You birds will also become very many"

**Genesis 1:22 (#8)****"on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "throughout the earth." or "and live all over the earth."

**Genesis 1:23 (#1)****"Then there was evening, and there was morning"**

Alternate translation: "Then evening came, and then morning came,"

**Genesis 1:23 (#2)****"the fifth day"**

Alternate translation: "and the fifth day ended." or "and that was the end of day five."

See: Ordinal Numbers

**Genesis 1:24 (#1)****"Then God said"**

Alternate translation: "Then God commanded,"

**Genesis 1:24 (#2)****"Let the land bring forth"**

See how you translated a similar command to the land in verse 11. Alternate translation: "I command the land to yield" or "The land must now produce"

**Genesis 1:24 (#3)****"every} living creature"**

This is a general term that refers to all the different kinds of creatures/animals that breathe, including the three large categories of animals mentioned below in this verse. Alternate translation: "every type of living animal" or "all kinds of animals,"

**Genesis 1:24 (#4)****"according to its kind"**

This phrase means that every kind of animal that God created always produces young that are the same kind of animal as their parents. See how you translated this phrase in verse 21, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "each that has its own kind of young," or "each having its own kind of young,"

**Genesis 1:24 (#5)****"livestock"**

This term probably includes animals such as horses, camels, cattle, sheep, and goats that people raise for food or use for farming or other work. This is in contrast to animals that normally live in the wild. Alternate translation: "including farm animals,"

**Genesis 1:24 (#6)****"and {every} crawling creature"**

Alternate translation: “every type of animal that crawls” or “all kinds of animals that crawl”

### Genesis 1:24 (#7)

**"and {every} living thing of the earth"**

This phrase refers in general to animals that are normally not raised by people but live in the wild. Alternate translation: “and every other kind of wild animal that lives on the land,” or “and all the other kinds of wild animals that live on the land,”

### Genesis 1:24 (#8)

**"each} according to its kind"**

See how you translated this phrase earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: “each that has its own kind of offspring” or “each having its own kind of offspring”

### Genesis 1:24 (#9)

**"And it was so"**

Alternate translation: “It happened exactly as he commanded it to happen.”

### Genesis 1:25 (#1)

**"So God made"**

Alternate translation: “That is how God created” or “In that way God made”

### Genesis 1:25 (#2)

**"every} creature of the earth"**

See how you translated **every creature of the earth** in verse 24. Alternate translation: “every kind of wild animal,” or “all the different kinds of wild animals,”

### Genesis 1:25 (#3)

**"according to its kind"**

Alternate translation: “each that bears its own kind of young,” or “each having its own kind of young,”

### Genesis 1:25 (#4)

**"and the livestock"**

See how you translated **livestock** in verse 24. Alternate translation: “and every kind of farm animal,” or “and all the farm animals,”

### Genesis 1:25 (#5)

**"according to its kind"**

Alternate translation: “each that bears its own kind of young,” or “each having its own kind of young,”

### Genesis 1:25 (#6)

**"and every crawling creature of the ground"**

See how you translated **crawling creature** in verse 24. Alternate translation: “and every kind of creature that crawls along the ground,” or “and all different kinds of animals that crawl along the ground,”

### Genesis 1:25 (#7)

**"according to its kind"**

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 11, 12, 21, 24 and 25. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “each that bears its own kind of offspring” or “each having its own kind of young,”

### Genesis 1:25 (#8)

**"And God saw"**

Alternate translation: “And he saw” or “He saw”

### Genesis 1:25 (#9)

**"that {it was} good"**

Some languages need to specify what was good. Consider again how you translated “And God saw that ... good” in verses 10, 12, 18, 21, 25. Alternate translation: “that what he had made was good” or “that all the animals that he had made were good”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 1:26 (#1)

### "Then God said"

Here God is not commanding anything to happen, but is getting ready to personally create mankind himself (the details are given in Gen 2:7, 21–22). Some languages have to specify who is being spoken to. Do what is best in your language.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 1:26 (#2)

### "Let us make"

Most Bible scholars think that the plural pronouns (**us** and **our**) in this verse refer to God and reflect the fact that he is three Persons in one God. So it is best to keep these pronouns plural in your translation. Also, many translations capitalize the first letter of all pronouns that refer to God in order to show him honor and respect. Your translation team needs to decide whether or not you will do that too. Be consistent with your decision as you translate the Bible. Alternate translation: “Now we will make”

## Genesis 1:26 (#3)

### "man"

The Hebrew word for **man** is used here (and in verse 27) as a collective noun that refers to human beings in general, including both male and female. Alternate translation: “mankind”

## Genesis 1:26 (#4)

### "in our image, according to our likeness"

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that God made mankind to be like himself in many ways. Alternate translation: “to be like us, so that they are similar to us in many ways,”

See: Doublet

## Genesis 1:26 (#5)

### "and let them rule"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “and let us put them in control of” or “We will give them authority to rule”

## Genesis 1:26 (#6)

### "over the fish of the sea"

Alternate translation: “the fish in the sea”

## Genesis 1:26 (#7)

### "and over the bird{s} of the sky"

Some translations leave out the phrase **of the sky** because it is strongly implied and may not sound natural in their languages. However, if it is natural in your language, it is best to include this phrase, because the author repeatedly contrasts three large categories of animals in this section: creatures that live on the ground, creatures that swim in the water, and creatures that fly in the sky. Alternate translation: “the birds that fly in the sky”

## Genesis 1:26 (#8)

### "and over the livestock"

Consider again how you translated **livestock** in verses 24–26. Alternate translation: “the farm animals,”

## Genesis 1:26 (#9)

### "and over all the earth"

This refers to the planet earth and everything on it, including water, soil, metals, minerals, and other resources, as well as all the plants and animals.

**Genesis 1:26 (#10)****"and over every moving creature moving on the earth"**

For some languages it is not natural to repeat **and** or **over** with each item in this list. Consider what is the best way to translate a list like this in your language. Alternate translation: "including every creature that moves on the earth." or "and all the animals that live on the earth."

**Genesis 1:27 (#1)****"Then God created"**

In this verse God does what he said he was going to do (verse 26). Make sure your translation does not sound like God created mankind twice. Also see how you translated **created** in verses 1 and 21. Alternate translation: "So God made"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 1:27 (#2)****"man"**

Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 26. Alternate translation: "mankind"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 1:27 (#3)****"in his image"**

God made mankind to be like himself in some ways (not all ways) and to represent him in the world and show people what he is like. For example, God gave human beings an eternal spirit and the ability to have a relationship with him. He also gave us emotions, an understanding of right and wrong, and the ability to reason and make choices, to create new things and to have authority over the rest of creation. You could include some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "in his own image." or "to be similar to himself in many ways."

**Genesis 1:27 (#4)****"In the image of God he created him"**

The pronoun **him** refers to the collective noun **man**, which in this case refers to human beings in general, not just one person. Also, this clause is the second half of a chiasm (an inverted parallelism) that repeats the first part of verse 27 in reverse order, to emphasize that it was in God's image that human beings were created. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Yes he made them in his image" or "Indeed he created them to be like himself" or "Yes, God made them to be similar to himself in many ways"

See: Parallelism

**Genesis 1:27 (#5)****"male and female he created them"**

The phrase **male and female** comes first in the Hebrew text in order to emphasize it. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Also make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like God is both male and female. Alternate translation: "He also made them to be male or female."

**Genesis 1:28 (#1)****"Then God blessed them"**

See how you translated **blessed** in verse 22. Alternate translation: "Then God showed his favor to them" or "Then God caused them to prosper"

**Genesis 1:28 (#2)****"and God said to them"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this quote margin that what God says next is the way that he blessed mankind, not something he said separately from that. Alternate translation: "and said," or "He said,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 1:28 (#3)****"Be fruitful"**

See how you translated **Be fruitful and multiply** in verse 22. It may be necessary to translate the phrase in different ways, depending on the context.

Alternate translation: "Bear many children" or "You will bear many children"

### Genesis 1:28 (#4)

**"and multiply"**

Alternate translation: "so that you and your descendants will multiply greatly in number" or "so that you and your descendants will become very many"

See: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

### Genesis 1:28 (#5)

**"and fill the earth"**

For some languages, it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and inhabit the whole earth" or "Fill the earth"

### Genesis 1:28 (#6)

**"and subdue it"**

Alternate translation: "and take care of it." or "and bring it under your control."

### Genesis 1:28 (#7)

**"And rule"**

See how you translated **rule** in verse 26. Alternate translation: "You must rule over" or "I am giving you authority to rule"

### Genesis 1:28 (#8)

**"over the fish of the sea and over the bird{s} of the sky"**

See how you translated these phrases in verse 26. Alternate translation: "the fish in the ocean, the birds that fly in the sky"

### Genesis 1:28 (#9)

**"and over every living thing that moves on the earth"**

This phrase refers generally here to every kind of creature that lives on land. Alternate translation: "and every animal that moves on the land." or "and all the animals that move on the land."

### Genesis 1:29 (#1)

**"Then God said"**

God is still speaking to the human beings, so it may be necessary to add "also" to this quote margin. Some languages need to specify who is being spoken to. Other languages may leave this quote margin implied, since the same subject (God) is talking to the same people. However, the repeated quote margin in the Hebrew text could show that God paused before continuing or that he is changing the topic, or to emphasize what he says next. So if it is natural to keep the quote margin here in your language, that is best. Alternate translation: "Then God also said to them," or "Then he added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 1:29 (#2)

**"Behold"**

This word means that what God says next is important and should be given special attention. Consider what is the best way to translate this term in your language. Alternate translation: "Look," or "Listen to this," or "I want you to know that"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 1:29 (#3)

**"I have given to you"**

Alternate translation: "I am now giving to you as food" or "I have provided as food for you" or "I am now providing as food for you"

### Genesis 1:29 (#4)

**"every plant {that} yields seed that {is}"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 11 and 12. Alternate translation: “every kind of seed-bearing plant that grows” or “every kind of plant with seeds that grows” or “all the different kinds of plants that yield seeds and grow”

### Genesis 1:29 (#5)

**"on the surface of the whole earth"**

Alternate translation: “anywhere throughout the earth,”

### Genesis 1:29 (#6)

**"and every tree that {has}"**

Alternate translation: “as well as every kind of tree that bears” or “and all the different kinds of trees that bear”

### Genesis 1:29 (#7)

**"tree fruit {that} yields seed inside it"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 11 and 12. Alternate translation: “seed-bearing fruit.”

### Genesis 1:29 (#8)

**"They will be yours for food"**

Alternate translation: “You may eat from any of those plants.”

### Genesis 1:30 (#1)

**"And to every living thing of the earth"**

See how you translated similar phrases in verses 24 and 25. Alternate translation: “In the same way, to every kind of wild creature that lives on the land,” or “Likewise, to all the wild creatures that live on the land,” or “In the same way, to all the wild animals,”

### Genesis 1:30 (#2)

**"and to every bird of the sky"**

Alternate translation: “and every kind of bird that flies in the sky,”

### Genesis 1:30 (#3)

**"and to every{thing} moving on the earth that {has} living breath in it"**

See how you translated “that moves on the earth” in verse 28. Alternate translation: “and every other kind of creature that moves on the land and has the breath of life,” or “and all the other creatures that move on the earth and breathe air to live,”

### Genesis 1:30 (#4)

**"I have given} every green plant for food"**

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase near the beginning of this verse and say, “In the same way, I give every type of green plant for food to all the wild animals that live on the earth, and all the birds that fly in the sky, and all the other animals that live on the land and breathe air.” Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **plant** in verses 11, 12, 29. Alternate translation: “I give every kind of green plant as food.” or “I have given all the green plants as food.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 1:30 (#5)

**"And it was so"**

Consider again how you translated this sentence in verses 7, 9, 11, 15, 24 and 30. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. For example, here in verse 30 this phrase follows a statement God made, which is different from the other contexts where it follows a command. Alternate translation: “And it was exactly as God said it would be.”

### Genesis 1:31 (#1)

**"Then God saw"**

See how you translated “God saw ...” in verse 4. Alternate translation: “Then God observed”



**Genesis 1:31 (#2)****"all that he had made"**

This phrase refers to everything that God made during the entire week of Creation, not just on the sixth day. Consider again how you translated **made** (or "make") in verses 7, 16, 25, 26 and 31. Compare that to how you translated a word that has a similar meaning ("created") in verses 1, 21 and 27. Alternate translation: "everything that he had created,"

**Genesis 1:31 (#3)****"and behold"**

This word calls attention to what God is looking at and helps emphasize that what he saw was very good. Alternate translation: "and indeed" or "and he saw that"

**Genesis 1:31 (#4)****"it was} very good"**

Consider again how you translated "good/excellent" in verses 4, 10, 12, 18, 21, 25, and 31. Alternate translation: "it was all very good"

**Genesis 1:31 (#5)****"Then there was evening, and there was morning"**

Consider again how you translated these phrases in verses 5, 8, 13, 19, 23, and 31, and see the note about that at verse 5. Alternate translation: "Then evening came, and then morning came,"

**Genesis 1:31 (#6)****"the sixth day"**

Alternate translation: "and the sixth day ended." or "and that was the end of day six."

See: Ordinal Numbers

**Genesis 2:1 (#1)****"So the heavens and the earth were completed"**

Verse 1 is a summary statement that looks back at what God did in chapter 1. Make sure that is clear in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive clause here, and see how you translated "heavens and earth" in Gen 1:1. Alternate translation: "So it was that the heavens and the earth were finished by God," or "That is how God finished making the heavens and the earth,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 2:1 (#2)****"and all their hosts"**

This phrase refers to everything in the heavens and on the earth that God had created, as described in chapter 1. Alternate translation: "along with everything in them."

**Genesis 2:2 (#1)****"by the seventh day"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God had completed his work by the seventh day and did not work on that day. Also consider again how you translated ordinal numbers in Gen 1:5, 8, 13, 19, 23, 31; 2:2. Alternate translation: "By day seven"

See: Ordinal Numbers

**Genesis 2:2 (#2)****"And" - "God had completed"**

Decide whether it is better in your language to refer to God with a title (**God**) or a pronoun (**he**) in this context. Alternate translation: "he had completed" or "God was finished with"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 2:2 (#3)****"his work that he had done"**

Alternate translation: "his work he had been doing,"

**Genesis 2:2 (#4)****"so he rested on the seventh day from all"**

God **rested** in the sense that he stopped his work and did not work on that day. It does not mean he was tired or had lost his strength. Rest is an important theme in the Bible, so you should try to be consistent in how you translate this term here and in other passages such as Exodus 23:12, 31:17 and Hebrews 4:4, 10. Part of this theme includes the Hebrew word for "Sabbath" which has the same root word as the verb for "rest" and is often translated "resting day." Alternate translation: "so he ceased on that day from all" or "so on the seventh day he no longer did"

**Genesis 2:2 (#5)****"his work that he had done"**

Alternate translation: "the work that he had been doing."

**Genesis 2:3 (#1)****"And God blessed the seventh day"**

For some languages it is more natural to begin verse 3 without a conjunction. Other languages use a conjunction here like Hebrew does. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Then he designated the seventh day as a day to bless people" or "He honored the seventh day"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 2:3 (#2)****"and sanctified it"**

Alternate translation: "and made it a holy day," or "and set it apart as a day especially devoted to him," or "by setting it apart as a special day for people to rest and worship him,"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 2:3 (#3)****"because on it"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate

translation: "because during that day" or "He did that because during that day"

**Genesis 2:3 (#4)****"he rested from all his work"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. Alternate translation: "he ceased from all the work" or "he did not do any more work"

**Genesis 2:3 (#5)****"of creating that God had done"**

Alternate translation: "of creating that he had been doing."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 2:4 (#1)****"These {are}"**

This phrase refers forward to Gen 2:5–24 and begins a new section. Chapter one of Genesis gives an overview of what God did each day of creation week, including that he created human beings on day six. Chapter two gives more details about how God created Adam and Eve, who were his most important creations. Each chapter emphasizes different parts of the same history; they are not two different histories. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "These are more details about" or "This is more about" or "What follows gives more details about"

**Genesis 2:4 (#2)****"the generations of the heavens and the earth when they were created"**

The Hebrew text uses a passive construction here to emphasize the heavens and the earth. Decide the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "the history of the heavens and the earth when they were created by God," or "what happened when God created the heavens and the earth."

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 2:4 (#3)

#### "in the day {when}"

Consider whether or not it is clearer or more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here that continues into verse 5. Alternate translation: "during the days when" or "During the days when"

### Genesis 2:4 (#4)

#### "Yahweh God"

This phrase is a combination of God's personal name **Yahweh** with his title "God." Both are used together when he is especially in focus. This pattern of using a personal name and a title together is also used for people in the Old Testament when they are being emphasized, for example, "Ahab king of Israel" and "Ruth the Moabitess." Many translations have "LORD God" in place of **Yahweh God** throughout the Old Testament. This follows the Jewish custom of substituting the Hebrew title "Adonai" (which means "my Lord") for **Yahweh** (which means "he is") when they read the Scriptures aloud. More recently, translation teams are putting **Yahweh** back in the Bible text (especially in the Old Testament, but also in the New Testament), and they include a footnote to explain the term. (Some translation teams consider using "Jehovah" instead of "Yahweh." However that is not a name from the Bible, but is formed by taking the consonants from **Yahweh** and combining them with the vowels from "Adonai.") Alternate translation: "God whose name is Yahweh"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 2:4 (#5)

#### "made the earth and the heavens"

This clause forms a chiasm with "the heavens and the earth ... created" in the first part of this verse. Try to keep the same phrase order in your translation. See how you translated **the heavens** and **the earth** in Gen 1:1 and 2:1. Alternate translation: "created the earth and the heavens"

See:

### Genesis 2:5 (#1)

#### "and every shrub of the field had not yet appeared on the earth"

Consider whether or not it is better in your translation to begin a new sentence here. Verses 5–6 give background information about what things were like before God created mankind (verse 7). Some languages use a conjunction like "Now" to introduce background information, while other languages do not use a conjunction here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Now for a while, there were not yet any shrubs in the fields on the earth," or "For a while, no wild shrubs had started growing on the earth yet,"

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 2:5 (#2)

#### "and every plant of the field had not yet sprung up"

See how you translated "plants" in Gen 1:11–12, 29–30. Alternate translation: "nor had any other plants started growing yet,"

### Genesis 2:5 (#3)

#### "because Yahweh God"

The Hebrew text repeats **Yahweh God** frequently in chapter 2 (starting in verse 4) to emphasize God. For some languages, it is not natural to repeat **Yahweh God** so often in the same paragraph, and it could even give the wrong meaning that there was more than one Yahweh God. For languages like that, it may be best to use **Yahweh God** only once at the beginning of a section or paragraph, then use **Yahweh**, **God**, or "he" in the rest of the section, depending on the context. Consider what is the most accurate and natural way to refer to Yahweh God at each point in your translation. Alternate translation: "because he"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 2:5 (#4)

#### "had not caused it to rain on the earth"

See how you translated **earth** in Gen 1:1 and 2:1. Alternate translation: "had not yet caused it to rain

on the earth,” or “had not yet caused rain to water the earth,”

### Genesis 2:5 (#5)

**"and there was no man"**

Alternate translation: “and there were no human beings yet” or “and mankind did not exist yet”

### Genesis 2:5 (#6)

**"to work the ground"**

Working the ground includes tasks such as clearing the ground, preparing the soil, planting seeds, and watering the plants. See how you translated **ground** in Gen 1:25. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “to farm the land”

### Genesis 2:6 (#1)

**"But mist"**

The Hebrew word for **mist** refers to water in some form, such as water vapor, springs, or streams of water. Also, some translations begin verse 6 without **But**. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “But at that time mist” or “At that time mist”

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 2:6 (#2)

**"came up"**

This verb describes a repeated or continuous action. Alternate translation: “seeped up” or “kept coming up” or “would seep up”

### Genesis 2:6 (#3)

**"from the earth"**

Alternate translation: “from the ground” or “from underground”

### Genesis 2:6 (#4)

**"and watered"**

Alternate translation: “and irrigated” or “and spread over”

### Genesis 2:6 (#5)

**"all of the surface of the ground"**

Alternate translation: “the whole surface of the earth.” or “the ground everywhere.”

### Genesis 2:7 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh God formed"**

The word **formed** describes what an expert craftsmen would do, and implies artistic skills and design. See how you translated **Yahweh God** in Gen 2:4–5. Alternate translation: “Then Yahweh who is God shaped”

### Genesis 2:7 (#2)

**"the man"**

The definite article **the** is used here because this refers to a specific man, the first male human. For many languages it is more natural to use an indefinite article (**a**) to introduce him here, or to not use an article at all. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “the first man”

### Genesis 2:7 (#3)

**"out of} dust"**

The word used here in the Hebrew text is usually translated **dust** (as in Gen 13:16, 28:14), but it can also be translated “dirt” (as in Gen 26:15) or “mortar/mud/clay” (as in Leviticus 14:42). The dirt would have been damp enough to be formed or shaped. Alternate translation: “out of mud”

### Genesis 2:7 (#4)

**"from the ground"**

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in the first half of this verse

and say, "Then Yahweh who is God took some dirt/clay from the ground/earth and formed/shaped a man out of it," Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated **ground** in Gen 1:25 and 2:5-6. You may need to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "from the earth,"

## Genesis 2:7 (#5)

### "and he breathed"

For some languages, it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and he blew" or "Then he exhaled"

## Genesis 2:7 (#6)

### "into his nostrils the breath of life"

This refers to God's breath. As you translate the pronouns **he** and **his** in this verse, make sure it is clear in your language who is being referred to.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 2:7 (#7)

### "and the man became a living being"

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to refer to the man throughout verse 7. Alternate translation: "so that he became a living person." or "and then the man became alive" or "and he came to life." or "so that he started to live."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 2:8 (#1)

### "Now Yahweh God had planted"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "Now Yahweh God had previously/already planted" or "Before that, Yahweh God had planted". This interpretation fits the context of chapter one, which says that God had made all the trees and plants on day three (Gen 1:11-12), three days before he created man (Gen 1:26-27; 2:7). Following this view, verses 8-14 give background information for what happens in verses 15-24. (2) "Then Yahweh God planted". According to this

interpretation, God made the Garden of Eden on day six after he created man.

See: Background Information

## Genesis 2:8 (#2)

### "a garden"

The man lived in this garden, and there were animals and many trees and other plants in it too, so it was fairly large. Make sure your translation of this term does not refer to something that is too small. Alternate translation: "a large park"

## Genesis 2:8 (#3)

### "in Eden, in the east"

In this context, the phrase **in the east** could refer to: (1) the eastern part of the region of Eden; or (2) a region east of where Moses lived when he wrote this. It is best, if possible, to keep your translation of this phrase general here (like the Hebrew text). Alternate translation: "in the region called Eden, which was to the east," or "in the eastern part of the land of Eden,"

## Genesis 2:8 (#4)

### "and there he put the man"

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and in that garden he put the man" or "That is where he put the man"

## Genesis 2:8 (#5)

### "whom he had formed"

See how you translated **formed** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "whom he had shaped" or "whom he had created"

## Genesis 2:9 (#1)

"And Yahweh God had made to grow from the ground every tree {that} is pleasant"

See how you translated **Yahweh God** in verse 5, and how you translated **every tree** in Gen 1:29. Alternate translation: "There he had caused to grow from the ground every type of tree that is beautiful" or "He had made all kinds of trees to grow from the ground that are pleasant"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 2:9 (#2)

### "to the sight"

Alternate translation: "to the eyes" or "in appearance"

## Genesis 2:9 (#3)

### "and good"

Alternate translation: "and that have fruit that is good" or "and whose fruit is good"

## Genesis 2:9 (#4)

### "for food"

Alternate translation: "for eating,"

## Genesis 2:9 (#5)

### "and the tree of life in the middle of the garden"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "including the tree whose fruit gives people eternal life, which was in the middle of the garden,"

## Genesis 2:9 (#6)

### "and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil"

The word **good** refers here to all that is morally right and pleasing to God, and **evil** refers to what is morally wrong and against his will. Keep that in mind as you translate these terms. Alternate translation: "as well as the tree whose fruit enables people to discern what is right and what is wrong."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

## Genesis 2:10 (#1)

### "And a river was going out"

Verse 10 gives more background information that began in verse 8. Many translations omit the conjunction **And** or "Now" here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Now a river was flowing" or "A river was flowing"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

## Genesis 2:10 (#2)

### "from Eden"

The garden was inside the land of Eden, so as the river flowed through Eden, it watered the garden. Alternate translation: "from the land of Eden"

## Genesis 2:10 (#3)

### "to water"

See how you translated "watered" in verse 6. Alternate translation: "to irrigate" or "to provide water for" or "that watered"

## Genesis 2:10 (#4)

### "the garden"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: "the park,"

## Genesis 2:10 (#5)

### "and from there"

For some languages it is better to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and from the garden" or "From Eden"

## Genesis 2:10 (#6)

### "it divided and became four head{water}s"

Verse 10 is ambiguous in the Hebrew text. It could mean: (1) "the/that river divided into four smaller

waters/river." This interpretation means that the river in Eden was the source river that watered the garden and then divided downstream into the four smaller rivers. (2) "there were four smaller source rivers that joined together and formed the larger river." This interpretation means that the four rivers were source headwaters that flowed downstream and joined to form the larger river in Eden. If possible, leave your translation ambiguous here (like the Hebrew text does), so that either interpretation is possible.

### Genesis 2:11 (#1)

#### "The name of the first {is}"

Most translations use past tense in verse 10, but then use present tense throughout verses 11–14. It may be best to use past tense throughout verses 10–14, especially since the rivers and places that are named in these verses no longer existed when Genesis was written, because the Flood completely changed the entire surface of the earth; after the Flood, the names of some of those rivers and places were given to new rivers and places. Alternate translation: "The name of the first river is" or "The first river is named" or "The first river is"

### Genesis 2:11 (#2)

#### "Pishon"

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use the article (**the**) with the name of a river.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 2:11 (#3)

#### "It winds through"

The word **winds** or "meanders" means that the river changed direction from time to time. Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the previous sentence. Alternate translation: "It meanders through" or "which flows around through"

### Genesis 2:11 (#4)

#### "all of the land of Havilah"

Be consistent in how you translate **land of** throughout this section. Alternate translation: "the whole region called Havilah,"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 2:11 (#5)

#### "where gold {is}"

Alternate translation: "a place where there is much gold." or "which has a lot of gold."

### Genesis 2:12 (#1)

#### "And the gold of that land"

This sentence emphasizes the previous statement about the gold and gives more information about it. Alternate translation: "In fact, the gold from that land" or "Indeed, the gold that is found in that land"

### Genesis 2:12 (#2)

#### "is} good"

Alternate translation: "is very pure." or "is very high quality."

### Genesis 2:12 (#3)

#### "Bdellium"

The meaning of this Hebrew word is not certain. In many translations it is transliterated, that is, spelled the way the Hebrew word is pronounced. It may refer to: (1) a fragrant/sweet-smelling tree resin that was used to make perfume; or (2) a type of stone or crystal, or possibly pearl. Alternate translation: "A kind of sweet-smelling resin called bdellium" or "A kind of fragrant perfume"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 2:12 (#4)

#### "and onyx stone"

It is not certain what kind of stone this was, but most Bible scholars think it was onyx, which is a kind of quartz that is often black, but also occurs in many other colors, and can have stripes or bands of

white (or other colors) running through it. Alternate translation: “and valuable stones called onyx” or “and valuable gemstones”

See: Translate Unknowns

## Genesis 2:12 (#5)

**"are} there"**

Make sure the verb tense you choose here fits with the way you translated verse 11. Alternate translation: “are also found there.” or “are also in that land”

## Genesis 2:13 (#1)

**"And the name of the second river {is}"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 11. Alternate translation: “The name of the second river is” or “The second river is named” or “The second river is”

## Genesis 2:13 (#2)

**"It winds through"**

Consider whether it is better here in your language to begin a new sentence or to continue the previous sentence. See how you translated this phrase in verse 11. Alternate translation: “It meanders through” or “which flows around through”

## Genesis 2:13 (#3)

**"all of the land of Cush"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 11. Alternate translation: “the whole region of Cush.”

## Genesis 2:14 (#1)

**"And the name of the third river {is}"**

Alternate translation: “The name of the third river is” or “The third river is named” or “The third river is”

## Genesis 2:14 (#2)

**"It goes east of"**

The word **east** refers to where the river was located, not the direction it was flowing. Alternate translation: “It flows in an area east of” or “which flows in an area east of” or “which was located east of”

## Genesis 2:14 (#3)

**"Asshur"**

This Hebrew name is pronounced “ash-shur” and is spelled “Asshur,” “Ashur,” or “Assyria” in English, depending on the context. This was a region of land, because at that time there were no cities. Most translations have “Assyria” here. Consider again how you translated “the land of” in verses 11 and 13. Alternate translation: “the land of Asshur”

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 2:14 (#4)

**"And the fourth river {is}"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 11, 13–14. Also consider again whether it is best in your language to use present tense or past tense in verses 10–14. Alternate translation: “The name of the fourth river is” or “The fourth river is called” or “and the fourth river is”

## Genesis 2:14 (#5)

**"Euphrates"**

Consider again how you translated the names of rivers in verses 11, 13–14.

## Genesis 2:15 (#1)

**"And Yahweh God took the man and put him"**

In verse 8 it says that God had already put the man in the garden, so the way you translate verse 15 should not sound like he did it again. This information is repeated here to continue the story from verse 8. Alternate translation: “Now Yahweh God had already put the man”

See: Background Information



**Genesis 2:15 (#2)****"in the Garden of Eden"**

Notice that **Garden** is capitalized when it is part of a name. Alternate translation: "in the garden in the land called Eden"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 2:15 (#3)****"to work it"**

See how you translated **work** in verse 5. Alternate translation: "to farm it" or "so that he would farm it"

**Genesis 2:15 (#4)****"and tend it"**

Alternate translation: "and maintain it."

**Genesis 2:16 (#1)****"Then Yahweh God commanded the man, saying"**

The way you begin verse 16 depends on how you began verse 15. Consider what is the best way to refer to **Yahweh God** and **the man** here. Alternate translation: "Then he commanded the man,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 2:16 (#2)****"From every tree of the garden you may freely eat"**

Alternate translation: "You may eat as much fruit as you want to eat from every tree in the garden," or "You are permitted to eat whatever fruit that you want to eat from every tree in the garden,"

**Genesis 2:17 (#1)****"but you must not eat from the tree of"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is not contradicting himself here, but rather he is giving an exception to what he said in verse 16. To make that clear, you could say (starting with the beginning of God's words in verse 16), "Out of all the trees in the garden, there is only one tree that you must/may not eat from: the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If you eat fruit from that tree, on that same day you will certainly/definitely die." Alternate translation: "except you may not eat any fruit from the tree" or "except for one: you may not eat the fruit that grows on the tree"

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

**Genesis 2:17 (#2)****"the knowledge of good and evil"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 9. Alternate translation: "whose fruit enables people to discern what is good and what is wrong,"

**Genesis 2:17 (#3)****"because on the day you eat from it"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "because on the same day you eat fruit from that tree" or "If you eat any fruit from that tree, on that same day" or "because as soon as you eat fruit from that tree"

**Genesis 2:17 (#4)****"you will surely die"**

Alternate translation: "you will certainly die."

**Genesis 2:18 (#1)****"Then Yahweh God said, "{It is} not good {for}"**

Alternate translation: "Next Yahweh who is God declared, It is not good"

**Genesis 2:18 (#2)****"the man to be alone"**

Alternate translation: "that the man is alone."

## Genesis 2:18 (#3)

**"I will make"**

Alternate translation: "So I will make"

## Genesis 2:18 (#4)

**"a suitable helper for him"**

Alternate translation: "a helper who is just right for him." or "someone who is right for him and will help him."

## Genesis 2:19 (#1)

**"Now Yahweh God had formed from the ground"**

The first sentence of verse 19 is a flashback of what happened before the events in verses 15–18 (which were first recorded in Gen 1:20–21, 24–25). Translate this phrase in a way that makes it clear that this is background information that has already happened. Also see how you translated **formed** in verses 7–8 and "dust from the ground" in verse 7. Alternate translation: "Now before that, Yahweh God had shaped from the dust on the ground" or "Now previously, he had used dust from the ground to form"

See: Background Information

## Genesis 2:19 (#2)

**"every living thing of the field"**

Consider how you translated a similar phrase ("every living creature of the earth") in Gen 1:24, 30. Alternate translation: "every type of creature that lives in the fields" or "all the different kinds of animals that live in the fields" or "all the different kinds of wild animals"

## Genesis 2:19 (#3)

**"and every bird of the sky"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 1:30. Alternate translation: "and every kind of bird that flies in the sky." or "and all the different kinds of birds that fly in the sky."

## Genesis 2:19 (#4)

**"So he brought {them}"**

This sentence continues the storyline. Consider how your language continues a story after giving background information. Also consider whether **brought** or "took" fits best here in your language. Alternate translation: "So he took them all"

See: Go and Come

## Genesis 2:19 (#5)

**"to the man"**

Every translation team needs to decide when to use Adam's name for the first time in the book of Genesis. The Hebrew word "adam" means **man** and is also Adam's name; the choice that is not followed here in your translation could be put in a footnote. Some translations first use Adam's name here in verse 19, when he is naming the animals. Many other translations start using his name at the end of verse 20. Still other translations wait until 3:20 when he names Eve, and a few other translations begin in 3:9, 17, or 21. Alternate translation: "to Adam"

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 2:19 (#6)

**"to see"**

Alternate translation: "to watch" or "to find out"

## Genesis 2:19 (#7)

**"what he would call them"**

These names were labels for what kind of animals they were, such as "dog" or "horse", not personal names like "David" or "Mary". Alternate translation: "what he would name each one," or "what names he would give to them,"

**Genesis 2:19 (#8)****"and whatever the man called"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and whatever Adam called" or "Whatever name the man assigned to"

**Genesis 2:19 (#9)****"a living creature"**

Alternate translation: "each kind of living creature," or "each type of animal,"

**Genesis 2:19 (#10)****"that {was} its name"**

Alternate translation: "that became its name." or "that became the name of that type of animal."

**Genesis 2:20 (#1)****"And the man gave names to all the livestock"**

For a note about when to first use Adam's name, see verse 19. Also, see how you translated **livestock** in Gen 1:24–26. Alternate translation: "The man assigned names to all the different types of livestock" or "Adam named all the different types of tame animals"

**Genesis 2:20 (#2)****"and to the bird{s} of the sky"**

Alternate translation: "and to all the different types of birds that fly in the sky"

**Genesis 2:20 (#3)****"and to every living thing of the field"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 19. Alternate translation: "and to all the other different types of creatures that live in the wild," or "and to all the wild animals,"

**Genesis 2:20 (#4)****"but for the man a suitable helper was not found"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use an active or passive construction here. Also see how you translated **a suitable helper** in verse 18. Alternate translation: "but he could not find a suitable helper for himself among them." or "but none of them was a helper who was just right for him."

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 2:21 (#1)****"So Yahweh God caused a deep sleep to fall on the man"**

Many languages have a similar idiom for **caused a deep sleep to fall on** that works well here. Consider what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh God caused the man to go into a deep sleep." or "Then Yahweh God caused the man to sleep very deeply"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 2:21 (#2)****"And {while} he was sleeping"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a pronoun or a noun here to refer to the man. Alternate translation: "Then while the man was sleeping"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 2:21 (#3)****"then he took"**

Consider whether to use a pronoun or noun here to refer to God. Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to at each point in this verse. Alternate translation: "he took out"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 2:21 (#4)****"one of his ribs"**

This phrase is ambiguous in the Hebrew text. It could mean: (1) “one of the man’s ribs from his body/side” or “a rib from the man’s body/side” or (2) “part of the man’s side from his body”

### Genesis 2:21 (#5)

**"and closed up its place {with} flesh"**

In this context, the term **flesh** probably includes muscles and skin. Alternate translation: “and filled in the hole where it had been with flesh and healed it.” or “and replaced it with flesh and healed him.”

### Genesis 2:22 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh God built"**

For many languages it is more natural here to use a pronoun to refer to Yahweh God. Do what is best in your language. After you finish translating a chapter or section, it is a good practice to read that section aloud and listen for what is the best way to refer to God and others at each place in the text. Alternate translation: “Next he” or “After that, he”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 2:22 (#2)

**"Then" - "built the rib which he had taken from the man into a woman"**

See how you translated **rib** in verse 21 and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: “used the rib which he taken from the man to construct a woman from it,”

### Genesis 2:22 (#3)

**"and he brought her to the man"**

See how you translated **brought** in verse 19. Alternate translation: “Then he took her to the man.”

See: Go and Come

### Genesis 2:23 (#1)

**"And the man said"**

Remember to only make implied information explicit in your translation if it helps people understand the text better or if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or bad grammar in your language. Alternate translation: “Then the man said” or “When the man saw her, he said” or “When the man woke up and saw the woman, he said”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 2:23 (#2)

**"This {one} now"**

Alternate translation: “Now there is a person who” or “At last here is a person like me who” or “Ahh! Here is someone like me who”

### Genesis 2:23 (#3)

**"is} bone from my bones"**

Alternate translation: “was made out of my own bones and flesh!”

### Genesis 2:23 (#4)

**"She will be called 'woman'"**

There is a play-on-words here because the Hebrew word for woman (“ishsha”) is similar to the Hebrew word for man (“ish”). You could put that information in a footnote.

### Genesis 2:23 (#5)

**"because {it was} from a man {that} she was taken"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: “because she was taken by God from the body of a man.”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 2:24 (#1)

**"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: “That is why”

**Genesis 2:24 (#2)****"a man will leave"**

Alternate translation: "a man who marries must leave" or "when a man gets married, he must move away from"

**Genesis 2:24 (#3)****"and he will cling to his wife"**

This idiom means that the man is committed to his wife and has a close physical relationship with her too. Consider what is the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: "and he must join with his wife," or "and he must live in close relationship with his wife,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 2:24 (#4)****"and they will become"**

Some languages have a special dual pronoun for **they** that fits well here.

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

**Genesis 2:24 (#5)****"one flesh"**

The phrase **one flesh** is an idiom that emphasizes the close physical and spiritual unity between a husband and wife. Other languages may have a similar idiom. Consider how to best communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: "completely one" or "united in body and spirit." or "united like one person."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 2:25 (#1)****"And the man and his wife were both naked"**

Alternate translation: "Now at that time both the man and his wife were naked," or "At that time the man and his wife did not wear any clothes,"

**Genesis 2:25 (#2)****"but they were not ashamed"**

Some languages have an idiom for this clause that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "but yet they were not embarrassed about it." or "but yet they did not feel embarrassed about being naked."

**Genesis 3:1 (#1)****"Now the serpent"**

The conjunction **Now** introduces background information about the serpent. See how you translated this conjunction in Gen 2:5, 8, 19.

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 3:1 (#2)****"was more crafty than every living thing of the field"**

Make sure that your translation of **crafty** means that the snake had evil intent and was clever in a way that was not good. See how you translated **living thing of the field** in Gen 2:19–20. Alternate translation: "was more deceptive and clever than any of the other creatures that live in the wild"

**Genesis 3:1 (#3)****"that Yahweh God had made"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to the animals that God had made, not the fields. Also see how you translated **Yahweh God** in chapter 2, beginning in verse 4. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh who is God had made" or "that God whose name is Yahweh had made"

**Genesis 3:1 (#4)****"And he said to the woman"**

If you use a pronoun (**he**) here in your translation, make sure it refers to the serpent, not God. Also, since the snake asked a question, some languages have to be more specific and say "asked" in the

quote margin. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "One day the snake went to the woman and asked her,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 3:1 (#5)

### "Did God really say, 'You must not eat'"

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Did God actually command you to not eat" or "Is it true that God commanded you not to eat"

See: Quotes within Quotes

## Genesis 3:1 (#6)

### "from any tree of the garden"

See how you translated **garden** in Genesis 2, beginning in verse 8. Alternate translation: "fruit from any of the trees that is in the garden?" or "any fruit from the trees in the garden?"

## Genesis 3:2 (#1)

### "Then the woman said to the serpent"

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: "The woman answered the snake," or "The woman responded to him," or "The woman replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 3:2 (#2)

### "We may eat"

The woman is not including the snake when she says "we" here. Alternate translation: "No, we have permission from God to eat" or "No, God has given us permission to eat"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

## Genesis 3:2 (#3)

### "from the fruit of"

See how you translated **fruit** in Gen 1:11–12, 29. Alternate translation: "the fruit from"

## Genesis 3:2 (#4)

### "the tree{s} of the garden"

Alternate translation: "all of the trees that are in the garden," or "any tree in the garden,"

## Genesis 3:3 (#1)

### "except from the fruit of the tree that {is} in the middle of the garden"

For some languages it is necessary to put the exception clause first and say, "No, it is only the tree in the middle of the garden that God said we must/may not eat any fruit from, but the fruit of/from all the rest of the trees in the garden we may eat." Notice that if you follow this example, you must combine verses 2 and 3 and put the verse numbers "2–3" in front of the combination. Alternate translation: "except fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden." or "except there is one tree that we may not eat fruit from, which is in the center of the garden."

See: Verse Bridges

## Genesis 3:3 (#2)

### "God said, 'You must not eat from it'"

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "God told us to not eat any of that fruit,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

## Genesis 3:3 (#3)

### "and you must not touch it"

Alternate translation: "and do not even touch it,"

**Genesis 3:3 (#4)****"or else you will die"**

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits with whether you translated the first part of the sentence as a direct (**you**) or indirect ("we") quote. Alternate translation: "because if you do eat it or touch it, you will die!" or "because if we do eat it or touch it, we will die!"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 3:4 (#1)****"But the serpent said to the woman"**

See how you translated **serpent** in verses 1–2. Alternate translation: "But the snake replied to her," or "But the snake replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 3:5 (#1)****"For God knows"**

The connecting word **For** introduces an explanation here. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "Actually, he knows" or "The reason God said that is because he knows"

**Genesis 3:5 (#2)****"that on the day"**

Alternate translation: "that if"

**Genesis 3:5 (#3)****"you eat from it"**

The pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this verse and refer to the man and the woman. Some languages have a special dual pronoun for this. Consider again how you translated **you** and **your** in verses 1–5. Alternate translation: "you eat any of that fruit,"

See:

**Genesis 3:5 (#4)****"then your eyes will be opened"**

Consider whether your language has an idiom like **your eyes will be opened** that would fit well here. Alternate translation: "your mind will be opened" or "you will gain new understanding," or "you will know new things,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 3:5 (#5)****"and you will be like God in knowing good and evil"**

The Hebrew word "Elohim" is ambiguous in this context. It could mean: (1) **God**, which is what it means everywhere else in the first 30 chapters of Genesis; or (2) "gods" or "divine beings" or (3) "angels". See how you translated **good and evil** in Gen 2:9, 17. Alternate translation: "and as a result you will be like God because you will know what is good and what is evil" or "so that you will know what is good and what is evil just like God does."

**Genesis 3:6 (#1)****"And the woman saw that"**

Alternate translation: "The woman observed that"

**Genesis 3:6 (#2)****"the tree"**

The word **tree** refers here to the fruit that is produced by that tree. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "the tree produced fruit that" or "the fruit of that tree"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 3:6 (#3)****"was} good for food"**

Alternate translation: "was good to eat"

**Genesis 3:6 (#4)****"and that it {was} pleasant to the eyes"**

Alternate translation: "and that the tree itself looked very beautiful,"

**Genesis 3:6 (#5)****"and {that} the tree was desirable for gaining wisdom"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and she thought that the fruit from the tree would make her wise" or "She also desired to eat the fruit so that it would make her wise"

**Genesis 3:6 (#6)****"So she took some of its fruit and ate {it}"**

Alternate translation: "So she took some of the fruit off the tree and ate it."

**Genesis 3:6 (#7)****"and he ate {it}"**

Alternate translation: "and he ate some too." or "and he also ate it"

**Genesis 3:7 (#1)****"Then the eyes of them both were opened"**

An immediate result of their sin was that they realized they were naked, which they had not been aware of before. See how you translated the idiom "eyes ... opened" in verse 5. Alternate translation: "Immediately it was as if their minds were opened" or "Immediately they both had new understanding," or "Immediately they both understood new things,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 3:7 (#2)****"and they knew"**

Alternate translation: "so that they realized" or "so that they became aware"

**Genesis 3:7 (#3)****"that they {were} naked"**

Alternate translation: "that their bodies were bare and they felt ashamed"

**Genesis 3:7 (#4)****"So they sewed" - "together"**

The word for **sewed** implies here that some type of needle and thread were used. For example, they may have used a thin, sharpened stick for the needle, and plant fibers for the thread. If necessary, you could use a more general term such as "fastened/joined together" or "connected". Also, some languages have dual pronouns that can be used in verses 7-8 for **they** and **themselves**. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So they joined together"

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

**Genesis 3:7 (#5)****"fig leaves"**

Historical facts should not be changed in a translation, including the historical fact that Adam and Eve used fig tree leaves to make aprons. If fig trees are not known in your language area, you could say "large leaves from a tree called a fig tree". Alternate translation: "some large leaves from a fig tree"

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 3:7 (#6)****"and made aprons for themselves"**

These aprons/skirts probably covered them from the waist down to somewhere around the knees. Alternate translation: "and used them as aprons to cover their bodies." or "and wore them around their waists to cover their bodies." or "and used them to make clothes for themselves."



**Genesis 3:8 (#1)****"Then they heard"**

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to put the noun phrase **the man and his wife** here and then use a pronoun (**they**) later in this sentence. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then the man and his wife heard"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 3:8 (#2)****"the sound of Yahweh God walking"**

This phrase can refer to the sound of God's footsteps or to the sound of his voice. Either meaning fits the context well and is followed by many translations.

**Genesis 3:8 (#3)****"in the garden"**

Alternate translation: "around in the garden" or "through the garden"

**Genesis 3:8 (#4)****"in the breeze of the day"**

This idiom refers to the late afternoon or early evening when there is a breeze blowing and it is cooler. For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase at the beginning of the sentence. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "late in the afternoon in the breezy time of the day," or "late that day when there was a cool breeze blowing,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 3:8 (#5)****"but the man and his wife hid"**

If you use **the man and his wife** earlier in this verse in your translation, consider whether or not a pronoun should be used here. Alternate translation: "so they hid themselves" or "so they tried to hide themselves"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 3:8 (#6)****"from the presence of Yahweh God"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Yahweh at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: "from Yahweh God" or "from his sight"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 3:8 (#7)****"among the tree{s} of the garden"**

Since the garden is already mentioned earlier in verse 8, for some languages it may be more natural to be general here and say "there". Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "in the midst of the trees in the garden." or "behind some trees there."

**Genesis 3:9 (#1)****"So Yahweh God called"**

See how you translated this name for God in verses 1 and 8. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh God called out"

**Genesis 3:9 (#2)****"to the man and said to him"**

See the note at Gen 2:19 about when to start using Adam's name. Also consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: "to the man and asked him," or "to Adam,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 3:9 (#3)****"Where {are} you"**

Notice that the word **you** is singular here because God is only addressing the man.

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 3:10 (#1)****"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "He answered him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 3:10 (#2)****"I heard your sound"**See how you translated **sound** in verse 8. Alternate translation: "I heard your voice" or "I heard the sound of your voice as you walked"**Genesis 3:10 (#3)****"in the garden"**

Alternate translation: "through the garden,"

**Genesis 3:10 (#4)****"but I was afraid because I {was} naked, so I hid"**

Alternate translation: "but I was naked, so I felt afraid and I hid from you." or "but I was naked and afraid that you would see me, so I hid."

**Genesis 3:11 (#1)****"Then he said"**Make sure your translation of **he** refers to Yahweh here, not the man. Alternate translation: "So Yahweh God asked him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 3:11 (#2)****"Who told you that you {were} naked"**The pronoun **you** is still singular here. Alternate translation: "What made you realize that you were naked?" or "How did you find out that you were naked?"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 3:11 (#3)****"that I commanded you not to eat from"**

For some languages it is more natural to use a direct quote here for Yahweh's words. Do what is best in your language.

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 3:12 (#1)****"Then the man said"**

Alternate translation: "But the man replied to him," or "The man answered him,"

**Genesis 3:12 (#2)****"The woman whom you gave {to be} with me, she"**The pronoun **she** is emphatic in the Hebrew text. That, along with the position of **The woman** at the beginning of the sentence, shows that the man is strongly emphasizing his blame of the woman. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: "The woman whom you put here to live with me, she is the one who" or "It was the woman you gave to me who"**Genesis 3:12 (#3)****"gave me {fruit} from the tree"**See how you translated **fruit** in verses 1–6. Alternate translation: "gave me some fruit from that tree," or "gave me some of the fruit,"**Genesis 3:12 (#4)****"and I ate {it}"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "That is why I ate it"

**Genesis 3:13 (#1)****"Then Yahweh God said to the woman"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: "So Yahweh God asked the woman,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 3:13 (#2)

#### "What {is} this you have done"

God already knew the answer to this question, but he is giving the woman a chance to confess and explain what she did. God's question probably also implies that he is displeased with what has happened. Alternate translation: "What have you done?" or "Tell me what you have done."

### Genesis 3:13 (#3)

#### "And the woman said"

Alternate translation: "But the woman said to him," or "The woman said" or "She replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 3:13 (#4)

#### "The serpent"

This phrase is emphasized in the Hebrew text. Alternate translation: "It was the snake that"

### Genesis 3:13 (#5)

#### "deceived me"

Alternate translation: "lied to me,"

### Genesis 3:13 (#6)

#### "so I ate {it}"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "so I ate some of that fruit." or "That is why I ate it"

### Genesis 3:14 (#1)

#### "Because you have done this"

Alternate translation: "Since you did that," or "Since you tricked the woman,"

### Genesis 3:14 (#2)

#### "you are cursed"

In this context, **cursed** involves God punishing the serpent and its descendants, causing them to suffer by crawling along the ground on their bellies and having a hostile relationship with human beings. Make sure that the way you translate this term does not imply the use of magic. Alternate translation: "you are cursed by me" or "I will cause you to suffer" or "I will punish you"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 3:14 (#3)

#### "above all the livestock"

When Adam and Eve sinned and God judged them, the curse and punishment of death and decay also affected everything that was under their authority, including the animals. Here in Gen 3:14, God puts a more severe curse on the serpent (and his descendants) than he put on the rest of the animals. See how you translated **livestock** in Gen 1:24-26; 2:20. Alternate translation: "more harshly than all the tame animals"

### Genesis 3:14 (#4)

#### "and above every living thing of the field"

See how you translated **every living thing of the field** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "and more harshly than all the creatures of the fields" or "and more harshly than all the wild animals."

### Genesis 3:14 (#5)

#### "You will move on your belly"

Alternate translation: "As a result, you will move on the ground on your stomach,"

### Genesis 3:14 (#6)

#### "and you will eat dust"

Make sure your translation of this clause does not imply that dust or dirt is all the snake will eat. Rather it could mean that dirt will get into his mouth when he eats his food, or it could be an idiom that refers to the fact that as he slithers along, his mouth will always be close to the dirt on the ground (a position of humility). Also see how you translated **dust** in Gen 2:7. Alternate translation: “and you will eat dirt with your food”

### Genesis 3:14 (#7)

**“all the days of your life”**

Alternate translation: “your entire life.”

### Genesis 3:15 (#1)

**“I will also put hostility”**

Alternate translation: “I will also cause you and the woman to be enemies with each other, and your offspring and her offspring to also be enemies.”

### Genesis 3:15 (#2)

**“He”**

The pronoun **He** is ambiguous here. It could refer to: (1) the woman’s descendant (Jesus) who would one day come to earth as the Messiah/Christ; or (2) the woman’s descendants who will constantly be enemies of the snake’s descendants. If you follow the first interpretation, this would be the first prophecy in the Bible about the Messiah/Christ (“the Anointed One” or “the Promised Savior King”) who would come to earth and destroy Satan’s power (Hebrews 2:14). You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: “In fact, her offspring” or “In fact, one of her descendants”

### Genesis 3:15 (#3)

**“will strike you {on} the head, and you will strike him {on} the heel”**

This is figurative language that Satan will harm the Messiah, but the Messiah will destroy him. For some languages it is better to switch the order of these clauses and say, “In fact, you will strike/bite/bruise the heel of one of her

descendants, but he will strike/crush your head.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “will crush your head, and you will bruise his heel.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 3:16 (#1)

**“To the woman he said”**

In the Hebrew text, “to the woman” comes first in this sentence, to emphasize her. Do what is natural in your language. Also consider what is the best way to refer to God here in your language. Alternate translation: “Then he said to the woman,” or “Then Yahweh God turned to the woman and said to her,”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 3:16 (#2)

**“I will greatly multiply your pain”**

Alternate translation: “I will cause you to have much pain” or “I will cause it to be very painful”

### Genesis 3:16 (#3)

**“in pain you will bear children”**

This clause is the second part of a parallelism, which emphasizes the pain and suffering that women will experience when they bear children. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation. Alternate translation: “yes you will suffer much pain when you give birth.” or “yes bearing children will be very painful for you.”

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 3:16 (#4)

**“Yet your desire {will be} for your husband”**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here, because the conjunctions and the idiom **your desire will be for your husband** are all ambiguous in this context. The text could mean: (1) “Yet/But you will still desire/long to be with your husband, and he ...”, which is similar to what **desire** means in Song of

Songs 7:10; or (2) “Besides that, you will desire/want to control your husband, but he ...”, which is similar to what **desire** means in Gen 4:7. The interpretation that is not followed in your translation could be put in a footnote.

### Genesis 3:16 (#5)

#### "and he will rule over you"

See how you translated **rule over** in Gen 1:18. It may be necessary to translate this term differently here because of the negative context of the curse and the consequences of sin. Alternate translation: “and he will control you.” or “and he will lord it over you.”

### Genesis 3:17 (#1)

#### "Then to the man he said"

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **to the man** is emphasized. See how you translated a similar case (“to the woman”) in verse 16. For a note about when to start using Adam’s name in your translation, see Gen 2:19. Alternate translation: “Next God said to the man,” or “Next Yahweh God turned to Adam and said to him,”

### Genesis 3:17 (#2)

#### "Since you listened to the voice of your wife"

This phrase means that Adam heard what his wife said to him and then did what she said. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: “Since you disobeyed me and did what your wife said” or “Since you did what your wife told you to do”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 3:17 (#3)

#### "that I commanded you, saying, 'You must not eat from it'"

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated this command in verse 3. Alternate translation: “that I commanded you to not eat any fruit from.”

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 3:17 (#4)

#### "the ground is cursed because of you"

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to break up this long sentence and say, “You did what your wife said and ate fruit from the tree that I commanded you not to eat any fruit from. Because of what you did, I have cursed the ground.” Also see how you translated **cursed** in verse 14. Alternate translation: “the ground is cursed by me because of what you did.” or “I have cursed the ground because you sinned.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 3:17 (#5)

#### "By painful toil you will eat {from} it"

Alternate translation: “As a result, only by painful toil will you eat any food from it” or “As a result, you will have to work very hard and suffer to get enough food to eat”

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Genesis 3:17 (#6)

#### "all the days of your life"

For some languages it is better to put this phrase before the previous clause and say, “As a result, for as long as you live, you will have to work very hard and suffer to grow/get enough food to eat.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “every day of your life.” or “for your entire life.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 3:18 (#1)

#### "And it will produce thorn{s} and thistle{s}"

The thorn and thistle plants represent all types of weeds, which are useless and possibly harmful plants. Alternate translation: “In fact, the ground will produce thorn plants and thistle plants and other weeds” or “In fact, thorn bushes and thistle plants and other weeds will grow from the ground”

See: Synecdoche

## Genesis 3:18 (#2)

""for you,"

The Hebrew text here could mean: (1) "and make it difficult for you to grow enough crops in the/your fields for food." or "so that you will have to work very hard in your fields to grow/produce enough crops/food to eat." or (2) "so that your crops will not grow well and you will have to eat wild plants that grow in the open fields to survive." That difference of interpretation comes from the fact that the Hebrew word **fields** can refer to land that people cultivate or to uncultivated land where wild plants grow.

## Genesis 3:19 (#1)

""By the sweat of your nose"

The phrase "by the sweat of your nose/brow" is an idiom that refers to hard physical labor. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Also, bread was one of the main food staples for that time and culture, so the Hebrew word for **bread** is used here as an idiom that refers to all food, not just bread. Consider whether your language does something similar, using one type of food (such as bread, rice or potatoes) to refer to all food in general. Or you could use a general term like "food," especially if bread is rare or expensive in your language area. Alternate translation: "Only by the sweat of your face will you be able to have enough food to eat," or "You will have to work hard and sweat a lot in order to have enough food to eat,"

See: Idiom

## Genesis 3:19 (#2)

"until you return to the ground"

Alternate translation: "until you die and again become dust"

## Genesis 3:19 (#3)

"since from it you were taken"

Alternate translation: "which you were made from by me." or "which I took you from." or "which I made you out of."

## Genesis 3:19 (#4)

"For"

This sentence rephrases and emphasizes what God just said. Alternate translation: "Indeed,"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

## Genesis 3:19 (#5)

"you {are} dust"

Alternate translation: "your bodies were made by me from dust" or "I made you out of dust"

## Genesis 3:19 (#6)

"and to dust you will return"

Alternate translation: "so dust is what you will become again after you die."

## Genesis 3:20 (#1)

"Then the man called the name of his wife"

Some translations use Adam's name here because he is naming Eve. See what you did in verse 17. Alternate translation: "Then Adam called his wife" or "Then the man gave his wife the name"

## Genesis 3:20 (#2)

"Eve"

If you include the meaning of Eve's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it is similar to the word in the following clause that has the same meaning (**living**), so that it is clear why Eve was given that name. The meaning of names is important in the Hebrew language, and this translation issue occurs frequently in the book of Genesis.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 3:20 (#3)****"because"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He did that because"

**Genesis 3:20 (#4)****"she was the mother of"**

Alternate translation: "she would be the ancestor of"

**Genesis 3:20 (#5)****"all the living"**

Alternate translation: "all the people who would ever live."

**Genesis 3:21 (#1)****"Then Yahweh God made garments of {animal} skins"**

Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh God made some garments out of animal skins" or "Then Yahweh God used some animal hides to make some garments"

**Genesis 3:21 (#2)****"for Adam and his wife"**

Alternate translation: "for Adam and his wife Eve," or "for the man and his wife,"

**Genesis 3:21 (#3)****"and he clothed them"**

Alternate translation: "and he dressed them." or "and he put the garments on them."

**Genesis 3:22 (#1)****"Then Yahweh God said"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Yahweh God in your language at this point in the paragraph. Also, see how you translated a similar quote margin in Gen 1:26, where **said** has the same meaning. Alternate translation: "Then he said" or "Then he said to himself,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 3:22 (#2)****"Behold"**

This word expresses emotion and calls attention to what God says next. See how you translated this term in Gen 1:29. Alternate translation: "Listen,"

**Genesis 3:22 (#3)****"the man"**

Throughout verses 22–24 **the man** represents mankind, which included both the man and the woman at this point. Make sure your translation communicates that clearly in those verses and does not just refer to Adam. Alternate translation: "the man and his wife" or "mankind" or "human beings"

**Genesis 3:22 (#4)****"has become like one of us"**

The pronoun **us** is inclusive because God is talking to himself. Alternate translation: "have become like us"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 3:22 (#5)****"in knowing good and evil"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5 and a similar phrase in Gen 2:9.

**Genesis 3:22 (#6)****"And now he must not reach out his hand and also take"**

See how you translated "took/picked ... fruit" in verse 6. Alternate translation: "So now, they must

not be allowed by us to also pick” or “So we must not allow them to also pick” or “So now we must do something so that they can not also pick”

### Genesis 3:22 (#7)

**"fruit} from the tree of life and eat it"**

See how you translated **the tree of life** in Gen 2:9. Alternate translation: “fruit from the tree of eternal life and eat some of it,”

### Genesis 3:22 (#8)

**"and live forever"**

Alternate translation: “and so live forever!” or “which would make them live forever!”

### Genesis 3:23 (#1)

**"So Yahweh God sent him"**

Notice that in verses 22–24, “the man”, **him**, and **he** refer to mankind, that is, the man and the woman. Make sure it is clear in your translation here that both of them were sent out of the garden, not just the man. Consider again how you translated **Yahweh God** in Genesis 2 and 3, and see the note about this at Gen 2:4. Some languages have dual pronouns that are used for “they” and “them” in verses 22–24. Alternate translation: “Then Yahweh God banished the man and his wife” or “So then Yahweh God forced them to leave”

### Genesis 3:23 (#2)

**"out of the Garden of Eden"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 2:15. Alternate translation: “the garden in the land of Eden”

### Genesis 3:23 (#3)

**"to work the ground"**

See how you translated **work the ground** in Gen 2:5 and “work it” in 2:15. Alternate translation: “to farm the land”

### Genesis 3:23 (#4)

**"which he had been taken from"**

It does not refer to the exact ground that he was made from. See how you translated **taken from** in verse 19. Alternate translation: “which they had been taken from by him” or “which he had taken them from.”

### Genesis 3:24 (#1)

**"And after he drove the man out"**

Alternate translation: “Then after God drove the man and his wife out of the garden,” or “After God banished them from the garden,”

### Genesis 3:24 (#2)

**"then he placed"**

Alternate translation: “then he stationed”

### Genesis 3:24 (#3)

**"on the east side of the Garden of Eden"**

It is implied that the entrance to the garden is where the cherubim were placed to keep everyone from ever entering the garden again. Consider again how you translated “garden” in Gen 2:8–10, 15–16; 3:1–3, 8, 10, 23–24. Alternate translation: “on the east side of the garden at its entrance” or “at the entrance to the garden, which was on its east side”

### Genesis 3:24 (#4)

**"cherubim {angels}"**

Most translations transliterate or borrow this term from Hebrew throughout the Bible. Cherubim are a special category of very powerful angels. Each one has four faces: a human face, a lion’s face, a bull’s face and an eagle’s face (Ezekiel 1:10; 10:14). Each of them also has multiple wings. You could include some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: “some powerful beings called cherubim angels”



See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 3:24 (#5)

#### "and a flaming sword"

A sword is a weapon that has a very long, sharp (often two-sided) blade that is longer than a knife, machete, or dagger and is attached to a hilt or handle. This sword may have had flames coming from it, or this may have been fire in the shape of a sword. Alternate translation: "and a fiery sword" or "and a sword made of flames"

### Genesis 3:24 (#6)

#### "that was turning in every direction"

It seems that the sword was swinging by itself since there is no mention of anyone holding it. Alternate translation: "that was turning around in all directions" or "that was flashing back and forth"

### Genesis 3:24 (#7)

#### "to guard the way of"

Alternate translation: "to keep everyone away from the way that leads to" or "so that no one could go near"

### Genesis 3:24 (#8)

#### "the tree of life"

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 2:9 and 3:22. Alternate translation: "the tree of eternal life." or "the tree whose fruit gives people eternal life."

### Genesis 4:1 (#1)

#### "Then the man"

For a note about when to begin referring to the man as Adam, see Gen 2:19. Alternate translation: "Then the man Adam"

### Genesis 4:1 (#2)

#### "knew Eve his wife"

This phrase is a Hebrew idiom that means Adam had marital/sexual relations with Eve. Many languages have a similar idiom. Make sure you translate this in a way that is polite and will not offend or embarrass people, especially when read aloud. Alternate translation: "slept with his wife Eve," or "was intimate with his wife Eve,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 4:1 (#3)

#### "and she conceived and bore"

Translate this clause in a way that will not embarrass people, especially when read aloud. Alternate translation: "so that she became pregnant and later gave birth to"

### Genesis 4:1 (#4)

#### "Cain"

You could include the meaning of Cain's name in your translation or in a footnote. See what you did for a similar case in Gen 3:20.

### Genesis 4:1 (#5)

#### "And she said"

This sentence explains how Cain got his name. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "because she exclaimed," or "They named him that because Eve had said"

### Genesis 4:1 (#6)

#### "I have obtained"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "I have obtained/acquired" or (2) "I have produced/created". If you include the meaning of Cain's name earlier in this verse in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches your choice here so that it is clear why he was given that name.

**Genesis 4:1 (#7)****"a man"**

For some languages it is confusing to refer to a newborn baby as a man. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "a male child" or "a boy" or "a baby boy"

**Genesis 4:1 (#8)****"with Yahweh"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "With Yahweh's help I have obtained/acquired a son!" or "Yahweh has enabled/helped me to obtain/get a son!" Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "with help from Yahweh!"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 4:2 (#1)****"Then she continued on to bear"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. Cain and Abel may have been twins, or Abel may have been born sometime later after Eve became pregnant again. If possible, translate verse 2 in a way that allows for either interpretation. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to use a pronoun or a noun to refer to Eve here. Alternate translation: "Then she also gave birth to" or "After that, Eve gave birth to"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 4:2 (#2)****"his brother"**

Some languages have a specific term for "younger brother" that can be used here. Do what is best in your language.

See: Kinship

**Genesis 4:2 (#3)****"Abel"**

Alternate translation: "whose name was Abel."

**Genesis 4:2 (#4)****"Now Abel became"**

This sentence introduces background information for what happens next. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Also, It is implied here that the boys had grown up to be adults. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "Now when the boys had grown up, Abel"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 4:2 (#5)****"a keeper of flock{s}"**

A flock can be a large group of sheep or goats, or a mixture of both. Alternate translation: "was a keeper of sheep," or "was a shepherd," or "raised sheep and goats,"

**Genesis 4:2 (#6)****"and Cain"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to contrast Cain and his work with Abel and his work. Alternate translation: "but Cain"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

**Genesis 4:2 (#7)****"became a worker of the ground"**

Cain raised crops, not animals. See how you translated a similar phrase ("work the ground") in Gen 2:5. Alternate translation: "was a tiller of the soil." or "was a crop farmer." or "grew food crops."

**Genesis 4:3 (#1)****"And it happened in the course of days"**

These phrases introduce an important new event. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "Then one day it happened that" or "As time went on one day"

See: Introduction of a New Event

**Genesis 4:3 (#2)****"that Cain brought"**

Alternate translation: "Cain offered"

**Genesis 4:3 (#3)****"some of the fruit of the ground"**

The word **fruit** is general here and refers to any edible plant or crop that grows as the result of being cultivated. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "some of the crops that he had raised in his fields" or "some of the edible plants that he had harvested from his fields"

**Genesis 4:3 (#4)****"as} an offering to Yahweh"**

The term **offering** refers to something that is given. Alternate translation: "to Yahweh as an gift to worship him."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 4:4 (#1)****"And Abel also brought"**

There is a contrast between Abel and Cain and between their offerings. Alternate translation: "Abel also offered an offering to Yahweh, but what he gave was" or "But Abel gave to Yahweh"

**Genesis 4:4 (#2)****"some of the firstborn of his flock{s"**

See how you translated **flocks** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "some of the firstborn animals from his sheep"

**Genesis 4:4 (#3)****"and some of their fat"**

In that culture, fat was considered one of the best parts of an animal to eat. If that is different from how fat is viewed in your language area, that information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "and some of the fat portions of the meat." or "and some of their best parts." or "and the best parts of the meat."

**Genesis 4:4 (#4)****"And Yahweh looked {favorably} on"**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh was happy with" or "Yahweh accepted"

**Genesis 4:4 (#5)****"Abel and his offering"**

Alternate translation: "Abel and his sacrifice." or "Abel and what he gave to him."

**Genesis 4:5 (#1)****"But he did not look {favorably} on Cain"**

See how you translated "looked favorably on" in verse 4. Alternate translation: "But Yahweh was not happy with Cain" or "However, he did not accept Cain"

**Genesis 4:5 (#2)****"and his offering"**

Alternate translation: "and his gift" or "and what he gave to him."

**Genesis 4:5 (#3)****"So Cain burned with intense anger"**

Many languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So Cain was extremely angry,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 4:5 (#4)****"and his face fell"**

Alternate translation: "and his face showed that he was angry" or "and he scowled." or "and his face showed it."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 4:6 (#1)****"Then Yahweh said to Cain"**

The way you translate this quote margin should fit with the way that you translated the following three rhetorical questions. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh asked Cain"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 4:6 (#2)****"Why are you burning with anger? And why is your face fallen"**

God is using these rhetorical questions to correct Cain. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also see how you translated the idioms "burned with ... anger" and "face fell" in verse 5. Alternate translation: "Why are you so angry? And why are you scowling?" or "There is no reason for you to be angry and scowling."

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 4:7 (#1)****"will {you} not {be} accepted"**

God uses this rhetorical question here to remind Cain of something that he already knew. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "you know that you will be accepted by me." or "you know that I will be pleased with you and your gift too." or "I will accept you and your gift too."

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 4:7 (#2)****"But if you do not do right"**

Alternate translation: "But if you do what is wrong,"

**Genesis 4:7 (#3)****"sin is crouching"**

In verse 7 sin is personified, that is, it is treated as if it were alive, like a lion or some other fierce animal that wants to attack Cain. Some languages can do the same thing. Other languages cannot do that and must say something like: "then you are in great danger of being tempted to sin, but you must resist and not give in." Alternate translation: "then sin is like a dangerous animal that is waiting" or "then sin will be waiting like a wild animal"

See: Personification

**Genesis 4:7 (#4)****"at the door"**

Alternate translation: "outside the door of your heart to tempt you,"

**Genesis 4:7 (#5)****"and its desire {is} for you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Sin wants to destroy you,"

**Genesis 4:7 (#6)****"but you must rule over it"**

Alternate translation: "but you must master it so that you do not sin." or "but you must keep it from destroying you." or "but you must keep it from doing that."

**Genesis 4:8 (#1)****"Then Cain spoke"**

After God spoke to Cain, we do not know how long Cain waited before he spoke to Abel; it may have been a few hours or a few days. Alternate translation: "Later Cain spoke"

**Genesis 4:8 (#2)****"to Abel his brother"**

This sentence is what the Hebrew text has. Instead of that text, some ancient manuscripts and translations (including the Samaritan Pentateuch, Septuagint, Latin Vulgate, and Syriac) and many modern translations have: "Then Cain said to Abel his brother, "Let's go out to the field and work together." " or "Then Cain invited/asked his brother Abel to go out to the field with him to work." Some translation teams follow the way this verse is translated in a well-known translation, such as in the national language or in a neighboring language. Decide what to do in your translation. The textual variant that you do not use in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "with his brother Abel."

See: Textual Variants

**Genesis 4:8 (#3)****"And it happened while they were in the field"**

For some languages it is necessary to make explicit that Cain and Abel actually went to the field. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So they went out to the field to work together, but while they were there,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 4:8 (#4)****"Abel his brother"**

The Hebrew text keeps repeating the phrase **Abel his brother** to emphasize the seriousness of Cain's crime. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. See how you translated **brother** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "his own brother Abel" or "his own brother"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 4:9 (#1)****"Then Yahweh said to Cain"**

Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh asked Cain,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 4:9 (#2)****"Where {is} Abel your brother"**

See how you translated "Abel ... brother" in verse 8.

**Genesis 4:9 (#3)****"And he replied"**

Cain is answering Yahweh rudely. Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language, including whether or not to use a conjunction here. Alternate translation: "Then He said to him," or "He answered him," or "He retorted,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 4:9 (#4)****"I do not know"**

Alternate translation: "How should I know that?"

**Genesis 4:9 (#5)****"Am I my brother's keeper"**

Cain uses this rhetorical question to support the lie that he just told. His response to God is rude and disrespectful. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question communicates that here in your language. Alternate translation: "Am I in charge of my brother?" or "Is it my responsibility to take care of my brother?"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 4:10 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Yahweh, not Cain. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh asked"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 4:10 (#2)****"What have you done"**

God uses this rhetorical question to condemn what Cain had done. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: "What you have done is very horrible" or "You have done a horrible thing!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 4:10 (#3)****"The voice of your brother's blood is crying out to me from the ground"**

In the Hebrew text, blood is personified, as if it had a voice or could cry out like a person does. If it is not possible to do that in your language, you could say that his brother's blood is "like a voice ..." or you could translate this sentence without personification.

See: Personification

**Genesis 4:11 (#1)****"So now"**

Alternate translation: "Therefore from now on" or "Because of what you did,"

**Genesis 4:11 (#2)****"you are cursed"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also see how you translated this in Gen 3:14. Alternate translation: "you are cursed by me"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 4:11 (#3)****"from the ground"**

Alternate translation: "so that you will not be able to grow food from the soil," or "so that you are banished from farming the soil,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 4:11 (#4)****"which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood"**

In the Hebrew text, **the ground** is personified as if it had a mouth to open. If that is not possible in your language, you could follow one of the alternates above. Alternate translation: "which is covered with blood from your brother"

See: Personification

**Genesis 4:11 (#5)****"from your hand"**

Alternate translation: "when you killed him."

**Genesis 4:12 (#1)****"When"**

Alternate translation: "As a result, whenever"

**Genesis 4:12 (#2)****"you work the ground"**

See how you translated **work the ground** in Gen 2:5 and 3:23; also see similar phrases in 4:2, 11. Alternate translation: "you try to farm the soil,"

**Genesis 4:12 (#3)****"it will not continue to yield its strength for you"**

Alternate translation: "it will no longer grow good crops for you." or "it will not grow enough food for you anymore."

**Genesis 4:12 (#4)****"You will be"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and you will also"

**Genesis 4:12 (#5)**

**"You will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth"**

The phrase **a fugitive and a wanderer** forms a hendiadys. Consider what is the best way to translate that phrase in your language. Alternate translation: "be a fugitive who wanders around on the earth without a permanent home." or "be a homeless outcast on the earth." or "be rejected by people so that you have no permanent home and have to move from place to place."

See: Hendiadys

**Genesis 4:13 (#1)**

**"Then Cain said to Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "But Cain replied to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 4:13 (#2)**

**"My punishment {is} greater"**

Alternate translation: "Your punishment of me will cause me more suffering" or "You are punishing me more harshly"

See: Abstract Nouns

**Genesis 4:13 (#3)**

**"than I can bear"**

Alternate translation: "than I am able to cope with."

**Genesis 4:14 (#1)**

**"Behold"**

This term emphasizes what Cain says next. See how you translated this term in Gen 1:29 and 3:22. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "Listen,"

**Genesis 4:14 (#2)**

**"today you are driving me"**

See how you translated "drove/expelled" in Gen 3:24. Alternate translation: "today you are forcing me away" or "you have now prevented me"

**Genesis 4:14 (#3)**

**"from the surface of the ground"**

Alternate translation: "from working the land"

**Genesis 4:14 (#4)**

**"and I will be hidden from your presence"**

This clause is probably an idiom that means Cain will be cursed and no longer blessed by God. Alternate translation: "and I will be separated from you." or "and you will no longer bless me."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 4:14 (#5)**

**"And I will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: "I will be a fugitive who wanders around on the earth without a permanent home," or "I will be a wandering outcast on the earth,"

See: Hendiadys

**Genesis 4:14 (#6)**

**"everyone who finds me will kill me"**

Cain uses hyperbole here to emphasize his strong emotion. If possible, keep this hyperbole in your translation because it helps communicate how fearful Cain was feeling. Alternate translation: "anyone who meets me will kill me!"

See: Hyperbole

**Genesis 4:15 (#1)**

**"Then Yahweh said to him"**

Alternate translation: "So Yahweh said to him" or "Yahweh said to Cain,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 4:15 (#2)

### "For that {reason}"

That is what the Hebrew text has. Instead of that text, some ancient translations (such as the Septuagint) and many modern translations have: "Not so/true." or "That will not happen because". The textual variant that you do not use in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "In that case,"

See: Textual Variants

## Genesis 4:15 (#3)

### "anyone who kills Cain will suffer vengeance"

What God says here implies that he will do something to prevent people from killing Cain; he is not just talking about punishing them if they kill him. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "I will warn everyone that if anyone kills you, I will take revenge on him for you" or "I will make it clear to everyone that I will take revenge on anyone who kills you"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 4:15 (#4)

### "Then Yahweh put a mark on Cain"

We do not know exactly how Yahweh marked Cain, so keep your translation of this clause general (like the Hebrew text is). Alternate translation: "Then he put a special symbol on Cain" or "Then he marked Cain with a special mark"

## Genesis 4:15 (#5)

### "so that everyone who found him would not strike him"

The phrase **strike him** is used here as an idiom that means "kill him". Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "so that anyone who saw him would not kill him." or "to warn everyone who saw him not to kill him."

See: Idiom

## Genesis 4:16 (#1)

### "Then Cain went away"

Alternate translation: "After that, Cain went away"

## Genesis 4:16 (#2)

### "from the presence of Yahweh"

Yahweh is everywhere, so this probably means that after talking to Yahweh, Cain left that place. Alternate translation: "from Yahweh" or "from the place where Yahweh had been talking to him"

See: Metonymy

## Genesis 4:16 (#3)

### "and lived"

Alternate translation: "and settled" or "and started living"

## Genesis 4:16 (#4)

### "in the land of Nod"

The original readers of the Hebrew text knew that the name **Nod** means "wandering". Usually translators transliterate (copy or borrow) the name from the Hebrew text, and they might also include the meaning of the name in the text or in a footnote. If you do that here, the meaning should be similar to how you translated "wanderer" in verses 12 and 14.

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 4:16 (#5)

### "east of Eden"

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Eden" and "the Garden of Eden" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 2:8, 10, 15; 3:23–24; 4:16. Alternate translation: "which was east of the land called Eden." or "which was east of Eden Land."



**Genesis 4:17 (#1)****"Then Cain knew his wife"**

See how you translated this idiom in Gen 4:1.  
Alternate translation: "Then Cain slept with his wife,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 4:17 (#2)****"and she conceived and bore"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 4:1.  
Alternate translation: "so that she became pregnant and gave birth to"

**Genesis 4:17 (#3)****"Enoch"**

Alternate translation: "a son named Enoch." or "a son whose name was Enoch."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 4:17 (#4)****"And he was building a city"**

Make sure that your translation of this clause refers to Cain, not Enoch. Alternate translation: "Now at that time, Cain was in the process of constructing a city,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 4:17 (#5)****"so he called the name of the city"**

Alternate translation: "so he called the city"

**Genesis 4:17 (#6)****"after the name of his son Enoch"**

Alternate translation: "Enoch, after his son." or "Enoch, the same name as his son."

**Genesis 4:18 (#1)****"Then to Enoch was born"**

In this record of Cain's descendants, It is implied that many years have gone by between each descendant growing up, getting married, and having his own children. Decide the best way to translate this genealogical record in your language. Alternate translation: "Later on, Enoch had" or "When Enoch grew up, he fathered" or "Enoch was the father of"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 4:18 (#2)****"Irada"**

Alternate translation: "a son whose name was Irada,"

**Genesis 4:18 (#3)****"and Irada fathered"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence with each new generation that is mentioned in this verse. Alternate translation: "Then Irada fathered" or "When Irada grew up, he had" or "Irada was the father of"

**Genesis 4:18 (#4)****"Mehujael"**

Alternate translation: "a son whose name was Mehujael,"

**Genesis 4:18 (#5)****"and Mehujael fathered"**

Alternate translation: "Then Mehujael fathered" or "When Mehujael grew up, he had" or "Mehujael was the father of"

**Genesis 4:18 (#6)****"Methushael"**

Alternate translation: "a son whose name was Methushael,"

### Genesis 4:18 (#7)

**"and Methushael fathered"**

Alternate translation: "Then Methushael fathered" or "When Methushael grew up, he had" or "Methushael was the father of"

### Genesis 4:18 (#8)

**"Lamech"**

Alternate translation: "a son whose name was Lamech."

### Genesis 4:19 (#1)

**"Then Lamech took for himself two wives"**

In this context, the phrase **took for himself** is an idiom that means "married". Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Alternate translation: "Then Lamech grew up, and he chose two women to be his wives." or "When Lamech grew up, he married two women."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 4:19 (#2)

**"The name of the one {was} Adah"**

Alternate translation: "His first wife was named Adah,"

### Genesis 4:19 (#3)

**"and the name of the second {was} Zillah"**

Alternate translation: "and his second wife was named Zillah."

### Genesis 4:20 (#1)

**"And Adah bore"**

Alternate translation: "Adah had"

### Genesis 4:20 (#2)

**"Jabal"**

Alternate translation: "a son whose name was Jabal."

### Genesis 4:20 (#3)

**"He was"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "who was" or "who grew up and became"

### Genesis 4:20 (#4)

**"the father of {those} who live"**

The phrase **father of** is used here as an idiom that means Jabal was the first person to do these things. He originated this way of living, and many people after him followed his example. Alternate translation: "the first of all people who"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 4:20 (#5)

**"those} who live {in} tents"**

A tent is a portable living place that has walls made of cloth or animal skins and is held up by poles. Tents are used by people who need to take their home with them as they move from place to place, often to find food and water for themselves and their livestock. If people in your language area are not familiar with tents, you could include some of the above information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "are tent dwellers" or "live in portable shelters"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 4:20 (#6)

**"and own livestock"**

The term **livestock** includes all kinds of domestic animals, such as cows, sheep, goats, camels, and donkeys. See how you translated **livestock** in Gen

1:24–26; 2:20, 3:14. Alternate translation: “and raise animals for a living.”

### Genesis 4:21 (#1)

**"And the name of his brother {was} Jubal"**

Jubal was probably younger than Jabal. See how you translated **brother** in verse 2. Alternate translation: “Jabal had a brother named Jubal.”

See: Kinship

### Genesis 4:21 (#2)

**"He was"**

Alternate translation: “who was” or “He grew up and became”

### Genesis 4:21 (#3)

**"the father of all"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 20. Alternate translation: “the ancestor of all people who”

### Genesis 4:21 (#4)

**"who play harps and flutes"**

Alternate translation: “play musical instruments called lyres and pipes.” or “play stringed instruments and wind instruments.”

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 4:22 (#1)

**"also bore"**

Alternate translation: “also became pregnant and gave birth to a son, and they named him”

### Genesis 4:22 (#2)

**"Tubal Cain"**

Be consistent with how you spell this name both times in verse 22. Alternate translation: “Tubal-Cain” or “Tubal-cain” or “Tubalcain”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 4:22 (#3)

**"who forged"**

It is probably implied from verses 20–21 that Tubal Cain, like his brothers, was the father/ancestor or first of all those who had his skill. Alternate translation: “He was the first person to forge” or “He was the first blacksmith and forged” or “He was the first of all people who forge”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 4:22 (#4)

**"all {kinds} of tools out of bronze and iron"**

The word **tools** that is used here in the Hebrew text is general and can include farming tools and weapons and other things that are made out of metal. Alternate translation: “all kinds of tools and other things out of brass and iron.” or “all kinds of brass and iron things”

### Genesis 4:22 (#5)

**"And the sister of Tubal Cain {was} Naamah"**

Alternate translation: “Tubal Cain had a sister named Naamah.”

### Genesis 4:23 (#1)

**"And Lamech said"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this new event. Alternate translation: “One time, Lamech said proudly” or “One day, Lamech boasted”

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 4:23 (#2)

**""to his wives,"**

Be consistent with how you spelled these names in verses 19–20, 22–23.

### Genesis 4:23 (#3)

**"hear my voice"**

The phrase **my voice** refers here to the words being said. Consider what is the best way to translate this figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: "listen to what I am going to tell you."

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 4:23 (#4)

**"Wives of Lamech, give ear to my word{s}"**

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes what Lamech says next. Also, consider whether or not your language has an idiom that is similar to **give ear to**. Alternate translation: "My wives, listen to me carefully."

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 4:23 (#5)

**""For I killed a man for my wound,"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "I killed a man for wounding me; he was a young man who bruised/injured me!" or "I killed a young man for wounding/injuring me! In fact, I killed that man just because he bruised/injured me!" or (2) "I killed a man for wounding me, and also a young man for bruising/injuring me." or "A man wounded me, so I killed him. A young man injured me, so I killed him too!" According to the first interpretation, Lamech refers to one man he killed. According to the second interpretation, he refers to two men he killed.

### Genesis 4:24 (#1)

**""If Cain is avenged seven times,"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "Since God has promised to avenge Cain seven times, then" or "Cain is avenged by God seven times, but"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 4:24 (#2)

**"then Lamech {is avenged} seventy-seven times"**

Lamech is bragging in verses 23 and 24 about how severely he avenges himself. He is not saying that God will avenge him more than he will avenge Cain. Also, each translation team needs to decide how they will handle numbers in the Hebrew text so that readers will not confuse those numbers with verse numbers. For example, it may be best to use words for single and double-digit numbers in the text. Be consistent with how you spelled the name **Lamech** in verses 18–19, 23–24. Alternate translation: "I, Lamech avenge myself seventy-seven times!" or "I avenge myself 77 times!"

### Genesis 4:25 (#1)

**"Then Adam knew his wife again"**

See how you translated the idiom **knew** in 4:1, 17. Alternate translation: "Then Adam slept with his wife Eve again," or "Again Adam had marital relations with his wife Eve,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 4:25 (#2)

**"and she bore a son"**

Alternate translation: "so that she conceived and had a son," or "with the result that she became pregnant and gave birth to a son,"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Genesis 4:25 (#3)

**"and she called his name"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 3:20. Alternate translation: "and she gave him the name"

**Genesis 4:25 (#4)****"because {she had said}"**

What follows is a direct quote of what Eve said that gave Seth his name. Make sure that is clear in your language. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "She named him that because when he was born, she had exclaimed,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 4:25 (#5)****"God has appointed for me"**

If you include the meaning of Seth's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **appointed** here, so that it is clear why he was given that name. Alternate translation: "God has given to me"

**Genesis 4:25 (#6)****"in place of Abel"**

Alternate translation: "to take the place of Abel,"

**Genesis 4:25 (#7)****"since Cain killed him"**

For some language it is necessary to put this phrase first in this clause (so that events are in the order that they happened) and say, "Since Cain killed Abel, God granted me another child to replace him." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "whom Cain murdered."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 4:26 (#1)****"And to Seth also a son was born"**

The word order in the Hebrew text here emphasizes Seth. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Later on, Seth also had a son,"

**Genesis 4:26 (#2)****"and he called his name Enosh"**

Alternate translation: "whom he named Enosh."

**Genesis 4:26 (#3)****"Then"**

Alternate translation: "At that time" or "That is when"

**Genesis 4:26 (#4)****"people} began to call on the name of Yahweh"**

The phrase **call on the name of Yahweh** is an idiom that refers to prayers, worship, and praise in which people addressed God directly by his personal name Yahweh. It also implies that they were trusting in him to help and guide them. Alternate translation: "people began to address God by his name Yahweh as they worshiped him." or "people began to praise Yahweh by name." or "people first called Yahweh by name in their prayers and worship."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 5:1 (#1)****"This {is}"**

Alternate translation: "What follows is"

**Genesis 5:1 (#2)****"the written account of"**

Alternate translation: "the written family record of"

**Genesis 5:1 (#3)****"the generations of Adam"**

Alternate translation: "about Adam and his descendants:"

**Genesis 5:1 (#4)**

**"On the day God created man{kind}, he made him"**

See how you translated **created** in Gen 1:1, 27; 2:4, and "man" in Gen 1:26–27. Alternate translation: "On the day that God made human beings, he made them"

**Genesis 5:1 (#5)**

**"in the likeness of God"**

God created mankind to be like himself in certain ways, but not to be exactly like him in every way (Gen 1:26–27). Alternate translation: "in his own likeness."

**Genesis 5:2 (#1)**

**"He created them male and female"**

See how you translated this clause in Gen 1:27.

**Genesis 5:2 (#2)**

**"and he blessed them"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you translated **blessed** in Gen 1:22, 28. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "He blessed them" or "He said that he would make them prosper"

**Genesis 5:2 (#3)**

**"and called their name"**

See how you translated the phrase "called ... name" in Gen 4:17, 25, 26. Alternate translation: "and called them"

**Genesis 5:2 (#4)**

**"man{kind}"**

Be consistent here with how you translated this term in verse 1.

**Genesis 5:2 (#5)**

**"on the day they were created"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also, for some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "and on the same day that he created them, he blessed them and called/named them human beings." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "on the same day that they were created by him."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 5:3 (#1)**

**"And Adam lived 130 years, then he fathered {a son}"**

Each translation team needs to decide how they are going to write large numbers in the Bible. Many teams use numerals, for example, **130** here in verse 3, especially if the target language has a complicated counting system. Other teams prefer to use words, for example, "one hundred thirty" here. Be consistent in what you do throughout your translation. Alternate translation: "When Adam had lived 130 years, he had a son" or "When Adam was 130 years old, he fathered a son"

See: Numbers

**Genesis 5:3 (#2)**

**"in his own likeness, according to his image"**

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that Seth was similar to Adam in many ways. See how you translated similar phrases in Gen 1:26. Alternate translation: "who was a human being like himself and looked like him,"

See: Doublet

**Genesis 5:3 (#3)**

**"and he called his name Seth"**

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and Adam named him Seth." or "Adam named his son Seth."

**Genesis 5:4 (#1)**

**"And the days of Adam after he fathered Seth were"**

Alternate translation: "After he had Seth, he lived" or "After Seth was born, Adam lived"

**Genesis 5:4 (#2)**

**"800 years"**

For some languages, it may be more natural to change the clause order of this sentence and say, "Adam lived 800 more years after Seth was born ..." Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: "800 more years,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 5:4 (#3)**

**"and he fathered"**

This clause probably refers to all the other children that Adam had, including those who were born before and after Seth was born. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Adam also had" or "He was also the father of"

**Genesis 5:5 (#1)**

**"So all the days of Adam that he lived were 930 years"**

Make sure that the name **Adam** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 1, 3–5. Alternate translation: "So he lived a total of 930 years," or "All together Adam lived 930 years,"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 5:5 (#2)**

**"and he died"**

Notice that if you use the second alternative here ("before he died"), a comma is not used before it (in

English). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "before he died."

**Genesis 5:6 (#1)**

**"And Seth lived 105 years"**

The events in verse 6 happened before Adam died (verse 5). So if you use a conjunction here, make sure your translation does not sound like verse 6 happened after Adam died. Alternate translation: "After Seth had lived 105 years," or "After Seth was 105 years old,"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 5:6 (#2)**

**"then he fathered Enosh"**

You could make it explicit in your translation or in a footnote that Enosh was a son. The same thing is true for the rest of the children whose births are mentioned in this chapter (who were all sons). Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Enosh." or "he had a son they named Enosh." or "he had a son whose name was Enosh."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 5:7 (#1)**

**"Then after he fathered Enosh, Seth lived"**

In fact, throughout chapter 5, make sure it is clear in your translation whom each pronoun refers to. Alternate translation: "After he had Enosh, he lived" or "After Enosh was born, Seth lived"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 5:7 (#2)**

**"807 years"**

Alternate translation: "807 more years,"

**Genesis 5:7 (#3)**

**"and he fathered"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated this phrase and the following one in verse 4. Alternate translation: “and he also had” or “Seth also had” or “He was also the father of”

### Genesis 5:8 (#1)

**"So all the days of Seth were 912 years"**

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Seth** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 4:25–26; 5:3–4, 6–8. Alternate translation: “So he lived a total of 912 years,” or “All together he lived 912 years,”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 5:8 (#2)

**"and he died"**

Alternate translation: “before he died.”

### Genesis 5:9 (#1)

**"And Enosh lived ninety years"**

See how you translated the beginning of a similar new paragraph in this genealogy at verse 6. Alternate translation: “After Enosh had lived 90 years,” or “After Enosh was 90 years old,”

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 5:9 (#2)

**"then he fathered Kenan"**

Alternate translation: “he fathered a son named Kenan.” or “he had a son whose name was Kenan.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 5:10 (#1)

**"Then after he fathered Kenan, Enosh lived"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 7, and see the notes about that there. Alternate translation: “After he had Kenan, he lived” or “After Kenan was born, Enosh lived”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 5:10 (#2)

**"815 years"**

Alternate translation: “815 more years,”

### Genesis 5:10 (#3)

**"and he fathered"**

Alternate translation: “and he also had” or “Enosh also had” or “He was also the father of”

### Genesis 5:11 (#1)

**"So all the days of Enosh were 905 years"**

Make sure that the name **Enosh** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 6–7, 9–11. Alternate translation: “So he lived a total of 905 years,” or “All together he lived 905 years,”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 5:11 (#2)

**"and he died"**

Alternate translation: “before he died.”

### Genesis 5:12 (#1)

**"And Kenan lived seventy years"**

Throughout this chapter, be consistent with how you have decided to handle numbers in the Bible. For example, many translation teams use words for single and double-digit numbers, but use numerals for larger numbers. This strategy helps prevent confusion with verse numbers. This is especially true in translations that use a large font size for verse numbers so that people doing group Bible study can easily be in the same verse together. Alternate translation: “After Kenan had lived seventy years,” or “After Kenan was seventy years old,”

See: Numbers



**Genesis 5:12 (#2)****"then he fathered Mahalalel"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Mahalalel." or "he fathered a son whose name was Mahalalel."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 5:13 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Mahalalel, Kenan lived"**

Alternate translation: "After Kenan had Mahalalel, he lived" or "After Mahalalel was born, Kenan lived"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 5:13 (#2)****"840 years"**

Alternate translation: "840 more years,"

**Genesis 5:13 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Kenan at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Kenan also had" or "He was also the father of"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 5:14 (#1)****"So all the days of Kenan were 910 years"**

Make sure that the name **Kenan** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 9–10, 12–14. Alternate translation: "So he lived a total of 910 years," or "All together he lived 910 years,"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 5:14 (#2)****"and he died"**

Alternate translation: "before he died."

**Genesis 5:15 (#1)****"And Mahalalel lived sixty-five years"**

Alternate translation: "After Mahalalel had lived 65 years," or "After Mahalalel was 65 years old,"

**Genesis 5:15 (#2)****"then he fathered Jared"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Jared." or "he fathered a son whose name was Jared."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 5:16 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Jared, Mahalalel lived"**

Alternate translation: "After he had Jared, he lived" or "After Jared was born, Mahalalel lived"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 5:16 (#2)****"830 years"**

Alternate translation: "830 more years,"

**Genesis 5:16 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "He also fathered" or "He was also the father of"

**Genesis 5:17 (#1)****"So all the days of Mahalalel were 895 years"**

Make sure that the name **Mahalalel** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 12–13, 15–17. Alternate translation: "So he lived a total of 895 years," or "All together he lived 895 years,"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 5:17 (#2)****"and he died"**

Alternate translation: "before he died."

**Genesis 5:18 (#1)****"And Jared lived 162 years"**

Alternate translation: "After Jared had lived 162 years," or "After Jared was 162 years old,"

**Genesis 5:18 (#2)****"then he fathered Enoch"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Enoch." or "he fathered a son whose name was Enoch."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 5:19 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Enoch, Jared lived"**

Alternate translation: "After Jared had Enoch, he lived" or "After Enoch was born, Jared lived"

**Genesis 5:19 (#2)****"800 years"**

Alternate translation: "800 more years,"

**Genesis 5:19 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Jared at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Jared also had" or "He was also the father of"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 5:20 (#1)****"So all the days of Jared were 962 years"**Make sure that the name **Jared** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 15–16, 18–20. Alternate translation: "So he lived a total of 962 years," or "All together he lived 962 years,"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 5:20 (#2)****"and he died"**

Alternate translation: "before he died."

**Genesis 5:21 (#1)****"And Enoch lived sixty-five years"**

Consider again how you translated double-digit numbers in verses 9, 12, 15, 21. Alternate translation: "After Enoch had lived 65 years," or "After Enoch was 65 years old,"

**Genesis 5:21 (#2)****"then he fathered Methuselah"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Methuselah." or "he had a son whose name was Methuselah."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 5:22 (#1)****"after he fathered Methuselah"**

Alternate translation: "After he had Methuselah," or "After Methuselah was born,"

**Genesis 5:22 (#2)****"Then" - "Enoch walked with God"**The phrase **walked with** is used here as an idiom that means "lived in a close relationship with". Consider whether or not you have a similar idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "Enoch lived faithfully with God" or "Enoch lived in a faithful relationship with God"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 5:22 (#3)****"300 years"**

Alternate translation: "for 300 more years,"

**Genesis 5:22 (#4)****"and he fathered"**

Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Enoch also had" or "He was also the father of"

**Genesis 5:23 (#1)****"So all the days of Enoch were 365 years"**Make sure that the name **Enoch** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 18–19, 21–24. Alternate translation: "So he lived a total of 365 years." or "All together he lived 365 years."**Genesis 5:24 (#1)****"And Enoch walked with God"**

Alternate translation: "All his life Enoch lived in a faithful relationship with God, and then"

**Genesis 5:24 (#2)****"and {then} he was not {there}"**

Alternate translation: "suddenly he was not on earth anymore," or "he suddenly disappeared from earth,"

**Genesis 5:24 (#3)****"because God took him away"**

It may be more natural to put this clause before the previous clause and say, "... God took him away to be with him, so he was suddenly no longer on earth." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 5:25 (#1)****"And Methuselah lived 187 years"**

Consider again how you translated verses in this chapter that are similar in structure to this verse; see verses 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 21, 25, and part of verses 3 and 28, and see the note about this at verse 6. Alternate translation: "After Methuselah had lived 187 years," or "After Methuselah was 187 years old,"

**Genesis 5:25 (#2)****"then he fathered Lamech"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Lamech." or "he had a son whose name was Lamech."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 5:26 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Lamech, Methuselah lived"**

Alternate translation: "After he had Lamech, he lived" or "After Lamech was born, Methuselah lived"

**Genesis 5:26 (#2)****"782 years"**

Alternate translation: "782 more years,"

**Genesis 5:26 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Methuselah at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "He also fathered" or "He was also the father of"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 5:27 (#1)****"So all the days of Methuselah were 969 years"**Make sure that the name **Methuselah** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 21–22, 25–27. Alternate translation: "So he lived a total of 969 years," or "So all together he lived 969 years,"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 5:27 (#2)

**"and he died"**

Alternate translation: "before he died."

### Genesis 5:28 (#1)

**"And Lamech lived 182 years"**

Alternate translation: "After Lamech had lived 182 years," or "After Lamech was 182 years old,"

### Genesis 5:29 (#1)

**"and he called his name"**

Alternate translation: "whom he named"

### Genesis 5:29 (#2)

**"Noah"**

If you include the meaning of Noah's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches what Lamech says about him in the following quote so it is clear why he was given that name.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 5:29 (#3)

**"saying"**

What Lamech says next is the reason that he named his son Noah. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "He named him that because he had said about him,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 5:29 (#4)

**"This {one} will comfort us"**

Alternate translation: "This son will relieve us" or "This son will give us relief"

### Genesis 5:29 (#5)

**"from our labors and from the toil of our hands"**

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize how difficult the work was. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "from the difficult labor and work we have to do with our hands" or "from the agonizing work that we have to do"

See: Doublet

### Genesis 5:29 (#6)

**"because of the ground which Yahweh has cursed"**

Alternate translation: "as we farm the ground that Yahweh has cursed."

### Genesis 5:30 (#1)

**"Then after he fathered Noah, Lamech lived"**

Consider again how you translated verses in this chapter that are similar in structure to this verse; see verses 7, 10, 13, 16, 19, 26, 30, and part of verses 4 and 22. Alternate translation: "After he fathered Noah, he lived" or "After Noah was born, Lamech lived"

### Genesis 5:30 (#2)

**"595 years"**

Alternate translation: "595 more years,"

### Genesis 5:30 (#3)

**"and he fathered"**

Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Lamech also had" or "He was also the father of"

### Genesis 5:31 (#1)

**"So all the days of Lamech were 777 years"**

Consider again how you translated verses that are similar to verse 31; see verses 8, 11, 14, 17, 20, 27, 31, and the first half of verses 5 and 23. Also make

sure that the name **Lamech** is spelled consistently in your translation of verses 25–26, 28–31, and also in 4:18–19, 23–24 for a different person who has the same name. Alternate translation: “So he lived a total of 777 years,” or “All together he lived 777 years,”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 5:31 (#2)

**"and he died"**

Alternate translation: “before he died.”

### Genesis 5:32 (#1)

**"And Noah was a son of 500 years"**

Noah’s sons were not triplets, but were born in different years after Noah was 500 years old. The way you translate this verse should allow for that meaning.

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 5:32 (#2)

**"then Noah fathered"**

Consider again how you translated **fathered** in this chapter; see verses 4, 6–7, 9–10, 12–13, 15–16, 18–19, 25–26, 28, 30, 32. Alternate translation: “he fathered”

### Genesis 5:32 (#3)

**"Shem, Ham, and Japheth"**

Alternate translation: “sons named Shem, Ham, and Japheth.” or “sons he named Shem, Ham, and Japheth.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 6:1 (#1)

**"And it happened"**

The events in Gen 6:1–2 started happening long before the events in 5:32, so the way your translation begins this verse should allow for that

meaning and not begin with a sequence word like “Then”, which would have the wrong meaning here. Many translations omit the conjunction here. Do what is best in your language. Also, the phrase **it happened** introduces and emphasizes important background information which the following narrative builds on. It also creates suspense so that readers and listeners wonder what will happen next. Some translations leave this phrase out, but doing that loses some of the suspense. Do what is best in your language.

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 6:1 (#2)

**"when"**

Alternate translation: “that as”

See: Background Information

### Genesis 6:1 (#3)

**"mankind"**

See how you translated this term in Gen 5:1–2. Alternate translation: “human beings”

### Genesis 6:1 (#4)

**"began to multiply"**

Alternate translation: “began to increase in number” or “began to be more numerous”

### Genesis 6:1 (#5)

**"on the surface of the earth"**

Alternate translation: “throughout the world”

### Genesis 6:1 (#6)

**"and daughters were born to them"**

Alternate translation: “and they were having many daughters,”

**Genesis 6:2 (#1)****"then" - "saw"**

Verses 1 and 2 are one long sentence in the Hebrew text. For many languages it is necessary to divide it into two or more shorter sentences. For example, depending on how you began verse 1, you could begin verse 2 with a new sentence. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then when those girls grew up," or "When those daughters grew up,"

**Genesis 6:2 (#2)****"the sons of God"**

The meaning of Gen 6:2 is not certain and is heavily debated, so it is probably best to translate it fairly literally and possibly include a footnote about what it means. If it is not translated literally, the literal text should be put in a footnote. There are three main views of who **the sons of God** and **the daughters of mankind** refer to: (1) nonhuman, god-like (supernatural) beings, such as demons or angels (as in Job 1:6, 38:7) who took human form and married the daughters of human beings (which may be what is referred to in 1 Peter 3:19–20; 2 Peter 2:4, and Jude 6); or (2) male descendants of Seth (the righteous, chosen family line) who married female descendants of Cain (the unrighteous family line); or (3) sons of powerful men, such as judges or rulers (as in Exodus 22:8, Psalm 82:1, 6) who married the daughters of common, poor people. Alternate translation: "some angels" or "some supernatural beings"

**Genesis 6:2 (#3)****"then" - "saw the daughters of mankind, that they {were} beautiful"**

Alternate translation: "saw that the daughters of human beings were beautiful," or "saw that those young women were beautiful," or "saw that they were very beautiful,"

**Genesis 6:2 (#4)****"so they took wives for themselves from any {of them} that they chose"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated "took/married" in Gen 4:19. Alternate translation: "so they married any of them that they wanted to." or "So they chose all of them that they wanted and married them."

**Genesis 6:3 (#1)****"Then Yahweh said"**

Only make implied information explicit in your translation if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or if your language's grammar requires it, so that your translation is easier to read and understand. Alternate translation: "So Yahweh said to himself,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 6:3 (#2)****"My Spirit"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) **My Spirit** or "I", which is a way of God referring to himself (Gen 1:2 is similar); or (2) "My spirit", which could refer to God's breath that gives life (as in Gen 2:7). If the text is not translated literally, the literal text should be put in a footnote.

**Genesis 6:3 (#3)****"will not strive with mankind forever"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "will not contend with human beings forever," or "will not put up with human beings forever," or (2) "will not remain/live with/in human beings forever," The interpretation that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote.

**Genesis 6:3 (#4)****"because they {are} indeed flesh"**

The word **flesh** is used here as an idiom that means human beings are "mortal" (that is, their bodies will die) and that they are "sinful/corrupt". The two meanings are interrelated since it is because of sin that their bodies die. In this context, the focus is on their corrupt behavior, which is the reason God will

send a flood. Alternate translation: “because they are very sinful” or “because they are only sinful mortals.”

See: Idiom

## Genesis 6:3 (#5)

### "Therefore their days will be 120 years"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “So they will have 120 years to repent.” or “I will give them 120 years to repent.” or (2) “From now on, they/people will have/live no longer than 120 years.” The first interpretation seems to best fit the context here of God announcing his plan to judge mankind for their sin (verse 7). This would mean that Noah was 480 years old when God said this (about 20 years before he started having sons; Gen 5:32), since the flood came when he was 600 years old (Gen 7:6); you could put some of that information in a footnote. The second interpretation does not fit with the fact that after God said this, many people lived much longer than 120 years, so it does not seem likely that length of life was his meaning here.

## Genesis 6:4 (#1)

### "The Nephilim"

Most translations transliterate (borrow or copy) the Hebrew word **Nephilim** here, treating it as a name. The word means “fallen ones” and probably refers to their fallen (sinful) spiritual state. The Nephilim were the descendants of the sons of God and the daughters of mankind. The only other time in the Bible that the Nephilim are mentioned is centuries later in Numbers 13:32–33, where they are identified as evil giants. Based on that, some translations translate “the Nephilim” as “giants” here in Gen 6:4. Alternate translation: “Giants called the Nephilim” or “Giants”

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 6:4 (#2)

### "were on the earth"

Alternate translation: “were living on the earth”

## Genesis 6:4 (#3)

### "in those days and also after that"

It may be more natural to put this time phrase first in verse 4 and say, “During that time there were Nephilim/giants living on the earth, when ...” Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 6:4 (#4)

### "when"

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: “That was when”

## Genesis 6:4 (#5)

### "the sons of God"

Be consistent here with how you translated this phrase in verse 2, and see the important note about that there. Alternate translation: “angels” or “supernatural beings”

## Genesis 6:4 (#6)

### "went to"

Translate this idiom in a way that is polite and will not shame or embarrass people when this verse is read aloud in public. See how you translated a similar idiom (“knew”) in Gen 4:1, 17, 25. Alternate translation: “slept with” or “had sexual relations with”

See: Euphemism

## Genesis 6:4 (#7)

### "the daughters of mankind"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: “human women,”

## Genesis 6:4 (#8)

### "and they bore children for them"

Alternate translation: “and those women had children.”

### Genesis 6:4 (#9)

#### "They {were}"

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here. Alternate translation: “Those children grew up and were the Nephilim, who were”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 6:4 (#10)

#### "the mighty {ones}"

Alternate translation: “the powerful men” or “heroes”

### Genesis 6:4 (#11)

#### "who {were} from long ago"

Alternate translation: “who lived a long time ago,” or “who lived many years ago,”

### Genesis 6:4 (#12)

#### "the men of renown"

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “They were the mighty men of renown who were from long ago.” or “They were the famous mighty men who lived a long time ago.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “who were famous men.”

### Genesis 6:5 (#1)

#### "And Yahweh saw"

The verb **saw** is used here as an idiom. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh knew” or “Yahweh was aware”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 6:5 (#2)

#### "that the wickedness of mankind {was} great on the earth"

Alternate translation: “how evil mankind had become on the earth,” or “that the people on the earth had become very wicked”

### Genesis 6:5 (#3)

#### "and that every inclination of the thoughts of their hearts"

In Hebrew culture the heart is considered the center of thoughts and desires. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom. Alternate translation: “and that every desire they had in their minds” or “and that everything they thought about and wanted”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 6:5 (#4)

#### "all day long"

Alternate translation: “constantly.”

### Genesis 6:6 (#1)

#### "So Yahweh was sorry"

Alternate translation: “As a result, Yahweh regretted” or “Yahweh regretted”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 6:6 (#2)

#### "that he had made mankind"

See how you translated **mankind** in verses 1, 3, and 5, and consider whether or not it is best to use a pronoun (“them”) here in your language. Alternate translation: “that he had created them” or “that he had created human beings”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them



**Genesis 6:6 (#3)****"and he was grieved in his heart"**

Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: "and his heart was filled with pain" or "and he was very sad"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 6:7 (#1)****"Then Yahweh said"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Also make sure that the way you begin verse 7 fits well with the way you begin verse 6. Alternate translation: "Then he said to himself,"

**Genesis 6:7 (#2)****"I will wipe away"**

Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: "I will wash away" or "I will blot out" or "I will completely wipe"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 6:7 (#3)****"mankind whom I created off the surface of the ground"**

Alternate translation: "all the human beings whom I created, from the surface of the earth,"

**Genesis 6:7 (#4)****"both mankind and animals"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "In fact, I will destroy not just all the people, but also all the animals,"

**Genesis 6:7 (#5)****"and crawling creatures"**

Alternate translation: "and the creatures that move on the ground"

**Genesis 6:7 (#6)****"and the birds of the sky"**

Alternate translation: "and all the birds that fly in the air," or "and all the birds,"

**Genesis 6:7 (#7)****"because I am sorry"**

See how you translated "was sorry" or "regretted" in verse 6. Alternate translation: "because I am sad"

**Genesis 6:7 (#8)****"that I made them"**

Alternate translation: "that I ever created them."

**Genesis 6:8 (#1)****"But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh"**

The idiom "find favor" means to please someone. And the idiom **in the eyes of** refers to someone's opinion about something or someone. Consider whether your language has similar idioms that work well here or whether it is better to translate this sentence without an idiom. Alternate translation: "But Noah pleased God." or "However, Yahweh was pleased with Noah."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 6:9 (#1)****"These {are} the generations of Noah"**

Some of Noah's history has already been given in Gen 5:29, 32, and 6:8. What follows tells more about him. Alternate translation: "This is more of the record of Noah and his family:" or "What follows tells more about Noah and his family:"

**Genesis 6:9 (#2)****"He {was}"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a noun or a pronoun here to refer to Noah.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 6:9 (#3)****"a righteous man"**

Alternate translation: "an good man."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 6:9 (#4)****"He was without blemish in his generation"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "He alone was blameless/faultless in God's eyes among his contemporaries." or "Out of all the people living at that time, Noah/he was the only one whom God considered blameless." or (2) "He had a blameless/spotless reputation among his contemporaries." or "His contemporaries considered him to be a man of integrity." The phrase **without blemish** is often used in the Bible to describe animals that have no defects. Here it is used as an idiom that means Noah was "blameless/faultless" in an ethical or moral sense, or that he had good integrity, but it does not mean that he was sinless. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that would work well here. Also, the word **generation** refers here to people who lived during the same time period.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 6:9 (#5)****"Noah walked with God"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated this idiom in Gen 5:22, 24. Alternate translation: "and he walked closely with God." or "and he lived in a faithful relationship with God."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 6:10 (#1)****"And Noah fathered"**

The fact that Noah fathered/had these three sons was already mentioned in Gen 5:32. Make sure that the way you begin this verse in your translation does not sound like he fathered these sons a second time. Alternate translation: "Eventually he had" or "And as mentioned before, he had"

**Genesis 6:10 (#2)****"three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth"**

Alternate translation: "three sons, namely Shem, Ham, and Japheth."

**Genesis 6:11 (#1)****"Now the earth was corrupt"**

The phrase **the earth** is often used in the Bible to refer to all the people on the earth. Consider whether your language can do the same thing, or whether it is necessary to make that implied information explicit. Alternate translation: "Now the people of the earth had become corrupt"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 6:11 (#2)****"and the earth was filled {with} violence"**

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause in order to emphasize how evil the people on the earth had become. The two clauses are different enough from each other that, if possible, it is best to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation. Also be consistent with how you translated **the earth** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "and they had filled the earth with their lawlessness." or "and all over the earth they were doing lawless things."

See: Parallelism

**Genesis 6:12 (#1)****"And God saw"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin this sentence with a conjunction.

**Genesis 6:12 (#2)****"the earth, and behold, it was corrupted"**

See how you translated "corrupt" and **the earth** in verse 11. Alternate translation: "that everyone on the earth was very wicked," or "how corrupt everyone on the earth had become,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 6:12 (#3)****"because all flesh on the earth"**

The phrase **all flesh** refers here to all people and probably implies that people are mortal (verse 3). Alternate translation: "because everyone living on earth"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 6:12 (#4)****"had corrupted its way"**

Alternate translation: "were living wicked lives." or "were continually doing wicked things." or "were continually acting in evil ways."

**Genesis 6:13 (#1)****"So God said to Noah"**

Alternate translation: "Then God said to Noah,"

**Genesis 6:13 (#2)****"The end of all flesh has come before me"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **flesh** in verse 12. Alternate translation: "I have decided to put an end to all human beings," or "I am going to destroy all flesh"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 6:13 (#3)****"because the earth is filled {with} violence because of them"**

See how you translated **violence** in verse 11. Alternate translation: "because they have filled the earth with their violence" or "because all over the earth they are doing lawless things."

**Genesis 6:13 (#4)****"So behold, I"**

This phrase draws extra attention to what God says next. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "Now listen,"

**Genesis 6:13 (#5)****"am destroying them"**

Alternate translation: "I plan to destroy them" or "I will destroy them"

**Genesis 6:13 (#6)****"with the earth"**

This phrase includes everything on the earth, not just the people. Alternate translation: "as well as everything else on the earth."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 6:14 (#1)****"Make"**

Alternate translation: "Consequently you must make"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 6:14 (#2)****"an ark"**

The term **ark** is general and refers to a chest/box that is closed on all sides, including the top. In this case, the ark was a very large boat that people and many animals lived in for a year. It had no motor, no oars, no sail and no rudder. Since this was a unique, one-of-a-kind boat that may already be well-known as the **ark** in the receptor language area, some translations transliterate (copy or borrow) the word **ark** throughout Genesis. Decide

what is best for your translation. Alternate translation: “a very large houseboat”

See: Copy or Borrow Words

### Genesis 6:14 (#3)

**"for yourself"**

Alternate translation: “for you and your family”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 6:14 (#4)

**"out of gopher wood"**

It is not certain what kind of wood this was, so many translations transliterate (copy or borrow) the Hebrew word **gopher**. Some Bible scholars think it was cypress wood. Alternate translation: “from cypress wood which is good for building boats.”

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 6:14 (#5)

**"Make the ark {with} rooms"**

Alternate translation: “Build the ark with stalls inside,” or “Make rooms inside the ark”

### Genesis 6:14 (#6)

**"and cover it inside and outside"**

Alternate translation: “and completely coat it inside and outside”

### Genesis 6:14 (#7)

**"with a covering"**

The Hebrew word **covering** is general and does not specify what kind of waterproofing material is being used. However, many translations are more specific than that here and refer to “pitch” or “tar” or some other material made from tree resin or sap that can seal a boat well and keep it from leaking. Alternate translation: “with pitch to keep water out.” or “with pitch to keep the boat from leaking.”

### Genesis 6:15 (#1)

**"And this {is} how you must make it"**

Alternate translation: “Build the ark with these dimensions” or “You must build the ark like this:”

### Genesis 6:15 (#2)

**"the length of the ark {must be} 300 cubits, its width fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits"**

A cubit was about half a meter (18 inches) long, which was the distance from a man’s elbow to the tip of his middle finger. You can: (1) translate cubits into meters or feet, and put the literal text in a footnote; or (2) keep **cubits** in the main text (so that the numbers 300, fifty/50 and thirty/30 are kept) and put what that equals in meters or feet in a footnote. Alternate translation: “It must be 140 meters long, 23 meters wide, and 14 meters high.” or “It must be 450 feet long, 75 feet wide, and 45 feet high.”

See: Biblical Distance

### Genesis 6:16 (#1)

**"Make a window for the ark and finish it to within one cubit from the top"**

The meaning of the Hebrew text is not completely certain here, but God was probably telling Noah to make a one-cubit high window or opening at the top of the outside walls of the ark, just below the roof, all the way around the ark, to let light and air into the ark. See the note about **cubit** in verse 15. Alternate translation: “Build a skylight for the boat by finishing the sides of the ark to within one cubit below the top of the ark” or “Build a half-meter high window between the top of the sides of the ark and its roof all the way around, to let light and air in.”

See: Biblical Distance

### Genesis 6:16 (#2)

**"And put the door of the ark in its side"**

Some translations begin this sentence without a conjunction (**And** or “Also”). Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Also put a

door in the side of the ark" or "Put a door for the ark in its side."

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 6:16 (#3)

**"Make a lower, a second, and a third {deck}"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Build a lower deck a middle deck and an upper deck on the inside." or "and build a lower, middle, and upper story on the inside." or "and make three complete floors on the inside."

### Genesis 6:17 (#1)

**"And I, behold, I"**

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **I** is emphatic, both by its form and by its position at the beginning of the sentence. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: "Behold I myself"

See: Pronouns

### Genesis 6:17 (#2)

**"am bringing floodwaters on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "am going to send a flood on the whole earth" or "am going to flood the entire earth with water"

### Genesis 6:17 (#3)

**"to destroy"**

See how you translated **destroy** in verse 13. Alternate translation: "in order to destroy"

### Genesis 6:17 (#4)

**"all flesh"**

This phrase is general here and includes people and animals, so you may need to translate the phrase differently here from what you did earlier in verses 12–13 (where the focus seems to be on

people). Alternate translation: "all the beings" or "every creature"

### Genesis 6:17 (#5)

**"that {has} the breath of life in it"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 1:30. Alternate translation: "that breathes air"

### Genesis 6:17 (#6)

**"from under the heavens"**

For some languages it may be clearer to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "to destroy every living thing under the heavens/sky that has the breath of life in it." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "from under the sky."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 6:17 (#7)

**"Everything that {is} on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "As a result, every living being that lives on land"

### Genesis 6:17 (#8)

**"will expire"**

The verb **expire** (which could also be translated "exhale" or "breathe out") is used here as an idiom that means "die". Consider whether your language has a similar or different idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: "will breathe out its last breath!" or "will perish!"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 6:18 (#1)

**"But I will establish"**

The word **establish** means to deliberately and formally put something into effect. Alternate translation: "However I will make" or "However I will set up"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Genesis 6:18 (#2)

#### "my covenant with you"

This covenant is made up of the unconditional, unbreakable promises that God made to Noah (and all mankind and all other living things) in Genesis 8:2–9:17. The word "testament" is another word for "covenant," so the way you translate **covenant** here could be similar to the way you translate the titles "Old Testament" and "New Testament." Alternate translation: "a covenant between me and you," or "a peace agreement between me and you,"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 6:18 (#3)

#### "so you must go into the ark"

Alternate translation: "so you must enter the ark" or "so you must get on board the ark"

### Genesis 6:18 (#4)

#### "you and your sons and your wife and the wives of your sons with you"

Alternate translation: "and take with you your wife, your sons, and their wives."

### Genesis 6:19 (#1)

#### "And from every living {creature}, from all flesh, you must bring two from each {kind} into the ark"

Alternate translation: "Also, from every kind of living creature, yes, from every kind of animal, you must take pairs of each kind into the ark" or "You must also bring into the ark pairs of every kind of living creature, including every kind of animal,"

### Genesis 6:19 (#2)

#### "to keep alive with you"

Alternate translation: "in order to keep them alive with you."

### Genesis 6:19 (#3)

#### "They must be male and female"

Alternate translation: "They must be pairs with one male and one female each." or "Each pair must have one male and one female." or "Make sure that each pair has one male and one female."

### Genesis 6:20 (#1)

#### "From the birds according to their kinds"

Alternate translation: "Males and females of every type of bird,"

### Genesis 6:20 (#2)

#### "and from the animals according to their kinds"

Alternate translation: "and of every kind of animal,"

### Genesis 6:20 (#3)

#### "from every moving creature of the ground according to its kind"

This phrase emphasizes that the birds and animals mentioned in the first half of this verse lived on land. Alternate translation: "including every kind of creature that lives on the land,"

### Genesis 6:20 (#4)

#### "two from every {kind} will come to you"

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Two/Pairs of every kind of bird and every kind of animal, including every kind of creature that moves on the ground, will come to you ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "two of every kind of animal will come to you" or "two of each kind of animal will come to you"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 6:20 (#5)

#### "to keep alive"

Alternate translation: “to keep them alive on the ark” or “into the ark so that they stay alive.” or “so that you keep them alive in the ark”

### Genesis 6:21 (#1)

#### "And you"

Although the pronoun **you** is singular in the Hebrew text in verse 21, it could be translated as plural, since God’s instructions apply to Noah and his family, not just Noah. Or you could make his family explicit. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “You and your family”

See: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

### Genesis 6:21 (#2)

#### "must take with you"

Alternate translation: “must also gather and take”

### Genesis 6:21 (#3)

#### "some of every food"

Alternate translation: “every kind of food”

### Genesis 6:21 (#4)

#### "that is eaten"

Alternate translation: “that is eaten by people and animals” or “that you and all the animals will need”

### Genesis 6:21 (#5)

#### "and store it with you"

Alternate translation: “and put it on the ark with you,”

### Genesis 6:21 (#6)

#### "and it will be food"

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “This will be the food supply”

### Genesis 6:21 (#7)

#### "for you"

Consider again how you translated the pronoun **you** in this verse.

See: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

### Genesis 6:22 (#1)

#### "And Noah did {that}"

Some translations begin verse 22 without a conjunction. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Noah did all of that”

### Genesis 6:22 (#2)

#### "according to all that God had commanded him, so he did"

Alternate translation: “he did everything just as God had told him to do.”

### Genesis 7:1 (#1)

#### "Then Yahweh said to Noah"

For some languages it may be necessary to make it explicit that the boat was completed before Yahweh told Noah to enter it. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Then after they had finished building the ark Yahweh told Noah,” or “After the ark was finished, Yahweh told Noah,”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 7:1 (#2)

#### "Go into the ark, you and all your household"

See how you translated “ark/boat” in Gen 6:14–16. Alternate translation: “Board the ark along with your entire family,” or “You and your entire family must get into the ark”

**Genesis 7:1 (#3)****"because I have seen"**

Alternate translation: "because I have found" or "because I see"

**Genesis 7:1 (#4)****"that} you {are} righteous"**

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphasized to show that Noah was the only one who was righteous. See how you translated **righteous** in Gen 6:9. Alternate translation: "that you alone are upright" or "that you are the only one who is living rightly" or "... living the right way"

**Genesis 7:1 (#5)****"before me"**

Alternate translation: "in my eyes" or "according to my will"

**Genesis 7:1 (#6)****"in this generation"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, "... you are the only one among the people living today who is righteous in my sight." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:2 (#1)****"From every clean animal"**

It may be necessary to include a footnote that explains the concept of clean and unclean animals: In the Bible a **clean animal** was an animal that was acceptable to be sacrificed to God or to be eaten, and an "unclean animal" was one that could not be sacrificed or eaten; it does not refer to how clean the animal was physically. Later Moses wrote down the laws about clean and unclean animals in the book of Leviticus. Alternate translation: "From every kind of pure animal" or "From every kind of animal that is acceptable to sacrifice"

**Genesis 7:2 (#2)****"take with you"**

The pronoun **you** is singular in the Hebrew text, but could be translated as a plural to include Noah's family. Alternate translation: "bring with you"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 7:2 (#3)****"seven pairs, a male and its female"**

See how you translated "male and female" in Gen 6:19.

**Genesis 7:2 (#4)****"and from {every} animal that {is} not clean"**

Alternate translation: "and from every kind of impure animal" or "and from every kind of animal that is not acceptable to sacrifice"

**Genesis 7:2 (#5)****"take} two, a male and its female"**

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "Take with you seven male and female pairs of every kind of clean/pure animal, and one male and female pair of every kind of unclean/impure animal," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "take a male and female pair,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:3 (#1)****"also"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and also" or "In addition,"

**Genesis 7:3 (#2)****"from {every} bird of the sky"**

Alternate translation: "from every type of bird that flies in the sky" or "from every type of bird"



**Genesis 7:3 (#3)****"take} seven pairs, male and female"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "Also take seven male and female pairs of every kind of bird that flies in the sky/air ..." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:3 (#4)****"to keep {their} offspring alive"**

Alternate translation: "so that later they will have offspring that will live"

**Genesis 7:3 (#5)****"on the surface of the whole earth"**

Alternate translation: "and spread all over the earth," or "to repopulate the whole earth,"

**Genesis 7:4 (#1)****"because"**

For many languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "The reason you must do that is"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 7:4 (#2)****"in seven more days"**

The phrase, **seven more days** could be translated "another week" here and in verse 11. However, it is probably best to keep the number seven in the text in both places, especially since the number seven often signifies perfection or completion in the Bible, perhaps also here. Alternate translation: "seven days from now"

**Genesis 7:4 (#3)****"I will cause it to rain"**

Alternate translation: "I will send rain"

**Genesis 7:4 (#4)****"on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "all over the world"

**Genesis 7:4 (#5)****"for} forty days and forty nights"**

This phrase refers to forty complete 24-hour days.

**Genesis 7:4 (#6)****"and I will wipe"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated this idiom in Gen 6:7. Alternate translation: "in order to blot out" or "That will wash away"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 7:4 (#7)****"every living thing that I have made"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("living creature") in Gen 6:19. Alternate translation: "all the living things that I have made"

**Genesis 7:4 (#8)****"off the surface of the ground"**

It may be clearer to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "in order to completely destroy from/off the ground/earth every living creature/thing that I have made." Do what is best in your language. See how you translated this phrase in Gen 6:7. Alternate translation: "off the surface of the earth." or "off the land."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:5 (#1)****"Then Noah did all that"**

Alternate translation: "So Noah did everything that" or "So Noah did everything exactly as"

**Genesis 7:5 (#2)****"Yahweh had commanded him"**

See how you translated Gen 6:22 which is similar to 7:5. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had told him to do."

**Genesis 7:6 (#1)****"Now Noah {was} a son of 600 years"**

See how you handled large numbers in Gen 5 and in Gen 6:3, and see the note about this at Gen 5:3. Also see how you translated the idiom "son of ... years" in Gen 5:32. Alternate translation: "He was 600 years old"

See: Numbers

**Genesis 7:6 (#2)****"when the floodwaters came on the earth"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "When the flood waters came on the earth, Noah was 600 years old." Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated **floodwaters** in Gen 6:17. Alternate translation: "when the earth was covered with deep water."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:7 (#1)****"And Noah and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons went with him into the ark"**

Noah and his family entered the ark on the same day that the floodwaters started coming (See verses 11–13). See how you translated a similar list of people in Gen 6:18. Alternate translation: "That is when Noah and his wife, and his sons and their wives, went together into the ark"

**Genesis 7:7 (#2)****"from the presence of"**

Alternate translation: "because of" or "to escape from" or "to keep them safe from"

**Genesis 7:7 (#3)****"the waters of the flood"**

Alternate translation: "the floodwaters."

**Genesis 7:8 (#1)****"Pairs} from the clean animal{s} and from the animal{s} that are not clean"**

See how you translated **clean** and "unclean" animals in verse 2. Alternate translation: "Also, every kind of clean animal and every kind of unclean animal"

**Genesis 7:8 (#2)****"and everything that moves on the ground"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "including every kind of creature/animal that moves/lives on land," or "which includes every kind of creature/animal that moves/lives on land," According to this interpretation, the rest of verse 8 emphasizes that the clean and unclean animals and birds (verses 2–3, 8) were all creatures that lived on land (which are the creatures that the flood affected). Or it could mean: (2) "as well as every kind of creature/animal that crawls/creeps along the ground". According to this interpretation, the rest of verse 8 refers to a fourth category of creatures besides the clean animals, unclean animals, and birds.

**Genesis 7:9 (#1)****"went two {by} two to Noah into the ark"**

Alternate translation: "came to Noah in pairs and went into the ark" or "came in pairs and entered the ark with Noah,"

**Genesis 7:9 (#2)****"male and female"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Each pair had one male and one female,"

**Genesis 7:9 (#3)****"just as God had commanded Noah"**

Alternate translation: "which was exactly what God had told Noah to bring along."

**Genesis 7:10 (#1)****"And it happened"**

This phrase focuses attention on an important event (the beginning of the flood), and it builds suspense so that readers and listeners wonder what will happen next. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "Then"

**Genesis 7:10 (#2)****"after the seven days"**

This phrase refers to the seven days which God talked about in verse 4. It does not mean seven days after Noah and the animals went into the ark (verses 7–9); they went into the ark on the same day that the flood started (verse 13). Translate the beginning of this sentence in a way that makes that clear. Alternate translation: "after seven days,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 7:10 (#3)****"then the waters of the flood came on"**

Alternate translation: "the floodwaters started to come on" or "water started to cover"

**Genesis 7:10 (#4)****"the earth"**

Alternate translation: "the whole earth."

**Genesis 7:11 (#1)****"In the six hundredth year of Noah's life"**

Compare how you translated Noah's age in verse 6.

See: Ordinal Numbers

**Genesis 7:11 (#2)****"in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month"**

For some languages it is more natural to switch the phrase order and say which day it is before giving the month. Do what is natural in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:11 (#3)****"on that day"**

Alternate translation: "on that same day" or "that is the day when"

**Genesis 7:11 (#4)****"all the fountains of"**

Alternate translation: "all the underground water sources"

**Genesis 7:11 (#5)****"burst open"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, "water started gushing/pouring out of all the fountains/springs in the deep ocean," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "split open," or "started gushing out water,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:11 (#6)****"and the windows of the heavens were opened"**

This metaphor describes the beginning of a very heavy rainfall; it does not refer to actual windows. Alternate translation: “and all the windows in the sky were opened by God,” or “God also caused the water in the heavens to start coming down, as if he had opened huge faucets in the heavens”

See: Metaphor

### Genesis 7:12 (#1)

**"so that the rain fell"**

Alternate translation: “so that heavy rain poured continuously”

### Genesis 7:12 (#2)

**"on the earth"**

Alternate translation: “all over the world”

### Genesis 7:12 (#3)

**"forty days and forty nights"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4.

### Genesis 7:13 (#1)

**"On that same day"**

This is the same day that is mentioned in verse 11, when the flood started. Verses 13–16 repeat what happened, in order to emphasize it. Make sure that a translation does not sound like this is the second (or third) time that Noah and his family and the animals entered the ark. Alternate translation: “So it was that on the very same day that the rain started,”

### Genesis 7:13 (#2)

**"Noah and Shem and Ham and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and the wife of Noah and the three wives of his sons with them"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 7. Alternate translation: “Noah and his wife and their sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and their three wives all”

### Genesis 7:13 (#3)

**"went into the ark"**

Alternate translation: “boarded the ark”

### Genesis 7:14 (#1)

**"they and every"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “They took with them every”

### Genesis 7:14 (#2)

**"and every living thing according to its kind, and every"**

In the Hebrew text this phrase is ambiguous. It could mean: (1) “every kind of living thing/creature, including every” or (2) “every kind of wild animal, and every”. The animal groups listed in verse 14 show that every kind of animal was to be brought onto the ark. Your language may have a different way of grouping animals. Make sure it is clear in your translation of this verse that all the different kinds of birds and land animals are included.

### Genesis 7:14 (#3)

**"and every livestock according to its kind"**

Alternate translation: “every kind of tame animal,”

### Genesis 7:14 (#4)

**"and every moving creature moving on the earth according to its kind"**

In the Hebrew text, this phrase is ambiguous. It could mean: (1) “and every other kind of creature/animal that moves/lives on the earth/land,” which seems to fit this context best; or (2) “and every kind of creature/animal that crawls on the ground,”

**Genesis 7:14 (#5)**

**"and every bird according to its kind, every bird of every wing"**

This phrase probably refers not only to birds, but also to other creatures that have wings and fly, such as bats and insects. Alternate translation: "and every kind of bird and everything else that has wings." or "and every kind of bird and every other kind of creature that flies."

**Genesis 7:15 (#1)**

**"So they went to Noah into the ark"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 9. Alternate translation: "They came to Noah and came into the ark," or "They entered the ark with Noah,"

**Genesis 7:15 (#2)**

**"two {by} two from all flesh"**

The word **flesh** refers here to any kind of creature or animal. Alternate translation: "pairs of every kind of animal" or "pairs of every kind of living thing"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 7:15 (#3)**

**"which {has} in it the breath of life"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 6:17. For some languages it may be better to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "Pairs of every kind of living thing that breathes air came to Noah and went into the boat." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 7:16 (#1)**

**"And those that went in"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use **went** or "came" here. Also consider again how you translated **went** in verses 7, 9, 13, and 15. Alternate translation: "The pairs that came into the ark" or "Those animals"

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 7:16 (#2)**

**"from all flesh"**

See how you translated **all flesh** in verse 15. Alternate translation: "of every kind of creature" or "of every kind of living thing,"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 7:16 (#3)**

**"they went in just as God had commanded him"**

See how you translated "just as God commanded him" in verse 9. Alternate translation: "which was exactly what God had commanded him to bring along."

**Genesis 7:16 (#4)**

**"Then Yahweh shut him in"**

Alternate translation: "After that, Yahweh shut them in the ark" or "Then after they were all inside, Yahweh shut the door of the ark behind him"

**Genesis 7:17 (#1)**

**"Then the flood came"**

Some translations begin this sentence without a conjunction. Do what is natural in your language. Also, notice that verses 17–20 talk about the forty days and nights that the flood kept getting deeper and deeper. Alternate translation: "After that the floodwaters kept getting deeper and deeper" or "The water kept coming"

See: Connect — Sequential Time Relationship

**Genesis 7:17 (#2)**

**"for} forty days"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase first in this sentence and say, "For forty days and forty nights the flood kept getting deeper and deeper all over the earth," Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated

this phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: “for forty days and forty nights,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 7:17 (#3)

**"and the waters increased"**

Alternate translation: “and as the water level rose,” or “As the water got deeper and deeper,”

### Genesis 7:17 (#4)

**"and lifted the ark so that it rose up off the earth"**

Alternate translation: “it lifted up the ark so that it floated on the water high above the earth” or “it made the ark rise up off the ground and float.”

### Genesis 7:18 (#1)

**"And the waters rose"**

Verse 18 repeats some of verse 17 to emphasize what happened. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: “So the floodwaters continued to rise and get much higher” or “Yes, the water continued ...” or “The water continued ...”

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 7:18 (#2)

**"on the earth"**

Alternate translation: “all over the world,”

### Genesis 7:18 (#3)

**"and the ark went"**

Alternate translation: “but the ark floated safely” or “so that the ark moved about”

### Genesis 7:18 (#4)

**"on the surface of the waters"**

Alternate translation: “on the surface of the water.” or “on top of the water.”

### Genesis 7:19 (#1)

**"And the waters rose very greatly on the earth"**

Alternate translation: “At last, the waters became very deep over the world, so that” or “Eventually the water became so deep on the world that”

### Genesis 7:19 (#2)

**"so that" - "were covered"**

For some languages it is better to use an active form of the verb here and say, “Eventually the water became so deep on the earth that it even covered all the highest mountains under the entire sky.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “were covered by water.” or “were submerged in water.”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 7:20 (#1)

**"The waters rose fifteen cubits above {them}"**

See how you translated **cubits** in Gen 6:15–16. Alternate translation: “In fact, the highest mountain tops were covered by at least twenty-two feet of water,”

See: Biblical Distance

### Genesis 7:20 (#2)

**"so that the mountains were covered"**

See how you translated **were covered** in verse 19. Alternate translation: “so that they were completely covered with water.” or “... completely submerged in water.” or “... completely under water.”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 7:21 (#1)

**"all flesh"**

This phrase refers to everything listed in verse 21, including people. See how you translated this phrase in Gen 6:17. Alternate translation: "Then all the beings" or "Then every creature" or "Then every living thing"

### Genesis 7:21 (#2)

**"that moved on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "that moved on the ground"

### Genesis 7:21 (#3)

**"Then" - "expired"**

See how you translated this idiom in Gen 6:17. Alternate translation: "breathed out its last breath," or "perished,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 7:21 (#4)

**"including the birds and the livestock"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "including all the birds, the tame animals,"

### Genesis 7:21 (#5)

**"and the living things"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "and the other living things/creatures" or (2) "and the wild animals"

### Genesis 7:21 (#6)

**"and all the swarming things swarming on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "including every kind of animal that lived in large numbers on the earth,"

### Genesis 7:21 (#7)

**"and all mankind"**

Alternate translation: "in addition to all the human beings."

### Genesis 7:22 (#1)

**"Everything that {had} the breath of the spirit of life in its nostrils"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 15. Alternate translation: "Every living thing that breathed air"

### Genesis 7:22 (#2)

**"everything that {lived} on dry land, died"**

Alternate translation: "and was on dry land died."

### Genesis 7:23 (#1)

**"So he wiped away"**

See how you translated this idiom in verse 4. Alternate translation: "That is how Yahweh washed away" or "In that way, Yahweh blotted out" or "... completely destroyed"

### Genesis 7:23 (#2)

**"every living thing"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: "every living creature" or "all living things"

### Genesis 7:23 (#3)

**"that {was} on the surface of the ground"**

See how you translated **the surface of the ground** in verse 4. Alternate translation: "that was on the surface of the earth," or "that were on the land,"

### Genesis 7:23 (#4)

**"including mankind"**

See how you translated **mankind** in verse 21. Alternate translation: "including all mankind"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 7:23 (#5)****"and livestock and crawling creatures"**

Alternate translation: "and all the livestock and all the other animals that moved on the ground" or "and all the animals, including smaller animals that crawl on the ground"

**Genesis 7:23 (#6)****"and also the birds of the sky"**

Some languages leave out the phrase **of the sky** because it is not natural. Do what is best in your language.

**Genesis 7:23 (#7)****"So they were wiped off the earth"**

See how you translated "wipe ... off" in verse 4. Alternate translation: "All of them were completely washed off the earth by God," or "He completely destroyed them all from the earth," or "Yes, God completely destroyed everything that lived on the earth,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 7:23 (#8)****"and only Noah was left"**

Some translations leave out the first conjunction and begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "so that only Noah was left alive, along with" or "so that the only ones who were left alive were Noah and" or "Only Noah survived, along with"

**Genesis 7:23 (#9)****"and {those} who {were} with him in the ark"**

Alternate translation: "and his family and the animals that were with him in the ark" or "along with his family ..."

**Genesis 7:24 (#1)****"And the waters prevailed over"**

Alternate translation: "Deep water continued to flood" or "The floodwaters stayed deep over"

**Genesis 7:24 (#2)****"the earth {for} 150 days"**

See how you handled a large number in verse 6. Alternate translation: "the entire earth for 150 days."

See: Numbers

**Genesis 8:1 (#1)****"But God remembered"**

The phrase **God remembered** is an idiom in the Bible that often means God was paying special attention to certain people and was about to do something. Make sure that the way you translate this phrase does not imply that God had forgotten about Noah. Alternate translation: "God kept in mind" or "But God did not forget"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 8:1 (#2)****"Noah"**

Noah is the person that the author is focusing on here, but Noah's family is also included. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your translation.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 8:1 (#3)****"and all the living thing{s} and"**

In the Hebrew text this phrase is ambiguous. It could mean: (1) "and all the creatures/animals, including" or (2) "and all the wild animals and". See how you translated "living thing" in Gen 7:14.



**Genesis 8:1 (#4)**

**"all the livestock that {were} with him in the ark"**

Some translations combine this phrase with the previous phrase and say, "and all the animals, both wild and tame/domestic, that were with him/them in the ark/boat." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "all the tame animals that were with him in the ark"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 8:1 (#5)**

**"and God caused a wind to pass over"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he sent a wind over" or "So God sent a wind to blow over"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 8:1 (#6)**

**"the earth"**

Alternate translation: "the water that was over the earth,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 8:1 (#7)**

**"and the waters subsided"**

Notice that the floodwaters did not go all the way down until verse 14, so the way you translate this clause should allow for that. Alternate translation: "so that the water started to recede" or "so that the water level started to go down."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 8:2 (#1)**

**"And the fountains of the deep and the windows of the heavens were closed"**

See how you translated some of the same words and phrases in Gen 7:11. Alternate translation: "He also caused the fountains in the deep ocean to stop

gushing out water, and he caused the rain to stop pouring from the sky," or "God also stopped the water from gushing out of springs at the bottom of the ocean, and the rain from coming from the heavens"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 8:2 (#2)**

**"and the rain from the heavens was stopped"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or a passive verb here and in the previous clause. Alternate translation: "so that rain stopped falling from the sky."

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 8:3 (#1)**

**"Then the waters receded steadily"**

Alternate translation: "Then the floodwaters gradually went down"

**Genesis 8:3 (#2)**

**"from the earth"**

Alternate translation: "from the surface of the ground,"

**Genesis 8:3 (#3)**

**"at} the end of the 150 days"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also make sure it is clear in your translation that the 150 days mentioned here in Gen 8:3 are the same 150 days mentioned in Gen 7:24, not two different periods of time. Alternate translation: "so that after the 150 days had passed,"

**Genesis 8:3 (#4)**

**"the waters"**

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with the way you translated the beginning of the

verse. Alternate translation: “the water level” or “it”

### Genesis 8:3 (#5)

**"and {" - "had decreased"**

Alternate translation: “had subsided,”

### Genesis 8:4 (#1)

**"so that" - "rested"**

Alternate translation: “so low that”

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Genesis 8:4 (#2)

**"in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month"**

See how you translated a similar time phrase in Gen 7:11.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 8:4 (#3)

**"so that" - "the ark rested"**

Alternate translation: “the ark came to rest” or “the ark landed”

### Genesis 8:4 (#4)

**"on the mountains"**

The ark landed on one mountain in a mountain range. Alternate translation: “on a mountain”

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 8:4 (#5)

**"of Ararat"**

Alternate translation: “in the land of Ararat.”

### Genesis 8:5 (#1)

**"And the waters"**

Alternate translation: “Then the water” or “The water”

### Genesis 8:5 (#2)

**"continued to decrease"**

See how you translated “decreased” in verse 3. Alternate translation: “continued to go away” or “kept subsiding”

### Genesis 8:5 (#3)

**"until the tenth month. In the tenth month, on the first of the month"**

See how you translated a similar time phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: “until the tenth month of the year. On the first day of that month,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 8:5 (#4)

**"the tops of the mountains"**

Alternate translation: “the mountaintops”

### Genesis 8:5 (#5)

**"could be seen"**

Alternate translation: “could be seen above the water by Noah.” or “appeared above the surface of the water.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 8:6 (#1)

**"Then it happened {at} the end of forty days"**

The phrase **Then it happened** focuses attention on what happens next, and it builds suspense so that readers and listeners wonder what the outcome will be. Some translations leave this phrase out, but that loses some of the suspense. Do what is best in your language.

See: Introduction of a New Event

## Genesis 8:6 (#2)

### "that Noah opened the window"

It is not clear when Noah made this window. It may refer to the opening around the top of the walls of the ark (Gen 6:16) or a different window that he made sometime later.

## Genesis 8:6 (#3)

### "of the ark that he had made"

Alternate translation: "that he had made in the ark"

## Genesis 8:7 (#1)

### "and he sent out"

Alternate translation: "and he set free"

## Genesis 8:7 (#2)

### "the raven"

A raven is a large, black scavenger bird that eats whatever it finds, including dead animals. If the people in your language area are not familiar with ravens, you could make a comparison to a similar bird that they are familiar with and say, "a large black bird like a ..." Or you could include a footnote that explains what a raven is. Alternate translation: "a large black bird called a raven"

See:

## Genesis 8:7 (#3)

### "and it kept flying out and returning"

Alternate translation: "which continued flying back and forth outside the boat" or "but it kept flying around outside the boat"

## Genesis 8:7 (#4)

### "until the waters"

Alternate translation: "until the floodwaters"

## Genesis 8:7 (#5)

### "dried up from the earth"

This phrase refers to the ground/land (as verse 8 confirms), not the entire planet. Alternate translation: "had dried up more from the ground"

## Genesis 8:8 (#1)

### "Then he sent out"

The events in verse 8 happened while the raven was still flying back and forth (verse 7). Consider what conjunction best communicates that in your language. Alternate translation: "Then he also sent out" or "Then he also released"

See: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

## Genesis 8:8 (#2)

### "the dove from him"

A dove is a small, white or gray bird that makes a cooing sound. If doves are unknown in your language area, you could make a comparison to a similar bird they are familiar with and say, "a small white/gray bird like a ..." Or you could include a footnote that explains what a dove is. Alternate translation: "a dove that was with him" or "a dove from the ark" or "a small bird called a dove"

See: Translate Unknowns

## Genesis 8:8 (#3)

### "to see if the waters had subsided"

Alternate translation: "to find out if the floodwaters had receded"

## Genesis 8:8 (#4)

### "from the surface of the ground"

Alternate translation: "from the surface of the land." or "from the ground"

**Genesis 8:9 (#1)****"But the dove did not find"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to the dove at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: "But the dove could not find" or "But it was not able to find"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 8:9 (#2)****"a resting place for the sole of its feet"**

In Hebrew the word **dove** is grammatically a feminine noun (for both male and female doves), so some translations say "her feet ... she returned ..." here. For languages such as English that do not assign grammatical gender to nouns, it is more accurate to use **its** and **it** here, because it is not known whether this dove was male or female. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "anywhere to perch and rest,"

**Genesis 8:9 (#3)****"so it returned"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "So it returned" or "So the dove flew back"

**Genesis 8:9 (#4)****"to him in the ark"**

Alternate translation: "flew back to him at the ark"

**Genesis 8:9 (#5)****"because the waters {were} over the surface of the entire earth"**

Some languages may have to switch the clause order in this verse and say, "But water was still covering the entire earth/world, so the dove did/could not find a resting place for its feet. Then it returned to Noah at the boat, and he/Noah reached ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because water was still covering the entire world."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 8:9 (#6)****"And he reached out his hand"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "So he reached out" or "and he reached out"

**Genesis 8:9 (#7)****"to him into the ark"**

Alternate translation: "back to himself in the ark" or "back into the ark"

**Genesis 8:10 (#1)****"Then he waited"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin this sentence with or without a conjunction. Alternate translation: "He waited"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 8:10 (#2)****"and again sent out the dove from the ark"**

Alternate translation: "then he sent the dove out from the ark another time." or "then he released the dove from the ark again."

**Genesis 8:11 (#1)****"Then the dove returned to him at evening time"**

Alternate translation: "That evening the dove returned to Noah," or "When it was evening, the dove returned to him"

**Genesis 8:11 (#2)****"and behold"**

Alternate translation: "and surprisingly," or "and Noah saw that"

**Genesis 8:11 (#3)**

**"there was} a freshly picked olive leaf in its mouth"**

An olive tree produces small, oval, green fruit that has a hard pit. Olives are used for food and as a source of cooking oil. If olive trees are unknown in your language area, you could include a footnote about them. Alternate translation: "it was holding a newly picked green leaf from an olive tree in its mouth" or "the dove had a green leaf in its mouth that it had just picked from an olive tree."

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 8:11 (#4)**

**"So Noah knew"**

Alternate translation: "Then Noah realized" or "That is how he knew"

**Genesis 8:11 (#5)**

**"that the waters"**

Alternate translation: "that the floodwaters"

**Genesis 8:11 (#6)**

**"had subsided"**

See how you translated **subsided** in verse 8, and how you translated three other Hebrew words with similar meanings in verses 1, 3, and 5. Alternate translation: "had receded" or "had gone down more"

**Genesis 8:11 (#7)**

**"from the earth"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: "from the ground"

**Genesis 8:12 (#1)**

**"Then he waited another seven days, and he sent out the dove"**

See how you translated **sent out** in verses 7, 8, and 10. Alternate translation: "He waited another seven days, then he released the dove again," or "After he waited seven more days, he released the dove again,"

**Genesis 8:12 (#2)**

**"but it did not return to him again"**

Remember to only make implied information explicit in a translation if it helps readers' understanding or if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning or incorrect grammar. Alternate translation: "but this time it did not fly back to him again because it found a dry place to land"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 8:13 (#1)**

**"So it happened"**

Alternate translation: "So it happened that"

**Genesis 8:13 (#2)**

**"in the six hundred and first year"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 7:11.

**Genesis 8:13 (#3)**

**"in the first {month}, on the first {day} of the month"**

Alternate translation: "in the first month of the year, on the first day of the month,"

See: Ordinal Numbers

**Genesis 8:13 (#4)**

**"the waters were drying up"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase fits with the fact that the ground was not yet dry enough to get out of the ark. That did not happen until the end of the second month (verse 14). Alternate translation: "the water was drying up"

**Genesis 8:13 (#5)****"from the earth"**

Alternate translation: "from the ground"

**Genesis 8:13 (#6)****"Then Noah removed"**

Alternate translation: "So he took off part of" or "made an opening in"

**Genesis 8:13 (#7)****"the covering of the ark"**

Alternate translation: "the roof that was covering the ark" or "the roof of the ark"

**Genesis 8:13 (#8)****"and looked"**

Alternate translation: "and looked out,"

**Genesis 8:13 (#9)****"and behold"**See how you translated this phrase in verse 11.  
Alternate translation: "and indeed,"**Genesis 8:13 (#10)****"was drying"**

Alternate translation: "was drying off."

**Genesis 8:14 (#1)****"Then in the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month"**

See how you translated similar time phrases in verses 4, 5, and 13.

**Genesis 8:14 (#2)****"the earth"**

Notice that the land/ground was dry here, not the entire earth. Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 3, 7, 11, 13–14. Alternate translation: "the ground"

**Genesis 8:14 (#3)****"was dry"**In this context **dry** means that the ground was dry enough to walk on and live on without getting stuck in mud. Make sure your translation does not imply that it was so dry that nothing would grow on it (like a desert).**Genesis 8:15 (#1)****"Then God said to Noah, saying"**See how you translated **said to Noah** in Gen 7:1.  
Alternate translation: "So God said to Noah,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 8:16 (#1)****"Go out of the ark"**

Consider whether "come" or "go" is more natural here in your language. Also, some languages have a special term for getting off a boat that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Come out of the ark" or "Disembark from the ark"

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 8:16 (#2)****"and the wives of your sons with you"**

Alternate translation: "and their wives."

**Genesis 8:17 (#1)****"Bring out with you"**

Consider whether “bring” or “take” is more natural here in your language. Alternate translation: “Take with you” or “Take out”

See: Go and Come

### Genesis 8:17 (#2)

**“every living thing that {is”**

Alternate translation: “all the living things that are”

### Genesis 8:17 (#3)

**“with you”**

Alternate translation: “with you in the ark” or “in the ark”

### Genesis 8:17 (#4)

**“all flesh”**

See how you translated **flesh** in Gen 7:15–16.

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 8:17 (#5)

**“including the birds and the livestock”**

Alternate translation: “including the birds, domestic animals,”

### Genesis 8:17 (#6)

**“and every moving creature moving”**

In the Hebrew text this phrase is ambiguous. It could mean: (1) “and every other creature/animal that moves/lives”, which seems to fit this context best since it is general and includes all the land animals that were not birds or livestock; or (2) “and every creature/animal that crawls”, which is more specific and refers to animals like lizards, snakes, mice, and other animals that have bodies that are close to the ground.

### Genesis 8:17 (#7)

**“on the earth”**

Alternate translation: “on the ground,”

### Genesis 8:17 (#8)

**“so that they will abound on the earth”**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Then they can spread all over the world”

### Genesis 8:17 (#9)

**“and be fruitful”**

The rest of verse 17 forms a parallelism with **abound on the earth** that emphasizes filling the earth again with animals. Make sure your translation does not sound like this refers to separate events. Alternate translation: “yes, they will have many offspring”

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 8:17 (#10)

**“and multiply”**

See how you translated **be fruitful** and **multiply** in Gen 1:22, 28. Alternate translation: “and become very many”

### Genesis 8:17 (#11)

**“over the earth”**

Alternate translation: “all over the world.” or “throughout the earth.”

### Genesis 8:18 (#1)

**“Then Noah went out”**

Alternate translation: “Then Noah went out of the ark” or “So Noah disembarked from the ark” or “Then Noah got off the ark”

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 8:18 (#2)**

**"and his sons and his wife and the wives of his sons with him"**

See how you translated this list of Noah's family members (and similar lists) in Gen 6:18; 7:7, 13; 8:16. Notice that the order of the people in this list varies in the Hebrew text, perhaps depending on who is in focus in each context. Alternate translation: "together with his wife and his sons and their wives."

**Genesis 8:19 (#1)**

**"Every living thing"**

Alternate translation: "Every living creature,"

**Genesis 8:19 (#2)**

**"every crawling thing"**

Alternate translation: "including every animal that crawls" or "including all the creatures that crawl"

**Genesis 8:19 (#3)**

**"everything"**

Alternate translation: "yes, every creature"

**Genesis 8:19 (#4)**

**"moving on the earth"**

This phrase refers here to the land, not the entire planet earth. See how you translated this phrase in verse 17. Alternate translation: "that moves on the ground,"

**Genesis 8:19 (#5)**

**"went out of the ark"**

Consider again how you translated "go/come out" and "went/came out" and "bring/take out" in verses 16–19. Notice that your choices are affected by your perspective: whether the viewpoint is from inside the ark or whether the viewpoint is from outside the ark. Do what is natural in your

language. Alternate translation: "also came out of the ark"

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 8:19 (#6)**

**"by their families"**

Alternate translation: "grouped by their kinds." or "one family after another."

**Genesis 8:20 (#1)**

**"Then Noah built an altar"**

An altar was an elevated, often table-shaped structure made out of stones where certain animals and crops were burned as sacrifices to God. Alternate translation: "Then Noah built an altar out of large stones" or "Then Noah made a sacrifice table with large stones"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 8:20 (#2)**

**"to Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "dedicated to Yahweh," or "to worship Yahweh,"

**Genesis 8:20 (#3)**

**"and he took"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then he chose"

**Genesis 8:20 (#4)**

**"from every clean animal and from every clean bird"**

In the Bible, a **clean** animal or bird is one that is acceptable to be sacrificed to God or eaten; it does not refer to how clean the animal or bird was physically. See how you translated this term in Gen 7:2, 8. Alternate translation: "some of every kind of pure animal and one of every kind of clean bird," or



"some of every kind of animal and bird that are acceptable to sacrifice"

### Genesis 8:20 (#5)

**"and he offered burnt offerings on the altar"**

When animals were sacrificed, they were killed first, not burned alive. Consider whether or not you need to make that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "and he killed them and offered them as burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar." or "and he killed them and burned their bodies on the altar as gifts to Yahweh to honor him."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 8:21 (#1)

**"And Yahweh smelled the pleasant aroma"**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh smelled the sweet smell of the sacrifices," or "When Yahweh smelled the aroma of the sacrifices, he was pleased,"

### Genesis 8:21 (#2)

**"and Yahweh said in his heart"**

Consider whether or not your language has this idiom or a similar idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: "so he said to himself,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 8:21 (#3)

**"Never again will I curse the ground"**

Make sure that your translation of **curse** does not imply the use of magic. Alternate translation: "I will never again curse the earth"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 8:21 (#4)

**"because of mankind"**

Alternate translation: "to punish mankind for their sins,"

### Genesis 8:21 (#5)

**"though the inclination of mankind's hearts {is} evil"**

See how you translated **inclination** in a similar phrase in Gen 6:5. Alternate translation: "even though the desires of their hearts are evil" or "even though everything they desire is evil"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 8:21 (#6)

**"from their youth"**

Alternate translation: "from youth onward." or "from the time they are young"

### Genesis 8:21 (#7)

**"And never again will I"**

Alternate translation: "I will never again" or "Nor will I ever again"

### Genesis 8:21 (#8)

**"strike"**

Consider whether your language has this idiom or a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: "kill"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 8:21 (#9)

**"every living {thing}"**

Alternate translation: "every living creature" or "all living things"

### Genesis 8:21 (#10)

**"as I have done"**

Alternate translation: "as I just did."

**Genesis 8:22 (#1)****"While all of the days of the earth continue"**

Alternate translation: "As long as the earth still lasts,"

**Genesis 8:22 (#2)****"seed time"**

Alternate translation: "seed-planting time" or "the time for planting seeds"

**Genesis 8:22 (#3)****"and harvest"**

Alternate translation: "and harvest time" or "the time for gathering crops"

**Genesis 8:22 (#4)****"and cold and heat"**

These terms form a parallelism with **summer and winter**. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation since each part has a different emphasis. Alternate translation: "cold season and hot season,"

See: Parallelism

**Genesis 8:22 (#5)****"and summer and winter"**

The seasons of summer and winter may be described differently depending on which part of the world your language area is located in. For example, some translations might use the terms "dry season" and "rainy/wet season," depending on what best corresponds to summer and winter in that area.

**Genesis 8:22 (#6)****"will not cease"**

It may be more natural to change the order of this sentence and say, "As long as the earth exists, each year there will always be a season/time to plant

seeds and a season/time to harvest crops, as well as cold weather and hot weather, winter and summer, and day and night." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "will never stop." or "will always continue to occur each year."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 9:1 (#1)****"Then God blessed Noah and his sons"**

See how you translated **blessed** in Gen 1:22, 28. Alternate translation: "Then God showed favor to Noah and his sons" or "Then God caused Noah and his sons to flourish"

**Genesis 9:1 (#2)****"and said to them"**

The phrase "blessed ... and said" is a Hebrew expression that refers to one event and emphasizes it. It does not refer to two separate events. The words of the blessing are in verses 1–7. See how you translated this phrase in Gen 1:28. Alternate translation: "He said,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 9:1 (#3)****"Be fruitful"**

Alternate translation: "Bear many children" or "You will bear many children"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 9:1 (#4)****"and multiply"**

See how you translated "be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth" in Gen 1:28. Alternate translation: "so that you and your descendants will increase greatly in number" or "so that you and your descendants will become very many"

See: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

**Genesis 9:1 (#5)****"and fill the earth"**

Alternate translation: "and fill the earth with people." or "and inhabit the whole earth." or "and live all over the world."

**Genesis 9:2 (#1)****"And the fear of you and the dread of you will be on every living thing of the earth"**

The phrase "the fear ... and the dread" repeats the same idea in two different ways to emphasize how afraid the creatures will be. For some languages it may be better to combine the phrase and say "very afraid/terrified". Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Every living thing on the earth will be afraid and terrified of you," or "All the animals on earth will be very afraid of you,"

See: Doublet

**Genesis 9:2 (#2)****"including on every bird of"**

The birds, moving creatures, and fish are all included in the general category of living creatures. Consider again how you translated "birds of the sky" in the book of Genesis; see Gen 1:26, 28, 30; 2:19-20; 6:7; 7:3, 23; 9:2. Alternate translation: "including every bird that flies in the air," or "including all the birds that fly in the sky"

**Genesis 9:2 (#3)****"on everything that moves"**

Alternate translation: "along with every animal that lives on land" or "as well as all animals that live on land,"

**Genesis 9:2 (#4)****"and on all the fish of the sea"**

Alternate translation: "and all the fish in the sea"

**Genesis 9:2 (#5)****"Into your hand they are given"**

The phrase "into your hand" means God was again giving mankind the responsibility to manage and control all the rest of what God had created. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: "I have put you in charge of them all."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 9:3 (#1)****"Every moving creature that lives"**

See how you translated "every moving creature" in Gen 1:26, and see the note about that there. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways in different contexts. Alternate translation: "From now on every kind of living thing that moves" or "From now on every animal that is alive and moves"

**Genesis 9:3 (#2)****"will be for you for food"**

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of this sentence and say, "You may now have/eat any kind of living creature that moves, for food." or "I now permit you to eat every/any kind of living creature that moves." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "is available for you to eat as food."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 9:3 (#3)****"Just as the green plants"**

Consider again how you translated **green plants** in Gen 1:30, and how you translated **plants** in Gen 1:11-12, 29; 2:5; 3:18; 9:3. Alternate translation: "plants to eat,"

**Genesis 9:3 (#4)****"I give you everything"**

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase means that God is now permitting people to eat

both plants and animals. Alternate translation: “now I give you everything for food.” or “so now I permit you to eat everything.” or “so now I permit you to eat both plants and animals.”

## Genesis 9:4 (#1)

**"But"**

God is putting a limit on the way that people may eat meat.

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

## Genesis 9:4 (#2)

**"you must not eat flesh"**

Alternate translation: “you must never eat animal flesh”

## Genesis 9:4 (#3)

**"with its life, {that is,} its blood"**

Since life is in the blood, God did not want people to eat meat that still had its blood in it. Rather he wanted them to drain it out first before they cooked it (also see Deuteronomy 12:16, 23). You could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: “that still has its life in it, which is in its blood.” or “with its blood in it, which made it live.” or “that still has its lifeblood in it.”

## Genesis 9:5 (#1)

**"And surely I will demand your blood for your lives"**

Alternate translation: “Also, I will definitely require an accounting for your lifeblood.”

## Genesis 9:5 (#2)

**"From the hand of every living thing"**

In this verse, the phrase **the hand of** refers to the animal or the person that is responsible for killing someone. Alternate translation: “From any animal that kills a person”

See: Synecdoche

## Genesis 9:5 (#3)

**"I will demand it"**

Alternate translation: “I will demand its blood” or “I require it to be killed,” or “I demand that it must die,”

## Genesis 9:5 (#4)

**"and from the hand of mankind"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “and that is also true for human beings.”

## Genesis 9:5 (#5)

**"from the hand of a man {who kills}"**

Alternate translation: “If a man kills” or “If anyone kills”

## Genesis 9:5 (#6)

**"his brother"**

This phrase is used here as a general reference to any human being, not just biological brothers. Alternate translation: “a fellow human being,”

See: Synecdoche

## Genesis 9:5 (#7)

**"I will demand the life of the man"**

Alternate translation: “I require him to be executed” or “I demand that he must die.”

## Genesis 9:6 (#1)

**"The one shedding"**

The first half of verse 6 repeats and summarizes verse 5. Alternate translation: “Yes if anyone”

**Genesis 9:6 (#2)****"The one shedding the blood of"**

The first half of verse 6 repeats and summarizes verse 5. The phrase "sheds the blood of" is an idiom that means to deliberately kill someone. Blood is an important concept in this passage and throughout the Bible so, if possible, it is best to keep this term in a translation. If that is not possible, you should put the literal text in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Yes if anyone kills" or "Whoever takes the life of"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 9:6 (#3)****"a man"**

Alternate translation: "a person," or "another human being," or "someone,"

**Genesis 9:6 (#4)****"by mankind his blood must be shed"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "That's right, you must put to death anyone who murders a human being, because I, God, made human beings in my own image." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "people must execute him," or "people must put him to death," or "he must be executed,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 9:6 (#5)****""because in the image of God"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself in this clause. See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 1:27. Alternate translation: "because I, God made people in my own image." or "because I created human beings to be like myself."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 9:7 (#1)****"And you"**

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic and has an emphatic position in the sentence (before the verb) to introduce a new topic. Consider what is the best way in your language to begin a new paragraph like this. Alternate translation: "And as for you," or "As for you,"

**Genesis 9:7 (#2)****"be fruitful"**

See how you translated **be fruitful and multiply** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "bear many children"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 9:7 (#3)****"and multiply"**

Alternate translation: "so that you and your descendants become very many." or "so that you have many descendants."

**Genesis 9:7 (#4)****"Abound on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "Live all over the earth"

**Genesis 9:7 (#5)****"and multiply"**

Alternate translation: "and increase in numbers"

**Genesis 9:7 (#6)****"on it"**

Alternate translation: "throughout it."

**Genesis 9:8 (#1)****"Then God said"**

Alternate translation: "Then God continued speaking"

**Genesis 9:8 (#2)****"to Noah and to his sons with him, saying"**

God is still speaking to the same people. This phrase emphasizes what he says next to them. Alternate translation: "to Noah and his sons who were with him, and said," or "to them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 9:9 (#1)****"And I, behold, I"**

See how you translated **behold** in Gen 1:29, 4:14, 6:13, 17. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "Now listen carefully to me: I"

**Genesis 9:9 (#2)****"am establishing"**

See how you translated "establish my covenant with" in Gen 6:18, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "am instituting" or "am setting up"

**Genesis 9:9 (#3)****"my covenant with you and with your offspring after you"**

Notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural throughout verses 2–15, since God is speaking to Noah and his sons. Alternate translation: "my special agreement with you and your descendants who come after you," or "my covenant between me and you and your offspring"

**Genesis 9:10 (#1)****"and with"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to break up this long sentence and begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "along with" or "The covenant is also with"

**Genesis 9:10 (#2)****"and with every living thing of the earth"**

Alternate translation: "and all the other living things on the earth" or "and all the wild animals"

**Genesis 9:10 (#3)****"from all that came out of the ark"**

The words "from ... to ..." are used to emphasize that all the animals are included in God's covenant. Consider what is the best way to express that in your language. Alternate translation: "That includes all those that went out of the ark"

**Genesis 9:10 (#4)****"to every living thing"**

Alternate translation: "and all the living things" or "and all the animals"

**Genesis 9:10 (#5)****"of the earth"**

Alternate translation: "that live on the earth."

**Genesis 9:11 (#1)****"And I am establishing my covenant with you"**

See how you translated **my covenant** and "establish" in verse 9. Alternate translation: "The covenant that I am making with you is that"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 9:11 (#2)****"that never again" - "all flesh"**

The phrase **all flesh** refers here to all people and animals. Alternate translation: "never again will all life" or "never again will all living creatures"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 9:11 (#3)****"will" - "be cut off"**

Alternate translation: "be killed by" or "be wiped out by"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 9:11 (#4)****"by the waters of a flood"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 7:10. Alternate translation: "water from a flood,"

**Genesis 9:11 (#5)****"and never again will there be a flood"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "I promise that I will never again use a flood"

**Genesis 9:11 (#6)****"to destroy"**

See how you translated "destroying" in Gen 6:13. Alternate translation: "that destroys"

**Genesis 9:11 (#7)****"the earth"**

This phrase refers here to everything that lives on the earth. Alternate translation: "life on the earth." or "all living creatures on the earth."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 9:12 (#1)****"Then God said"**

God is still talking to the same people, but a quote margin (**Then God said**) is added here to emphasize the new topic (**the sign of the covenant**). For some languages it is more natural to leave this quote margin implied and just have a paragraph break. See what you did for a similar case in verse 8. Alternate translation: "Then God

also said to them," or "Then God added" or "Then God continued talking to Noah and his sons,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 9:12 (#2)****"This {is} the sign of the covenant that I am making"**

Alternate translation: "This is the sign which shows that I promise to always keep the covenant that I am making" or "This is how I will remind everyone that I have made this covenant"

**Genesis 9:12 (#3)****"for generations forever"**

Alternate translation: "for all future generations:" or "and with all generations to come:" or "as well as with all the people and creatures that will ever live:"

**Genesis 9:13 (#1)****"I have set my rainbow"**

Alternate translation: "I have put my rainbow" or "I am placing my rainbow"

**Genesis 9:13 (#2)****"and it will be the sign of"**

See how you translated **the sign of the covenant** in verse 12. Alternate translation: "where it will show everyone" or "to show everyone" or "and it will serve as the sign which shows"

**Genesis 9:13 (#3)****"the covenant between me and"**

Alternate translation: "that I have made my covenant with" or "that I pledge to always keep my covenant with"

**Genesis 9:13 (#4)****"the earth"**

This phrase refers here to mankind and all the animals. See how you translated the same phrase in verse 11. Alternate translation: "every living thing on the earth."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 9:14 (#1)****"And it will be when I bring clouds"**

Alternate translation: "So it will happen that whenever I bring clouds together" or "So whenever I cause clouds to appear"

**Genesis 9:14 (#2)****"over the earth"**

Alternate translation: "in the sky over the earth"

**Genesis 9:14 (#3)****"and the rainbow is seen in the clouds"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active verb here. Alternate translation: "and a rainbow forms among the clouds," or "and you see a rainbow among the clouds,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 9:15 (#1)****"then I will remember my covenant"**

See how you translated **remember** in Gen 8:1. It may need to be translated differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: "then I will remember and keep my covenant" or "then I will not forget to keep my treaty"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 9:15 (#2)****"that {is} between me and you"**

Alternate translation: "that I have made between me and you" or "that I have made with you"

**Genesis 9:15 (#3)****"and every living creature of all flesh"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "and all living creatures of every kind," or "and all the animals, including all the different kinds," or (2) "and all other living creatures, including all people and animals,"

**Genesis 9:15 (#4)****"and never again will waters become a flood to destroy"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this last clause in verse 15 is what God promised in his covenant. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "that never again will there be a flood that destroys" or "I vow that never again will I use a flood to destroy"

**Genesis 9:15 (#5)****"all flesh"**

Alternate translation: "all life." or "all people and animals."

**Genesis 9:16 (#1)****"So the rainbow will be"**

In verse 16, God repeats and emphasizes what he said in verses 12–15. Alternate translation: "So whenever a rainbow forms" or "That is how it will be: Whenever there is a rainbow"

**Genesis 9:16 (#2)****"in the clouds"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 13 and 14. Alternate translation: "among the clouds,"



**Genesis 9:16 (#3)****"and I will see it"**

Alternate translation: "I will look at it"

**Genesis 9:16 (#4)****"to remember"**

See how you translated **remember** in verse 15.  
 Alternate translation: "and fulfill" or "and not forget to keep"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 9:16 (#5)****"the everlasting covenant"**

Alternate translation: "my permanent covenant" or  
 "my covenant that lasts forever" or "my covenant  
 that never ends"

**Genesis 9:16 (#6)****"between God and"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is  
 referring to himself here. Alternate translation:  
 "between me and" or "which I have made with"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 9:16 (#7)****"every living creature, with all flesh"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15 and  
 how you translated **every living creature** in  
 verses 10 and 12. Alternate translation: "all living  
 beings of every kind"

**Genesis 9:16 (#8)****"that {is} on the earth"**

Alternate translation: "that are on the earth." or  
 "that live in the world."

**Genesis 9:17 (#1)****"Then God said to Noah"**

Alternate translation: "Finally, God said to Noah,"  
 or "Then God finished by saying to Noah,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 9:17 (#2)****"the sign of the covenant that I have established"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 12.  
 In that verse God is explaining the rainbow for the  
 first time, whereas here in verse 17, he is pointing  
 back to what he just said about the rainbow in  
 order to emphasize its importance. Also, consider  
 again how you translated **covenant** in verses 9,  
 11–13, 15–17. Alternate translation: "the sign  
 which shows that I promise to always keep the  
 covenant that I am making" or "what I will use to  
 show everyone that I have made this treaty"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 9:17 (#3)****"all flesh that {is} on the earth"**

Consider again how you translated **all flesh** when  
 it includes people and animals. See Gen 6:12–13,  
 17; 7:21; 9:11, 15–17. It may be necessary to  
 translate this phrase in different ways in different  
 contexts. Alternate translation: "all living  
 creatures" or "all the people and creatures that are  
 on the earth."

**Genesis 9:18 (#1)****"the ark"**

Be consistent here with how you translated  
 "ark/boat" in chapters 6–8, and see the note about  
 this at Gen 6:14. Alternate translation: "who went  
 out from the ark after the flood" or "who  
 disembarked from ..." or "who got off ..."

**Genesis 9:18 (#2)****"And" - "were Shem and Ham and Japheth"**

Consider what is the best way to list names in your language.

### Genesis 9:18 (#3)

**"and Ham, he"**

The pronoun **he** is emphatic here, emphasizing that Ham was the father of Canaan, who is probably mentioned here because he was well known as the ancestor of the Canaanites and the one whom the land/region of Canaan was named after. Alternate translation: "Ham was the one who"

### Genesis 9:18 (#4)

**"was} the father of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "fathered Canaan."

### Genesis 9:20 (#1)

**"Now Noah, a man of the soil, began and planted"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce or begin a new episode here. The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "who was a farmer, began/started farming and planted" or "who was a farmer, was the first man/person to plant" or (2) "began to be a farmer and planted" or "became a farmer and planted" Alternate translation: "Now later on, Noah,"

### Genesis 9:20 (#2)

**"a vineyard"**

It is implied that Noah made wine from the grapes (verse 21). If necessary, you could make that explicit here. Also, if grapes are not known in your language area, you could say "vines/plants with a fruit called grapes", or you could put in a footnote information about grapes, including how they are squeezed and how the juice is fermented to make wine. Alternate translation: "some grapevines and made wine from the grapes." or "a field with grapevines. And he made wine from the grapes."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 9:21 (#1)

**"Then he drank some of the wine"**

Alternate translation: "One day he drank a lot of the wine,"

### Genesis 9:21 (#2)

**"and he became drunk, and he uncovered himself"**

It is implied from verse 24 that Noah had fallen asleep. Alternate translation: "so that he became so intoxicated that he fell asleep uncovered"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 9:21 (#3)

**"inside his tent"**

See how you translated **tent** in Gen 4:20.

### Genesis 9:22 (#1)

**"the nakedness of his father"**

Alternate translation: "that his father was uncovered,"

### Genesis 9:22 (#2)

**"and he told his two brothers outside"**

Alternate translation: "and he went out and told his two brothers that their father was drunk and naked."

### Genesis 9:23 (#1)

**"But Shem and Japheth took"**

Alternate translation: "Then Shem and Japheth took"

### Genesis 9:23 (#2)

**"a garment"**

This garment would have probably been fairly large, big enough to cover Noah's body. Alternate translation: "a cloak,"

### Genesis 9:23 (#3)

**"and laid it across the shoulders of the two of them"**

Alternate translation: "put it between them over their shoulders"

### Genesis 9:23 (#4)

**"and walked backward"**

Alternate translation: "and went backward into the tent"

### Genesis 9:23 (#5)

**"and covered the nakedness of their father"**

Alternate translation: "and used it to cover their naked father."

### Genesis 9:23 (#6)

**"And their faces were turned away"**

Alternate translation: "As they did that, they kept their eyes looking away from him," or "As they did that, they looked away from him,"

### Genesis 9:23 (#7)

**"so that they did not see the nakedness of their father"**

Consider whether it is better here in your language to refer to Noah with a noun phrase or a pronoun. Alternate translation: "so that they did not see his nakedness." or "so that they did not see him naked."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 9:24 (#1)

**"Then Noah woke up"**

Alternate translation: "Later he woke up"

### Genesis 9:24 (#2)

**"from his wine"**

Alternate translation: "sober from the effects of the wine," or "sober,"

### Genesis 9:24 (#3)

**"and he learned"**

The text does not say how Noah found out about this, so it is best to not be too specific about that here in your translation. Alternate translation: "and he heard about"

### Genesis 9:24 (#4)

**"what his youngest son had done to him"**

Alternate translation: "that his youngest son Ham had disrespected him,"

### Genesis 9:25 (#1)

**"and he said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "So he exclaimed about Ham,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 9:25 (#2)

**"Cursed be"**

Alternate translation: "I hereby ask God to curse" or "May God curse"

### Genesis 9:25 (#3)

**"Canaan"**

In verses 25–27, Canaan probably represents Ham and all of Ham's descendants (the Canaanites), who will serve Shem and Japheth and all their descendants. You could put that information in a footnote.

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 9:25 (#4)****"He will be"**

Alternate translation: "I proclaim that he will be"

**Genesis 9:25 (#5)****"a slave of slaves"**

The Hebrew word here can mean either **slave** or "servant". Slaves in the Old Testament were usually treated well and were not much different than servants, sometimes even becoming like members of their owner's family. But they were of lower status than their masters, which is part of how Ham's family is being cursed. Alternate translation: "the lowest slave"

**Genesis 9:25 (#6)****"for his brothers"**

Verses 26 and 27 show that **his brothers** probably refers here to Shem and Japheth (who were Canaan's uncles) and their descendants.

**Genesis 9:26 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "Then he also said," or "He also said,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 9:26 (#2)****"Praised be Yahweh"**

Although many English translations have "Blessed be" here instead of "Praised be," the word used in the Hebrew text means "praise" when people are acting towards God (as here), and it means "bless" when God is acting towards people (as in Gen 1:28; 5:2; 9:1). Alternate translation: "I praise Yahweh,"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 9:26 (#3)****"the God of Shem"**

Alternate translation: "who is the God whom Shem worships"

**Genesis 9:26 (#4)****"And may Canaan be"**

Alternate translation: "May he cause Canaan to be" or "May he make Canaan" or "I ask him to make Canaan"

**Genesis 9:26 (#5)****"a slave for him"**

Alternate translation: "a servant for him"

**Genesis 9:27 (#1)****"May God enlarge Japheth"**

In this context, **Japheth** refers to the territory or land where he lived. Alternate translation: "... give Japheth more land,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 9:27 (#2)****"and may he live"**

Alternate translation: "and enable him and his family to live"

**Genesis 9:27 (#3)****"in the tents of Shem"**

Alternate translation: "together in harmony with Shem and his family" or "peacefully among Shem and his family"

**Genesis 9:27 (#4)****"And may Canaan be"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 26. Alternate translation: "I also ask God to make Canaan" or "Canaan will also be"

### Genesis 9:27 (#5)

#### "a slave for him"

Compare how you translated **slave** or "servant" in verses 25–27. Alternate translation: "a servant for him"

### Genesis 9:28 (#1)

#### "after the flood"

Notice that this phrase refers to when the flood began, when Noah was 600 years old (Gen 7:6), not when it ended a year later, when he was 601 years old (8:13), since he was 950 when he died (verse 29), not 951. Alternate translation: "After the time that the flood began," or "From the beginning of the flood,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 9:28 (#2)

#### "And" - "Noah lived 350 years"

Alternate translation: "Noah lived 350 more years."

### Genesis 9:29 (#1)

#### "So all the days of Noah were"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated Gen 5:31, which is similar to 9:29. Alternate translation: "so that Noah lived a total of 950 years," or "So all together Noah lived 950 years,"

### Genesis 9:29 (#2)

#### "and he died"

Alternate translation: "and then he died."

### Genesis 10:1 (#1)

#### "Now these {are} the generations of"

This sentence begins a new section. Alternate translation: "Here is the list of the names of"

### Genesis 10:1 (#2)

#### "the sons of Noah: Shem, Ham, and Japheth"

Give special attention to the best way in your language to spell all the names in this chapter.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 10:1 (#3)

#### "and sons were born to them"

The following record includes the names of Noah's sons and grandsons and their descendants (including some of the people groups who came from them). Alternate translation: "and their sons and other descendants who were born" or "and the sons they had"

### Genesis 10:1 (#4)

#### "after the flood"

Alternate translation: "after the flood was gone."

### Genesis 10:2 (#1)

#### "The sons of Japheth {were}"

Throughout this chapter, many translations have a colon (:) instead of **were**. Do what is best in your language.

### Genesis 10:2 (#2)

#### "Gomer and Magog and Madai and Javan and Tubal and Meshech and Tiras"

Translate the lists of names in this chapter in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Jubal, Meshech, and Tiras."

**Genesis 10:3 (#1)****"Ashkenaz and Riphath and Togarmah"**

Alternate translation: "named Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah."

**Genesis 10:4 (#1)****"And the sons of Javan {were}"**

Compare how you translated a similar clause in verses 2 and 3.

**Genesis 10:4 (#2)****"Elishah and Tarshish"**

These are the names of Javan's sons, but the next two names are the names of people groups that descended from him. Alternate translation: "named Elishah and Tarshish, and he was the ancestor of"

**Genesis 10:4 (#3)****"the Kittim and the Dodanim"**

Most translation teams transliterate people group names in the Bible, but handle the suffix endings in different ways. For example, you could: (1) transliterate the Hebrew plural suffix "-im"; or (2) use a suffix that your language has for names of people groups (such as "-ites" in English); or (3) translate "-im" as "people" or "people/ethnic group." Try to be consistent in how you handle people group names throughout this chapter and the rest of the book of Genesis. Alternate translation: "the Kitt people group and the Dodan people group."

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 10:5 (#1)****"From those"**

This phrase probably refers to Japheth's descendants (verses 2–4), especially since the descendants of his brothers Ham (verse 20) and Shem (verse 31) are summarized in a similar way.

**Genesis 10:5 (#2)****"the coastland peoples spread out"**

Alternate translation: "came the people groups who lived in regions beside the Mediterranean Sea. They moved to different places and settled"

**Genesis 10:5 (#3)****"into their lands"**

Alternate translation: "in their own regions,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 10:5 (#4)****"each with its own language"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to break up this long sentence and start a new sentence here (or later in this verse). Alternate translation: "They all spoke their own languages,"

**Genesis 10:5 (#5)****"according to their clans"**

The word "clan" refers to a group of families who are descended from a common ancestor. Alternate translation: "and each of them lived in their own extended families," or "They each had their own family groups,"

**Genesis 10:5 (#6)****"in their nations"**

The word **nations** refers here to people groups, not countries. Also, for some languages it may be clearer to change the order of the phrases in this verse and say, "Japheth's descendants spread out and settled near/by the Mediterranean Sea. They all formed their own family groups, which grew/multiplied and became their own people groups that spoke their own languages and lived in their own territories/regions." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and they formed their own people groups." or "which grew and became their own distinct ethnic groups."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 10:8 (#1)****"Cush also fathered Nimrod"**

See how you translated **fathered** in Gen 6:10, and how you translated a phrase in 10:1 ("were born to") that has a similar meaning. Alternate translation: "Cush also fathered a son named Nimrod,"

**Genesis 10:8 (#2)****"who began to be"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "who was the first person/man/one to be" or (2) "who became"

**Genesis 10:8 (#3)****"mighty"**

There were other mighty men before Nimrod, but apparently he was the first one to have a kingdom (verse 10). Alternate translation: "a powerful warrior" or "a powerful king"

**Genesis 10:8 (#4)****"on the earth"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, "who was the first person/man on earth to be/become a powerful ruler/warrior." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "in the world."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 10:9 (#1)****"He was a mighty hunter"**

Alternate translation: "Nimrod was also a excellent hunter"

**Genesis 10:9 (#2)****"before Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "whom Yahweh helped." or "because Yahweh helped him."

**Genesis 10:9 (#3)****"it is said"**

This phrase indicates that what follows was a well-known saying that was used by people to praise or compliment other great men by comparing them to Nimrod. Alternate translation: "we have the saying about other great men:"

**Genesis 10:9 (#4)****"Like Nimrod"**

Alternate translation: "So and so is like Nimrod,"

**Genesis 10:9 (#5)****"He was a mighty hunter"**

Alternate translation: "Nimrod was also a excellent hunter"

**Genesis 10:9 (#6)****"before Yahweh"**

Be consistent here with how you translated this phrase earlier in verse 9. Alternate translation: "whom Yahweh helped." or "because Yahweh helped him."

**Genesis 10:10 (#1)****"And the beginning of his kingdom was"**

Alternate translation: "He started ruling as king over" or "The first cities that Nimrod ruled as king were"

**Genesis 10:10 (#2)****"in the land of Shinar"**

Shinar is another name for the land/country of Babylonia. You could put that information in a

footnote. Alternate translation: “which were all located in the land called Shinar.”

### Genesis 10:11 (#1)

#### "From that land"

Alternate translation: “From that region” or “From the land of Shinar”

### Genesis 10:11 (#2)

#### "he went to Asshur"

See how you translated “the land/region of/called Asshur/Assyria” in Gen 2:14. Alternate translation: “he moved to the land called Asshur”

### Genesis 10:11 (#3)

#### "and he built"

Alternate translation: “and there he built”

### Genesis 10:12 (#1)

#### "and Resen, between Nineveh and Calah, which {is} the great city"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “and Resen, which is located between the cities of Nineveh and the great city of Calah.” or (2) “and Resen, which is the great city located between the cities of Nineveh and Calah.”

### Genesis 10:13 (#1)

#### "And Mizraim fathered"

Alternate translation: “Mizraim was the father of”

### Genesis 10:13 (#2)

#### "the Ludim and the Anamim and the Lehabim and the Naphtuhim"

Throughout verses 13–18, translate the names of people groups in a way that is clear and natural in your language. See what you did in verse 4. Also consider what is the best way in your language to

list the names in these verses. Some languages use a conjunction (like **and**) between names, while other languages only use a conjunction before the last name in the list, with commas between the other names.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 10:14 (#1)

#### "and the Pathrusim and the Casluhim (whom the Philistim came from) and the Caphtorim"

Alternate translation: “Pathrusites, Casluhites (whom the Philistines came from), and Caphtorites.” or “Pathrusites, Casluhites, and Caphtorites. The Philistines came from the Casluhites.”

### Genesis 10:15 (#1)

#### "And Canaan fathered"

See how you translated **fathered** in verses 8 and 13.

### Genesis 10:15 (#2)

#### "then Heth"

Canaan’s son Heth was the ancestor of the Hittites, so some translations use “Hittites” here instead and say, “He was also the ancestor of the Hittites,” Alternate translation: “then he had a son named Heth,”

### Genesis 10:16 (#1)

#### "and the Jebusites and the Amorites and the Girgashites"

In verses 16–18, the people group names are singular collective nouns in Hebrew (in contrast to the people group names in verses 4, 13–14 that are plural nouns). Most English versions translate these names with a plural “-ites” suffix so that it is clear that these names refer to more than one person. Alternate translation: “and Canaan was also the ancestor of the Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites,”



**Genesis 10:18 (#1)****"And afterward"**

Alternate translation: "As time went by,"

**Genesis 10:18 (#2)****"scattered"**

Alternate translation: "moved to different places,"

**Genesis 10:19 (#1)****"so the border{s} of the Canaanites were"**

Alternate translation: "and eventually the borders of their land extended" or "so that eventually the land where they lived extended"

**Genesis 10:19 (#2)****"from Sidon"**

Some languages have an affix or a word (that means "city") that must be used every time the name of a city is mentioned or the first time a particular city is mentioned in a paragraph or section. Do what is natural in your language here and elsewhere throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: "from Sidon City in the north,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 10:19 (#3)****"then} you go toward Gerar as far as Gaza"**

The Canaanites' border reached Gaza, but did not extend down to Gerar, which was farther south. Alternate translation: "all the way down toward the city of Gerar to the city of Gaza," or "down to Gaza City, which is on the road to Gerar City,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 10:19 (#4)****"as far as Lasha"**

Alternate translation: "until you reach Lasha City."

**Genesis 10:20 (#1)****"Those {are}"**

The word **Those** refers back to the people listed in verses 6–19. Also, many translations that use "were" (and other past tense verbs) in verses 2–19 and 21–30 use **are** here (and in verses 31 and 32). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Those are the names of" or "Those men are"

**Genesis 10:20 (#2)****"the sons of Ham"**

Alternate translation: "the descendants of Ham"

**Genesis 10:20 (#3)****"according to their clans"**

See how you translated **clans** in verse 5. Alternate translation: "according to their family groups," or "and each one had his own clan" or "and their extended families,"

**Genesis 10:20 (#4)****"according to their languages, in their lands, in their nations"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated verse 5, which has some of the same phrases as verse 20. Alternate translation: "Each family spoke its own language and lived in its own territory and eventually became its own people group." or "Each family multiplied and established its own ethnic group that had its own language and lived in its own region."

**Genesis 10:21 (#1)****"And sons were also born to Shem"**

In the Hebrew text, **to Shem** comes first in this sentence after **And**, to emphasize Shem. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Shem also fathered some sons"

**Genesis 10:21 (#2)****"and the brother of Japheth the elder"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean:  
 (1) "and his/Shem's older brother was Japheth."  
 (2) "and he/Shem was Japheth's older/oldest brother."

**Genesis 10:22 (#1)****"Elam and Asshur and Arpachshad and Lud and Aram"**

The name **Arpachshad** is spelled as "Arphaxad" in many translations. Also, see how you spelled **Lud** in verse 13 (who is a different person with the same name). Be consistent with how you spell each name throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: "Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud and Aram."

**Genesis 10:23 (#1)****"Uz and Hul and Gether and Mash"**

The same person who is called **Mash** here, is referred to as "Meshech/Meshek" in 1 Chronicles 1:17. To prevent confusion, some translations use "Meshech/Meshek" here too, or they put that name in a footnote.

**Genesis 10:24 (#1)****"And Arpachshad fathered Shelah"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled "Arpachshad/Arphaxad" in verse 22. Alternate translation: "Arphaxad had a son named Shelah,"

**Genesis 10:24 (#2)****"then Shelah fathered Eber"**

Alternate translation: "and Shelah had a son named Eber."

**Genesis 10:25 (#1)****"Then two sons were born to Eber"**

Alternate translation: "Then Eber fathered two sons."

**Genesis 10:25 (#2)****"The name of the one {was}"**

Alternate translation: "The name of the first son was" or "The first son was named"

**Genesis 10:25 (#3)****"Peleg"**

You can put the meaning of Peleg's name in the text or in a footnote, so that it is clear why he was given his name. See what you did for a similar case (Noah's name) in Gen 5:29.

**Genesis 10:25 (#4)****"the earth was divided"**

This phrase refers to the people on the earth and implies that they scattered and lived all over the earth (as specified in Gen 11:8). Alternate translation: "the people on the earth separated into separate groups and scattered everywhere."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 10:25 (#5)****"And the name of his brother {was} Joktan"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to in this sentence, especially after reading the previous two sentences.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 10:26 (#1)****"And Joktan fathered"**

Notice that the list of Joktan's sons continues through verse 29. Alternate translation: "Joktan fathered sons named" or "Joktan had the following sons:"

**Genesis 10:29 (#1)****"and Ophir and Havilah and Jobab"**

Consider again how you translated lists of names throughout chapter 10.

### Genesis 10:29 (#2)

**"All those {were}"**

Alternate translation: "All those were the names of" or "All those men were"

### Genesis 10:30 (#1)

**"And their dwelling was"**

Alternate translation: "Their dwelling place" or "Their region" or "The area where they and their descendants lived"

### Genesis 10:30 (#2)

**"And" - "was from Mesha"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 19. Alternate translation: "extended from the city of Mesha in the west,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 10:30 (#3)

**"then} you go to Sephar"**

Alternate translation: "as far as"

### Genesis 10:30 (#4)

**"to Sephar"**

Sephar might refer to a city, a mountain, or a region (that was named after the city or mountain). Alternate translation: "the town of Sephar, which is in"

### Genesis 10:30 (#5)

**"the mountain{s} of the east"**

The word **mountains** is ambiguous in the Hebrew text. It can be: (1) a collective noun that refers to mountains or hill country near the town of Sephar; or (2) a singular noun that refers to a specific

mountain that was called Sephar. Alternate translation: "the mountain range that is in the east." or "the eastern hill country."

### Genesis 10:31 (#1)

**"Those {are}"**

The word **Those** refers here to the people listed in verses 21–30. See how you translated verse 20, which is almost exactly the same as verse 31. Alternate translation: "Those are the names of" or "Those men are"

### Genesis 10:31 (#2)

**"the sons of Shem"**

Alternate translation: "the descendants of Shem"

### Genesis 10:31 (#3)

**"according to their clans"**

See how you translated **clans** in verses 5 and 20. Alternate translation: "and each one had his own clan"

### Genesis 10:31 (#4)

**"according to their languages, in their lands, according to their nations"**

Alternate translation: "Each family spoke its own language and lived in its own territory, and eventually became its own people group." or "Each family multiplied and established its own ethnic group that had its own language and lived in its own territory."

### Genesis 10:32 (#1)

**"Those {are} the clans of the sons of Noah"**

The word **Those** refers here to everyone who is listed in verses 2–31. Consider again how you translated **clans** in verses 5, 18, 29, 31–32.

**Genesis 10:32 (#2)****"according to their generations, in their nations"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, compare how you translated similar phrases in verses 5, 20, and 31. Alternate translation: "Each clan had its own genealogy and became its own ethnic group."

**Genesis 10:32 (#3)****"And from those the nations spread out on the earth after the flood"**

Consider again how you translated **nations** in verses 5, 20, 31–32. Alternate translation: "From those people came all the ethnic groups who spread out over the earth after the flood."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 11:1 (#1)****"Now the whole earth had one language"**

The events in chapter 11:1–9 happened before the people listed in chapter 10 had their own languages and before they spread out over the earth (Gen 10:5, 19–20, 30–32). You could include some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Now at first, everyone on the earth shared the same language" or "Now for a while, all the people on the earth spoke one language"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 11:1 (#2)****"and the same words"**

The phrases **one language** and **the same words** are very similar in meaning and emphasize the fact that everyone spoke the same language. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "and shared the same vocabulary." or "and spoke words everyone knew"

See: Doublet

**Genesis 11:2 (#1)****"And it happened"**

The phrase "it happened that" introduces an important event and helps create suspense so that readers will wonder what the outcome will be. Some translations omit this phrase because it is not natural in their language. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "After a while, as" or "When"

See: Introduction of a New Event

**Genesis 11:2 (#2)****"as they migrated"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a pronoun (**they**) or a noun phrase ("the people") here. Alternate translation: "they traveled" or "the people moved"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 11:2 (#3)****"from the east"**

At first after the flood, people lived in the regions around the mountains of Ararat (where the ark had landed). As they began to migrate and spread out to different places (as God had told them to do), they must have headed south at some point since they ended up at the plain of Shinar, which was south of where the Ararat Mountains were. The reference to **the east** probably reflects the viewpoint of the author (Moses), since the Ararat mountains and the plain of Shinar were both far to the east of where he was living. Alternate translation: "around in the eastern regions,"

**Genesis 11:2 (#4)****"that they found"**

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with the way you translated the first half of this verse. Alternate translation: "they discovered" or "they eventually came to"

**Genesis 11:2 (#5)****"a plain in the land of Shinar"**

This plain was a wide, flat area between mountains. Also be consistent here with how you translated **land of Shinar** in Gen 10:10. Alternate translation: "a wide flat area in the land called Shinar"

**Genesis 11:2 (#6)****"and settled there"**

Alternate translation: "and lived there." or "and began to live there."

**Genesis 11:3 (#1)****"Then they said to each other"**

The events that are described below probably did not happen immediately after they arrived at the plain. Consider what is the best way to begin these events in your language. Alternate translation: "Then one day they urged each other,"

See: Introduction of a New Event

**Genesis 11:3 (#2)****"Come"**

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom like this that is used to urge or persuade someone to do something together.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 11:3 (#3)****"let us make"**

The pronoun **us** is inclusive here and refers to the people who are talking to each other. Alternate translation: "we should work together and make"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 11:3 (#4)****"bricks"**

Alternate translation: "some mud blocks" or "some blocks from mud"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 11:3 (#5)****"and bake them with fire"**

Alternate translation: "and harden them with fire." or "and use fire to bake them." or "and put them over fire to make them hard"

**Genesis 11:3 (#6)****"And they had"**

Alternate translation: "So they did that, and they had" or "They had"

**Genesis 11:3 (#7)****"bricks for stones"**

Alternate translation: "blocks to build with instead of stone,"

**Genesis 11:3 (#8)****"and they had tar"**

Alternate translation: "and they used tar between the blocks"

**Genesis 11:3 (#9)****"for mortar"**

Alternate translation: "to hold the blocks together."

**Genesis 11:4 (#1)****"Then they said"**

Alternate translation: "Then they said to each other,"

**Genesis 11:4 (#2)****"Come"**

See how you translated this idiom in verse 3.

### Genesis 11:4 (#3)

#### "let us build"

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 3.  
Alternate translation: "let us work together and build"

### Genesis 11:4 (#4)

#### "and a tower"

Alternate translation: "that has a high tower" or "with a very tall building"

### Genesis 11:4 (#5)

#### "with its top in the heavens"

Alternate translation: "that reaches high into the heavens" or "that reaches up to heaven,"

### Genesis 11:4 (#6)

#### "and let us make a name for ourselves, so that we are not scattered"

The phrase **make a name for ourselves** is an idiom. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would work well here. Also see how you translated the word **scattered** in Gen 10:18, 32. Alternate translation: "We should do that to make ourselves famous and to keep us from spreading out" or "That way we will become well-known and we will not separate from each other and live"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 11:4 (#7)

#### "over the face of the whole earth"

Alternate translation: "all over the world." or "around the world."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 11:5 (#1)

#### "Then Yahweh came down"

Alternate translation: "Then one day Yahweh came down from heaven"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 11:5 (#2)

#### "to see the city"

The text implies that Yahweh actually looked at the city. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to make that explicit here. Alternate translation: "and inspected the city"

### Genesis 11:5 (#3)

#### "and the tower"

See how you translated this word in verse 4.

### Genesis 11:5 (#4)

#### "had built"

Make sure the way you translate this verb fits with the fact that the people had not yet finished building the city (verse 8). Alternate translation: "had started building."

### Genesis 11:6 (#1)

#### "And Yahweh said"

Consider what is the best way to refer to Yahweh here in your language. Alternate translation: "And he said (to himself)," or "He said,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 11:6 (#2)

#### "Behold"

This term calls attention to what Yahweh says next. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language.

**Genesis 11:6 (#3)****"they are} one people"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "they are one people/ethnic group," or (2) "the/these people are one/united in what they are doing,"

**Genesis 11:6 (#4)****"and they all have one language"**

See how you translated **have one language** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "and they all share the same language."

**Genesis 11:6 (#5)****"So this {is} what they have begun to do"**

Alternate translation: "This is only the beginning of what they will do together."

**Genesis 11:6 (#6)****"and now"**

Alternate translation: "Now"

**Genesis 11:6 (#7)****"everything that they plan to do will not be impossible for them"**

The words **not** and **impossible** are two negatives that work together to communicate an emphatic positive statement. Consider what is the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: "nothing that they plan to do will be impossible for them." or "anything they attempt to do will be possible for them." or "they will be able to do whatever they try to do."

See: Double Negatives

**Genesis 11:7 (#1)****"Come"**

Alternate translation: "So come on,"

**Genesis 11:7 (#2)****"let us go down" - "there"**

Most Bible scholars think the plural pronoun **us** refers here to God and the fact that he is three Persons in one God. So it is best to keep this plural pronoun in your translation. See what you did for similar pronouns in Gen 1:26. Alternate translation: "let us go to them"

**Genesis 11:7 (#3)****"and" - "confuse their language"**

Alternate translation: "and scramble their language"

**Genesis 11:7 (#4)****"so that they will not understand"**

Alternate translation: "so that they will not be able to understand" or "so that they cannot understand"

**Genesis 11:8 (#1)****"Then Yahweh scattered them from there"**

Alternate translation: "So Yahweh did that and caused the people to leave from there and spread out" or "That is how Yahweh caused the people to leave from there and settle in different places"

**Genesis 11:8 (#2)****"over the face of the whole earth"**

Alternate translation: "over the surface of the entire earth," or "all over the earth"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 11:8 (#3)****"and they stopped building"**

Alternate translation: "so that they had to stop constructing"

**Genesis 11:8 (#4)****"the city"**

For some languages it is better to change the order of clauses in this verse (so that events are in the order that they happened) and say, "In that way, Yahweh caused the people to stop building the city and the tower and to move away from each other, so that eventually they lived all over the world." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "the city and the tower."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 11:9 (#1)****"they called its name"**

Frequently in the Hebrew text, this phrase has a general meaning and does not refer to someone specific. Alternate translation: "people named the city" or "the name of that city is" or "the city was named"

**Genesis 11:9 (#2)****"Babel"**

If you include the meaning of **Babel** here in your translation or in a footnote, be consistent with the way you translate **confused** later in this verse and in verse 7.

**Genesis 11:9 (#3)****"because there Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "because it was in that city that Yahweh"

**Genesis 11:9 (#4)****"confused"**

Alternate translation: "scrambled"

**Genesis 11:9 (#5)****"the language of the whole earth"**

Alternate translation: "the language that everyone on the earth spoke"

**Genesis 11:9 (#6)****"and from there Yahweh scattered them"**

Alternate translation: "and in that way Yahweh made them spread out from there"

**Genesis 11:9 (#7)****"over the face of the whole earth"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 4 and 8. Alternate translation: "over the surface of the entire earth." or "all over the world."

**Genesis 11:10 (#1)****"Shem {was} the son of 100 years, then he fathered Arpachshad two years after the flood"**

The phrase **after the flood** probably refers to two years after the flood began, not after it ended; see a similar case in Gen 9:28. Also be consistent here with how you spelled "Arpachshad/Arphaxad" in Gen 10:22. Alternate translation: "Two years after the flood began, when Shem was 100 years old, he had a son named Arphaxad."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 11:11 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Arpachshad, Shem lived"**

Throughout this section, make sure that names and pronouns (like **he**) are used in a way that is accurate and natural in your language, so that it is always clear who is being referred to. Alternate translation: "After he had Arphaxad, he lived" or "After Arphaxad was born, Shem lived"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 11:11 (#2)****"500 years"**



See how you translated Gen 5:7, which has the same sentence structure as 11:11. For some languages, it may be more natural to change the clause order of this sentence and say, “Shem lived 500 more years after Arpachshad/Arphaxad was born ...” Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: “500 more years,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 11:11 (#3)

#### "and he fathered"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated this phrase and the following one in Gen 5:4. Alternate translation: “and he also had” or “Shem also had” or “He was also the father of”

### Genesis 11:11 (#4)

#### "other} sons and daughters"

Alternate translation: “other sons as well as daughters.”

### Genesis 11:12 (#1)

#### "And Arpachshad lived thirty-five years"

Make sure that your translation of this clause does not mean that Arpachshad only lived to be thirty-five years old. Also, throughout this chapter, be consistent with how you have decided to handle numbers in the Bible. For example, many translation teams use words for single and double-digit numbers, but use numerals for larger numbers. This strategy helps prevent confusion with verse numbers. This is especially true in translations that use a large font size for verse numbers so that people doing group Bible study can easily see the numbers and be in the same verse together. See what you did in chapter 5. Alternate translation: “When Arphaxad had lived 35 years,” or “When Arphaxad was 35 years old,”

### Genesis 11:12 (#2)

#### "then he fathered Shelah"

See how you translated Gen 5:6, which has the same sentence structure as 11:12. Alternate translation: “he fathered a son named Shelah.” or “he fathered a son they named Shelah.” or “he fathered a son whose name was Shelah.”

### Genesis 11:13 (#1)

#### "Then after he fathered Shelah, Arpachshad lived"

Be consistent with how you spell the name “Arpachshad/Arphaxad” in the book of Genesis. See Gen 10:22, 24; 11:10–13. Alternate translation: “After he had Shelah, Arphaxad lived” or “After Shelah was born, Arphaxad lived”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 11:13 (#2)

#### "403 years"

Alternate translation: “403 more years,”

### Genesis 11:13 (#3)

#### "and he fathered"

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Arpachshad at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: “and he also had” or “He also fathered” or “He was also the father of”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 11:13 (#4)

#### "other} sons and daughters"

Alternate translation: “other sons as well as daughters.”

### Genesis 11:14 (#1)

#### "And Shelah lived thirty years"

Alternate translation: “When Shelah had lived 30 years,” or “When Shelah was 30 years old,”

**Genesis 11:14 (#2)****"then he fathered Eber"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Eber." or "he had a son whose name was Eber."

**Genesis 11:15 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Eber, Shelah lived"**

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Shelah** in Gen 10:24; 11:12–15. Alternate translation: "After he had Eber, he lived"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 11:15 (#2)****"403 years"**

Alternate translation: "403 more years,"

**Genesis 11:15 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Shelah also had" or "He was also the father of"

**Genesis 11:15 (#4)****"other} sons and daughters"**

Alternate translation: "other sons as well as daughters."

**Genesis 11:16 (#1)****"And Eber lived thirty-four years"**

Alternate translation: "When Eber had lived 34 years," or "When Eber was 34 years old,"

**Genesis 11:16 (#2)****"then he fathered Peleg"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Peleg." or "he had a son whose name was Peleg."

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 11:17 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Peleg, Eber lived"**

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Eber** in Gen 10:24–25; 11:14–17. Alternate translation: "After he had Peleg, he lived"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 11:17 (#2)****"430 years"**

Alternate translation: "430 more years,"

**Genesis 11:17 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Eber at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Eber also had" or "He was also the father of"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 11:17 (#4)****"other} sons and daughters"**

Alternate translation: "other sons as well as daughters."

**Genesis 11:18 (#1)****"And Peleg lived thirty years"**

Alternate translation: "When Peleg had lived 30 years," or "When Peleg was 30 years old,"

**Genesis 11:18 (#2)****"then he fathered Reu"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Reu." or "he had a son whose name was Reu."

**Genesis 11:19 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Reu, Peleg lived"**

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Peleg** in Gen 10:25; 11:16–19. Alternate translation: "After he had Reu, he lived"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 11:19 (#2)****"209 years"**

Alternate translation: "209 more years,"

**Genesis 11:19 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Peleg also had" or "He was also the father of"

**Genesis 11:19 (#4)****"other} sons and daughters"**

Alternate translation: "other sons as well as daughters."

**Genesis 11:20 (#1)****"And Reu lived thirty-two years"**

Alternate translation: "When Reu had lived 32 years," or "When Reu was 32 years old,"

**Genesis 11:20 (#2)****"then he fathered Serug"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Serug." or "he had a son whose name was Serug."

**Genesis 11:21 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Serug, Reu lived"**

Be consistent with how you spell **Reu** in Gen 11:18–21. Alternate translation: "After Reu had Serug, he lived"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 11:21 (#2)****"207 years"**

Alternate translation: "207 more years,"

**Genesis 11:21 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Reu at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Reu also had" or "He was also the father of"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 11:21 (#4)****"other} sons and daughters"**

Alternate translation: "other sons as well as daughters."

**Genesis 11:22 (#1)****"And Serug lived thirty years"**

Alternate translation: "When Serug had lived 30 years," or "When Serug was 30 years old,"

**Genesis 11:22 (#2)****"then he fathered Nahor"**

Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Nahor." or "he had a son whose name was Nahor."

**Genesis 11:23 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Nahor, Serug lived"**

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Serug** in Gen 11:20–23. Alternate translation: "After he had Nahor, he lived"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 11:23 (#2)****"200 years"**

Alternate translation: "200 more years,"

**Genesis 11:23 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Serug also had" or "He was also the father of"

**Genesis 11:23 (#4)****"other} sons and daughters"**

Alternate translation: "other sons as well as daughters."

**Genesis 11:24 (#1)****"And Nahor lived twenty-nine years"**

Alternate translation: "When Nahor had lived 29 years," or "When Nahor was 29 years old,"

**Genesis 11:24 (#2)****"then he fathered Terah"**

Consider again how you translated verses 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 22, and 24, which all have the same sentence structure. Alternate translation: "he fathered a son named Terah." or "he had a son whose name was Terah."

**Genesis 11:25 (#1)****"Then after he fathered Terah, Nahor lived"**

Alternate translation: "After he had Terah, he lived"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 11:25 (#2)****"119 years"**

Alternate translation: "119 more years,"

**Genesis 11:25 (#3)****"and he fathered"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he also had" or "Nahor also had" or "He was also the father of"

**Genesis 11:25 (#4)****"other} sons and daughters"**

Consider again how you translated verses 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 21, 23 and 25, which all have the same sentence structure. Alternate translation: "other sons as well as daughters."

**Genesis 11:26 (#1)****"And Terah lived seventy years"**

Your translation needs to allow for the fact that Terah's sons were not triplets (just as Noah's sons were not triplets; see Gen 5:32), rather he started having children after he turned seventy and his sons were born in different years after that. In fact, Abram was not born until Terah was at least 130 years old (11:32, 12:4-5; Acts 7:4), and he was probably Terah's youngest son. Abram is listed first (instead of Haran or Nahor) probably because of his importance as the one whom Yahweh made His covenant with. Some of this information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "After Terah had lived 70 years," or "After Terah turned 70 years old,"

**Genesis 11:26 (#2)****"then he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran"**

Alternate translation: "he had sons named Abram, Nahor, and Haran." or "he fathered sons whose names were Abram, Nahor, and Haran."

**Genesis 11:27 (#1)****"Now these {are} the generations of Terah"**

This section is different from the previous section. What follows is a history about Terah's descendants (especially Abram); it is not a genealogy or list of names. See how you translated

a similar phrase in Gen 6:9. Alternate translation: "This is the account about Terah and his family:"

Alternate translation: "Meanwhile Abram and Nahor each got married."

## Genesis 11:27 (#2)

**"Terah fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran"**

Alternate translation: "Terah had sons named Abram, Nahor, and Haran;"

## Genesis 11:30 (#1)

**"But Sarai was barren"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information about Sarai. Alternate translation: "Now Sarai was unable to conceive," or "Sarai was not able to get pregnant,"

See: Background Information

## Genesis 11:27 (#3)

**"and Haran fathered Lot"**

Alternate translation: "and Haran had a son named Lot." or "and Haran had a son whose name was Lot."

## Genesis 11:30 (#2)

**"she did not have a child"**

For some languages it may be better to switch the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "But/Now Sarai did not have any children, because she was not able to conceive." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "so she had no children."

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 11:28 (#1)

**"And Haran died in the presence of Terah his father"**

Alternate translation: "Later Haran died while he was with his father Terah," or "While his father Terah was still alive, Haran died"

## Genesis 11:31 (#1)

**"Then Terah took"**

Consider what is the best way to begin this new paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: "One day, Terah called together"

See: Introduction of a New Event

## Genesis 11:28 (#2)

**"in the land of his birth"**

Alternate translation: "in his native land,"

## Genesis 11:31 (#2)

**"Abram his son"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this phrase that **his son** refers to Abram, not another person.

## Genesis 11:28 (#3)

**"in Ur of the Kasdim"**

The word **Kasdim** probably comes from the name of one of Nahor's sons, Kesed (Gen 22:22), and often refers to the Chaldeans who were a people group that lived in the country of Babylonia (where Ur was located). Alternate translation: "in the city of Ur which was ruled by the Kasdim" or "in the city of Ur where the Kasdim people lived."

## Genesis 11:31 (#3)

**"and Lot, Haran's son, his son's son"**

The phrases "Lot," "Haran's son," and **his son's son** all refer to Lot. Make sure that is clear in your

## Genesis 11:29 (#1)

**"And Abram and Nahor took wives for themselves"**

translation and that it does not sound like three people.

### Genesis 11:31 (#4)

**"and Sarai his daughter-in-law"**

The phrases "Sarai," "his daughter-in-law," and **the wife of his son Abram** all refer to Sarai. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

### Genesis 11:31 (#5)

**"and they went out together"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and all of them set out together" or "Then they all left"

### Genesis 11:31 (#6)

**"from Ur of"**

See the note at Gen 10:19 about how to translate the names of cities. Alternate translation: "from Ur City"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 11:31 (#7)

**"the Kasdim"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 28. Alternate translation: "of the Chaldeans" or "where the Kasdim people lived"

### Genesis 11:31 (#8)

**"to go to the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "to go to the region of Canaan." or "to go to Canaan Land."

### Genesis 11:31 (#9)

**"But they came to Haran"**

The city of Haran was not in the land of Canaan, rather it was around 450 kilometers (280 miles)

northeast of there. Alternate translation: "But on the way there, they came to the city of Haran, and" or "But along the way, when they stopped at the city of Haran,"

### Genesis 11:31 (#10)

**"and they settled there"**

Alternate translation: "they stayed there instead." or "they decided to settle there instead."

### Genesis 11:32 (#1)

**"And the days of Terah were 205 years"**

Alternate translation: "When Terah reached the age of 205 years,"

### Genesis 11:32 (#2)

**"in Haran"**

Alternate translation: "in Haran City."

### Genesis 12:1 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh said to Abram"**

Consider what is the best way to begin this new section in your language. Also, make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with what Yahweh says in the following quote. Alternate translation: "Then one day Yahweh told Abram,"

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 12:1 (#2)

**"You yourself must go from your land"**

Alternate translation: "Get yourself away from your country" or "You must move away from your country" or "You must leave behind the land where you are living"

### Genesis 12:1 (#3)

**"and from your relatives"**

Alternate translation: "and your people,"

**Genesis 12:1 (#4)****"and from the house of your father"**

The phrase **the house** refers here to everyone who was a member of Terah's household.

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 12:1 (#5)****"to the land"**

Alternate translation: "and go to the place"

**Genesis 12:2 (#1)****"And I will make you"**

Alternate translation: "I will make you the father of"

**Genesis 12:2 (#2)****"into a great nation"**

Alternate translation: "an large people group," or "a large, important ethnic group,"

**Genesis 12:2 (#3)****"and I will bless you"**

See how you translated "blessed" in Gen 1:22, 28. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "and I will bless you and them." or "and I will cause you all to flourish."

**Genesis 12:2 (#4)****"and I will make your name great"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "I will make you important and famous,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 12:2 (#5)****"and you must be a blessing"**

Alternate translation: "and you will be a blessing to many people." or "and I will use you and your descendants to bless many people."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 12:3 (#1)****"but whoever curses you I will curse"**

See how you translated **curse** in Gen 8:21.

**Genesis 12:3 (#2)****"in you"**

This phrase refers to Abram and his descendants, including ultimately the Messiah. In other words, God's promise in this verse is part of his wonderful news (the Gospel message) for all people (Galatians 3:8-9) and is a prophecy about the Messiah/Christ, who was one of Abraham's descendants (Matthew 1:1, Genesis 22:18, Galatians 3:16). God blessed all people on earth by sending his Son Jesus (the Messiah/Christ) to die in their place and pay for all their sins (John 3:16-18, 1 Timothy 2:3-6), so that they could have a close relationship with him/God and be part of his family forever. God repeats this great promise in Genesis 18:18; 22:18; 26:4; 28:14. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Through you and your offspring" or "Because of you and your offspring" or "By means of you and your offspring"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 12:3 (#3)****"And" - "all the families of the earth will be blessed"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this passive sentence. For some languages it is clearer to change the order of the sentence and say, "I will use you and your offspring/descendants to bless all the families/people on the earth." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "all the people on the earth will be

blessed by me.” or “I will bless all the people on the earth.”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 12:4 (#1)

**"Then Abram went, just as Yahweh had told him"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this sentence to show that Abram is now doing what God just commanded him to do (verse 1). Alternate translation: “Then Abram left the city of Haran, just as Yahweh had told him to do,” or “Then Abram did what Yahweh had told him to do and left the city of Haran,”

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 12:4 (#2)

**"and Lot went with him"**

Alternate translation: “and his nephew Lot left with him.”

### Genesis 12:4 (#3)

**"And Abram"**

Many translations omit the conjunction **And** or “Now” here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Now Abram”

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 12:4 (#4)

**"was the son of"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 5:32 and 11:10. Alternate translation: “was 75 years old”

### Genesis 12:4 (#5)

**"when he departed"**

Alternate translation: “when he set out”

### Genesis 12:4 (#6)

**"from Haran"**

Alternate translation: “from the city of Haran.”

### Genesis 12:5 (#1)

**"And Abram took Sarai his wife"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Sarai** in Gen 11:29–31. Alternate translation: “He brought with him his wife Sarai”

See: Go and Come

### Genesis 12:5 (#2)

**"and Lot the son of his brother"**

For some languages it is more natural to make **son of his brother** or “his nephew” explicit in verse 4 (where Lot is first mentioned in this section) and leave it implied here in verse 5. Do what is best in your language.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 12:5 (#3)

**"and all their possessions that they had accumulated and the people whom they had acquired"**

The word **possessions** is general here and includes slaves, animals, furniture, clothes, and money. See how you translated “slave” or “servant” in Gen 9:25–27. Alternate translation: “everything that they owned, including slaves and everything else they had gotten”

### Genesis 12:5 (#4)

**"in Haran"**

“in the city of Haran,” or “in Haran City”

### Genesis 12:5 (#5)

**"to the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: “to the land called Canaan.” or “to Canaan Land.”



**Genesis 12:5 (#6)****"Then they came to the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "Then they arrived in Canaan." or "When they reached Canaan," or "When they got there,"

**Genesis 12:6 (#1)****"Then Abram passed"**

Abram is the only one named here because he is in focus. However, your translation should not sound like he traveled alone in verse 6. Also make sure that the way you begin this verse in your translation fits with the way you ended verse 5. Alternate translation: "Abram went" or "Abram and his family went" or "they went"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 12:6 (#2)****"through the land"**

See how you translated **land** in verse 5. Alternate translation: "through that land"

**Genesis 12:6 (#3)****"as far as"**

Alternate translation: "until they arrived at"

**Genesis 12:6 (#4)****"the place of Shechem"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "the city of Shechem," or (2) "the/a sacred place at/near the city of Shechem,"

**Genesis 12:6 (#5)****"to the terebinth tree of Moreh"**

Moreh is probably the name of the person who owned the land where the terebinth tree was. A terebinth tree is a large, broadleaf, flowering tree

in the cashew family that can grow to a height of 5 to 12 meters (16 to 40 feet). The Hebrew words for "oak" and **terebinth** are similar, so many translations (including LXX) translate this as "oak tree" here. Notice, however, that oak trees and terebinth trees are from two different families of trees.

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 12:6 (#6)****"And the Canaanites {were} in the land at that time"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to put the time phrase (**at that time**) first in this sentence. Alternate translation: "At that time the Canaanites were still living in that region,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 12:7 (#1)****"Then Yahweh appeared to Abram"**

Yahweh's promise in verse 7 to give Canaan to Abram's descendants contrasts with the fact that the Canaanites were still occupying that region (verse 6). Also, notice that the text does not specify in what form or in what way God appeared to Abram, so your translation should not do that either. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh came to Abram" or "but Yahweh visited Abram"

**Genesis 12:7 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and promised to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 12:7 (#3)****"To your offspring I will give this land"**

In the Hebrew text, the phrase "to your offspring" is emphasized by its position at the beginning of this quote. However, for some languages it may be clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses and say, "I will give this land to your offspring/descendants." Do what is best in your

language. Alternate translation: "I will give this land to your offspring"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 12:7 (#4)

**"So he built an altar"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abram here in your language. See how you translated **altar** in Gen 8:20. Alternate translation: "So he made an altar out of large stones" or "So he built a sacrifice mound with stones"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 12:7 (#5)

**"there"**

Alternate translation: "near the tree"

### Genesis 12:7 (#6)

**"to Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "and burned sacrifices on it to thank and worship Yahweh,"

### Genesis 12:7 (#7)

**"who had appeared to him"**

See how you translated **appeared** earlier in verse 7. Alternate translation: "who had come to him there." or "because he had come to him there."

### Genesis 12:8 (#1)

**"Then from there he went on"**

Alternate translation: "From the place of Shechem, he and his family moved south to"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 12:8 (#2)

**"to the mountains to the east of Bethel"**

Alternate translation: "the mountainous region east of the town of Bethel"

### Genesis 12:8 (#3)

**"and pitched his tents"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated "tent" in Gen 9:21, 27. Alternate translation: "and put up his tents there" or "They set up their camp"

### Genesis 12:8 (#4)

**"with} Bethel on the west and Ai on the east"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Bethel was to the west of them and the town of Ai was to the east."

### Genesis 12:8 (#5)

**"And there he built"**

Alternate translation: "There he made"

### Genesis 12:8 (#6)

**"an altar"**

See how you translated **altar** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "another sacrifice mound"

### Genesis 12:8 (#7)

**"to Yahweh"**

See how you translated **to Yahweh** in verse 7.

### Genesis 12:8 (#8)

**"and he called on the name of Yahweh"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 4:26. Alternate translation: "and he praised him by name." or "he addressed him by his name as he praised him." or "he praised him."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 12:9 (#1)****"Then Abram set out and continued to travel"**

Alternate translation: "After that, he and his family traveled in stages" or "Then he and his family moved from place to place"

**Genesis 12:9 (#2)****"toward the Negev"**

The Hebrew word **Negev** can mean "south" or "dry country," so some translations translate the meaning. But most translations transliterate the Hebrew name (as **Negev** or "Negeb") as they do with other names in the Bible. Alternate translation: "south toward the Negev Wilderness" or "southward until they reached the Southern Wilderness"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 12:10 (#1)****"Then there was"**

This clause gives the setting for the rest of the sentence. Translate this in a way that is natural in your language.

**Genesis 12:10 (#2)****"a famine"**

A **famine** is a prolonged period of time when people are starving because crops are failing, often due to a lack of rain or other severe weather conditions. Alternate translation: "a serious lack of food" or "a hungry time when food was very scarce"

**Genesis 12:10 (#3)****"in the land"**

Alternate translation: "in that area," or "in the Negev Desert,"

**Genesis 12:10 (#4)****"so Abram went down"**

This phrase refers to the fact that Egypt is lower in elevation than Canaan (verse 5). It is also located southwest of Canaan. Alternate translation: "so Abram and his family traveled southwest" or "so Abram and his family moved further south"

**Genesis 12:10 (#5)****"to Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "to the land of Egypt"

**Genesis 12:10 (#6)****"to sojourn there"**

Alternate translation: "to live there for a while"

**Genesis 12:10 (#7)****"because the famine {was} heavy"**

Alternate translation: "because the food shortage was very severe"

**Genesis 12:10 (#8)****"in the land"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause near the beginning of this verse and say, "Then/Now there was a famine in that land/region that was so heavy/severe/bad that Abram and his family left there and went down to the land/country of Egypt to live for a while." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "in that land" or "in the Negev Desert so they could not survive there."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 12:11 (#1)****"And it happened that as he was about to enter Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "As they approached Egypt,"

**Genesis 12:11 (#2)****"then he said to Sarai his wife"**

Alternate translation: "he told his wife Sarai,"

**Genesis 12:11 (#3)****"Behold please"**

Alternate translation: "Listen please," or "Please listen to this:"

**Genesis 12:11 (#4)****"I know that you {are} a woman beautiful in appearance"**

Alternate translation: "I know that you are a very beautiful woman."

**Genesis 12:12 (#1)****"So it will happen when"**Consider whether it is better in your language to begin this sentence with or without a conjunction (**So**). Alternate translation: "So when"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 12:12 (#2)****"the Egyptians"**

Alternate translation: "the people of Egypt"

**Genesis 12:12 (#3)****"see you"**

Alternate translation: "notice you with me,"

**Genesis 12:12 (#4)****"then they will say, 'This {is} his wife'"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "they will know that you are my wife,"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 12:12 (#5)****"and they will kill me but let you live"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then they will kill me but let you live so that they can have you."

**Genesis 12:13 (#1)****"Please say"**

Alternate translation: "So please tell them"

**Genesis 12:13 (#2)****"that} you {are} my sister"**

Consider whether an indirect quote or direct quote is best here in your language.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 12:13 (#3)****"so that it will go well for me"**

Alternate translation: "so that I will be treated well" or "so that people will treat me well"

**Genesis 12:13 (#4)****"and my life will live because of you"**For some languages it is not natural to include the phrase **because of you** here, because it repeats the same idea as **for your sake** in the previous clause. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and my life will be spared by them." or "and they will spare my life." or "and they will let me live."**Genesis 12:14 (#1)****"when Abram came into Egypt"**

Although Abram is in focus here, your translation should not sound like he was traveling alone.

Alternate translation: "When Abram and his family entered the land of Egypt,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 12:14 (#2)

**"then the Egyptians saw"**

Alternate translation: "the Egyptian people saw" or "the people living there saw"

### Genesis 12:14 (#3)

**"the woman, that she {was} very beautiful"**

Alternate translation: "that the woman with him was indeed very beautiful." or "that Sarai was indeed very beautiful."

### Genesis 12:15 (#1)

**"And the officials of Pharaoh saw her"**

The term **officials** is general and refers to leaders or rulers who were under Pharaoh and served him. Also, the term **Pharaoh** is an Egyptian title that refers to the king or ruler over Egypt. However, in the Old Testament, it is treated as a name (that frequently occurs with the title "king of Egypt"), so translators often transliterate **Pharaoh** (which is how other names in the Bible are normally treated). Some languages require an honorific title with the names of kings, for example, "King Pharaoh". Decide how you will handle this in your translation. Alternate translation: "Some of the officers who ruled under the Egyptian king spotted her, so" or "When some officials of Pharaoh the king of Egypt saw her,"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 12:15 (#2)

**"so they praised her to Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "they told him how beautiful she was,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 12:15 (#3)

**"and the woman was taken"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and she was brought" or "So he had them bring Sarai"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 12:15 (#4)

**"into Pharaoh's house"**

Alternate translation: "into his palace to be one of his wives."

### Genesis 12:16 (#1)

**"Then he treated Abram well for her sake"**

Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh treated Abram well because of her"

### Genesis 12:16 (#2)

**"so that he had"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and Abram acquired from him" or "and he gave him" or "He gave Abram"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 12:16 (#3)

**"flock{s} and herd{s}"**

Alternate translation: "flocks of sheep and herds of cattle,"

### Genesis 12:16 (#4)

**"and male donkeys and male slaves and female slaves and female donkeys"**

Alternate translation: "as well as men and women servants, and male and female donkeys,"

**Genesis 12:16 (#5)****"and camels"**

If camels are not known in your language area, you could include a picture of a camel in your translation. You could also describe it in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: "and larger load-bearing animals called camels."

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 12:17 (#1)****"But Yahweh struck Pharaoh and his house"**

See how you translated **Pharaoh** in verse 15. You could translate it differently in different contexts. Do what is clear and natural in your language in each context. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh struck the king and the people in his household" or "Then Yahweh caused King Pharaoh and the people in his household to get very sick"

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 12:17 (#2)****"with} great plagues"**

Alternate translation: "with severe diseases"

**Genesis 12:17 (#3)****"on account of Sarai the wife of Abram"**

For many languages it is clearer and more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But since King Pharaoh had taken Abram's wife Sarai, Yahweh afflicted the king and his family with severe illnesses." Do what is best in your language

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 12:18 (#1)****"So Pharaoh called"**

Alternate translation: "So King Pharaoh sent for Abram" or "Then Pharaoh summoned Abram before him" or "Then the king sent for Abram to come to him"

**Genesis 12:18 (#2)****"and said"**

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way that you translate the following quote. Alternate translation: "and asked him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 12:18 (#3)****"What {is} this you have done to me"**

Pharaoh uses rhetorical questions in verses 18 and 19 to express his anger at what Abram had done; he does not expect Abram to answer him. Some languages must use statements or exclamations here instead. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Why have you treated me so badly?"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 12:18 (#4)****"Why did you not tell me that she {was} your wife"**

Alternate translation: "You should have informed me that she is your wife!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 12:19 (#1)****"Why did you say, 'She {is} my sister'"**

Pharaoh uses this rhetorical question to scold Abram and express his anger at him. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Why did you say that she is your sister," or "You should not have pretended that she is your sister,"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 12:19 (#2)****"so that I took her to me as a wife"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "so that I chose her to be a wife!" or "I believed you and took her to be my wife!"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 12:19 (#3)****"Now then"**

Alternate translation: "Now therefore,"

**Genesis 12:19 (#4)****"behold your wife"**

Alternate translation: "here is your wife back."

**Genesis 12:20 (#1)****"Then Pharaoh commanded"**

Consider again how you translated **Pharaoh** in verses 15–18, 20. It may be helpful to read this section aloud to make sure it is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Then King Pharaoh gave orders to" or "Then the Egyptian king ordered" or "Then the king of Egypt ordered"

**Genesis 12:20 (#2)****"his men"**

Alternate translation: "some of his men"

**Genesis 12:20 (#3)****"concerning him"**

Throughout this verse, make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to. Alternate translation: "about him"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 12:20 (#4)****"and they sent him away"**

Alternate translation: "so they forced him to leave their country," or "so they expelled him from Egypt,"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 12:20 (#5)****"and everything that {belonged} to him"**

This included Abram's slaves, animals, and everything else that he owned. Alternate translation: "and all that he had" or "all his possessions."

**Genesis 13:1 (#1)****"Then Abram went up from Egypt"**

The Negev Wilderness (or Desert) is northeast in direction from Egypt and is higher in elevation. Compare how you translated "down" in Gen 12:10 when Abram traveled in the opposite direction. Alternate translation: "So Abram went northeast from the country of Egypt," or "Then Abram left the land of Egypt,"

**Genesis 13:1 (#2)****"he and his wife"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "taking with him his wife"

**Genesis 13:1 (#3)****"and everything that {belonged} to him"**

Alternate translation: "and everything that he had,"

**Genesis 13:1 (#4)****"and Lot with him"**

Alternate translation: "as well as his nephew Lot," or "and his nephew Lot went with him"

**Genesis 13:1 (#5)****"to the Negev"**

For many languages it is more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, "Then Abram went up from Egypt and traveled back to the Negev Wilderness/Desert, along with his wife and everything that belonged to him. His nephew Lot also went with them." Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **Negev** in Gen 12:9, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "and they all went back to the Negev Desert."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 13:2 (#1)****"And Abram"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information about Abram. Alternate translation: "Now" or "By this time Abram"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 13:2 (#2)****"was} very wealthy"**

Alternate translation: "had become very wealthy"

**Genesis 13:2 (#3)****"in livestock"**

The term **livestock** includes all kinds of domestic animals, such as cattle, sheep, goats, camels and donkeys. Alternate translation: "with many livestock"

**Genesis 13:2 (#4)****"in silver, and in gold"**

In this context, "silver and gold" includes the metals themselves as well as objects made out of the metals, but not coins (since coins did not exist at that time). See how you translated **gold** in Gen 2:11-12.

**Genesis 13:3 (#1)****"from the Negev"**

See how you translated **the Negev** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "From the Southern Desert"

**Genesis 13:3 (#2)****"Then he went on his journeys"**

Abram represents his whole family here, and it is assumed that they are traveling with him. Consider whether or not you need to make them explicit in your language. Alternate translation: "Abram and his family moved from place to place northward" or "Abram and his family continued traveling northward"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 13:3 (#3)****"as far as Bethel"**

Alternate translation: "until he came to the town of Bethel,"

**Genesis 13:3 (#4)****"to the place where his tents had been"**

Alternate translation: "to the site where they had camped in tents" or "where he had pitched his tents"

**Genesis 13:3 (#5)****"at the beginning"**

Alternate translation: "previously," or "the first time he was there,"

**Genesis 13:3 (#6)****"between Bethel and Ai"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "Then from the Negev Desert Abram and his family continued traveling northward until they came to the place between the towns of Bethel and



Ai where they had camped in tents before.” Do what is best in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Bethel** and **Ai** in Gen 12:8.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 13:4 (#1)

**"to the place of the altar that he had made there at first"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you translated **altar** in Gen 8:20 and 12:7–8. Alternate translation: “to the same site where he had made an altar before” or “That is the same site where he had first made an altar,”

### Genesis 13:4 (#2)

**"and there Abram called on the name of Yahweh"**

See how you translated **called on the name of Yahweh** in Gen 12:8. Alternate translation: “There again Abram sacrificed animals on that altar and addressed Yahweh by his name as he praised him.” or “So Abram again used that altar there and praised Yahweh by name.” or “... praised Yahweh.”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 13:5 (#1)

**"Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had"**

The word **Now** introduces more background information for the new episode. For some languages it is more natural to leave **Now** implied and just use a paragraph break. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Lot was traveling with his uncle Abram, and he and his family also had”

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 13:5 (#2)

**"flock{s} and herd{s}"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: “flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle”

### Genesis 13:5 (#3)

**"and tents"**

Alternate translation: “and many tents.”

### Genesis 13:6 (#1)

**"But the land could not support them"**

Alternate translation: “As a result, there was not enough land to provide them all with enough food and water” or “In fact, there was not enough land to provide enough food and water for both families and their animals”

### Genesis 13:6 (#2)

**"while they stayed together"**

Alternate translation: “if they lived near each other,” or “if they lived in the same region,”

### Genesis 13:6 (#3)

**"because their possessions were great"**

The phrase **their possessions** especially refers to their livestock, which required much land to graze on and much water to drink, and probably also includes their many servants. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “because their belongings were so abundant that” or “because they owned so many servants and livestock that” or “They each owned so many servants and livestock that”

### Genesis 13:6 (#4)

**"so that they were not able to stay together"**

See how you translated a similar phrase earlier in this verse. For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “In fact, they each/both owned so many servants and livestock/animals

that they could not live in the same area. There was not enough land to provide/produce the amount of food and water that they all needed." Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **stayed together** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "they could not all live near each other." or "it was not possible for them to all live in the same area"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 13:7 (#1)

"Then there was"

Alternate translation: "In fact,"

### Genesis 13:7 (#2)

"Then there was strife"

The Hebrew word for **strife** is general in meaning and can include arguing and fighting. Some languages have an idiom for this that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "there was arguing" or "quarreling erupted"

### Genesis 13:7 (#3)

"between the herdsmen of Abram's livestock and the herdsmen of Lot's livestock"

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "Then the men who were taking care of Abram's livestock and the men who were taking care of Lot's livestock started to argue with each other." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 13:7 (#4)

"And the Canaanites"

Alternate translation: "Adding to that problem was the fact that"

### Genesis 13:7 (#5)

"And the Canaanites and the Perizzites"

See how you translated the names of people groups in Gen 10, and see how you translated **the Canaanites** in Gen 12:6. Alternate translation: "the Canaanite people and the Perizzite people" or "the descendants of Canaan and Perez"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 13:7 (#6)

"were living in the land"

Alternate translation: "were also living in the area"

### Genesis 13:7 (#7)

"then"

For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "... at that time the Canaanites ..." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 13:8 (#1)

"So Abram said to Lot"

Alternate translation: "Then one day Abram said to Lot,"

### Genesis 13:8 (#2)

"Please do not let there be"

Alternate translation: "Please, we should not allow" or "We need to do something so that there is not any"

### Genesis 13:8 (#3)

"strife"

See how you translated **strife** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "arguing"

**Genesis 13:8 (#4)****"between me and you"**

Alternate translation: "between you and me," or "between us,"

**Genesis 13:8 (#5)****"or between my herdsmen and your herdsmen"**

See how you translated **herdsmen** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "or between the men tending my livestock and the men tending your livestock," or "or between our herdsmen,"

**Genesis 13:8 (#6)****"because we {are} men, brothers"**

Abram and Lot were close relatives, not actual brothers. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "Please, since we are close relatives, we need to do something so that you and I and our herdsmen will not argue." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because we are men who are also relatives." or "because we are close relatives."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 13:9 (#1)****"Is not the whole land before you"**

Abram is using a rhetorical question to emphasize his point. He does not expect an answer from Lot. If that is not clear, you can translate this as a statement. Alternate translation: "You can choose to live anywhere in this entire land."

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 13:9 (#2)****"Please separate from me"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation of verse 9 that Abram is being kind to Lot, not mean or rude.

See: Politeness

**Genesis 13:9 (#3)****"If {you go to} the left"**

Alternate translation: "if you decide to live in the land to our left,"

**Genesis 13:9 (#4)****"then I will go right"**

Alternate translation: "then I will choose the land to the right," or "then I will live in the land to our right,"

**Genesis 13:9 (#5)****"or if {you go to} the right"**

For some languages, it may be more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Or if you decide to live in the land to our right,"

**Genesis 13:9 (#6)****"then I will go left"**

Alternate translation: "then I will choose the land to the left." or "then I will live in the land to our left."

**Genesis 13:10 (#1)****"Then Lot lifted his eyes"**

Alternate translation: "So Lot looked all around" or "Lot looked around carefully"

See:

**Genesis 13:10 (#2)****"and saw all the plain of the Jordan as you go {toward} Zoar, that all of it"**

The Jordan Plain is the wide, flat valley where the Jordan River flows between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. Alternate translation: "and he observed that the whole Jordan River Valley, all the way to the town of Zoar,"

**Genesis 13:10 (#3)****"was} well-watered"**

Alternate translation: "had a lot of water,"

**Genesis 13:10 (#4)****"like Yahweh's garden"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you translated **garden** in Gen 3:23–24. This phrase refers to the Garden of Eden. You could put that information in a footnote.

**Genesis 13:10 (#5)****"like the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "and like the country of Egypt,"

**Genesis 13:10 (#6)****"before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 13:11 (#1)****"So Lot chose for himself all the plain of the Jordan"**

See how you translated **plain of the Jordan** in verse 10. Alternate translation: "Then Lot chose the whole Jordan River Plain for himself," or "Then Lot decided to live in the valley that surrounded the Jordan River,"

**Genesis 13:11 (#2)****"and Lot traveled"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use Lot's name or a pronoun to refer to him here. Alternate translation: "and he moved" or "Then Lot left Abram and moved"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 13:11 (#3)****"to the east"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "to/toward the east to live there" or "eastward" or (2) "from the east"

**Genesis 13:11 (#4)****"and they separated from each other"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also consider what is the best way to refer to Abram and Lot at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "So in this way they lived separately from each other." or "That is how Abram and Lot ended up living in separate places."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 13:12 (#1)****"Abram settled"**

Alternate translation: "Abram settled where he was" or "Abram continued to live"

**Genesis 13:12 (#2)****"in the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "in that part of the land of Canaan,"

**Genesis 13:12 (#3)****"and Lot settled"**

Alternate translation: "but Lot lived"

**Genesis 13:12 (#4)****"in the cities of the plain"**

As Lot traveled, he probably lived in several different cities in the Jordan River Valley until he eventually settled in the city of Sodom (Gen 14:12).

Alternate translation: “in another part of the land in the cities of the Jordan River valley” or “in another part of the land in the cities in the valley surrounding the Jordan River”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 13:12 (#5)

**"and moved his tents as far as"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “He eventually pitched his tents in” or “and eventually moved his tents near”

### Genesis 13:12 (#6)

**"Sodom"**

Alternate translation: “the city of Sodom and settled there.”

### Genesis 13:13 (#1)

**"Now the men of Sodom"**

The conjunction “Now/But” introduces background information that builds suspense for what happens to the people of Sodom later in Genesis (chapters 18–19). Consider what is the best way to begin this verse in your language. Also, this phrase probably has a general meaning here that includes all the people of Sodom, especially the men.

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 13:13 (#2)

**"were} exceedingly wicked"**

Alternate translation: “were very evil”

### Genesis 13:13 (#3)

**"and sinful against Yahweh"**

Some translations treat the phrase **wicked and sinful** as a hendiadys that means “wicked sinners”, but it is best to keep the two parts of this phrase separate (like the Hebrew text does) to emphasize

the people’s evil character and behavior. Alternate translation: “were terrible sinners against Yahweh.” or “were always rebelling against Yahweh.”

### Genesis 13:14 (#1)

**"Lift up your eyes please"**

See how you translated the idiom “lift ... eyes” in verse 10. The Hebrew word for **please** is used to show politeness when making a proposal or to soften a command. It can also be translated “now” or omitted, depending on the context. Your translation here should not sound like God is begging. Alternate translation: “Look around now”

See: Politeness

### Genesis 13:14 (#2)

**"from the place where you {are}"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase first in this quote and say, “From where you are standing, look all around you. Look ...” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “from where you are standing,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 13:14 (#3)

**"and look"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

### Genesis 13:14 (#4)

**"northward and southward and eastward and westward"**

See how you translated “east” and “west” in Gen 12:8. Alternate translation: “to the north, south, east, and west,” or “in all directions: north, south, east, and west,” or “around you in every direction,”

### Genesis 13:15 (#1)

**"because all the land that you see"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "All that land, as far as you can see,"

### Genesis 13:15 (#2)

**"I will give to you and to your offspring"**

See how you translated **offspring** in Gen 12:7.

### Genesis 13:15 (#3)

**"forever"**

Alternate translation: "to possess forever."

### Genesis 13:16 (#1)

**"And I will make your offspring"**

Alternate translation: "Besides that, I will also cause your descendants to be" or "In fact, I will also give you so many offspring that they will be"

### Genesis 13:16 (#2)

**"like the dust of the earth"**

See how you translated "dust/dirt" in Gen 3:19. Alternate translation: "as numerous as the specks of dirt on the earth,"

### Genesis 13:16 (#3)

**"which if anyone were able to count"**

The Hebrew text has a contrary-to-fact clause here which implies that it is impossible for anyone to count all the specks of dust. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Just as it is impossible to count" or "Just as no one is able to count"

See: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

### Genesis 13:16 (#4)

**"the dust of the earth"**

For some languages it is not natural to repeat "of/on the earth" here. Do what is best in your

language. Alternate translation: "all the dirt specks" or "how many specks of dirt there are,"

### Genesis 13:16 (#5)

**"your offspring could also be counted"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the last two clauses and say, "No one will be able to count how many offspring/descendants you have, just as no one can count how many specks/particles of dust/dirt there are." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "so it will be impossible to count all your offspring because they will be so numerous." or "no one will be able to count how many descendants you have."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 13:17 (#1)

**"Get up and walk"**

The phrase "get up" may imply that Abram was sitting down, but it probably just means that God is telling him to start walking through the land. Alternate translation: "Now go walk"

### Genesis 13:17 (#2)

**"through the land"**

Alternate translation: "throughout the land in all directions,"

### Genesis 13:17 (#3)

**"through its length and through its width"**

The phrase "its length ... its width" also includes all the area of land in between. Consider what is the best way to translate this merism in your language. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "including its length and its width, and look it over," or "Walk throughout the entire land and look it over,"

See: Merism

**Genesis 13:17 (#4)****"because to you I am giving it"**

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **to you** is before the verb to emphasize Abram. In your translation, communicate this emphasis in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "because you are the one I am giving it to."

**Genesis 13:18 (#1)****"So Abram moved his tents"**

Abram obeyed God, but we do not know if he did everything that God commanded in verse 17 before he moved his tents near Hebron (verse 18), or if moving his tents was the first step in obeying what God told him to do. It is best to keep this general in your translation (as the Hebrew text does). Also see how you translated the phrase **moved his tents** in verse 12. Alternate translation: "Then Abram did what Yahweh commanded and moved his tents" or "Abram obeyed Yahweh and relocated his tents"

**Genesis 13:18 (#2)****"and went and settled"**

Alternate translation: "and went to live"

**Genesis 13:18 (#3)****"by the terebinth trees of Mamre"**

See how you translated **terebinth** in Gen 12:6. Alternate translation: "near the terebinth trees on the land owned by a man named Mamre,"

**Genesis 13:18 (#4)****"and there he built an altar"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated this phrase in Gen 12:7–8.

**Genesis 13:18 (#5)****"to Yahweh"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 12:7 and how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 8:20 and 12:8. Alternate translation: "and offered sacrifices on it to thank and worship Yahweh."

**Genesis 14:1 (#1)****"Now it happened in the days of"**

Alternate translation: "Then it happened that during the time when"

**Genesis 14:1 (#2)****"Amraphel king of"**

The term **king** refers to the highest ruler or leader over a kingdom, which at that time was often just a city, a small region or a people group. Translate this with the best word for that in your language. Also see how you translated **Shinar** in Gen 10:10; 11:2. Alternate translation: "Amraphel was the ruler over" or "King Amraphel was ruling"

See:

**Genesis 14:1 (#3)****"Shinar"**

Alternate translation: "the region of Shinar,"

**Genesis 14:1 (#4)****"Arioch king of"**

It is not known whether Ellasar was the name of a city or the name of a kingdom that had one or more cities. Alternate translation: "Arioch was the ruler over" or "King Arioch was ruling"

**Genesis 14:1 (#5)****"Ellasar"**

Alternate translation: "the kingdom of Ellasar,"

**Genesis 14:1 (#6)****"Kedorlaomer king of"**

In Hebrew this king's name is pronounced **Kedorlaomer**. However in many translations it is spelled "Chedorlaomer". Be consistent with your choice throughout this chapter. Also, **Elam** refers to the land where the descendants of Shem's son Elam lived (Gen 10:22). Alternate translation: "Kedorlaomer was the ruler over" or "King Kedorlaomer was ruling"

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 14:1 (#7)

**"Elam"**

Alternate translation: "the land of the Elamites,"

## Genesis 14:1 (#8)

**"and Tidal king of"**

Most translation teams transliterate the name "Goyim" (as they do other names in the Bible). Some translations translate its meaning and say, "the nations/peoples." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and Tidal was the ruler over" or "and King Tidal was ruling"

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 14:1 (#9)

**"the Goiim"**

Most translation teams transliterate the name "Goyim" (as they do other names in the Bible). Some translations translate its meaning and say "the nations/peoples". Do what is best in your language.

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 14:2 (#1)

**"they made war against"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here, which depends on how you translated verse 1. Alternate translation: "those four kings became allies and made war" or "those four kings joined forces and went to war"

## Genesis 14:2 (#2)

**"Bera king of"**

Alternate translation: "Bera who was the ruler over" or "King Bera who was ruling"

## Genesis 14:2 (#3)

**"and against Birsha king of"**

Alternate translation: "Birsha who was the ruler over" or "King Birsha who was ruling"

## Genesis 14:2 (#4)

**"Shinab king of"**

Alternate translation: "Shinab who was the ruler over" or "King Shinab who was ruling"

## Genesis 14:2 (#5)

**"and Shemeber king of"**

Alternate translation: "Shemeber who was the ruler over" or "King Shemeber who was ruling"

## Genesis 14:2 (#6)

**"and the king of"**

Alternate translation: "and the ruler over" or "and the ruler who was ruling"

## Genesis 14:2 (#7)

**"which {is} Zoar"**

This town is first mentioned in Gen 13:10, but it was not actually named Zoar until later (Gen 19:22). You may want to put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "which is now called Zoar." or "which was later called Zoar." or "that is, Zoar."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 14:3 (#1)

**"All these"**



Consider whether it is necessary to make it explicit in your translation that **these** refers to the five kings just mentioned in verse 2. Alternate translation: "These five kings all"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 14:3 (#2)

**"joined together"**

Alternate translation: "combined their forces as partners and fought against the four kings"

### Genesis 14:3 (#3)

**"which {is now} the Sea of Salt"**

The Hebrew word for "sea/ocean" can also refer to a large lake. The Salt Sea, also known as the Dead Sea, is about 31 miles (50 kilometers) long and 9 miles (15 kilometers) wide. Use a term in your language for a body of water that size. Alternate translation: "which later became the Salt Sea."

### Genesis 14:4 (#1)

**"For} twelve years"**

This paragraph (verses 4–9) is a flashback that tells the events that led up to the war (verses 1–3). Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information. Alternate translation: "This is what happened: For twelve years" or "This is why they were fighting: During twelve years"

See: Background Information

### Genesis 14:4 (#2)

**"they had served"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the five kings (listed in verse 2) at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "the five kings had paid taxes to" or "the five kings had been subject to" or "they had been ruled by"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 14:4 (#3)

**"Kedorlaomer"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled this name in verse 1. Alternate translation: "King Kedorlaomer"

### Genesis 14:4 (#4)

**"but the thirteenth year"**

Alternate translation: "but sometime in the thirteenth year"

### Genesis 14:4 (#5)

**"they rebelled"**

Alternate translation: "they started to revolt against him."

### Genesis 14:5 (#1)

**"Then in the fourteenth year"**

Alternate translation: "Then sometime in the fourteenth year,"

### Genesis 14:5 (#2)

**"Kedorlaomer"**

Alternate translation: "King Kedorlaomer"

### Genesis 14:5 (#3)

**"who {were} with him"**

Alternate translation: "who were allied with him" or "who were his partners"

### Genesis 14:5 (#4)

**"went"**

Verses 5–7 list enemies of King Kedorlaomer that are in addition to the five kings mentioned in verses 2–4. Consider whether or not to make it explicit in your translation here that they were fighting all their enemies. Alternate translation:

“combined their armies and went to fight against all their enemies”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 14:5 (#5)

**"and struck"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “First, they conquered”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 14:5 (#6)

**"the Rephaim"**

See how you translated the names of people groups in Gen 10:4, 13–18, and see the note about that at 10:4. Alternate translation: “the Repha people”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 14:5 (#7)

**"and the Zuzim"**

Alternate translation: “and the Zuzites” or “and the Zuz people”

### Genesis 14:5 (#8)

**"the Emim"**

Alternate translation: “the Em people”

### Genesis 14:6 (#1)

**"and the Horites"**

Alternate translation: “and the Hor people”

### Genesis 14:6 (#2)

**"in their hill country of Seir"**

Alternate translation: “who lived in the hill country of the region of Seir” or “who lived in the Seir Hills”

### Genesis 14:6 (#3)

**"which {is} by"**

Alternate translation: “which is located beside” or “which is on the edge of”

### Genesis 14:6 (#4)

**"the wilderness"**

A wilderness is a dry, rocky area where few plants grow and few people live. See how you translated “wilderness/desert” in Gen 12:9 and 13:1, 3 (if you made that explicit in those verses). Alternate translation: “a desert.”

### Genesis 14:7 (#1)

**"Then they turned back"**

Alternate translation: “Next the four kings and their armies”

### Genesis 14:7 (#2)

**"Then they turned back"**

Alternate translation: “started to return home”

### Genesis 14:7 (#3)

**"which {is} Kadesh"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: “which is now called Kadesh,” or “which was later called Kadesh,” or “that is, Kadesh,”

### Genesis 14:7 (#4)

**"and they struck"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “They defeated”

### Genesis 14:7 (#5)

**"the entire territory of the Amalekites"**

Alternate translation: "the whole area where the Amalekites lived" or "... where the Amalek people group lived"

### Genesis 14:7 (#6)

#### "and also the Amorites"

Be consistent here with how you translated **Amorites** in Gen 10:16. Alternate translation: "as well as the Amor people group,"

### Genesis 14:8 (#1)

#### "Then" - "went out"

Verse 8 is talking about the same battle that is mentioned in verse 2, except it leaves out the names of the kings. Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like a different battle.

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 14:8 (#2)

**"the king of Sodom, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela"**

Be consistent in verse 8 with how you spelled the names of these cities in verse 2 and in Gen 10:19. Alternate translation: "the kings over the cities of Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Bela,"

### Genesis 14:8 (#3)

#### "which {is} Zoar"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: "which is now called Zoar," or "that is, Zoar,"

### Genesis 14:8 (#4)

#### "Then" - "went out"

Alternate translation: "went out with their armies"

### Genesis 14:8 (#5)

#### "into the Valley of Siddim"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3.

### Genesis 14:8 (#6)

#### "and arranged themselves for battle"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "and assembled/prepared/positioned themselves for battle" or "and got ready to fight" or (2) "and joined/united together in battle"

### Genesis 14:9 (#1)

#### "against Kedorlaomer king of"

The same kings (and the places they ruled) that are listed here in verse 9 are listed in verse 1, but in a different order. Be consistent here with how you spelled the names there. Alternate translation: "against Kedorlaomer who was the ruler over" or "against King Kedorlaomer who was ruling"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 14:9 (#2)

#### "Elam"

Alternate translation: "the region of Elam,"

### Genesis 14:9 (#3)

#### "and Tidal king of"

Alternate translation: "Tidal who was the ruler over" or "King Tidal who was ruling"

### Genesis 14:9 (#4)

#### "Goiim"

Be consistent here with how you translated this people group name in verse 1. Alternate translation: "the Goyim people,"

**Genesis 14:9 (#5)****"and Amraphel king of"**

Alternate translation: "Amraphel who was the ruler over" or "King Amraphel who was ruling"

**Genesis 14:9 (#6)****"Shinar"**

Alternate translation: "the region of Shinar,"

**Genesis 14:9 (#7)****"and Arioch king of"**

Alternate translation: "and Arioch who was the ruler over" or "and King Arioch who was ruling"

**Genesis 14:9 (#8)****"Ellasar"**

Alternate translation: "the city of Ellasar,"

**Genesis 14:9 (#9)****"four kings against"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "It was four kings who started fighting against" or "Then those four kings attacked"

**Genesis 14:9 (#10)****"the five"**

It is implied in verse 10 that the four kings had started defeating the five kings. If that is not clear, you could make that explicit here.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 14:10 (#1)****"Now the Valley of Siddim {had} many tar pits"**

The word **Now** indicates a change of topic and introduces background information. For some languages it is more natural to omit that word and

just use a paragraph break. Do what is best in your language. Also be consistent here with how you translated **the Valley of Siddim** in verses 3 and 8, and how you translated **tar** in Gen 11:3. Alternate translation: "The Siddim Valley was full of tar pits," or "There were many tar pits in the Siddim Valley,"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 14:10 (#2)****"and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled"**

It is assumed here that the kings were accompanied by their armies. If that is not understood, you could make that explicit in your translation. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "As the kings of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah and their armies were running away from the battle,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 14:10 (#3)****"and they fell there"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "they died there in the tar pits." or "some of their soldiers/men were killed there in the tar pits." or "they fell into the tar pits and died." or (2) "jumped into the tar pits to hide." Notice that the king of Sodom is still alive in verse 17, so the pronoun **they** probably does not include him here, depending on how you translate **fell there**.

**Genesis 14:10 (#4)****"And those who remained"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "while/but those who were left" or "Those who escaped" or (2) "But the other three kings and their armies/soldiers". Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the previous sentence.

**Genesis 14:10 (#5)****"fled"**

See how you translated **fled** earlier in this verse.

**Genesis 14:10 (#6)****"to the hill country"**

See how you translated **hill country** in verse 6.  
Alternate translation: "to the hills to hide."

**Genesis 14:11 (#1)****"Then they took"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the four kings at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "Then the four kings took by force"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 14:11 (#2)****"all the possessions of Sodom and Gomorrah"**

The phrase **Sodom and Gomorrah** refers here to the people who lived in those cities. Consider what is the best way to refer to those people here in your language. Alternate translation: "all the possessions from the people of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 14:11 (#3)****"and all their food"**

Alternate translation: "even all their food," or "as well as all their food,"

**Genesis 14:11 (#4)****"and left"**

Alternate translation: "and left with it all." or "and carried it all away with them." or "and went on their way."

**Genesis 14:12 (#1)****"And they took"**

Alternate translation: "They also took with them" or "They also carried away" or "The four kings also captured"

**Genesis 14:12 (#2)****"since he was living in Sodom"**

For some languages it may be more clearer or more natural to put this phrase first in this sentence and say, "Since Abram's nephew Lot was also living in the city of Sodom, the four kings took/captured him too, along with his possessions."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 14:13 (#1)****"Then someone who escaped came"**

Alternate translation: "Then someone from Sodom escaped from the battle and came"

**Genesis 14:13 (#2)****"and reported to Abram the Hebrew"**

The Hebrew people are the descendants of Abram (Abraham), and they were named after his ancestor Eber, who was Shem's great grandson (Genesis 11:10–26). Some of this information could be put in a footnote.

**Genesis 14:13 (#3)****"And he"**

This phrase introduces background information about Abram as part of the setting for what happens next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Now at that time he" or "At that time he"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 14:13 (#4)****"was living by the terebinth trees of Mamre"**

See how you translated this clause in Gen 13:18. Alternate translation: "was still living by the oak"

trees that were owned by Mamre” or “was still living by the oak trees on the land owned by Mamre”

### Genesis 14:13 (#5)

#### "the Amorite"

See how you translated “Amorites” in verse 7. Alternate translation: “who was a member of the Amorite people group”

### Genesis 14:13 (#6)

#### "the brother of Eshcol and the brother of Aner"

Alternate translation: “whose brothers were Eshcol and Aner”

### Genesis 14:13 (#7)

#### "and they {were}"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

### Genesis 14:13 (#8)

#### "owners of a covenant with Abram"

Alternate translation: “had made a covenant with Abram to be his allies.” or “and Abram had made a pact together that they would help each other against their enemies.”

### Genesis 14:14 (#1)

#### "And when Abram heard"

Alternate translation: “When Abram found out”

### Genesis 14:14 (#2)

#### "that his relative had been taken captive"

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: “that his nephew Lot had been captured,”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 14:14 (#3)

#### "then he led out"

Alternate translation: “he called together for battle” or “he summoned for battle.”

### Genesis 14:14 (#4)

#### "his 318 trained men who had been born in his house"

It is clear from verse 15 that these men were Abram’s servants. Alternate translation: “318 of the servants who had been born in his household and were trained warriors” or “318 of his servants born in his household whom he had trained to fight”

### Genesis 14:14 (#5)

#### "and he pursued {his enemies}"

In this sentence the pronoun **he** refers to Abram and all those who had united with him as his allies. Alternate translation: “Then he and his men and his allies went after the invaders” or “Then together with his allies they all pursued the four kings and their armies”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 14:14 (#6)

#### "as far as"

Alternate translation: “until they caught up with them at”

### Genesis 14:15 (#1)

#### "Then he divided against them during the night, he and his servants"

Alternate translation: “Then during the night he and his servants divided into groups, surprise attacked the four kings and their soldiers,”

**Genesis 14:15 (#2)****"and struck them"**

Alternate translation: "and routed them"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 14:15 (#3)****"and pursued them"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then they went after them"

**Genesis 14:15 (#4)****"to Hobah"**

Alternate translation: "all the way to the town of Hobah,"

**Genesis 14:16 (#1)****"And he brought back"**

Alternate translation: "As a result, he got back" or "He recovered"

**Genesis 14:16 (#2)****"and he also brought back"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He also got back" or "He also recovered"

**Genesis 14:16 (#3)****"and his possessions"**

Alternate translation: "and all his belongings,"

**Genesis 14:17 (#1)****"Then the king of Sodom came out"**

Alternate translation: "Then the king over the city of Sodom"

**Genesis 14:17 (#2)****"Then the king of Sodom came out"**

Consider whether **came** or "went" is more natural here in your language. Alternate translation: "Then the king over the city of Sodom went out"

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 14:17 (#3)****"to meet him"**

Alternate translation: "to greet him" or "and welcomed Abram"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 14:17 (#4)****"in the Valley of Shaveh"**

Alternate translation: "in the Shaveh Valley,"

**Genesis 14:17 (#5)****"after he returned"**

When Abram reached the Shaveh Valley, he was still about 20 miles (30 kilometers) north of his home, which was near the city of Hebron (Gen 13:18). Alternate translation: "as he was returning home" or "as he was going back home"

**Genesis 14:17 (#6)****"from striking"**

See how you translated "struck" in verse 15. Alternate translation: "after defeating" or "after he defeated"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 14:17 (#7)****"Kedorlaomer"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled this name previously in this chapter; see verses 1, 4–5, 9, 17.

Alternate translation: "King Kedorlaomer and his army"

### Genesis 14:17 (#8)

"and the kings"

Alternate translation: "and the armies of the other three kings"

### Genesis 14:17 (#9)

"who {were} with him"

For some languages it may be better to put the clauses of this verse in the order that the events actually happened. For example you could say, "After Abram defeated King Kedorlaomer/Chedorlaomer and the other three kings who were Kedorlaomer's/Chedorlaomer's allies, he started to return home. When Abram reached the Shaveh Valley, that is, the King's Valley, the king over the city of Sodom came/went there and greeted/welcome him." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "who had joined themselves with Kedorlaomer"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 14:18 (#1)

"Then Melchizedek the king of Salem"

Salem is the short name for the city of Jerusalem (See: Psalm 76:2). The Shaveh Valley, where Melchizedek met Abram, was located just east of Jerusalem. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Then Melchizedek who was the king over the city of Salem also went there, and he"

### Genesis 14:18 (#2)

"brought out bread and wine"

It is not known whether Melchizedek brought out a large amount of bread and wine to feed Abram and his men, or if he brought out just enough for him and Abram to share, possibly as part of establishing a covenant between them. The first alternate above would work for either meaning. See how you translated **wine** in Gen 9:21, 24. Alternate

translation: "brought (some) bread and wine for them to eat and drink." or "brought some bread and wine for Abram and his men to eat and drink."

### Genesis 14:18 (#3)

"And he {was}"

Alternate translation: "He was also"

### Genesis 14:18 (#4)

"a priest"

A priest is someone who represents people to God, and who represents God to the people. He leads the people in praying, worship, making sacrifices, ceremonies, and festivals. Alternate translation: "a priest for"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 14:18 (#5)

"to God Most High"

Alternate translation: "the most high God." or "the highest God." or "God who is higher than all other gods."

### Genesis 14:19 (#1)

"And he blessed him"

Make sure your translation of "blessed ... and said" refers to the same event, not two separate events. Also see how you translated "bless" in Gen 12:2-3. Alternate translation: "He blessed Abram" or "So Melchizedek blessed Abram"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 14:19 (#2)

"May Abram be blessed"

Alternate translation: "I pray that you Abram will be blessed"



**Genesis 14:19 (#3)****"by God Most High"**

See how you translated this title in verse 18. For some languages it may be better to switch the order of phrases in this sentence and say, "May the greatest God, who owns heaven and earth, bless Abram/you." or "I pray that the most high/powerful God, who created heaven and earth, will bless you Abram." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "by the most high God," or "by the highest God,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 14:19 (#4)****"the Possessor of heaven and earth"**

The Hebrew word for **Possessor** also means "Creator," which is used in many translations. Whichever one you do not use in the text you could put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "who is the Owner of heaven and earth." or "who created heaven and earth."

**Genesis 14:20 (#1)****"And praised be"**

See how you translated "Praised be" in Gen 9:26. Alternate translation: "Give praise to" or "Let everyone praise"

**Genesis 14:20 (#2)****"God Most High"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 18–19. Alternate translation: "the most high God," or "the highest God,"

**Genesis 14:20 (#3)****"who delivered your enemies into your hand"**

The phrase "delivered ... into your hand" is an idiom. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: "because he gave you victory over your enemies!"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 14:20 (#4)****"Then he gave to him"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 14:20 (#5)****"a tenth"**

Alternate translation: "one-tenth"

**Genesis 14:20 (#6)****"of everything"**

This phrase refers to the belongings of the people of Sodom that Abram had recovered from the kings who stole them. Alternate translation: "of everything that he had captured in the battle." or "of all the plunder he had brought back from the battle."

**Genesis 14:21 (#1)****"Then the king of Sodom said to Abram"**

Alternate translation: "Then the king of Sodom requested of Abram," or "After that, the king over the city of Sodom urged Abram,"

**Genesis 14:21 (#2)****"Give to me"**

Make sure in your translation that the king of Sodom's request to Abram sounds polite, not rude or demanding. Alternate translation: "Please give to me"

See: Politeness

**Genesis 14:21 (#3)****"the people"**

Alternate translation: “my people whom you saved,” or “the people from Sodom whom you rescued,”

### Genesis 14:21 (#4)

#### "but the possessions take for yourself"

See how you translated **possessions** in verses 11–12,16. Alternate translation: “but the plunder you may keep for yourself.” or “but take for yourself the belongings that you recovered.”

### Genesis 14:22 (#1)

#### "But Abram said to the king of Sodom"

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Abram and to the king of Sodom at this point in their conversation. Alternate translation: “But he replied to him,”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 14:22 (#2)

#### "I raise my hand to Yahweh"

It was the custom that when a person made an oath, he raised his hand as an appeal to God to witness his oath and to hold him accountable and punish him if he were to break his oath. If this would not be clear to your readers, you could explain the significance of this action in the text or in a footnote. Alternate translation: “As a witness to this oath, I call on Yahweh”

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 14:22 (#3)

#### "I raise my hand to Yahweh"

The phrase **I raise my hand to Yahweh** begins an oath formula. Use a natural way in your language to express an oath. Alternate translation: “I pledge before Yahweh”

See: Oath Formulas

### Genesis 14:22 (#4)

#### "God Most High"

See how you translated this phrase in verses 18–20. Alternate translation: “who is the highest God”

### Genesis 14:22 (#5)

#### "the Possessor of heaven and earth"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 19. Alternate translation: “and the Owner of heaven and earth,” or “and the One who created heaven and earth,”

### Genesis 14:23 (#1)

""

Abram is leaving out some of the words that in many languages a sentence would need in order to be complete. You could supply these words from later in the sentence if it would be clearer in your language. Alternate translation: “if I take anything from a thread to the strap of a sandal”

See: Ellipsis

### Genesis 14:23 (#2)

""

According to custom, Abram is leaving out the part of his oath that tells what Yahweh will do to him if he does the things that he mentions in his oath. Because of the power of spoken words, people left that part to be understood silently. You could supply these words if it would be clearer and not offensive in your language. Alternate translation: “if from a thread even to the strap of a sandal, or I take from anything that {belongs} to you, may Yahweh punish me severely” or “...may Yahweh strike me dead”

See: Ellipsis

### Genesis 14:23 (#3)

""

Abram is mentioning things that are so small and insignificant that no one would want them in order to make the point that he doesn't want anything

from the king of Sodom. Alternate translation: “even a thread or the strap from a sandal,” or “even something as small as a piece of string or a sandal strap”

See: Hyperbole

### Genesis 14:23 (#4)

""

This clause emphasizes Abram’s point by repeating the meaning of the previous phrase in different words. Consider what is the best way to emphasize a point in your language. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “No I will not keep anything”

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 14:23 (#5)

""

For some languages, it may be clearer and more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, “that I will not keep/accept anything that belongs to you or your people, not even something as small as a piece of thread/string or the strap from a sandal.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “that belongs to you or your people,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 14:23 (#6)

""

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

### Genesis 14:23 (#7)

""

The Hebrew pronoun that refers here to the king of Sodom is emphatic. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Also consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or

indirect quote. Alternate translation: “I am the one who made Abram wealthy!”

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 14:24 (#1)

"I {will take} nothing, except"

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this exception sentence. Alternate translation: “So I will not keep anything, except” or “So I will only accept”

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

### Genesis 14:24 (#2)

"what the young men have eaten"

These young men were Abram’s trained servants or warriors who are mentioned in verses 14–15. Alternate translation: “what my servants who fought with me have eaten” or “what my men ate”

### Genesis 14:24 (#3)

"and the share of the other men who went with me: Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre"

Alternate translation: “and the share of the plunder that Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for being my allies” or “and what Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre deserve for helping me in the battle.”

### Genesis 14:24 (#4)

"Let them take"

Abram is being polite, but make sure in your translation that he does not sound like he is begging, especially since he is a mighty warrior. Alternate translation: “Please let them take” or “Please give them”

See: Politeness

### Genesis 14:24 (#5)

"their share"

Alternate translation: "their share of the plunder."  
or "their part of what we recovered."

## Genesis 15:1 (#1)

### "After those things"

Alternate translation: "After those events happened,"

## Genesis 15:1 (#2)

### "the word of Yahweh came to Abram in a vision, saying"

A vision is a supernatural experience that a person has while he is awake, so the way you translate this term should be different from the way you translate "dream" (since people have dreams while asleep). Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like what Abram saw was unreal; what he saw and heard actually happened. Alternate translation: "Yahweh appeared to Abram visually and said to him,"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

## Genesis 15:1 (#3)

### "I {am} a shield for you"

God is like a shield to Abram since he protects him. Consider what is the best way to translate this metaphor in your language. Alternate translation: "I am your shield" or "I protect you like a shield," or "I will shield you,"

See: Metaphor

## Genesis 15:1 (#4)

### "your reward will be very great"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "and your reward from me will be very great." or "and I will give you a very great/valuable reward/gift." (2) "and I am your very great/valuable reward." The context (verse 2) shows that the first interpretation is what Abram understood God to be saying.

## Genesis 15:2 (#1)

### "But Abram said"

The way you translate this quote margin may depend on how you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "Then Abram said to him," or "Then Abram asked him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 15:2 (#2)

### "My Lord Yahweh"

The phrase **My Lord** means that Yahweh owns Abram and has complete authority over him, just as a master (at that time) had complete authority over his servant. Alternate translation: "My Master Yahweh," or "Yahweh my Lord"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

## Genesis 15:2 (#3)

### "what will you give to me"

Abram uses this rhetorical question to show that he is lamenting that he has no children. Make sure in your translation that he does not sound rude. Alternate translation: "what reward can you give to me that would benefit me," or "even if you reward me greatly, that will not help me,"

See: Rhetorical Question

## Genesis 15:2 (#4)

### "since I go childless"

Alternate translation: "since I remain childless"

## Genesis 15:2 (#5)

### "and the son of the inheritance of"

The phrase **son of the inheritance** is used here as an idiom that means "inheritor" or "heir"; it does not refer to an actual son. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "so that after I die, the heir of" or "So when I die, the one who will own"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 15:2 (#6)

#### "my house"

This phrase refers here to all Abram's belongings.  
Alternate translation: "my estate" or "all that I own"

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 15:2 (#7)

#### "is} the Damascan, Eliezer"

In the Hebrew text, Abram emphasizes the fact that Eliezer was from Damascus, which means he was a foreigner from a foreign city, not a blood relative. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translated "the city of Damascus" in Gen 14:15. Alternate translation: "is my foreign servant Eliezer from Damascus"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 15:3 (#1)

#### "Then Abram said"

Some languages omit these words, because the same speaker is still speaking to the same audience. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then he added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 15:3 (#2)

#### "Behold"

Some translations omit this phrase to prevent Abram from sounding rude. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Look"

### Genesis 15:3 (#3)

#### "you have not given a child to me"

In the Hebrew text **to me** is before **you have not given** to emphasize Abram. Do what is natural in your language.

### Genesis 15:3 (#4)

#### "so that behold"

Alternate translation: "so that now after I die,"

### Genesis 15:3 (#5)

#### "a servant of my house"

Alternate translation: "a servant from my household"

### Genesis 15:3 (#6)

#### "is my heir"

Alternate translation: "will be my heir!" or "will get everything I own!"

### Genesis 15:4 (#1)

#### "Then behold"

Alternate translation: "Immediately"

### Genesis 15:4 (#2)

#### "the word of Yahweh {came} to him, saying"

See how you translated this idiom in verse 1. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: "Yahweh said to him"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 15:4 (#3)

#### "That {man}"

Alternate translation: "No, that man"

### Genesis 15:4 (#4)

#### "will not be your heir, but rather"

Alternate translation: "will not get your estate rather"

**Genesis 15:4 (#5)****"a son who comes from your bowels, he"**

The phrase **comes from your bowels** is an idiom that refers to fathering a child. Make sure your translation of this clause does not imply that Abram would give birth to a son. Alternate translation: "a son whom you father"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 15:4 (#6)****"will be your heir"**

Alternate translation: "will own your estate" or "will own it."

**Genesis 15:5 (#1)****"Then he brought him"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Yahweh and Abram at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh led Abram"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 15:5 (#2)****"outside"**

Abram was probably inside a tent, not inside a house. But if possible, it is best to leave this implied in a translation (as the Hebrew text does).

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 15:5 (#3)****"Please look"**

See how you translated "please" in Gen 13:14. Make sure your translation does not sound like God is begging. Alternate translation: "Now look up"

**Genesis 15:5 (#4)****"at the heavens"**

Alternate translation: "into the heavens" or "into the night sky"

**Genesis 15:5 (#5)****"and count the stars, if you are able to count them"**

God's point here is that there are so many stars that no one could ever count that high. He is not questioning Abram's ability to count. Consider what is the best way to translate this contrary-to-fact statement in your language. Alternate translation: "and try to count how many stars there are, if in fact, anyone could possibly count all of them." or "There are so many stars that no one could ever count them all."

See: Connect — Contrary to Fact Conditions

**Genesis 15:5 (#6)****"Then he said to him"**

Throughout this chapter make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom. Always use pronouns and nouns in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "While Abram was looking at the stars, Yahweh said to Abram," or "So Abram looked up at the stars, and Yahweh continued speaking to him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 15:5 (#7)****"So will your offspring be"**

Alternate translation: "That is how many your offspring will be." or "That is how many offspring you will have."

**Genesis 15:6 (#1)****"And he trusted"**

Many translations omit the conjunction **And** here. Do what is best in your language. Also, make sure it is clear in your translation that Abram is the subject here, not Yahweh (who was the last subject in verse 5). Alternate translation: "He believed Yahweh," or "He believed what Yahweh said,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 15:6 (#2)

#### "and he counted it to him {as} righteousness"

Notice that Yahweh is now the subject again. Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom here and throughout this section. Alternate translation: "and so Yahweh credited it to him as righteousness." or "and because of that, Yahweh reckoned Abram to be righteous." or "so Yahweh considered Abram to have a right relationship with him."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 15:7 (#1)

#### "Then he said to him"

Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh said to Abram,"

### Genesis 15:7 (#2)

#### "I {am} Yahweh who brought you out of Ur of"

Alternate translation: "I am Yahweh who led you here from the city of Ur"

See: Go and Come

### Genesis 15:7 (#3)

#### "the Kasdim"

See how you translated "Ur of the Kasdim/Chaldeans" in Gen 11:28, 31, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "which is ruled by the Kasdim" or "that the Kasdim rule" or "where the Kasdim live"

### Genesis 15:7 (#4)

#### "to possess it"

Alternate translation: "as your homeland." or "to be your own"

### Genesis 15:8 (#1)

#### "Then he said"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abram is the one speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: "Then Abram said to him," or "But he asked him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 15:8 (#2)

#### "My Lord Yahweh"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: "My Master Yahweh," or "Yahweh my Lord"

### Genesis 15:8 (#3)

#### "how will I know"

Alternate translation: "how can I know for sure" or "how will I be sure"

### Genesis 15:8 (#4)

#### "that I will possess it"

Alternate translation: "that I will possess this territory?"

### Genesis 15:9 (#1)

#### "Then he said to him"

Alternate translation: "Yahweh said to him"

### Genesis 15:9 (#2)

#### "a three-year-old heifer"

Alternate translation: "a cow that is three years old,"

### Genesis 15:9 (#3)

#### "and a three-year-old she-goat"

Alternate translation: "a female goat that is three years old,"

**Genesis 15:9 (#4)****"and a three-year-old ram"**

For some languages it may be more natural to shorten this list of animals and say, "Bring to me a young cow, a female goat, and a male sheep, each of which is three years old," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and a male sheep that is three years old"

**Genesis 15:9 (#5)****"and a turtledove and a young pigeon"**

Turtledoves and pigeons are common, closely related birds that look similar and are often gray or grayish brown in color. One of the main differences is that turtledoves are smaller than pigeons. Compare how you translated "dove" in Gen 8:8. Alternate translation: "as well as a turtledove and a young pigeon."

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 15:10 (#1)****"So he brought"**

It was nighttime in verse 5 when Abram looked at the stars. Now in verses 10–11 it was probably daytime, which is when birds of prey fly (verse 11). Then in verse 12 it became night again. Consider what is the best way to begin this verse in your translation. Alternate translation: "So the next day Abram took"

**Genesis 15:10 (#2)****"all those to him"**

Some languages need to make explicit that Abram killed the animals first, before cutting them in half. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "all those animals to him and killed them."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 15:10 (#3)****"down the middle"**

Abram probably cut the animals down the middle lengthwise, which means that each half had one front leg, and one back leg. Alternate translation: "into two parts lengthwise"

**Genesis 15:10 (#4)****"and laid the halves opposite to each other"**

Alternate translation: "and placed each half a short distance across from its other half in two rows," or "and laid the right half of each animal across from its left half in two rows,"

**Genesis 15:10 (#5)****"but the birds he did not cut in two"**

See how you translated "cut ... in two" earlier in verse 10. Alternate translation: "but he did not divide the bodies of the birds in two" or "except for the birds, which he did not cut in two"

**Genesis 15:11 (#1)****"Then birds of prey came down"**

This phrase refers to large birds that eat dead animal meat. Examples of these birds include vultures, buzzards, condors, eagles, and crows. Alternate translation: "Then some birds of prey landed" or "Then some vultures swooped down and landed" or "Then some meat-eating birds"

**Genesis 15:11 (#2)****"on the carcasses"**

Alternate translation: "the dead animal parts to eat them," or "the dead animals to eat them,"

**Genesis 15:11 (#3)****"and Abram drove them away"**

Alternate translation: "but Abram scared them away." or "but Abram made them go away."



**Genesis 15:12 (#1)****"Then it happened"**

This phrase adds suspense and makes the reader wonder what will happen next. Many translations leave it out, but if possible it is best to keep it in your translation. Alternate translation: "Then it happened that"

**Genesis 15:12 (#2)****"the sun was setting"**

Alternate translation: "when the sun was going down" or "as it was starting to become night"

**Genesis 15:12 (#3)****"and a deep sleep fell on Abram"**

See how you translated a similar idiom in Gen 2:21. Alternate translation: "Abram went into a sound sleep," or "Abram went soundly asleep,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 15:12 (#4)****"and behold"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then suddenly,"

**Genesis 15:12 (#5)****"terror {and} great darkness fell on him"**

Alternate translation: "a great terrifying darkness came over him." or "it became very dark, and he was terrified."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 15:13 (#1)****"Then he said to Abram"**

Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh said to Abram"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 15:13 (#2)****"Know for certain that"**

Alternate translation: "You can be sure that"

**Genesis 15:13 (#3)****"your offspring"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5.

**Genesis 15:13 (#4)****"will be strangers"**

The word **strangers** refers to people who live temporarily in a city, country, or region, but they do not settle there permanently. Alternate translation: "will live as sojourners"

**Genesis 15:13 (#5)****"that} {does} not {belong} to them"**

Alternate translation: "that is not their home"

**Genesis 15:13 (#6)****"and they will serve them"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, make sure that your translation of these pronouns clearly communicates who is being referred to. Alternate translation: "They will serve the people in that land as slaves," or "They will be slaves for the people who live in that land"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 15:13 (#7)****"and they will afflict them"**

Notice that here the pronoun **they** refers to the people who were living in the country where Abram's descendants will be sojourning and **them** refers to Abram's descendants. Make sure that is

clear in your translation. Alternate translation: “and those people will oppress them” or “and those people will treat them badly”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 15:13 (#8)

#### "400 years"

This phrase refers to how long Abram's descendants would live in a land that is not theirs, not how long they would be oppressed, which was less than half of those 400 years. To make that clear in your translation, you could move this phrase earlier and say: “I want you to know that for 400 years your offspring/descendants will live in a land/country that is not their own, and the people of that country will oppress them.” Alternate translation: “for a period of 400 years.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 15:14 (#1)

#### "But also"

Alternate translation: “And you can also be sure that”

### Genesis 15:14 (#2)

#### "the nation"

Alternate translation: “the people of that nation” or “the people”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 15:14 (#3)

#### "that they serve"

Alternate translation: “whom they serve as slaves” or “who made them slaves”

### Genesis 15:14 (#4)

#### "I will judge"

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, “But

I will also judge/punish the people of the nation that they serve”. Do what is natural in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 15:14 (#5)

#### "and after that"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Then”

### Genesis 15:14 (#6)

#### "they will come out"

Alternate translation: “your offspring will leave that land”

### Genesis 15:14 (#7)

#### "with great possessions"

See how you translated **possessions** in Gen 14:16, 21. Alternate translation: “with many possessions.” or “with much wealth.” or “and take many riches with them.”

### Genesis 15:15 (#1)

#### "And you"

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic and has an emphatic position in the sentence (before the verb) to change the topic. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Now as for you,”

### Genesis 15:15 (#2)

#### "you will go to your fathers in peace"

This clause is a euphemism that refers to Abram's death. However, it is best to translate the clause as literally as possible, since it implies the important information that people are still alive after they have died on earth. Also, notice that the term **fathers** refers here to ancestors who have died, not those who are still alive on earth. Alternate

translation: "you will be at peace when you die and join your forefathers who have gone before you"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 15:15 (#3)

**"you will be buried at a good old age"**

This clause is a euphemism that refers to Abram's death. Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like he will be buried alive. For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of this sentence and say, "after you have lived a good/blessed long life, you will die peacefully and join your ancestors who have died before you." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "In fact, you will not die until you have lived a blessed, long life." or "In fact, you will live a blessed, long life before you die."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 15:16 (#1)

**"Then in the fourth generation"**

Alternate translation: "Then after four generations have passed,"

### Genesis 15:16 (#2)

**"they will come back here"**

Alternate translation: "your descendants will come back to this land and live here,"

### Genesis 15:16 (#3)

**"because the sin of the Amorites {will} not {be} complete until then"**

God planned to give the Amorites' land to Abram's descendants because of the Amorites' sin. Consider whether or not to include that implied information in your translation or in a footnote. Also, see how you translated the names of people groups in Gen 10:13–18. Alternate translation: "because that is when the Amorite people will have sinned as much as I will allow before I take away their land and give it to your descendants." or "and I will give them the land of the Amor people, whose sin will have reached its limit by then."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 15:17 (#1)

**"Then it happened"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "Then it happened that"

### Genesis 15:17 (#2)

**"the sun went down"**

The sun had started to go down in verse 12. Here it had completely set. Alternate translation: "after the sun had gone down," or "after the sun had set,"

### Genesis 15:17 (#3)

**"and darkness came"**

This Hebrew word for **darkness** implies that it was darker than normal, so that not even light from the moon and stars was visible. Alternate translation: "it was very dark"

### Genesis 15:17 (#4)

**"and behold"**

For some languages it is better to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and suddenly,"

### Genesis 15:17 (#5)

**"and a flaming torch"**

Alternate translation: "and also a burning torch"

### Genesis 15:17 (#6)

**"that passed"**

Alternate translation: "and they both passed"

**Genesis 15:17 (#7)****"between those pieces"**

Alternate translation: "between the two rows of animal parts"

**Genesis 15:18 (#1)****"On that day"**

It is still nighttime at this point (See: verse 17), so the word **day** refers generally here to a 24-hour day; it does not refer to daytime. Alternate translation: "On that very day"

**Genesis 15:18 (#2)****"Yahweh cut"**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh established"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 15:18 (#3)****"a covenant with Abram"**

See how you translated **covenant** in Gen 9:9, 11–13, 15–17. Alternate translation: "a peace covenant with Abram"

**Genesis 15:18 (#4)****"saying"**

Alternate translation: "by saying,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 15:18 (#5)****"To your offspring I have given this land"**

In the Hebrew text "to your offspring/descendants" is first in this quote to emphasize Abram's descendants. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I am giving your offspring this land," or "I hereby give this land to your offspring"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 15:18 (#6)****"from the river of Egypt"**

This phrase probably refers to the Wadi El-Arish (not the Nile River), which is on the border between Egypt and Israel. It is best in a translation to leave this general as the Hebrew text does.

**Genesis 15:18 (#7)****"to the great river, the Euphrates River"**

Alternate translation: "to the big Euphrates River in the north,"

**Genesis 15:19 (#1)****"the land of"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "including the land which is owned by" or "That is the land which belongs to"

**Genesis 15:19 (#2)****"the land of} the Kenites and the Kenizzites and the Kadmonites"**

In a list of people group names like this (verses 19–21), for some languages it is more natural to leave out **and** and **the** most of the time. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Kenites, Kenizzites, Kadmonites,"

**Genesis 15:20 (#1)****"and the Hittites and the Perizzites and the Rephaim"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **the Hittites** in Gen 10:15, **the Perizzites** in Gen 13:7, and "the Rephaim/Rephaites" in Gen 14:5. Alternate translation: "the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaites," or "Hittites, Perizzites, Rephaites,"

**Genesis 15:21 (#1)****"and the Amorites and the Canaanites and the Girgashites and the Jebusites"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **the Amorites** in verse 18 and **Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites, and Jebusites** in Gen 10:15–18. Alternate translation: “Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites, and Jebusites.”

### Genesis 16:1 (#1)

**"Now Sarai, the wife of Abram"**

This verse begins a new topic and gives background information about Sarai. Some languages have a special conjunction for this. Other languages do not use a conjunction here. Do what is best in your language.

See: Background Information

### Genesis 16:1 (#2)

**"had not born {children} for him"**

Sarai's barrenness is first mentioned in Gen 11:30. Alternate translation: “still had not had any children for him,”

### Genesis 16:1 (#3)

**"but she had"**

Alternate translation: “but she did have”

### Genesis 16:1 (#4)

**"an Egyptian maidservant"**

See how you translated “female slaves/servants” in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: “an Egyptian slave woman” or “a female slave from the country of Egypt”

### Genesis 16:1 (#5)

**"and her name {was} Hagar"**

Alternate translation: “named Hagar.”

### Genesis 16:2 (#1)

**"So Sarai said to Abram"**

Alternate translation: “Then she told Abram,”

### Genesis 16:2 (#2)

**"Behold please"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 12:11. Alternate translation: “Listen now:” or “Please listen to me”

### Genesis 16:2 (#3)

**"Yahweh has prevented me from bearing {children}"**

Alternate translation: “Since Yahweh has not permitted me to bear any children,” or “As you know, Yahweh has not permitted me to bear any children, so”

### Genesis 16:2 (#4)

**"Please go to"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the previous sentence. Also, see how you translated the idiom “went to” in Gen 6:4. Alternate translation: “please sleep with” or “please have sexual relations with”

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 16:2 (#5)

**"my maidservant"**

See how you translated **maidservant** in verse 1. Alternate translation: “my slave woman Hagar.”

### Genesis 16:2 (#6)

**"Perhaps"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Maybe” or “so that perhaps”

**Genesis 16:2 (#7)****"I can be built up from her"**

Alternate translation: "I can build a family through her children." or "she can have children for me so that I can build a family."

**Genesis 16:2 (#8)****"And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai"**

Alternate translation: "Abram agreed to do what she requested" or "So Abram listened to Sarai."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 16:3 (#1)****"So Sarai, the wife of Abram, took"**

In the Hebrew text, the phrase "Abram's wife" is repeated (in verses 1 and 3) to emphasize Sarai's relationship to Abram in contrast to Hagar. For some languages it is overly redundant to repeat that phrase, and so they leave it implied here. However, if possible, it is best to keep this repetition in your translation. Alternate translation: "Then Sarai took"

**Genesis 16:3 (#2)****"Hagar, her Egyptian maidservant"**

The word **Egyptian** is repeated (in verses 1 and 3) to emphasize the fact that Hagar was a foreigner. If possible, it is best to keep this repetition in your translation. Alternate translation: "her Egyptian servant woman Hagar," or "her servant Hagar,"

**Genesis 16:3 (#3)****"at the end of ten years that Abram had lived in the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "after Abram and Sarai had lived in the land of Canaan for ten years,"

**Genesis 16:3 (#4)****"and gave her to Abram her husband as a wife for him"**

For most languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "So Abram's wife Sarai gave her servant Hagar to her husband Abram to be his second wife. This/That happened after Abram and Sarai had lived in the land/region of Canaan for ten years." Make sure your translation does not sound like verse 3 happened ten years after Abram agreed to sleep with Hagar. Alternate translation: "and she gave her to her husband Abram to be his second wife."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 16:4 (#1)****"Then he went to Hagar"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to refer to Abram by his name or by a pronoun here at the beginning of this paragraph. See how you translated the idiom "go to" in verse 2. Alternate translation: "So Abram slept with Hagar," or "So he had marital relations with Hagar,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 16:4 (#2)****"and she conceived"**

Alternate translation: "and as a result," or "and so"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 16:4 (#3)****"and she conceived"**

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase will not be embarrassing or offensive to people, especially when it is read aloud. Alternate translation: "and as a result, she became pregnant." or "and so she became pregnant."

**Genesis 16:4 (#4)****"And she saw that she had conceived"**

The word **saw** is used here as an idiom that means "realized" or "perceived". Consider whether or not you have a similar idiom in your language that

would work well here. Alternate translation: "But when she saw that she was pregnant,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 16:4 (#5)

**"and her mistress was despised in her eyes"**

The phrase **despised in her eyes** is an idiom that refers here to Hagar's attitude and disrespectful actions toward Sarai. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Also consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "she despised her owner Sarai." or "she treated her owner Sarai with contempt" or "she started to look down on her mistress Sarai."

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 16:5 (#1)

**"Then Sarai said to Abram"**

Alternate translation: "Then Sarai complained to Abram,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 16:5 (#2)

**"My wrong {is} on you"**

Alternate translation: "I am suffering because of you!" or "I am being mistreated because of you!" or "It is your fault that I am being treated wrongly"

### Genesis 16:5 (#3)

**"I myself put my maidservant into your arms"**

The idiom "put ... into your arms" refers to Abram's relationship with Hagar. Make sure that your translation of this clause is not offensive. Alternate translation: "I gave my servant to you to be your wife," or "I allowed my servant to have marital relations with you,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 16:5 (#4)

**"but she sees that she has conceived"**

Alternate translation: "but now that she knows that she is pregnant,"

### Genesis 16:5 (#5)

**"and I am despised in her eyes"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also see how you translated a similar clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: "she despises me!" or "she treats me with disdain"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 16:5 (#6)

**"May Yahweh judge between me and you"**

As the head of the household, it was Abram's responsibility to rebuke Hagar and require her to respect Sarai. You could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "I ask Yahweh to decide between you and me who is responsible for this!" or "I ask Yahweh to decide who is wrong, you or me!" or "May Yahweh judge whether it is you or I who is responsible for this!"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 16:6 (#1)

**"Then Abram said to Sarai"**

Alternate translation: "But Abram said to her,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 16:6 (#2)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Look"

### Genesis 16:6 (#3)

**"your maidservant {is} in your hand"**

The phrase **in your hand** is an idiom that refers to having control or authority over someone. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Also see how you translated **maidservant** in verses 1–3, 5. Alternate translation: “your slave woman is under your authority” or “you have authority over your slave”

See: Idiom

## Genesis 16:6 (#4)

**"Do to her"**

Alternate translation: “So you can do to her”

## Genesis 16:6 (#5)

**"what {is} good in your eyes"**

The phrase **in your eyes** is an idiom that refers to Sarai's opinion. See how you translated a similar idiom (“in her eyes”) in verses 4 and 5. Alternate translation: “whatever you decide is good” or “whatever pleases you.”

## Genesis 16:6 (#6)

**"Then Sarai afflicted her"**

See how you translated “afflict” in Gen 15:13. Alternate translation: “So Sarai oppressed her so” or “So Sarai treated her so badly that”

## Genesis 16:6 (#7)

**"and she fled from her face"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Hagar is the one who fled, not Sarai. Alternate translation: “she ran away from her.” or “she ran away from home to get away from Sarai.”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 16:7 (#1)

**"Then the angel of Yahweh found her"**

Make sure that the way you translate **found** does not sound like the angel had come across Hagar accidentally. Rather, he knew where she was and

had gone to her intentionally. Also, this messenger from Yahweh was an angel, not a human being. Alternate translation: “But an messenger sent from Yahweh found Hagar”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

## Genesis 16:7 (#2)

**"at a spring of water"**

Alternate translation: “beside a spring of water” or “beside a spring”

## Genesis 16:7 (#3)

**"in the wilderness"**

See how you translated **wilderness** in Gen 14:6.

## Genesis 16:7 (#4)

**"at the spring"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “She was at the spring”

## Genesis 16:7 (#5)

**"beside the road of Shur"**

Alternate translation: “that was by the road that goes to the city of Shur.” or “that was by the road near the city of Shur.”

## Genesis 16:8 (#1)

**"And he said"**

The angel asked Hagar a question, so for some languages it is better to use a word like “asked” here. Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: “And the angel said to her,” or “The angel asked her,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins



**Genesis 16:8 (#2)****"And she said"**

Alternate translation: "She said to him," or "Hagar answered him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 16:8 (#3)****"I am fleeing from the face of Sarai, my mistress"**

See how you translated "fled from ... face" in verse 6 and how you translated **mistress** in verse 4. Alternate translation: "I am running away from my owner Sarai."

**Genesis 16:9 (#1)****"Then the angel of Yahweh said to her"**

Consider what is the best way to begin this verse in your translation, after what Hagar said in verse 8. Alternate translation: "But he told Hagar,"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 16:9 (#2)****"Return to your mistress"**

See how you translated "mistress/owner" in verses 4 and 8. Alternate translation: "Go back home to your owner Sarai"

**Genesis 16:9 (#3)****"and submit under her hands"**

See how you translated a similar idiom ("in your hand") in verse 6. Alternate translation: "and humbly submit yourself to her authority."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 16:10 (#1)****"Then the angel of Yahweh said to her"**

Some languages do not include the quote margins here and in verse 11, because the angel is still

talking to Hagar. However, the repeated quote margins could be there to emphasize what the angel says next and/or to show that he paused or that he is changing the topic. Alternate translation: "Then the angel told her," or "Then he added"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 16:10 (#2)****"I will greatly increase your offspring"**

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh here. So either the angel was representing Yahweh and speaking Yahweh's words to Hagar or it was Yahweh himself who had taken on the form of an angel. Alternate translation: "I Yahweh will greatly multiply the number of your offspring so that"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 16:10 (#3)****"so that they cannot be counted"**

Alternate translation: "there will be too many to count,"

**Genesis 16:10 (#4)****"because of their abundance"**

Alternate translation: "because of their large number."

**Genesis 16:11 (#1)****"Then the angel of Yahweh said to her"**

Alternate translation: "Finally the angel also said to her," or "Finally he also told her," or "Then the angel added"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 16:11 (#2)****""Behold, {you are} pregnant,"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Hagar already knew that she was pregnant, but did not know she was having a son or what she should

name him. Alternate translation: “Look as you know, you are expecting a child You will bear a son, and” or “Look you are pregnant with a son. After he is born,”

### Genesis 16:11 (#3)

#### "and you will call his name"

Alternate translation: “give him the name”

### Genesis 16:11 (#4)

#### "Ishmael"

Some translation teams make the meaning of Ishmael's name explicit in their translation. Other teams put the meaning of his name in a footnote. See what you did for similar cases in Gen 3:20, 4:1, 16, 25; 6:29, 10:25, 11:9.

### Genesis 16:11 (#5)

#### "because Yahweh has listened to"

If you include the meaning of Ishmael's name earlier in this verse, make sure it fits with how you translate this clause. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh heard” or “because Yahweh paid attention to”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 16:11 (#6)

#### "your misery"

The word that means **listened to** implies here that God also took action to help Hagar. Alternate translation: “your cries of misery and has helped you.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 16:12 (#1)

#### "And he"

The pronoun **he** is emphatic here, to emphasize Ishmael. Make sure that your translation refers here to Ishmael, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: “As for Ishmael, when he grows up, he”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 16:12 (#2)

#### "will be a wild donkey of a man"

The angel compares Ishmael to a wild donkey. Consider whether or not your language can use a similar metaphor or a simile here. Alternate translation: “will be proud and free like a untamed donkey” or “will be like a untamed donkey that no one can control” or “will not be ruled by anyone else”

See: Metaphor

### Genesis 16:12 (#3)

#### ""his hand against everyone"

Alternate translation: “He will be enemies with everyone.”

### Genesis 16:12 (#4)

#### ""and he will live in the faces"

The rest of this verse forms a parallelism with the first half, emphasizing what Ishmael (and his descendants) will be like. Try to keep both parts of the parallelism in your translation, since each part has a different focus and the second part adds important information. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “Yes he will even fight against”

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 16:12 (#5)

#### "all of his brothers"

The word **brothers** is used here to refer to relatives in general. Consider what is the best way to translate this synecdoche in your language. Alternate translation: “all of his own relatives.” or “all of his own family members.”

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 16:13 (#1)**

**"Then she called the name of Yahweh who had spoken to her, "You {are} El Roi"**

Some translations transliterate (copy or borrow) the name **El Roi** from the Hebrew, some translate its meaning, and some do both. Decide what is best in your language.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 16:13 (#2)**

**"because she said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "She named him that, because she had said to herself,"

**Genesis 16:13 (#3)**

**"Have I really seen here the back of {the one who} sees me"**

Hagar's rhetorical question shows surprise and amazement. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your translation. Alternate translation: "How can it be that I was able to look at the back of the God who looks after me?" or "I just now saw the back of him who sees me!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 16:14 (#1)**

**"For that {reason}"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 11:9.

**Genesis 16:14 (#2)**

**"they call the well"**

Frequently in the Hebrew text, this phrase has a general meaning and does not refer to someone specific. Also, this well is the same as the spring in verse 7. For some languages, it may be necessary to translate these words the same way so that it is clear that they refer to the same place. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "the well is named" or "people call that well" or "the name of the well is"

**Genesis 16:14 (#3)**

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "That well is still there"

**Genesis 16:14 (#4)**

**"it is} between Kadesh and Bered"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Kadesh** in Gen 14:7.

**Genesis 16:15 (#1)**

**"Then Hagar bore a son for Abram"**

Alternate translation: "After that, she returned home and gave birth to a son for Abram,"

**Genesis 16:15 (#2)**

**"and Abram called the name of his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael"**

Alternate translation: "and he called his son whom she had Ishmael." or "and he named their son Ishmael."

**Genesis 16:16 (#1)**

**"And Abram {was}"**

For some languages it is more natural to omit the conjunction here. Do what is best in your language.

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 16:16 (#2)**

**"a son of"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 5:32.

See:

**Genesis 16:16 (#3)**

**"when Hagar bore Ishmael for Abram"**

See how you translated “bore ... for Abram” in verse 15. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Hagar** in chapter 16 (verses 1, 4, 6–11, 13), and how you spelled **Ishmael** in verses 11, 12 and 15. Alternate translation: “when Hagar gave birth to Ishmael for him.”

### Genesis 17:1 (#1)

#### "Then Abram was a son of ninety-nine years"

Thirteen years have passed between the last verse of chapter 16 and the first verse of chapter 17. Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new section. See how you translated “was a son of ... years” in Gen 5:32. Alternate translation: “Years later, when Abram was 99 years old,”

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 17:1 (#2)

#### "and Yahweh appeared to Abram"

See how you translated this clause in Gen 12:7. Alternate translation: “Yahweh appeared to him” or “Yahweh visited him”

### Genesis 17:1 (#3)

#### "I {am} God Almighty"

Most translation teams translate the meaning of God's title here (**God Almighty**). A few teams transliterate the title as “El Shaddai” (as if it were a personal name) and put the meaning of the title in a footnote. Abram already knew that God's personal name is Yahweh (Gen 12:8; 15:7–8), so he would have understood that God was using a title here (not a personal name). The title **God Almighty** emphasizes God's authority and power. You could include a transliteration of this title in a footnote. Alternate translation: “I am Almighty God.” or “I am the all-powerful God.”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 17:1 (#4)

#### "Walk before me"

This phrase is an idiom that means to habitually live according to God's will. Alternate translation: “Walk in my presence” or “Live according to my will”

See:

### Genesis 17:1 (#5)

#### "and be"

Alternate translation: “yes, you must be”

### Genesis 17:1 (#6)

#### "without blemish"

See how you translated this idiom in Gen 6:9. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “without fault.” or “upright.”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 17:2 (#1)

#### "And I will make my covenant"

Some translations begin this sentence without a conjunction. Do what is best in your language. See how you translated “cut/make/establish ... covenant” in Gen 15:18, where the verb is different from here but has a similar meaning (“establish/seal” or “put into effect”). Alternate translation: “I will institute my covenant”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 17:2 (#2)

#### "and I will multiply you very greatly"

Alternate translation: “and I will cause you to have very many descendants.” or “and I will increase the number of your descendants so that they are exceedingly numerous.”

### Genesis 17:3 (#1)

#### "Then Abram fell on his face"

Make sure that the translation of this clause does not sound like Abram fell down accidentally. Rather, he intentionally threw himself to the ground out of deep respect for God. Alternate translation: "Then Abram prostrated himself before God to show him respect,"

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 17:3 (#2)

**"and God spoke with him, saying"**

Some translations omit **saying** here because it is not natural in those languages. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and God spoke to him and said," or "and God continued speaking with Abram," or "and God added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 17:4 (#1)

**"As for} me, behold, my covenant with you {is} that you will be"**

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **me** is emphatic both in form and in sentence position to emphasize that Yahweh is the one doing this. Alternate translation: "Look, this is my responsibility in my covenant with you: I will cause you to be" or "Look, this is what I will do to fulfill my covenant with you: I will make you"

### Genesis 17:4 (#2)

**"the father of"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 4:20, 21; 10:21.

### Genesis 17:4 (#3)

**"a multitude of"**

Alternate translation: "a large number of"

### Genesis 17:4 (#4)

**"nations"**

See how you translated this term in Gen 10:5, 20, 31, 32. Alternate translation: "ethnic groups."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 17:5 (#1)

**"And your name will not be called Abram anymore"**

Alternate translation: "So your name will not be Abram anymore," or "Your name will no longer be Abram,"

### Genesis 17:5 (#2)

**"but your name will be Abraham"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Instead, from now on it will be Abraham," or "Rather, I am changing it now to Abraham,"

### Genesis 17:5 (#3)

**"because I have made you"**

The form of the Hebrew verb in this clause is completed aspect (**have made**) and shows certainty that God will do this. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "because I will make you"

### Genesis 17:5 (#4)

**"the father of a multitude of nations"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: "the ancestor of many ethnic groups."

### Genesis 17:6 (#1)

**"And I will make you very, very fruitful"**

This verse repeats and elaborates on the last part of verse 5; it does not refer to different events. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Alternate translation:

"Yes, I will make you exceedingly fruitful," or "I will give you very many offspring"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 17:6 (#2)

**"and I will make you into nations"**

Alternate translation: "so that you will be the father of many ethnic groups," or "and I will cause your descendants to become many ethnic groups,"

### Genesis 17:6 (#3)

**"and kings will come from you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated "king" in Gen 14:1–5. Alternate translation: "In fact, there will be kings who descend from you." or "In fact, some of your descendants will become kings."

### Genesis 17:7 (#1)

**"And I will establish my covenant between me and you"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. The pronouns **you** and **your** are singular in this clause and also later in this verse. Alternate translation: "I will make my covenant with you"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

### Genesis 17:7 (#2)

**"and your offspring after you"**

Alternate translation: "and all your offspring who live after you" or "as well as all your offspring"

### Genesis 17:7 (#3)

**"throughout their generations"**

Alternate translation: "for all future generations"

### Genesis 17:7 (#4)

**"as an eternal covenant"**

For some languages it is better to break up this long sentence and begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "It will be a covenant that never ends," or "It will be a covenant that lasts forever,"

### Genesis 17:7 (#5)

**"to be God to you and to your offspring after you"**

Alternate translation: "that I will be the God who takes care of you and all your descendants." or "that I will be the God whom you and all your descendants worship"

### Genesis 17:8 (#1)

**"And I will give to you and to your offspring after you"**

Alternate translation: "I will also give to you and your offspring"

### Genesis 17:8 (#2)

**"the land of your sojournings"**

Alternate translation: "the land where you have been living as an outsider,"

### Genesis 17:8 (#3)

**"all the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "yes, the entire land of Canaan,"

### Genesis 17:8 (#4)

**"as an eternal possession"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "It will be their land forever,"

**Genesis 17:8 (#5)****"and I will be God to them"**

See how you translated the phrase "be God to you" in verse 7. Alternate translation: "and I will be the God who takes care of them." or "I will be the God whom they worship"

**Genesis 17:9 (#1)****"Then God said to Abraham"**

Some languages leave out this quote margin, because God is still speaking to the same person. See what you did for similar cases in Gen 16:10–11.

**Genesis 17:9 (#2)****"And you"**

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic both in form and in sentence position to shift the focus from talking about God's part in the covenant (verses 4–8) to talking about Abraham's part. Translate this phrase in a way that shows this change in focus. Alternate translation: "As for you," or "Now as for your part in my covenant" or "Your responsibility in my agreement is that"

**Genesis 17:9 (#3)****"you must keep my covenant"**

Alternate translation: "you must keep the requirements of my agreement,"

**Genesis 17:9 (#4)****"you and your offspring"**

For some languages it is better to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "both you and" or "That includes you and"

**Genesis 17:9 (#5)****"and your offspring after you"**

Alternate translation: "all your descendants who live after you" or "all your offspring"

**Genesis 17:9 (#6)****"throughout their generations"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7, and a similar phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: "including all generations to come." or "for all future generations."

**Genesis 17:10 (#1)****"This {is} my covenant"**

Alternate translation: "This is what I require in my covenant" or "This is one of the requirements of my agreement"

**Genesis 17:10 (#2)****"which you must keep"**

Notice that the pronoun **you** is plural here.

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 17:10 (#3)****"between me and you and"**

The pronoun **you** is plural here and probably refers to Abraham and his family or household. Alternate translation: "the covenant that is between me and you all, including" or "the covenant I have made with all of you, including"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 17:10 (#4)****"your offspring after you"**

Notice that the pronouns **your** and **you** are singular here and refer to Abraham. Also, it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in this sentence and say, "This is what I require in my covenant/agreement with you and your descendants who will live after you, which you all must keep/obey." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "your descendants who will live after you:" or "all your descendants:"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 17:10 (#5)****"Every male among you must be circumcised"**

Circumcision involves cutting the foreskin off the penis of a boy or man. Translate this clause in a way that does not offend or embarrass people. Some languages may need to be more discreet and say something general like "must cut off the male skin" or "must follow the male skin-cutting custom." It may be necessary to include a footnote and/or an explanation in the glossary about this so that people understand what circumcision is, especially in areas where people cut their skin on other parts of the body for other reasons. Alternate translation: "You must circumcise all males who live with you." or "You must cut off the male foreskin of every boy and man who lives among you."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 17:11 (#1)****"Indeed, you must be circumcised {in} the flesh of your foreskins"**

Notice that in the Hebrew text, the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this verse. Also, be consistent here with how you translated "circumcise" in verse 10. Alternate translation: "Yes, all the males among you must have your foreskins cut off," or "Indeed you must circumcise the foreskin of all the males among you"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 17:11 (#2)****"and it will be the sign of the covenant between me and you"**

The pronoun **you** is plural here. Alternate translation: "and that practice will serve as the sign that reminds you of my agreement I made with all of you." or "and that practice will show you all that I made my covenant with you."

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 17:12 (#1)****"So a son of eight days must be circumcised"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "Every eight-day-old baby boy must be circumcised by you," or "So you must circumcise every eight-day-old baby boy,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 17:12 (#2)****"every male"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "and every other male" or "as well as all other males" or (2) "yes, every male child". The following context suggests that this phrase includes males of all ages, not just babies, since male slaves who were bought would especially include adult males.

**Genesis 17:12 (#3)****"throughout your generations"**

It may be more natural to put this phrase at the beginning of this verse and say, "For all future generations you must circumcise every baby boy who is eight days old, as well as all other males among your people ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "for all future generations,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 17:12 (#4)****"the one born in {your} house"**

This phrase refers to Abraham's future sons, including Isaac (Gen 21:4) and his concubines' sons (25:6), and may also refer to the sons of Abraham's servants. Also, for some languages it may be better to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "including males who are born in your family" or "That includes those from your own family"

**Genesis 17:12 (#5)****"and the one bought with money from any son of a foreigner, who {is} not your offspring"**

Alternate translation: "and those whom you buy from foreigners as slaves who are not your



descendants.” or “as well as those who are not your offspring but are slaves whom you have bought from foreigners.”

### Genesis 17:13 (#1)

#### "He must surely be circumcised"

This verse repeats and emphasizes what was just said in verse 12. Consider what is the best way to communicate this emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: “Yes, you must surely circumcise all of them,”

### Genesis 17:13 (#2)

#### "the one born in your house and the one bought with your money"

See how you translated these phrases in verse 12. It may be best to translate them in a slightly different way here because of the repetition. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “including those who are born in your household as well as those whom you buy as a slave” or “regardless of whether they are males from your own household or slaves whom you have bought.”

### Genesis 17:13 (#3)

#### "So my covenant will be"

Alternate translation: “That is how the sign of my agreement must be marked” or “That is how you must mark my covenant”

### Genesis 17:13 (#4)

#### "in your flesh"

The word **flesh** refers here to the body in general. Translate this in a way that is clear and natural in your language.

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 17:13 (#5)

#### "as an eternal covenant"

See how you translated **an eternal covenant** in verse 7. Alternate translation: “to show that it is an permanent covenant” or “to show that it is a covenant that never ends.”

### Genesis 17:14 (#1)

#### "And {as for} an uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin"

In this context, **male** refers to men who refuse to be circumcised, not baby boys. Alternate translation: “But as for every man who is not circumcised,” or “In fact, if a man refuses to let you circumcise him,” or “If a man refuses to be circumcised,”

### Genesis 17:14 (#2)

#### "indeed that person must be cut off from his people"

The phrase **cut off from his people** is an idiom which means that the person is an outcast of society and can no longer associate closely with other people in that society. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: “that person must be sent away and not be allowed to fellowship with his people” or “you must send him away and not allow him to fellowship with his people”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 17:14 (#3)

#### "he has broken"

This phrase has the opposite meaning of “keep” or “obey” in verse 9. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom like **broken** that means to not do what has been agreed upon or to disobey what was commanded. Alternate translation: “because he has not kept”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 17:14 (#4)

#### "my covenant"

Alternate translation: “the rules of my covenant” or “what I require in my covenant”

**Genesis 17:15 (#1)****"Then God said to Abraham"**

Alternate translation: "Later God also said to Abraham,"

**Genesis 17:15 (#2)****"As for} Sarai your wife"**

This phrase is first in this quote to change the focus to Sarai and emphasize her. Consider what is the best way to do this in your language.

**Genesis 17:15 (#3)****"do not call her name Sarai"**

Alternate translation: "her name will no longer be Sarai,"

**Genesis 17:15 (#4)****"because her name {will be} Sarah"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "because from now on her name will be Sarah." or "Rather her name is now Sarah." or "Rather, from now on it will be Sarah."

**Genesis 17:16 (#1)****"and I will also give to you a son from her"**

Alternate translation: "and I will definitely enable her to have a son for you." or "and I will definitely give you a son by her."

**Genesis 17:16 (#2)****"Indeed I will bless her"**

Alternate translation: "In fact, I will prosper her" or "Yes, I will bless her"

**Genesis 17:16 (#3)****"and she will become nations"**

See how you translated **nations** in verses 4–6. Alternate translation: "so that she will become the mother of many ethnic groups," or "so much that she will have many descendants that will form new ethnic groups,"

**Genesis 17:16 (#4)****"kings of peoples will come from her"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 6. Alternate translation: "and kings over peoples will descend from her." or "and some of her descendants will even be kings who rule over many ethnic groups."

**Genesis 17:17 (#1)****"Then Abraham fell on his face"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 3. Alternate translation: "When Abraham heard that, he bowed with his face to the ground before God to show respect," or "Then Abraham prostrated himself before God to show him respect,"

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 17:17 (#2)****"and he laughed and said in his heart"**

The phrase **said in his heart** is an idiom that refers to something Abraham thought, but did not say out loud. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: "but he laughed to himself and thought,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 17:17 (#3)****"Will {a child} be born to a son of 100 years"**

Abraham uses the rhetorical questions in verse 17 to express strong disbelief. If that is not clear in your language, you could translate the rhetorical questions as statements, with or without a tag question. Alternate translation: "How can a

hundred-year-old man like myself father a son" or "Certainly it is not possible for a hundred-year-old man like me to father a son" or "Certainly a hundred-year-old man like myself cannot father a child, can he?"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 17:17 (#4)

**"And will Sarah who is a daughter of ninety years bear {a child}"**

Alternate translation: "And how can Sarah who is 90 years old still have a baby" or "And certainly it is not possible for a 90-year-old woman like Sarah to still bear a baby" or "And certainly a 90-year-old woman like Sarah cannot still give birth to a baby can she?"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 17:18 (#1)

**"Then Abraham said to God"**

Alternate translation: "So he said to God,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 17:18 (#2)

**"If only Ishmael"**

Consider what is the best way to express this strong wish or hope in your language. Alternate translation: "Oh, that Ishmael could"

### Genesis 17:18 (#3)

**"might live before you"**

This idiom means to live under God's care and be blessed by him. Alternate translation: "live in your presence!"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 17:19 (#1)

**"Then God said"**

Alternate translation: "God said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 17:19 (#2)

**"No"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to begin God's response to Abraham here with a **No** or a "Yes". Although God agrees that he will bless Ishmael (verse 20), he disagrees with Abraham's request to allow Ishmael to be the one God establishes his covenant with. Alternate translation: "No, rather" or "Yes, however"

### Genesis 17:19 (#3)

**"Sarah your wife"**

Here God emphasizes what he said in verse 16 about Sarah. Alternate translation: "as I said, your wife Sarah is the one who"

### Genesis 17:19 (#4)

**"is bearing a son for you"**

Alternate translation: "will bear you a son,"

### Genesis 17:19 (#5)

**"and you will call his name Isaac"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated "call ... name ..." in verse 15. Alternate translation: "and you must name him Isaac." or "You must give him the name Isaac."

### Genesis 17:19 (#6)

**"And I will establish my covenant with him"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 7. Alternate translation: "I will make my covenant with him" or "He is the one I will establish my covenant with,"

### Genesis 17:19 (#7)

**"as an eternal covenant"**

Alternate translation: "as a permanent covenant"

### Genesis 17:19 (#8)

**"for his offspring after him"**

Alternate translation: "that will also be for all his offspring who live after him." or "that I will also keep with all his offspring who live after him."

### Genesis 17:20 (#1)

**"And as for Ishmael, I have heard you"**

Alternate translation: "As for Ishmael, I have heard your request for him."

### Genesis 17:20 (#2)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "So behold" or "So here is what I will do:"

### Genesis 17:20 (#3)

**"I will bless him"**

See how you translated **bless** in verse 16. Alternate translation: "I will also prosper him,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 17:20 (#4)

**"and multiply him very greatly"**

Alternate translation: "so that he has a great many descendants."

### Genesis 17:20 (#5)

**"He will father"**

Alternate translation: "In fact, he will have"

### Genesis 17:20 (#6)

**"twelve rulers"**

Many translations have "princes" here, but these Ishmaelite rulers were not actually sons of a king, so it is better to use a more general term in your translation. Alternate translation: "twelve sons who become chiefs," or "twelve sons who will be great leaders,"

### Genesis 17:20 (#7)

**"and I will make him into a great nation"**

Alternate translation: "and I will make him the father of a great ethnic group." or "and I will make him and his descendants become a great ethnic group."

### Genesis 17:21 (#1)

**"However, my covenant I will establish"**

In the Hebrew text, the phrase **my covenant** is put before the verb in order to change the topic to God's covenant. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also consider again how you translated **covenant** in verses 2, 4, 7, 9–11, 13–14, 19, 21. Alternate translation: "But I will make my covenant"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 17:21 (#2)

**"whom Sarah will bear for you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated "is bearing ... for you" in verse 19. Alternate translation: "whom Sarah will give birth to for you"

### Genesis 17:21 (#3)

**"by this time in the next year"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "by/at this time/season next year." or (2) "at the appointed/set time next year."

### Genesis 17:22 (#1)

**"Then he finished speaking with him"**

See how you translated “spoke with him” in verse 3. Alternate translation: “When God had finished speaking with Abraham,”

### Genesis 17:22 (#2)

#### **"and God went up from Abraham"**

Consider whether to use a noun or a pronoun to refer to God and Abraham at each point in this verse. Do what is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: “he went up from Abraham to heaven.” or “he left him and ascended to heaven.” or “he left him.”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 17:23 (#1)

#### **"Then Abraham took"**

Alternate translation: “Then Abraham brought together”

### Genesis 17:23 (#2)

#### **"and everyone bought with his money"**

Alternate translation: “as well as all the male slaves whom he had bought,”

### Genesis 17:23 (#3)

#### **"every male among the men of Abraham's house"**

This phrase refers to everyone mentioned in the first half of this verse, including all males of all ages, not just men.

### Genesis 17:23 (#4)

#### **"and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins on that very day"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “and on that same day he cut off their foreskins,”

### Genesis 17:23 (#5)

#### **"just as God had told him"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, “Then that very/same day, Abraham did just/exactly as God had told/commanded him to do: He took/gathered ...” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “just as God had commanded him to do.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 17:24 (#1)

#### **"And Abraham"**

The information in verses 24 and 25 is background information. Many languages have a specific conjunction or transitional phrase that is used to introduce this kind of information. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Now Abraham”

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 17:24 (#2)

#### **"was} a son of 99 years"**

See how you translated “a son of ... years” in verse 1. Alternate translation: “was ninety-nine years old”

### Genesis 17:24 (#3)

#### **"when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin"**

We do not know who circumcised Abraham. Some Jewish scholars think it was Shem and some others think Abraham did it himself. However, the Hebrew text does not say who did it, so in your translation it is best to also not specify who did it. Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: “when his foreskin was cut off,”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 17:25 (#1)

#### **"and Ishmael his son"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "His son Ishmael"

### Genesis 17:25 (#2)

**"was} a son of thirteen years"**

Alternate translation: "was 13 years old"

### Genesis 17:25 (#3)

**"when he was circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 24. Alternate translation: "when his foreskin was cut off." or "when he was circumcised." or "when he circumcised him."

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 17:26 (#1)

**"On that very day"**

Verses 26 and 27 repeat what happened in verse 23 to emphasize what happened. Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like Abraham and Ishmael were circumcised twice. See how you translated "on that very/same day" in verse 23. Alternate translation: "So it was, on that very day"

### Genesis 17:26 (#2)

**"Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son"**

Abraham is the one who circumcised his son Ishmael (verse 23). See how you translated "he was circumcised" in verse 24. Alternate translation: "Abraham was circumcised, and he circumcised his son Ishmael."

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 17:27 (#1)

**"the one born in his house"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12 and 23.

### Genesis 17:27 (#2)

**"and the one bought with money"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 12 and 23. Alternate translation: "as well as those whom he had bought as slaves"

### Genesis 17:27 (#3)

**"from the son of a foreigner"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12.

### Genesis 17:27 (#4)

**"were circumcised with him"**

For some languages it may be better to move this phrase earlier in this verse and say, "And all the other males in his/Abraham's household were also circumcised, including those who had been born ..." Do what is best in your language. Also, consider again how you translated **circumcised** in verses 10-14, 23-27.

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 18:1 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh appeared to him"**

See how you translated **appeared** in Gen 12:7 and 17:1. Also, consider whether it is better to refer to Abraham here with a pronoun or with his name in your language. Alternate translation: "Then one day Yahweh came again to him" or "One day Yahweh visited Abraham again"

### Genesis 18:1 (#2)

**"by the terebinth trees of Mamre"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 13:18, 14:13, and a similar phrase in Gen 12:6.

### Genesis 18:1 (#3)

**"and he was sitting"**

Alternate translation: "as Abraham was sitting"

See: Pronouns

### Genesis 18:1 (#4)

**"at} the opening of the tent"**

The entrance to the tent was an opening that could be closed by a large piece of cloth or animal skin. It did not have a solid wood door like a house has. See how you translated **tent** in Gen 4:20. Alternate translation: "at the doorway of his tent" or "by the front of his tent"

### Genesis 18:1 (#5)

**"in the heat of the day"**

Alternate translation: "during the hot time of the day."

### Genesis 18:2 (#1)

**"And he lifted his eyes and looked"**

See how you translate this phrase in Gen 22:13. Alternate translation: "He looked up"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 18:2 (#2)

**"and behold, three men were standing"**

Alternate translation: "and noticed that there were three men standing" or "and was surprised to see three men standing"

### Genesis 18:2 (#3)

**"nearby him"**

Translate this phrase in a way that fits with the fact that the men were far enough away from Abraham that he could run over to them (as he did in the next sentence). Alternate translation: "not too far away from him."

### Genesis 18:2 (#4)

**"And {when} he saw {them}"**

Alternate translation: "When he saw them,"

### Genesis 18:2 (#5)

**"then he ran from the entrance of the tent"**

Alternate translation: "he got up from where he was and ran" or "he got up and ran to them"

### Genesis 18:2 (#6)

**"to meet them"**

Alternate translation: "to welcome them."

### Genesis 18:2 (#7)

**"Then he bowed to the ground"**

Compare how you translated a phrase that has a similar meaning ("fell on his face") in Gen 17:3, 17. Alternate translation: "Then he bowed low before them with his forehead to the ground to show respect," or "Then he prostrated himself on the ground in front of them to show respect,"

### Genesis 18:3 (#1)

**"and he said"**

Alternate translation: "and said to them,"

### Genesis 18:3 (#2)

**"My lords"**

Abraham uses **lords** here as a polite address to the three men. The Hebrew word "lord" can also be a reference to God, but notice that at this point Abraham probably thought he was talking to men or angels. It wasn't until later that he realized that one of them was Yahweh (verse 14). Alternate translation: "My masters," or "Gentlemen,"

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 18:3 (#3)****"if I have found favor in your eyes"**

The pronoun **your** is singular here in the Hebrew text, and also in the next clause. It could be that Abraham is addressing each of the three men simultaneously, or that he is addressing their leader or spokesman. Alternate translation: "if you are satisfied with me," or "if you would honor me with your presence,"

**Genesis 18:3 (#4)****"please do not pass by your servant"**

Abraham refers to himself as a servant here in order to show respect to his guests. Alternate translation: "please stay here for a while as my guests."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 18:4 (#1)****"Please let a little water be brought"**

Saying **a little** was a polite way of showing generosity. Make sure your translation does not sound here like Abraham was only offering the men a tiny bit of water; he or his servants were going to bring them enough water to wash their feet. Alternate translation: "Let my servants bring you some water,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 18:4 (#2)****"Then you can wash your feet"**

People wore sandals and their feet would get dusty when they traveled. So it was customary to offer guests water to wash the dust off their feet. Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Also, notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural here in the Hebrew text. Alternate translation: "That way you all can wash the dust off your feet"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 18:4 (#3)****"and rest yourselves"**

Alternate translation: "and then relax here"

**Genesis 18:5 (#1)****"And I will bring"**

Alternate translation: "I will also get you" or "Let me also get you"

**Genesis 18:5 (#2)****"a morsel of"**

Saying **a morsel** was a polite way of showing generosity. Make sure your translation does not sound here like Abraham was only offering the men a tiny bit of bread; he was going to give them plenty of food to eat. Alternate translation: "a little bit of"

**Genesis 18:5 (#3)****"bread"**

Since bread was a common staple of their diet, it is often used in the Bible to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: "bread for you to eat."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 18:5 (#4)****"so that you can refresh your hearts"**

Notice that the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural in this quote in the Hebrew text and refer to Abraham's three guests. Alternate translation: "Then you can be refreshed"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 18:5 (#5)****"before you go away"**

Alternate translation: "and then continue on your way," or "before you continue traveling,"



**Genesis 18:5 (#6)****"since you have come to your servant"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause at the beginning of this verse and say, "Since you are here with me, let me also bring some food ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "now that you have come to me." or "since you are here with me."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 18:5 (#7)****"And they said"**

Alternate translation: "So they said to him," or "The men replied to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:5 (#8)****"Alright"**

The word used here in the Hebrew text shows agreement or acceptance. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Very well," or "That is good"

**Genesis 18:5 (#9)****"do as you have said"**

Alternate translation: "do what you have suggested."

**Genesis 18:6 (#1)****"into the tent to Sarah"**

Alternate translation: "to Sarah inside the tent"

**Genesis 18:6 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and said to her,"

**Genesis 18:6 (#3)****"Hurry! {Prepare}"**

Alternate translation: "Quickly use" or "Quickly prepare"

**Genesis 18:6 (#4)****"three seahs of"**

It is not certain how much **three seahs** was, but it is thought that it was more than 20 quarts/liters. It was enough flour to make bread for many people, just as the calf (verse 7) provided enough meat for many people and showed generous hospitality. Besides Abraham's guests, others in his household may have also joined in eating the feast. Alternate translation: "three large scoops"

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 18:6 (#5)****"fine flour"**

Alternate translation: "of good quality flour." or "of the best flour."

**Genesis 18:6 (#6)****"Knead {it} and make loaves"**

The Hebrew word for **loaves** here is often translated "cakes", which probably refers to their flat, round shape (similar to biscuits). However, make sure your translation of this word does not sound like a dessert, because this bread was not sweet. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Knead the dough and make it into loaves" or "and bake some loaves of flat bread." or "and make some bread."

**Genesis 18:7 (#1)****"Then Abraham ran to the herd"**

Alternate translation: "Then he hurriedly left the tent and went to his herd of cattle" or "Next he quickly went outside to his herd of cattle"

See: Pronouns

**Genesis 18:7 (#2)****"and selected"**

Alternate translation: "and picked out"

**Genesis 18:7 (#3)****"a tender and choice calf"**

Alternate translation: "one of his best calves that would be tasty to eat."

**Genesis 18:7 (#4)****"Then he gave it"**

The word **gave** means Abram brought the calf to his servant and put him in charge of preparing its meat for a meal. Make sure your translation does not sound like the calf was a gift. Alternate translation: "Then he took the calf" or "Then he turned it over"

**Genesis 18:7 (#5)****"and he hurried to prepare it"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this clause refers to the servant, not Abraham. Alternate translation: "and his servant quickly prepared it." or "who quickly slaughtered it and roasted it."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 18:8 (#1)****"Then he took"**

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Abraham, not his servant. Alternate translation: "Then he got"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 18:8 (#2)****"curds"**

This term refers to churned, fermented milk that has curdled. Alternate translation: "some curds"

**Genesis 18:8 (#3)****"and milk"**

Alternate translation: "along with milk" or "as well as milk"

**Genesis 18:8 (#4)****"and the calf"**

Alternate translation: "and the meat from the calf"

**Genesis 18:8 (#5)****"that he had prepared"**

Alternate translation: "that he had his servant prepare," or "that the servant had cooked"

**Genesis 18:8 (#6)****"and he set it before them"**

Since verse 2 was the last time the three men were mentioned, it may be clearer and more natural to make them explicit here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and he served all of it to the three men to eat." or "and he set it all before his three guests to eat."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 18:8 (#7)****"and they ate"**

As the host, Abraham stood nearby his guests in order to wait on them and make sure they had everything that they needed. Alternate translation: "and waited on them while they ate."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 18:9 (#1)****"Then they said to him"**

The Hebrew text uses a plural pronoun here (**they**) to refer to one of the three men who spoke to Abraham on behalf of them all (See verse 10). Many languages can use **they** or “the men” in the same way. Make sure your translation of this quote margin does not sound like all three of the men spoke at the same time. Alternate translation: “Then one of the men asked him”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 18:9 (#2)

**"And he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: “He answered him,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 18:9 (#3)

**"Behold, in the tent"**

Alternate translation: “She is there inside the tent.”

### Genesis 18:10 (#1)

**"Then he said"**

This phrase refers to the man in verse 9 who spoke on behalf of himself and the other two men. We find out in verse 13 that the man was actually Yahweh. However, at this point Abraham and Sarah probably did not yet know who he was, so it is better to not specify who he was here, in order to keep that suspense in your translation. Alternate translation: “Then that man”

### Genesis 18:10 (#2)

**"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: “said to him” or “spoke again to Abraham,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 18:10 (#3)

**"I will surely return"**

Alternate translation: “I will certainly come back”

### Genesis 18:10 (#4)

**"to you"**

Alternate translation: “to you here”

### Genesis 18:10 (#5)

**"at the time of life"**

For some languages it may be more natural to move this time phrase to the beginning of this quote and say, “Next year at this time I will surely/definitely return ...” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “at this season next year,” or “next year at this time”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 18:10 (#6)

**"and behold"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “and when I do,” or “At that time,”

### Genesis 18:10 (#7)

**"Sarah your wife will have a son"**

This means that Sarah would have a son with her when Yahweh returns. It does not mean that she would give birth at that time. Alternate translation: “your wife Sarah will have a baby boy with her.” or “your wife Sarah will already have a baby son”

### Genesis 18:10 (#8)

**"And Sarah was listening"**

This sentence gives information about something that was happening while the man was talking. Translate this in a way that makes that clear in your language. Alternate translation: “Now Sarah was eavesdropping” or “Sarah was eavesdropping”

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 18:10 (#9)****"at} the opening of the tent"**

See how you translated "the entrance of the tent" in verse 1. Alternate translation: "inside the doorway of the tent,"

**Genesis 18:10 (#10)****"and it {was} behind him"**

Notice that the pronoun **it** refers to the entrance to the tent (where Sarah was). Alternate translation: "which was right behind"

**Genesis 18:10 (#11)****"was} behind him"**

The pronoun **him** is ambiguous here. It can refer to: (1) "the man" or (2) "Abraham"

**Genesis 18:11 (#1)****"Now Abraham and Sarah"**

This verse gives background information that is important to what happens next. Some languages use a conjunction such as **Now** here to introduce this kind of information, while other languages omit the conjunction, especially if **Now** is used to begin the last sentence in verse 10. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Abraham and she" or "Sarah and Abraham"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 18:11 (#2)****"were} old, advanced in days"**

Alternate translation: "were already quite old" or "were very elderly"

**Genesis 18:11 (#3)****"the way of women had ceased to be with Sarah"**

The Hebrew text has an idiom here that is a polite way of saying that Sarah had reached menopause and so was not able to have children. Other

languages may have a similar idiom. Make sure your translation of this clause will not offend or embarrass people when it is read aloud in public. Alternate translation: "so that she was much older than the normal age for bearing children." or "so that she was far past the time that she could bear children."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 18:12 (#1)****"So Sarah laughed within herself"**

See how you translated **laughed** in Gen 17:17 where Abraham also laughed to himself. Alternate translation: "So Sarah laughed to herself in disbelief"

**Genesis 18:12 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and thought to herself," or "and asked herself,"

**Genesis 18:12 (#3)****"After I am worn out"**

Alternate translation: "Since my body is now worn out," or "Now that I am too old to conceive,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 18:12 (#4)****"will I have pleasure"**

Sarah uses a rhetorical question to express her strong emotion and disbelief. Consider whether or not it is best to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Alternate translation: "will I still have this pleasure?"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 18:12 (#5)****"And my lord {is} old"**

The phrase **my lord** is a title of respect that Sarah uses to refer to Abraham as her husband. Also, for some languages it may be better to change the order of some of the clauses in this verse and say, "I am too old to conceive and my husband is also very/too old! How can I possibly still have/experience the pleasure of having a child?" or "It doesn't seem possible that I could have/experience the pleasure of having a child now that I am too old to conceive. Besides that, my husband is also very/too old!" Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Besides that, my master is also too old!"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 18:13 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh said to Abraham"**

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on whether you translate the rest of this verse as a rhetorical question or a statement. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh asked Abraham,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 18:13 (#2)

**"Why {is it} that Sarah laughed, saying"**

Yahweh uses rhetorical question in verses 13–14 to confront Sarah's disbelief and to emphasize that nothing is too difficult for God to do. Consider whether or not it is best to use rhetorical questions here in your language. Alternate translation: "Why did Sarah laugh to herself and say" or "Sarah should not have laughed and thought to herself," or "Sarah should not have laughed, thinking,"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 18:13 (#3)

**"Will I really bear {a child} when I am old"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to make this embedded quote a direct or indirect quote. Make sure that your translation of **I** refers here to Sarah, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: "I am too old to bear a child!"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 18:14 (#1)

**"Is anything too hard for Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "Is there anything that is too hard for Yahweh to do?" or "Nothing is too hard for Yahweh to do!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 18:14 (#2)

**"At the appointed time"**

Alternate translation: "At the time that I have decided,"

### Genesis 18:14 (#3)

**"I will return to you"**

Consider how you translated this in verse 10. Alternate translation: "I will come back here to visit you"

### Genesis 18:14 (#4)

**"at the time of life"**

See how you translated this idiom in verse 10. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase right after the first time phrase in this verse and say, "At the time that I have decided, which will be this time next year, I will return here to visit you," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Yes, I will return at this time next year," or "—it will be at this time next year—"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 18:14 (#5)

**"and Sarah will have a son"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 10. Alternate translation: "and Sarah will have a baby son with her." or "and Sarah will already have a baby boy."

**Genesis 18:15 (#1)****"But Sarah denied it"**

The Hebrew verb here includes the meaning of lying or deceiving. Alternate translation: "But Sarah lied to him"

**Genesis 18:15 (#2)****"by saying"**

Notice that the verbs **denied** and **saying** refer to the same event, not two separate events. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

**Genesis 18:15 (#3)****"I did not laugh," because she was afraid"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, for some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "When Sarah heard that, she was afraid, so she lied to him and said, "I did not laugh." " Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "that she did not laugh. She said that, because she was afraid."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 18:15 (#4)****"But he said"**

Alternate translation: "But he replied to her,"

**Genesis 18:15 (#5)****"No, but you did laugh"**

Consider whether Yahweh's reply to Sarah here should begin with **No** or "Yes" in your language. Alternate translation: "Yes, you did laugh."

**Genesis 18:16 (#1)****"Then the men got up from there"**

Alternate translation: "After they had finished eating, the three men got up to leave"

**Genesis 18:16 (#2)****"and looked down toward Sodom"**

This phrase reflects the fact that the city of Sodom was lower in elevation than the city of Hebron, where Abraham was living. Alternate translation: "and started heading down toward the city of Sodom."

**Genesis 18:16 (#3)****"And Abraham went with them"**

Alternate translation: "Abraham walked with them for a while" or "Abraham accompanied them for a while"

**Genesis 18:16 (#4)****"to send them off"**

Alternate translation: "as they were leaving."

**Genesis 18:17 (#1)****"And Yahweh said"**

The context implies that Yahweh said this to himself, without Abraham hearing him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 11:6. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh said to himself,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:17 (#2)****"Should I hide from Abraham"**

Alternate translation: "I will not conceal from Abraham" or "I will tell Abraham"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 18:17 (#3)****"what I am doing"**

Whether you end this sentence with a question mark or a period will depend on how you choose to

translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "what I am going to do to the city of Sodom"

### Genesis 18:18 (#1)

#### "And Abraham will surely become"

Some translations begin a new sentence here. Other translations continue the rhetorical question (or statement) in verse 17 to the end of verse 18 and say, "since Abraham/he will ..." or "seeing that Abraham/he will ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "he will surely be the ancestor of" or "After all, Abraham and his descendants will surely multiply and become"

### Genesis 18:18 (#2)

#### "a great and mighty nation"

See how you translated "great nation" in Gen 12:2. Alternate translation: "a great and powerful ethnic group,"

### Genesis 18:18 (#3)

#### "in him"

This phrase refers to Abraham and his descendants, including ultimately the Messiah. See the note about this at Gen 12:3. Alternate translation: "and through him" or "and because of him" or "and by means of him"

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 18:18 (#4)

#### "and" - "all the nations of the earth will be blessed"

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 12:3. Alternate translation: "all the ethnic groups in the world will be blessed by me." or "I will bless all the ethnic groups in the world."

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 18:19 (#1)

#### "For"

Alternate translation: "Indeed"

### Genesis 18:19 (#2)

#### "I have known him"

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: "I have chosen Abraham"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 18:19 (#3)

#### "so that he will command his children"

Alternate translation: "so that he will guide his children"

### Genesis 18:19 (#4)

#### "and his house after him"

Alternate translation: "grandchildren, and other descendants who will live after him,"

### Genesis 18:19 (#5)

#### "and they will keep the way of Yahweh"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking about himself here.

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 18:19 (#6)

#### "by doing righteousness and justice"

Alternate translation: "and do what is right and just in my eyes" or "and do what is right including treat people justly"

### Genesis 18:19 (#7)

#### "so that"

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So"

### Genesis 18:19 (#8)

#### "Yahweh will bring about"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is referring to himself here. Alternate translation: "I will accomplish"

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 18:19 (#9)

#### "for Abraham what he has said to him"

The pronoun **he** refers to Yahweh here. Make sure the way you use nouns and pronouns throughout this verse makes it clear in your language who is speaking and who is being referred to. Alternate translation: "for him what I have promised him that I will do."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 18:20 (#1)

#### "Then Yahweh said"

Alternate translation: "So Yahweh told Abraham,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 18:20 (#2)

#### "Because the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very grievous"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the phrase **Sodom and Gomorrah** refers to the people in those cities. Also, in the Hebrew text this sentence continues into verse 21. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "I have heard many terrible accusations against the people of the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah because they are sinning so grievously So" or "I have heard many people crying out against the people in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah because they are committing very evil things."

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 18:21 (#1)

#### "I will go down now"

The cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were both lower in elevation than the city of Hebron. See what you did for a similar case in verse 16. Alternate translation: "I am going to those cities now"

### Genesis 18:21 (#2)

#### "and see"

Alternate translation: "to investigate" or "in order to find out"

See: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

### Genesis 18:21 (#3)

#### "whether they have done altogether according to its outcry"

Alternate translation: "whether or not the people in those cities are guilty of everything" or "if the people there have done all the terrible sins"

### Genesis 18:21 (#4)

#### "that has come to me"

Alternate translation: "that I have heard about them." or "that I have heard they are guilty of."

### Genesis 18:21 (#5)

#### "And if not"

Alternate translation: "If those things are not true,"

### Genesis 18:22 (#1)

#### "Then the men turned away from there"

Alternate translation: "Then the other two men left from there"



**Genesis 18:22 (#2)****"toward Sodom"**

Alternate translation: "and continued heading toward the city of Sodom," or "and headed toward the city of Sodom,"

**Genesis 18:22 (#3)****"and Abraham was still standing"**

Alternate translation: "and Abraham stood there"

**Genesis 18:23 (#1)****"Then Abraham approached {him}"**

Alternate translation: "Then Abraham came closer to him"

**Genesis 18:23 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:23 (#3)****"Will you really sweep away"**

Abraham uses a rhetorical question here to express his strong feelings and concern about what Yahweh told him. Consider whether or not it is clear and natural to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Make sure it does not sound like Abraham is angry or being rude. See how you translated a similar idiom ("wipe away") in Gen 6:7. Alternate translation: "Would you indeed wipe out" or "Surely you would not destroy"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 18:23 (#4)****"the righteous"**

Alternate translation: "the good people in the city"

**Genesis 18:23 (#5)****"with"**

Alternate translation: "together with" or "when you destroy"

**Genesis 18:23 (#6)****"the wicked"**

The way you translate this rhetorical question will determine what punctuation mark you end this sentence with. If you use an exclamation point here, make sure it does not sound like Abraham was angry, shouting, or being disrespectful. Alternate translation: "the wicked people there" or "the people there who are evil" or "the wicked people there, would you?"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 18:24 (#1)****"Suppose"**

Alternate translation: "Suppose that"

**Genesis 18:24 (#2)****"there are fifty righteous in the city"**

See how you translated "the righteous" in verse 23. Also consider whether to use **fifty** or "50" here in your translation, which depends on how your translation team has decided to represent numbers. Alternate translation: "there are 50 good people living in the city of Sodom?"

**Genesis 18:24 (#3)****"Will you really sweep away"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 23. Alternate translation: "Will you actually still destroy" or "Certainly you will not still destroy"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 18:24 (#4)****"and not spare the place"**

Alternate translation: “the place and all its inhabitants rather than spare them” or “all the people in the place rather than let them all live”

### Genesis 18:24 (#5)

**"for the sake of"**

Alternate translation: “in order to save”

### Genesis 18:24 (#6)

**"the fifty righteous"**

Alternate translation: “the 50 good people”

### Genesis 18:24 (#7)

**"who {are} in it"**

The way you translate this rhetorical question will determine what punctuation mark you end this sentence with. Alternate translation: “who live in it” or “who live there, will you?”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 18:25 (#1)

**"Far be it from you"**

This idiom expresses emphatically that Abraham does not believe Yahweh would do this. Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom. Make sure that Abraham sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: “Surely you would never” or “It seems impossible that you would ever” or “I hope that you would never”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 18:25 (#2)

**"the righteous"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 23. Alternate translation: “good people”

### Genesis 18:25 (#3)

**"with"**

Alternate translation: “along with” or “when you destroy”

### Genesis 18:25 (#4)

**"the wicked"**

See how you translated **the wicked** in verse 23. Alternate translation: “wicked people,”

### Genesis 18:25 (#5)

**"so that the righteous are like the wicked"**

If exclamation points are used in this chapter, make sure it does not sound like Abraham is angry, shouting, or being disrespectful. Alternate translation: “so that good people are punished by you as if they were evil!”

### Genesis 18:25 (#6)

**"Far be it from you"**

See how you translated a similar phrase at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: “Surely you would never do such a thing!” or “It seems impossible that you would ever do such a thing!” or “I hope that you would never do such a thing!”

### Genesis 18:25 (#7)

**"Will the one who judges all the earth not do justice"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this rhetorical question; make sure that Abraham sounds polite. Also see how you translated **justice** in verse 19. Alternate translation: “As the judge of everyone on the earth, surely you will treat people rightly.” or “You are the one who judges all the people on the earth. Surely you will do what is right.”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 18:26 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh said"**

Make sure that the various quote margins in this long conversation (verses 23–32) are clear and natural in your translation. Alternate translation: “Then Yahweh answered him”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 18:26 (#2)

**“in Sodom fifty righteous in the city”**

Alternate translation: “50 godly people living in the city of Sodom,”

See: Nominal Adjectives

### Genesis 18:26 (#3)

**“then I will spare the whole place”**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is referring here to the city of Sodom as well as the people who live there, not just the city. Alternate translation: “then I will spare the entire city and everyone who lives there” or “then I will not destroy the city or anyone in it”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 18:26 (#4)

**“for their sake”**

Alternate translation: “for the sake of those righteous people.” or “in order to save those good people.”

### Genesis 18:27 (#1)

**“Then Abraham spoke up”**

Alternate translation: “Then Abraham responded”

### Genesis 18:27 (#2)

**“and said”**

Alternate translation: “and said to him,” or “and asked him,”

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 18:27 (#3)

**“Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to”**

The idiom **taken it upon myself** means that Abraham has decided to do something and is acting boldly. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: “Listen, please, since I have been bold to speak to you,” or “Please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly,”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 18:27 (#4)

**“my Lord”**

Abraham realizes by now that he is talking to Yahweh, so use a respectful term in your translation that is appropriate for him to use when he refers to Yahweh here and in the rest of this chapter. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put this phrase first in this quote and say, “My Lord/Master, please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly,” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “my Master,” or “Master,”

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 18:27 (#5)

**“although I”**

Alternate translation: “in spite of the fact that”

### Genesis 18:27 (#6)

**“although I {am} dust and ashes”**

It may be clearer to put this comparison earlier in the sentence and say, “My Lord/Master, I am as unimportant/insignificant as dust/dirt and ashes, so please excuse me ...” Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated **dust** in Gen 2:7 and 3:19. Alternate translation: “I am as unimportant as dust and ashes compared to you.” or “I am nothing compared to you.” or “I have no status compared to you.”

See: Metaphor

**Genesis 18:28 (#1)****"Suppose"**

See how you translated this term in verse 24.  
Alternate translation: "But suppose that"

**Genesis 18:28 (#2)****"the fifty righteous lack five"**

Alternate translation: "there are five fewer than 50 righteous people living in the city?" or "there are only 45 righteous people in the city instead of 50?"

**Genesis 18:28 (#3)****"Will you destroy the whole city"**

See how you translated "the whole place" in verse 26. Alternate translation: "Will you still destroy the whole city and everyone in it"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 18:28 (#4)****"because of five"**

Alternate translation: "because the number of righteous people is five persons low?"

**Genesis 18:28 (#5)****"And he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: "And Yahweh said to him" or "Yahweh answered him"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:28 (#6)****"I will not destroy it if I find forty-five there"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation what "forty-five/45" refers to. Alternate translation: "I will not destroy the city if there are 45 righteous people living there." or "if I find 45 righteous people living in the city, I will not destroy it."

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 18:29 (#1)****"Then he continued again to speak to him"**

Alternate translation: "Then he spoke again to him"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 18:29 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and asked him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:29 (#3)****"Suppose"**

Alternate translation: "Suppose that"

**Genesis 18:29 (#4)****"forty are found"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "only 40 righteous people are found by you" or "you find only 40 righteous people" or "there are only 40 righteous people"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 18:29 (#5)****"there"**

Alternate translation: "living there?" or "living in the city? Will you destroy it then?"

**Genesis 18:29 (#6)****"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "And Yahweh replied," or "He answered him"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:29 (#7)****"for the sake of"**

Alternate translation: "because of"

**Genesis 18:29 (#8)****"the forty"**

Alternate translation: "the 40 righteous people." or "those 40 people."

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 18:30 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham asked him" or "Then Abraham pleaded with Yahweh,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 18:30 (#2)****"Please do not let my Lord be angry"**Abraham addresses Yahweh using the third person and the title **Lord** to show him honor and respect. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "My Master, please do not be angry at me,"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 18:30 (#3)****"and let me speak"**

Alternate translation: "but let me say something else:" or "rather let me ask you another question:"

**Genesis 18:30 (#4)****"Suppose"**

Alternate translation: "Suppose that"

**Genesis 18:30 (#5)****"thirty are found"**

If you use the numeral "30" here in your translation, make sure that it will not get confused with the verse number. Alternate translation: "only 30 righteous people are found" or "you find only 30 righteous people" or "there are only 30 righteous people"

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 18:30 (#6)****"there"**

Alternate translation: "living in the city?"

**Genesis 18:30 (#7)****"And he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Yahweh is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: "Yahweh replied," or "He answered him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 18:30 (#8)****"I will not do it if I find thirty there"**

See how you translated a similar sentence at the end of verse 28. Alternate translation: "I will not destroy the city if I find 30 righteous people living there." or "If I find 30 righteous people living in the city, I will not destroy it."

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 18:31 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham is speaking here, not Yahweh. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham said to him" or "Then Abraham asked Yahweh,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:31 (#2)**

**"Behold, please, I have taken it upon myself to speak to my Lord"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 27. Alternate translation: "Listen, please, since I have been bold to speak to you, my Lord" or "My Lord please excuse me for speaking to you so boldly."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 18:31 (#3)**

**"Suppose"**

Alternate translation: "Suppose that"

**Genesis 18:31 (#4)**

**"twenty are found"**

Alternate translation: "only 20 righteous people are found by you" or "you find only 20 righteous people" or "there are only 20 righteous people"

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 18:31 (#5)**

**"there"**

Alternate translation: "living there?"

**Genesis 18:31 (#6)**

**"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "He replied," or "Then he answered him"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:31 (#7)**

**"for the sake of"**

Alternate translation: "because of"

**Genesis 18:31 (#8)**

**"the twenty"**

Alternate translation: "the 20 righteous people." or "those 20 people."

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 18:32 (#1)**

**"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "Finally he said to him," or "Then he asked him"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 18:32 (#2)**

**"Please do not let my Lord be angry"**

See how you translated this sentence in verse 30. Consider again how you translated **my Lord** in verses 27, 30–32. Contrast that to verse 3, where Abraham probably used the term before he realized that he was talking to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "My Master, please do not be angry at me,"

**Genesis 18:32 (#3)**

**"and let me speak just once more"**

Alternate translation: "rather, let me say one more thing:" or "and let me ask you just one more thing"

**Genesis 18:32 (#4)**

**"Suppose"**

Consider again how you translated the term **Suppose** in verses 24 and 28 and how you translated the sentence "Suppose only ...righteous people are found there?" in verses 29–32. Alternate translation: "Suppose that"

**Genesis 18:32 (#5)**

**"ten are found"**

Consider again how you translated **found** and "find" in verses 26, 28–32. Alternate translation: "only ten righteous people are found" or "you find only ten righteous people"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 18:32 (#6)

**"there"**

Alternate translation: "living there?" or "living in the city? Will you destroy it then?"

### Genesis 18:32 (#7)

**"And he said"**

Consider again how you referred to Yahweh and Abraham in your translation throughout this dialogue (verses 23–32). It is a good idea to read this conversation aloud at a regular speed and listen to make sure that all quote margins are natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: "And Yahweh replied," or "He answered him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 18:32 (#8)

**"for the sake of"**

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 24, 26, 29, 31, 32. Alternate translation: "because of"

### Genesis 18:32 (#9)

**"the ten"**

Consider again whether you used words or numerals for the numbers throughout verses 24–32. Also consider again how you translated "righteous people" and "righteous people" in verses 23–32. Alternate translation: "those ten righteous people."

See: Ellipsis

### Genesis 18:33 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh left as soon as he finished speaking to Abraham"**

Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh left Abraham as soon as he finished speaking with him,"

### Genesis 18:33 (#2)

**"and Abraham returned to his place"**

Alternate translation: "and Abraham went home."

### Genesis 19:1 (#1)

**"Then the two angels came to Sodom in the evening"**

See how you translated "angel" in Gen 16:7–11.

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 19:1 (#2)

**"at the gate of Sodom"**

Cities like Sodom had stone walls built around them, with entrance gates (that were closed at night) to protect the people in the city from enemies. Alternate translation: "by the gate of the city." or "at the city gate"

### Genesis 19:1 (#3)

**"And Lot saw them, and he got up"**

Some languages have a special dual pronoun that can be used throughout verses 1–19 to refer to the two angels. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "When Lot saw them, he got up"

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

### Genesis 19:1 (#4)

**"to meet them"**

Alternate translation: "to greet them"

### Genesis 19:1 (#5)

**"and bowed down {with} nose to the ground"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 18:2. Alternate translation: "and then bowed before them with his forehead to the ground to show respect." or "and then kneeled in front of

them and bowed his forehead to the ground to show them respect."

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 19:2 (#1)

**"Behold, please, my lords"**

See how you translated **Behold, please** in Gen 18:27. Also see how you translated "my lord" in Gen 18:3. At this point, Lot probably did not know that these were angels, because they looked like men. Alternate translation: "Listen to me please, my lords" or "Sirs please listen to this:"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 19:2 (#2)

**"Please turn aside to"**

Lot is being urgent here (using **please** twice), probably because he knows how dangerous the city is. Translate this quote in a way that communicates this urgency. Alternate translation: "Please stop in at"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 19:2 (#3)

**"the house of your servant and spend the night"**

Lot refers to himself as **your servant** here to show respect to the two men and to politely offer to host them as his guests.

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 19:2 (#4)

**"and spend the night, and wash your feet"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **wash your feet** in Gen 18:4. Alternate translation: "You can wash the dust off your feet and stay for the night there."

### Genesis 19:2 (#5)

**"Then you can get up early"**

Alternate translation: "Then early in the morning you can get up"

### Genesis 19:2 (#6)

**"and go on your way"**

Alternate translation: "and continue on your way."

### Genesis 19:2 (#7)

**"But they said"**

Alternate translation: "The two angels said to him"

### Genesis 19:2 (#8)

**"No, rather"**

The angels' reply should sound polite and respectful in your translation, not rude or disrespectful. For example, in some cultures it is not polite to say **No** too directly. Alternate translation: "No, thank you, rather" or "That is kind of you, but"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 19:2 (#9)

**"we will spend the night in the street"**

This refers to a public, outdoor place inside the city, perhaps the open place inside the city gate where people would meet. Alternate translation: "we will just stay in the city square tonight." or "we plan to stay the night in the square."

### Genesis 19:3 (#1)

**"But he urged them strongly"**

Alternate translation: "But Lot insisted urgently" or "However he continued to urge them earnestly" or "However he continued to urgently invite them"



**Genesis 19:3 (#2)****"so that they turned aside with him"**

Alternate translation: "until he finally convinced them and they went with him"

**Genesis 19:3 (#3)****"and entered into his house"**

Alternate translation: "to his house and entered it."

**Genesis 19:3 (#4)****"Then he prepared a feast for them"**

Lot probably had his wife or servants prepare the meal (as Abraham did in Gen 18:6–7). It is common in the Bible to say that a leader or head of household (as here) did something, when in reality he had it done by someone else who was under his authority. Alternate translation: "Then he made a big meal for them," or "Then Lot had a big meal prepared for them,"

**Genesis 19:3 (#5)****"and he baked unleavened bread"**

Alternate translation: "including some bread without yeast in it,"

**Genesis 19:4 (#1)****"Before they lay down"**

Alternate translation: "But after the meal, before they could lie down to sleep," or "After that, before they could go to bed for the night,"

**Genesis 19:4 (#2)****"then the men of the city, the men of Sodom"**

Alternate translation: "all the men of the city of Sodom"

**Genesis 19:4 (#3)****"from the young and to the old"**

This phrase refers to all the men of the city of Sodom, including the young and the old and everyone in between. Consider what is the best way to translate this phrase in your language. Alternate translation: "from the youngest to the oldest,"

See: Merism

**Genesis 19:4 (#4)****"all the people from the edge{s}"**

This phrase is hyperbole or exaggeration, to emphasize that a very large number of people from the city were there. Consider whether or not your language can do the same thing. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "In fact, all the people from every section of the city were there." or "so that people from the entire city were there." or "In fact, everyone from all parts of the city had come there."

See: Hyperbole

**Genesis 19:5 (#1)****"Then they called"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to these people at this point in the paragraph in your translation. Alternate translation: "Then the mob of people called out to Lot" or "Then the mob of men shouted to Lot"

See: Pronouns

**Genesis 19:5 (#2)****"who came to you tonight"**

Alternate translation: "who came to your house tonight?"

**Genesis 19:5 (#3)****"Bring them out to us"**

Alternate translation: "Bring them to us out here" or "We demand that you bring them out here to us"

**Genesis 19:5 (#4)****"so that we can know them"**

In Hebrew the verb **know** is often used as an idiom that means "have sex with" (as in Gen 4:1, 25). Here it refers to homosexual activities and raping the two men. Translate this in a way that is not too offensive to be read aloud in public. Alternate translation: "so that we can have sex with them!"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 19:6 (#1)****"Then Lot went out to them at the entrance"**

Alternate translation: "But Lot went outside near the entrance to talk to them,"

**Genesis 19:6 (#2)****"and shut the door behind him"**

Alternate translation: "and he shut the door of the house behind him,"

**Genesis 19:7 (#1)****"and he said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then he said to them," or "and he pleaded with them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 19:7 (#2)****"Please, my brothers"**

The phrase **my brothers** is used here as a polite address that implies a close relationship. Lot uses this idiom to try to get the men of Sodom to not harm his guests. The men were not his actual brothers. For some languages it is more natural to put **my brothers** (or "my friends") first in this quote. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "No, please, my friends," or "I beg you, my brothers" or "No, my brothers please"

See: Politeness

**Genesis 19:7 (#3)****"do not do evil"**

Alternate translation: "do not do this evil!" or "do not do such an wicked thing!"

**Genesis 19:8 (#1)****"Behold, please"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: "Listen to me please:" or "Please listen to me"

**Genesis 19:8 (#2)****"have not known a man"**

See how you translated the idiom "knew" in verse 5 and Gen 4:1, though it may need to be translated in different ways depending on the context. Alternate translation: "have not had sexual relations with a man." or "have never slept with a man." or "are virgins."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 19:8 (#3)****"Please let me bring them out to you, and you do to them"**

Alternate translation: "Allow me to bring them out to you instead so that you may do to them" or "If you will let me bring them out here to you, then you may do to them"

**Genesis 19:8 (#4)****"as {is} good in your eyes"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 16:6. Alternate translation: "whatever you like." or "whatever pleases you."

**Genesis 19:8 (#5)****"But do not do anything to these men"**

Alternate translation: "But you must not do anything to harm these men," or "But do not violate these men,"

### Genesis 19:8 (#6)

**"because for that {reason} they have come under the shadow of my rafters"**

Alternate translation: "because they have come under the shelter of my roof" or "because they are my guests and I am responsible for their well-being"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 19:9 (#1)

**"But they said"**

Alternate translation: "But the men of Sodom responded to him" or "But the men of Sodom shouted at Lot,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 19:9 (#2)

**"Get back"**

Alternate translation: "Stand aside!" or "Get out of the way!"

### Genesis 19:9 (#3)

**"Then they said"**

Alternate translation: "Then they said to each other,"

### Genesis 19:9 (#4)

**"This one came"**

The phrase "this one/guy" shows disdain and disrespect for Lot. If possible, use a similar term in your language here.

### Genesis 19:9 (#5)

**"to sojourn"**

See how you translated **sojourn** in Gen 12:10. Here it has the negative meaning that Lot does not belong there. Alternate translation: "to live temporarily," or "as a outsider,"

### Genesis 19:9 (#6)

**"and now he is judging {us}"**

Alternate translation: "and now he wants to judge us!"

### Genesis 19:9 (#7)

**"We will treat you worse than them"**

Here the crowd switches from talking to each other to shouting at Lot. Decide whether or not that needs to be explicit in your translation.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 19:9 (#8)

**"Then they pressed hard against the man Lot"**

Alternate translation: "Then they started shoving hard against him"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 19:9 (#9)

**"and came near to break down the door"**

Alternate translation: "and moved forward to break down the door of his house."

### Genesis 19:10 (#1)

**"and brought Lot"**

Alternate translation: "and quickly pulled Lot"

### Genesis 19:10 (#2)

**"and shut the door"**

Alternate translation: "and slammed the door shut."

**Genesis 19:11 (#1)**

**"Then they struck the men who {were at} the entrance of the house with blindness"**

Alternate translation: "Then those two guests who were angels caused the men of Sodom who were outside the door of the house to be blind,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 19:11 (#2)**

**"from the small and to the great"**

This phrase refers to all the men who were outside the house, including the young and the old and everyone in between. See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: "from the youngest to the oldest,"

See: Merism

**Genesis 19:11 (#3)**

**"so that they became weary {trying} to find the door"**

Alternate translation: "so that they wearied themselves fumbling around trying to find the door." or "so that they could not see the door and gave up trying to find it."

**Genesis 19:12 (#1)**

**"Then the men said to Lot"**

Alternate translation: "Then the two men asked Lot,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 19:12 (#2)**

**"Who else {belongs} to you here"**

Alternate translation: "What other family members do you have here," or "Do you have any other relatives here in this city,"

**Genesis 19:12 (#3)**

**"a son-in-law or your sons or your daughters"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or later in this verse. Alternate translation: "such as sons-in-law or sons or daughters" or "If you have sons-in-law, sons, daughters,"

**Genesis 19:12 (#4)**

**"or anyone {else} who {belongs} to you"**

Alternate translation: "or any other relatives"

**Genesis 19:12 (#5)**

**"in the city"**

The punctuation you use here depends on whether or not you began a new sentence earlier in this quote. Alternate translation: "in this city,"

**Genesis 19:12 (#6)**

**"Take {them} out"**

Whether or not you begin a new sentence here will depend on whether you began a new sentence earlier in this quote. Alternate translation: "then quickly take them out"

**Genesis 19:12 (#7)**

**"from this place"**

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase fits well with the ways that you refer to the city of Sodom earlier in this verse and in the next verse. It may help to read the entire verse aloud to make sure everything is clear and sounds natural in your language. Alternate translation: "from here,"

**Genesis 19:13 (#1)**

**"because we are destroying"**

The pronoun **we** refers here only to the two angels, not Lot or anyone else. Alternate translation: "because we are going to destroy"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 19:13 (#2)****"this place"**

The way you translate this phrase will depend on how you translated the end of verse 12.

**Genesis 19:13 (#3)****"For their outcry before Yahweh {is} great"**

See how you translated **outcry** in Gen 18:20–21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Also, make sure that your translation of **their outcry** refers to the people of Sodom, not Lot's relatives who were the last ones referred to (verse 12). Alternate translation: "Yahweh has heard that the people of this city are guilty of terrible sins," or "Yahweh has heard serious accusations against the people who live here"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 19:13 (#4)****"so Yahweh has sent us"**

Alternate translation: "so he has ordered us"

See: Pronouns

**Genesis 19:13 (#5)****"to destroy it"**

Make sure the way you translate this phrase fits with how you translated the first part of this sentence. Alternate translation: "to destroy them and their city."

**Genesis 19:14 (#1)****"Then Lot went out and spoke to"**

Alternate translation: "So Lot went and spoke to" or "So Lot went to speak to" or "So went to"

**Genesis 19:14 (#2)****"who were to take his daughters"**

The word **take** is used here as an idiom that means to marry. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to translate this as an idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "who were going to marry his daughters"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 19:14 (#3)****"and he said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he said to them," or "and he urged them," or "He told them,"

**Genesis 19:14 (#4)****"Get up"**

This phrase communicates urgency here. Alternate translation: "Come on! We must"

**Genesis 19:14 (#5)****"get out of"**

Alternate translation: "get away from" or "flee from"

**Genesis 19:14 (#6)****"because Yahweh is destroying"**

See how you translated "are destroying" in verse 13. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh is going to destroy"

**Genesis 19:14 (#7)****"the city"**

Alternate translation: "the place!"

**Genesis 19:14 (#8)**

**"But it seemed like he was joking in the eyes of his sons-in-law"**

Alternate translation: "But his sons-in-law did not listen to him, because they thought he was joking."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 19:15 (#1)

**"Then when the dawn came"**

Dawn is the time before sunrise when it starts getting light. Alternate translation: "Very early the next morning,"

### Genesis 19:15 (#2)

**"the angels urged Lot, saying"**

See how you translated **angels** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "the two messengers urged Lot,"

### Genesis 19:15 (#3)

**"Get up"**

Alternate translation: "You must quickly"

### Genesis 19:15 (#4)

**"take your wife and your two daughters who are here"**

Alternate translation: "get your wife and two daughters away from the city" or "leave the city with your wife and two daughters"

### Genesis 19:15 (#5)

**"so that you are not swept away"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Also, see how you translated the idiom "sweep away" in Gen 18:23–24. Alternate translation: "so that you will not be destroyed" or "or else you will be destroyed"

See:

### Genesis 19:15 (#6)

**"in the punishment of the city"**

Alternate translation: "when the people of the city are punished by God." or "when God punishes the people in the city."

### Genesis 19:16 (#1)

**"But he lingered"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Lot at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: "But Lot did not leave immediately," or "Lot delayed,"

See: Pronouns

### Genesis 19:16 (#2)

**"so the men grabbed his hand and the hand of his wife and the hand{s} of his two daughters"**

Alternate translation: "so the two men took hold of his hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters," or "so they took him and his wife and two daughters by the hand,"

### Genesis 19:16 (#3)

**"because of Yahweh's mercy for him"**

For some languages it may be better to put this phrase last in verse 16 so that it does not interrupt the flow of the sentence. Or it may be better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "Lot hesitated, but Yahweh was being merciful/kind to him, so the two men/angels took hold of Lot's hand and the hands of his wife and two daughters and took/led them out of the city." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh was being kind to him"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 19:16 (#4)

**"and brought him out and set him"**

Alternate translation: "and led him safely"

**Genesis 19:17 (#1)**

**"And it happened when they had brought them out to the outside"**

See how you translated **brought** in verse 16.  
Alternate translation: "As soon as the angels had led them outside the city,"

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 19:17 (#2)**

**"then he said"**

Alternate translation: "one of them said to them," or "one of the angels said to Lot"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 19:17 (#3)**

**"Flee for your life"**

Alternate translation: "Run for your lives!" or "Run to save your lives!"

**Genesis 19:17 (#4)**

**"Do not look behind you"**

Alternate translation: "Do not look behind you at Sodom," or "Do not look back at the city,"

**Genesis 19:17 (#5)**

**"and do not stop anywhere in the plain"**

This plain or valley was a wide, flat area between mountains. See how you translated "plain/valley" in Gen 13:10–12. Alternate translation: "and do not delay anywhere in the plain" or "and do not stop in the plain for any reason!"

**Genesis 19:17 (#6)**

**"Escape"**

Alternate translation: "Hurry"

**Genesis 19:17 (#7)**

**"to the mountain{s}"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "to the mountains/hills" or "to the hill country" or "to the/that mountain range" or (2) "to the/that mountain". This phrase is ambiguous because often the Hebrew text uses a singular form to refer to something that is plural.

**Genesis 19:17 (#8)**

**"so that you are not swept away"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 15.  
Alternate translation: "so that you will not be destroyed!" or "so that you will not die!"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 19:18 (#1)**

**"Then Lot said to them"**

Some languages have a special dual pronoun for **them** that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "But Lot pleaded with them"

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

**Genesis 19:18 (#2)**

**"Please, no, my lords"**

See how you translated "my lords/masters" in verse 2. Alternate translation: "Please, my masters, do not make us go that far!"

**Genesis 19:19 (#1)**

**"Behold, please"**

Alternate translation: "Listen to this please:" or "Please listen to me"

**Genesis 19:19 (#2)**

**"Your servant has found favor in your eyes"**

The phrase "your servant" does not mean that Lot is actually a servant for the angels, but rather, it is

a humble way for Lot to refer to himself and show respect to them. See how you translated that phrase in verse 2. Also see how you translated the idiom “found favor in ... eyes” in Gen 6:8 and 18:3. Alternate translation: “I, your servant, have been treated well by you,” or “You have treated me kindly even though I am unimportant,”

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 19:19 (#3)

**"and you have magnified your mercy that you have shown to me"**

This is the first occurrence in the Bible of the important Hebrew word “khesed,” which is translated as “mercy,” “kindness,” or “lovingkindness” and often implies that it was not deserved. Compare how you translated a different word that has a similar meaning (**mercy** or “compassion”) in verse 16. Alternate translation: “and you have shown me great mercy” or “and you have been very merciful to me”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 19:19 (#4)

**"But I am not able to escape to the mountain{s}"**

See how you translated **the mountains** in verse 17. Alternate translation: “But I am not able to flee all the way to the hills” or “But there is no way that I can make it safely all the way to the hills” or “But the hills are too far away for me to make it there safely”

### Genesis 19:19 (#5)

**"because the disaster will overtake me and I will die"**

The word **disaster** is personified here, that is, it is talked about as if it can act in human ways. Consider whether or not it would be clear and natural to do that here in your language. Alternate translation: “before the disaster catches up with me and kills me.” or “before the disaster strikes and kills me.”

See: Personification

### Genesis 19:20 (#1)

**"Behold, please"**

Consider again how you translated **Behold, please** in verses 2, 8, 19–20. It may be necessary to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context.

### Genesis 19:20 (#2)

**"That town there"**

The Hebrew word for **town** here (and in verses 21–23) can refer to either a city or a town, depending on the context. Many translations have “town,” or even “village,” here because the place was very small (verses 20, 22). Many other translations have “city” here instead, but that does not fit the context. Alternate translation: “That town over there”

### Genesis 19:20 (#3)

**"is} near to flee to"**

Alternate translation: “is close enough to run to in time,”

### Genesis 19:20 (#4)

**"and it {is} a little one"**

Alternate translation: “and it is only a small town.” or “and it is little”

### Genesis 19:20 (#5)

**"Please let me escape there"**

Alternate translation: “Please let us flee there, and do not destroy it.”

### Genesis 19:20 (#6)

**"Is it not a little one"**

This rhetorical question implies that it will not matter if such a small town like Zoar is not destroyed. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: “After all, it is only a small place”



See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 19:20 (#7)

#### "Then my life will live"

Lot says "my life," but he is probably also including his family who is with him. Alternate translation: "Then I can stay alive." or "If you let us go there, then my family and I will live." or "If you allow that, our lives will be spared."

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 19:21 (#1)

#### "Then he said"

This phrase probably refers to the same angel who spoke to Lot in verse 17. Make sure it does not sound like Lot is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: "The angel said"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 19:21 (#2)

#### "Behold"

Alternate translation: "Listen," or "Here is what I will do:"

### Genesis 19:21 (#3)

#### "I have also lifted up your face concerning this thing"

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate the idiom **lifted up your face** here. Alternate translation: "I will grant your request," or "I will permit you to do what you have requested,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 19:21 (#4)

#### "so I will not overthrow"

Alternate translation: "so I will not overturn"

### Genesis 19:21 (#5)

#### "the town that you are talking about"

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in the sentence and say, "I will allow you to go to the small town that you are talking about, and I will not destroy it." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "the small town that you mentioned."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 19:22 (#1)

#### "Hurry up"

Alternate translation: "But go quickly now and"

### Genesis 19:22 (#2)

#### "escape there"

Consider again how you translated **escape** in verses 17, 19–20, 22. Alternate translation: "flee there," or "flee to that town,"

### Genesis 19:22 (#3)

#### "because I am not able to do"

This clause implies that Yahweh will not allow the angel to destroy anything until Lot and his family arrive safely in the town of Zoar. Alternate translation: "because I am not allowed to do anything" or "because I must wait to do anything" or "because God will not allow me to do anything"

### Genesis 19:22 (#4)

#### "until you go there"

Alternate translation: "until you reach there safely." or "until you are safely there."

### Genesis 19:22 (#5)

#### "For that {reason}"

This phrase refers back to what Lot said in verse 20, not what the angel just said. Alternate

translation: "That is why" or "Since Lot said the town was little"

### Genesis 19:22 (#6)

**"they called the name of the town"**

See how you translated **they called the name** in Gen 11:9 and 16:14. Alternate translation: "the town was called" or "they called that town"

### Genesis 19:22 (#7)

**"Zoar"**

If this implied information is included in your translation or in a footnote, be consistent here with how you translated the word "little" or "small" in verse 20.

### Genesis 19:23 (#1)

**"The sun rose over the land"**

Make sure that the way verse 23 begins in your translation fits with the way verse 15 begins, which refers to the same day.

### Genesis 19:23 (#2)

**"and Lot"**

In that culture the father was often the only one mentioned and the other family members were assumed to be with him. Alternate translation: "when Lot and his family"

See: Connect — Simultaneous Time Relationship

### Genesis 19:23 (#3)

**"came to Zoar"**

Alternate translation: "arrived in the town of Zoar." or "reached the town of Zoar."

### Genesis 19:24 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh rained down on Sodom and Gomorrah brimstone and fire"**

The word **brimstone** refers to sulfur, which is a type of rock that is highly flammable. When it burns, it produces smoke, intense heat, and a bad smell like rotten eggs. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh poured down burning sulfur and fire on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah" or "Then Yahweh caused fire and burning sulfur to pour down on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

### Genesis 19:24 (#2)

**"from Yahweh out of the heavens"**

Some translations omit the phrase **from Yahweh** since Yahweh is already mentioned earlier as the one doing this. Also, for some languages it may be better to change the order of phrases in this verse and say, "Then Yahweh caused fire and burning sulfur/rocks to fall/pour like heavy rain from the heavens/sky on the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "from himself in heaven," or "from out of the sky,"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 19:25 (#1)

**"and he overthrew"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated a phrase with a similar meaning ("swept away") in verses 15 and 17. Alternate translation: "and (so) Yahweh completely destroyed" or "In that way, Yahweh completely destroyed" or "That is how Yahweh completely destroyed"

### Genesis 19:25 (#2)

**"and all of the plain"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah were also in the plain/valley, not separate from it. Alternate translation: "and the whole valley," or "and the rest of the plain"

### Genesis 19:25 (#3)

**"including all the inhabitants of the cities"**

This phrase refers to Sodom and Gomorrah and at least two other cities in the valley (Deuteronomy 29:23). Alternate translation: "including all the people who lived in the cities of that valley" or "including everyone who lived in the cities there"

### **Genesis 19:25 (#4)**

**"and the vegetation"**

Alternate translation: "and even all the plants"

### **Genesis 19:25 (#5)**

**"and the vegetation of the ground"**

Alternate translation: "that were growing on the land." or "of the area"

### **Genesis 19:26 (#1)**

**"But his wife from behind him looked back"**

Alternate translation: "... looked back at Sodom,"

### **Genesis 19:26 (#2)**

**"and she became"**

Alternate translation: "and immediately her body turned into" or "and immediately Yahweh turned her into"

### **Genesis 19:26 (#3)**

**"a pillar of salt"**

Alternate translation: "a column of solid salt rock and she died." or "salt rock that was in the shape of a column."

### **Genesis 19:27 (#1)**

**"Abraham got up early in the morning"**

Some translations translate this as the next morning, but it is more likely that this was the same day when Lot arrived in Zoar and Yahweh destroyed the cities in the valley (verse 23).

Alternate translation: "Meanwhile, Abraham got up early that same morning"

### **Genesis 19:27 (#2)**

**"and went to the place"**

Alternate translation: "and returned to the spot"

### **Genesis 19:27 (#3)**

**"where he had stood before Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "where he had been with Yahweh the previous day,"

### **Genesis 19:28 (#1)**

**"and he looked down"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, make sure it is clear that Abraham, not Yahweh, is being referred to here. Alternate translation: "Then he looked down"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### **Genesis 19:28 (#2)**

**"toward"**

Alternate translation: "in the direction of"

### **Genesis 19:28 (#3)**

**"and toward all the surface of the land of the plain"**

Alternate translation: "and all the rest of the plain"

### **Genesis 19:28 (#4)**

**"And he saw that, behold"**

Alternate translation: "And he was amazed to see that"

**Genesis 19:28 (#5)****"smoke was rising from the land"**

Alternate translation: "lots of thick smoke was billowing up from the land" or "a large amount of smoke was ..."

**Genesis 19:28 (#6)****"like smoke from a furnace"**

During that time period, a furnace was heated by fire. Alternate translation: "like smoke that comes from the fire in a large oven."

See: Simile

**Genesis 19:29 (#1)****"So it was, when God destroyed"**

See how you translated **destroyed** in verses 13–14, 17. Alternate translation: "So it was that when God destroyed"

**Genesis 19:29 (#2)****"the cities of the plain"**

Consider again how you translated "plain/valley" in Gen 13:10–12; 19:17, 25, 28, 29. Alternate translation: "the cities on the plain," or "the cities in the plain"

**Genesis 19:29 (#3)****"that God remembered Abraham"**

Make sure your translation of this clause does not imply that God forgot Abraham. See how you translated **God remembered** in Gen 8:1. Alternate translation: "he kept Abraham and his request in mind"

**Genesis 19:29 (#4)****"and sent Lot out of the middle of"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate

translation: "and brought Lot safely away from" or "So he rescued Lot from"

**Genesis 19:29 (#5)****"the overthrow"**

Alternate translation: "the disaster"

**Genesis 19:29 (#6)****"when he overthrew the cities"**

Alternate translation: "when he completely destroyed the cities" or "that he had used to completely destroy the cities"

**Genesis 19:30 (#1)****"Then Lot went up from Zoar and settled in the mountain{s}, and his two daughters {were} with him"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **the mountains** in verses 17 and 19. Alternate translation: "After that, Lot moved with his two daughters from the town of Zoar up into the hills and settled there," or "Sometime later, Lot and his two daughters left the town of Zoar and moved to the hills,"

**Genesis 19:30 (#2)****"because he was afraid to settle in Zoar"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "Lot was afraid to settle/stay in the town of Zoar, so he and his two daughters moved from there to the mountains/hills, where they lived in a cave." Do what is best in your language. Also, be consistent with how you spelled **Zoar** throughout the book of Genesis. See Gen 13:10; 14:2, 8; 19:22–23, 30. Alternate translation: "because he was afraid to stay in the town of Zoar."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 19:30 (#3)****"So he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters"**

Alternate translation: "So he and his two daughters lived in a cave in the hills."

### Genesis 19:31 (#1)

**"Then the firstborn said to"**

Alternate translation: "Then one day his oldest daughter said to"

### Genesis 19:31 (#2)

**"the younger"**

Alternate translation: "his younger one," or "her younger sister," or "her sister,"

### Genesis 19:31 (#3)

**"Our father is old"**

In some cultures, it is not polite to call someone **old**. Translate this clause in a way that is accurate and acceptable in your language area. Alternate translation: "Our father is getting along in years,"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 19:31 (#4)

**"and there is not a man"**

Alternate translation: "and there is no man"

### Genesis 19:31 (#5)

**"on the earth"**

Lot's daughter is exaggerating here, to emphasize her point. Alternate translation: "in this land"

See: Hyperbole

### Genesis 19:31 (#6)

**"to come to us"**

See how you translated the idiom "went to" in Gen 6:4, which is the same meaning as **come to** here. Alternate translation: "to be with us,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 19:31 (#7)

**"as {is} the way of all the earth"**

Alternate translation: "as is the way of all the people on the earth." or "which is normal for people all over the earth"

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 19:32 (#1)

**"Come on"**

See how you translated this in Gen 11:7.

### Genesis 19:32 (#2)

**"let us get our father to drink wine"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this proposal or suggestion in your language.

### Genesis 19:32 (#3)

**"and let us lie with him"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and then we should sleep with him" or "Then we can have physical relations with him"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 19:32 (#4)

**"so that we will give life to"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "That way we can have descendants" or "so that we can preserve our family line"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

### Genesis 19:32 (#5)

**"through our father"**

Alternate translation: "by our father." or "through him."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 19:33 (#1)

**"So they got their father to drink wine on that night"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Lot's daughters at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "So they got their father drunk on wine that very night,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 19:33 (#2)

**"and the firstborn went"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then his oldest daughter went to him"

### Genesis 19:33 (#3)

**"and lay with her father"**

Make sure that the way you translate the euphemism **lay with** will not be too offensive to be read aloud in public. Alternate translation: "and slept with him,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 19:33 (#4)

**"but he did not know"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "But he was so drunk that he did not even know" or "But he was so drunk that he was completely unaware"

### Genesis 19:33 (#5)

**"when she lay down or when she got up"**

Alternate translation: "that she had been with him."

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 19:34 (#1)

**"Then it happened on the next day"**

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes important information which the following narrative builds on. It also creates suspense so that readers and listeners wonder what will happen next. Some translations leave this phrase out, but doing that loses some of the suspense. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "The next day, this is what happened:"

### Genesis 19:34 (#2)

**"the younger"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 31. Alternate translation: "his younger one," or "her younger sister," or "her sister,"

### Genesis 19:34 (#3)

**"Behold, last night"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase (**last night**) last in this sentence. Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 19:34 (#4)

**"I lay with my father"**

See how you translated **lay with** in verse 33. Alternate translation: "I slept with our father." or "I had physical relations with our father."

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 19:34 (#5)

**"Let us get him to drink wine again tonight"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to put the time word **tonight** first or last in this clause. Alternate translation: "Tonight we should get him drunk again."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 19:34 (#6)****"lie with him"**

Alternate translation: "sleep with him"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 19:34 (#7)****"so that we will give life"**

See how you translated the last clause in verse 32, which is the same as the rest of verse 34. Alternate translation: "so that we can have descendants" or "so that we can preserve our family line"

**Genesis 19:34 (#8)****"through our father"**

Alternate translation: "by our father." or "through him."

See: Pronouns

**Genesis 19:35 (#1)****"So on that night also they got their father to drink wine"**

Alternate translation: "So they got their father drunk on wine that night, also"

**Genesis 19:35 (#2)****"Then the younger went and lay with him"**

Alternate translation: "Then his younger daughter went to him and slept with him," or "Then his younger daughter went to him and had sexual relations with him,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 19:35 (#3)****"but he did not know"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated the last clause in verse 33, which is similar to the rest of verse 35. Alternate

translation: "But once again he was so drunk that he did not even know" or "but ... he was not even aware" or "But ... he was completely unaware"

**Genesis 19:35 (#4)****"when she lay down or when she got up"**

Alternate translation: "that she had been with him."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 19:36 (#1)****"So both of the daughters of Lot conceived"**

Alternate translation: "As a result ..."

**Genesis 19:36 (#2)****"from their father"**

Alternate translation: "by having relations with their father."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 19:37 (#1)****"Then the firstborn bore a son"**

Make sure that the way you translate "Later" fits with the fact that several months have gone by. Alternate translation: "Later the oldest daughter gave birth to a son," or "... had a son,"

**Genesis 19:37 (#2)****"and she called his name"**

See how you translated **called his name** in Gen 5:29. Alternate translation: "and she called him" or "whom she named"

**Genesis 19:37 (#3)****"Moab"**

You can include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote. Some translations

put this implied information in parentheses. Do what is best in your language.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 19:37 (#4)

"He {is} the father of"

Alternate translation: "He was the ancestor of"

### Genesis 19:37 (#5)

"the Moabites to this day"

The phrase, **to this day** or "today" refers to the time when Moses wrote the book of Genesis, which was hundreds of years after Lot and his daughters lived and died. Alternate translation: "the people group who are called the Moabites today."

### Genesis 19:38 (#1)

"bore a son"

See how you translated the last half of verse 37, which is the same as the rest of verse 38, except for the names. Alternate translation: "had a son,"

### Genesis 19:38 (#2)

"and she called his name"

Alternate translation: "and she called him" or "whom she named"

### Genesis 19:38 (#3)

"Ben-Ammi"

You can include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote. Some translations put this implied information in parentheses. Do what is best in your language.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 19:38 (#4)

"He {is} the father of"

Alternate translation: "He was the forefather of"

### Genesis 19:38 (#5)

"the sons of Ammon to this day"

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 37. Alternate translation: "the people group who are called the Ammonites today."

### Genesis 20:1 (#1)

"Then Abraham traveled"

Consider what is the best way to introduce this new episode in your language, where the focus shifts to Abraham. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham and his family left"

### Genesis 20:1 (#2)

"from there"

Abraham and Sarah had been living by the trees of Mamre, near the city of Hebron (Gen 13:18; 18:1). Alternate translation: "from the place where he were living" or "from near the city of Hebron"

### Genesis 20:1 (#3)

"to the land of the Negev"

See how you translated "the Negev Wilderness/Desert" in Gen 12:9 (note); 13:1, 3. Alternate translation: "and went south to the Negev Desert area"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 20:1 (#4)

"and he settled between Kadesh and Shur"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Kadesh** in Gen 14:7 and **Shur** in 16:7. Alternate translation: "There he lived between the cities of Kadesh and Shur"



**Genesis 20:1 (#5)****"and sojourned in Gerar"**

See how you translated "sojourn" in Gen 12:10. Also be consistent here with how you translated **Gerar** in Gen 10:19. Alternate translation: "and they stayed there for a while as foreigners, in the city of Gerar." or "and they stayed in the city of Gerar for a while."

**Genesis 20:2 (#1)****"And Abraham said about Sarah his wife, 'She {is} my sister'"**

Sarah was Abraham's younger sister (Gen 19:19). Some languages use special words for **sister** and "brother" in Gen 12:13, 19; 20:2, 5, 12-13, 16, to distinguish when someone is younger or older than his or her sibling. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "While they were there, he told people that his wife Sarah was his sister." or "While they were there, he told people that Sarah was his sister, not his wife."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 20:2 (#2)****"So Abimelech the king of Gerar sent for Sarah and took her"**

The city of Gerar was the Philistines' capital city where King Abimelech ruled from (Gen 21:2, 32; 26:1). Alternate translation: "So one day Abimelech, who was the king over the city of Gerar, had some of his servants bring Sarah to his home to be his wife." or "So one day King Abimelech, who ruled the Philistines from the city of Gerar, had Sarah brought to him to be his wife."

**Genesis 20:3 (#1)****"But God came to Abimelech in a dream"**

For some languages it is necessary to use an honorific title for a king each time (or most of the time) that he is referred to by name, in order to show him proper respect. Do what is best in your language throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: "But God appeared to King Abimelech in a dream"

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 20:3 (#2)****"in} the night"**

It may be more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "But that night God came/appeared to King Abimelech in a dream ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "during the night" or "by night"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 20:3 (#3)****"and said to him"**

Alternate translation: "and told him,"

**Genesis 20:3 (#4)****"Behold, you are dead"**

Make sure that the way you translate this clause does not make it sound like King Abimelech is already dead. God is telling King Abimelech what is about to happen to him. Alternate translation: "Listen to me, you are a dead man" or "Listen to me, you are about to die" or "Behold, I have sentenced you to die"

**Genesis 20:3 (#5)****"because of the woman whom you have taken, because she"**

See how you translated "took" in verse 2.

**Genesis 20:3 (#6)****"is married to a husband"**

Alternate translation: "is a married woman!"

**Genesis 20:4 (#1)****"Now Abimelech"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce this background information. Alternate translation: "Now King Abimelech"

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 20:4 (#2)

#### "had not gone near to her"

Translate this clause in a way that will not be offensive or embarrassing in your language when it is read aloud in public. See how you translated a different phrase in Gen 19:31 ("come to us") that has the same meaning. Alternate translation: "had not yet slept with her" or "had not had marital relations with Sarah,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 20:4 (#3)

#### "so he said"

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on how you translate the rhetorical question that follows it.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 20:4 (#4)

#### "My Lord"

See how you translated this title of respect for God in Gen 18:27, 30–32. Alternate translation: "My Master," or "Master,"

### Genesis 20:4 (#5)

#### "will you kill a nation even though"

King Abimelech uses a rhetorical question here to express his desperate concern. Abimelech is saying in a dramatic way that if God kills him, he will destroy the nation that Abimelech leads as their king. Make sure in your translation that he does not sound angry or rude. Also, see how you translated **nation** in Gen 18:18. Alternate translation: "will you kill me and my people group even if" or "please do not kill me and my people group, since"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 20:4 (#6)

#### "it is} righteous"

Consider again how you translated the word **righteous** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 6:9, 7:1, 18:23–26, 28; 20:4. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "we are actually righteous"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 20:5 (#1)

#### "Did not he himself say to me, 'She {is} my sister'"

Abimelech uses another rhetorical question here as he continues to defend his actions. Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated **sister** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "He himself told me that she was his sister."

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 20:5 (#2)

#### "And she herself also said, 'He {is} my brother'"

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "And Sarah herself also claimed that he was her brother."

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 20:5 (#3)

#### "I did this"

Alternate translation: "So I did what I did"

### Genesis 20:5 (#4)

#### "in the integrity of my heart"

Alternate translation: "with a clear conscience" or "with pure motives"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 20:5 (#5)****"and in the innocence of my hands"**

If you use an exclamation point here in your translation, make sure it does not mean that King Abimelech is angry or being rude; rather, he is desperate. Alternate translation: "and with clean hands!"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 20:6 (#1)****"Then God said to him in the dream"**

Alternate translation: "God answered King Abimelech in the dream,"

**Genesis 20:6 (#2)****"Yes, I know that"**

Alternate translation: "Yes, I know that it was" or "I am aware that it was"

**Genesis 20:6 (#3)****"in the integrity of your heart"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: "with a clear conscience" or "with pure motives"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 20:6 (#4)****"you did this"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase before the previous one and say, "Yes, I know/realize that you did this with honorable/pure motives ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "that you did this," or "that you took her to be your wife,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 20:6 (#5)****"and indeed I kept you from sinning against me"**

In the Hebrew text, **I** is an emphatic pronoun. Try to communicate that emphasis in a natural way in your translation. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and in fact, it is I who kept you from doing this sin against me." or "In fact, I am the one who prevented you from sinning against me."

**Genesis 20:6 (#6)****"I did not allow you"**

Alternate translation: "I did not permit you to"

**Genesis 20:6 (#7)****"to touch her"**

See how you translated the idiom "gone/come near to her" in verse 4, which has a meaning that is similar to the idiom here. Also, for some languages it may be better to change the order of these clauses and say, "I am the one who did not allow/permit you to touch her so that you would not sin against me." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "have sexual relations with her." or "do anything to her."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 20:7 (#1)****"return the wife of the man"**

Alternate translation: "return her to her husband Abraham"

**Genesis 20:7 (#2)****"because he {is} a prophet"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, a prophet is someone who speaks for someone else. In this case, Abraham serves as an intercessor and speaks for God and prays what God wants him to say (verses 7,17). Avoid a translation of this term that focuses on telling the future, which is only one of the things that a prophet might do. Alternate translation: "He is a prophet for me,"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 20:7 (#3)****"and he will pray for you"**

Alternate translation: "so he will ask me to be kind to you,"

**Genesis 20:7 (#4)****"and you will live"**

Alternate translation: "and I will let you live."

**Genesis 20:7 (#5)****"But if you do not"**

Alternate translation: "But if you will not"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

**Genesis 20:7 (#6)****"return her"**

Alternate translation: "give her back to him"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 20:7 (#7)****"know that"**

Alternate translation: "you need to know that" or "be aware that"

**Genesis 20:7 (#8)****"you will surely die, you and all who {belong} to you"**

The phrase **all who belong to you** refers to King Abimelech's people, whom he referred to in verse 4. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "you and all your people will surely die!" or "I will surely kill you and all your people!"

**Genesis 20:8 (#1)****"So Abimelech got up early in the morning"**

Alternate translation: "So the next morning King Abimelech got up early"

**Genesis 20:8 (#2)****"and called"**

Alternate translation: "summoned"

**Genesis 20:8 (#3)****"for all of his servants"**

Alternate translation: "all his officials and other servants,"

**Genesis 20:8 (#4)****"and he told all those things in their ears"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then he told them about everything that God had said to him in the dream," or "He told told them everything that had happened,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 20:8 (#5)****"and the men were very afraid"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to King Abimelech's servants at each point in this verse. Alternate translation: "and they felt terrified." or "When they heard that, they were very afraid that God would kill them." or "As soon as they heard that, the men were very afraid of what might happen next."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 20:9 (#1)****"Then Abimelech called"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to King Abimelech at this point in the paragraph. Alternate translation: "Then King

Abimelech summoned Abraham" or "Then the king called Abraham in to see him" or "Then he had Abraham brought to him"

### Genesis 20:9 (#2)

**"and said to him"**

The way you translate this quote margin will depend on how you translate the rhetorical question that follows it. Alternate translation: "and asked him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 20:9 (#3)

**"What have you done to us"**

Abimelech uses two rhetorical questions here to express his anger and to scold Abraham for what he had done. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Why have you treated us like this?" or "What you have done to us is not right!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 20:9 (#4)

**"And how have I sinned against you so that"**

Alternate translation: "What did I do wrong to you so that" or "I never did anything wrong to you, but yet"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 20:9 (#5)

**"you brought a great sin on me and on my kingdom"**

Make sure your punctuation here fits with how you translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "you brought on me and my people the guilt of a terrible sin!" or "you have caused me and the kingdom that I rule to be guilty of sinning terribly!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 20:9 (#6)

**"You have done deeds to me that should not be done"**

Alternate translation: "No one should ever wrong someone the way you have wronged me!"

### Genesis 20:10 (#1)

**"Then Abimelech said to Abraham"**

For some languages it is more natural here to omit this quote margin, because the same person is still talking to the same person. However, the words emphasize what King Abimelech says next and may indicate that there was a pause between what he said in verse 9 and in verse 10. Do what is best in your language.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 20:10 (#2)

**"What were you looking for when you did"**

Alternate translation: "What did you expect to benefit from doing" or "What were your reasons for doing"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 20:10 (#3)

**"this thing"**

Alternate translation: "this terrible thing?"

### Genesis 20:11 (#1)

**"And Abraham answered"**

Alternate translation: "Abraham replied to him,"

### Genesis 20:11 (#2)

**"Because"**

Alternate translation: "I did it because"

**Genesis 20:11 (#3)**

**"I said, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, so they will kill me because of my wife'"**

To "fear God" is an important theme in the Bible. It is a complex term that means to recognize how holy and powerful God is and to deeply respect and honor him by obeying and worshipping him. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "I thought that there was certainly no one in this place who obeyed God, so I was afraid that they would kill me in order to take my wife for themselves."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 20:12 (#1)**

**"And also"**

Alternate translation: "In addition to that,"

**Genesis 20:12 (#2)**

**"she truly {is} my sister"**

Alternate translation: "it is true that she is my sister" or "she actually is my sister"

**Genesis 20:12 (#3)**

**"the daughter of my father but not the daughter of my mother"**

Alternate translation: "because she and I have the same father, but not the same mother,"

**Genesis 20:12 (#4)**

**"and she became my wife"**

Alternate translation: "and when we were old enough, I married her."

**Genesis 20:13 (#1)**

**"And it happened"**

Alternate translation: "It happened that"

**Genesis 20:13 (#2)**

**"when God caused me to wander"**

Alternate translation: "when God commanded me to leave" or "when God led me to travel away from"

**Genesis 20:13 (#3)**

**"from the house of my father"**

See how you translated "house of ... father" in Gen 12:1. Alternate translation: "the place where my father and other relatives were living,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 20:13 (#4)**

**"then I said to her"**

Alternate translation: "I told her"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 20:13 (#5)**

**"This {is} your kindness that you can do for me: At every place where we go, say about me, 'He {is} my brother'"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate these embedded quotes as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: "to please do me a special favor and tell people wherever we go that I am her brother."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 20:14 (#1)**

**"flocks and herds"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: "flocks of sheep and herds of cattle"

**Genesis 20:14 (#2)**

**"and men slaves and women slaves"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: "and men and women slaves"

to Abraham” or “and male and female slaves to Abraham”

### Genesis 20:14 (#3)

**"and gave them to Abraham"**

Alternate translation: “and gave them all to Abraham”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 20:14 (#4)

**"and he returned Sarah his wife to him"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated “return” twice in verse 7. Alternate translation: “He also gave back to Abraham his wife Sarah.”

### Genesis 20:15 (#1)

**"Then Abimelech said"**

Alternate translation: “Then he said to him”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 20:15 (#2)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: “Listen,”

### Genesis 20:15 (#3)

**"my land {is} before you"**

See how you translated the idiom “before your face” in Gen 13:9. Alternate translation: “my land is in front of you.”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 20:15 (#4)

**"Settle"**

See how you translated this verb in verse 1. Alternate translation: “You may live” or “I invite you to live”

### Genesis 20:15 (#5)

**"wherever {is} good in your eyes"**

See how you translated the idiom **good in your eyes** in Gen 19:8. You may need to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “wherever you decide is best for you.” or “wherever you want.”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 20:16 (#1)

**"And to Sarah he said"**

Alternate translation: “Then King Abimelech said to Sarah,”

### Genesis 20:16 (#2)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: “Look,” or “Listen to this:”

### Genesis 20:16 (#3)

**"I have given 1, 000 {shekels of} silver to your brother"**

Coins did not exist at that time. Rather people paid each other with shekels of silver or gold shekels, which was a weight measurement. A thousand shekels of silver was about 25 pounds (11.5 kilos) of silver. Many translation teams like to keep the same numbers that are in the Hebrew text in their translation, and then in a footnote give the equivalent amount in their own currency. Other teams put the equivalent amount in the text and put the literal phrase in a footnote. Alternate translation: “I have given 1,000 pieces of silver to your brother.” or “I have given your brother 1,000 pieces of silver.”

See: Biblical Money

**Genesis 20:16 (#4)****"Behold, that {is}"**

Alternate translation: "I am doing this" or "The reason I am doing that is"

**Genesis 20:16 (#5)****"for you a covering of the eyes before all who {are} with you"**

The phrase **a covering of the eyes** is an idiom which means that King Abimelech's payment to Abraham "covered" (that is, "protected") Sarah's good reputation and showed that she was innocent. Alternate translation: "to show everyone that you are innocent of any wrongdoing," or "to show to everyone that you are an honorable woman,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 20:16 (#6)****"so that you are vindicated for everything"**

Alternate translation: "and to make it clear that you are not at fault for anything that happened."

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 20:17 (#1)****"Then Abraham prayed to God"**

See how you translated "pray" in Gen 20:7. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham prayed to God for King Abimelech," or "asked God to be kind to the king,"

**Genesis 20:17 (#2)****"and God healed Abimelech"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "So God healed him"

**Genesis 20:17 (#3)****"and his wife and his slave women"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to King Abimelech at each point in this verse.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 20:17 (#4)****"so that they bore children"**

Alternate translation: "and they were able to conceive and bear children again,"

**Genesis 20:18 (#1)****"because Yahweh"**

For some languages it may be more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because previously Yahweh"

**Genesis 20:18 (#2)****"had completely closed up every womb in the house of Abimelech"**

Consider again how often you need to use the honorific title "King" with Abimelech's name in this chapter in your language.

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 20:18 (#3)****"because of"**

Alternate translation: "on account of" or "to punish him for taking"

**Genesis 20:18 (#4)****"Sarah, the wife of Abraham"**

For some languages, it may be more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence (which begins in verse 17) and say, "Before this, Yahweh had completely closed up every womb in the household of King Abimelech because he had taken Abraham's wife Sarah. Then Abraham prayed ..." If the order is changed, it will be necessary to combine these two verses and to put the verse numbers "17-18" in front of the sentence.



Some translation teams have decided that they will never combine verses like that. Other teams have decided that occasionally it is acceptable to do that if it makes the meaning clearer.

See: Verse Bridges

### Genesis 21:1 (#1)

**"Then Yahweh visited Sarah as he had said"**

The word **visited** is used here as an idiom that means God blessed Sarah and was kind to her (by enabling her to have a son). The same idiom is used in 1 Samuel 2:21 and Luke 1:68. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh blessed Sarah as he had promised that he would," or "Then Yahweh was gracious to Sarah just as he had promised he would be,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 21:1 (#2)

**"and Yahweh did for Sarah"**

The two halves of verse 1 form a parallelism to emphasize what God did for Sarah. In your translation it is best, if possible, to keep both parts of the parallelism, since each part has a different emphasis. Alternate translation: "Yes, Yahweh did for her"

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 21:1 (#3)

**"as he had said"**

Alternate translation: "just as he had said he would do"

### Genesis 21:2 (#1)

**"so that Sarah conceived"**

Translate this clause in a way that is not offensive or awkward, especially when read aloud in public. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "So she became pregnant" or "As a result, Sarah conceived"

### Genesis 21:2 (#2)

**"and bore a son"**

Alternate translation: "and gave birth to a son" or "and had a son"

### Genesis 21:2 (#3)

**"at the appointed time"**

See how you translated **appointed time** in Gen 18:14. Alternate translation: "at the set time" or "at the time God had set" or "That happened at the exact time"

### Genesis 21:2 (#4)

**"which God had told him"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "So Sarah became pregnant, and at the time God had appointed/set, she gave birth to a son for Abraham when he was old, just as God had told/promised him that she would." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "when God had told him it would happen."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 21:3 (#1)

**"And Abraham called the name of his son who was born to him"**

Alternate translation: "Then Abraham called his son,"

### Genesis 21:3 (#2)

**"whom Sarah bore for him, Isaac"**

Many translations include the meaning of Isaac's name, either in the text or in a footnote. Do what is best in your language.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 21:4 (#1)

**"And Abraham circumcised"**

Abraham may have circumcised Isaac (verse 4) on the same day that he named him (verse 3). See how you translated **circumcised** in Gen 17:10–14. Alternate translation: “And he also circumcised”

### Genesis 21:4 (#2)

#### "his son Isaac"

Consider what is the best way to refer to Isaac at this point in the paragraph, in your language. Alternate translation: “his son,”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 21:4 (#3)

#### "a son of eight days"

For some languages it may be more natural to put this phrase first in this verse and say, “Also, when Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him,” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “who was eight days old,” or “when he was eight days old,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 21:4 (#4)

#### "just as God had commanded him"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “He did exactly what God had commanded him to do.”

### Genesis 21:5 (#1)

#### "And Abraham {was} a son of 100 years"

See how you translated this clause in Gen 17:17.

See: Idiom

### Genesis 21:5 (#2)

#### "when Isaac his son was born to him"

Alternate translation: “when Isaac was born.”

### Genesis 21:6 (#1)

#### "And Sarah said"

Alternate translation: “When Isaac was born, Sarah said”

### Genesis 21:6 (#2)

#### "God has brought laughter to me"

Alternate translation: “God has enabled me to rejoice and laugh!”

### Genesis 21:6 (#3)

#### "Everyone who hears"

Alternate translation: “Everyone who finds out what he has done for me”

### Genesis 21:6 (#4)

#### "will laugh with me"

Alternate translation: “will rejoice and laugh with me!”

### Genesis 21:7 (#1)

#### "And she said"

Alternate translation: “Then she added” or “She also said”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 21:7 (#2)

#### "Who would have said to Abraham"

Sarah uses a rhetorical question here to express great joy and amazement. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “No one would have ever told Abraham” or “No one would have ever thought of telling Abraham”

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 21:7 (#3)****"that} Sarah would nurse children"**

Alternate translation: "that I would bear children."

**Genesis 21:7 (#4)****"Yet"**

Alternate translation: "But yet" or "In spite of that,"

**Genesis 21:7 (#5)****"I have born a son"**See how you translated "bear" in Gen 18:13.  
Alternate translation: "I have had a son for him"**Genesis 21:7 (#6)****"in his old age"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. You may need to translate it in a different way here because of the slightly different context. Alternate translation: "even though he is old!"

**Genesis 21:8 (#1)****"Then the child grew"**

Alternate translation: "The boy Isaac grew"

**Genesis 21:8 (#2)****"and was weaned"**Children in that culture were often weaned around the age of three. Translate **weaned** in a way that will not embarrass or offend people. Alternate translation: "and his mother weaned him," or "and reached the age when his mother stopped breast-feeding him,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 21:8 (#3)****"and Abraham made a great feast on the day Isaac was weaned"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "When that happened, Abraham held a elaborate feast to celebrate." or "On that same day, Abraham had his servants prepare an elaborate feast to celebrate."

**Genesis 21:9 (#1)****"And Sarah saw"**

Alternate translation: "But at the feast Sarah saw"

**Genesis 21:9 (#2)****"that} the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had born for Abraham"**

Also see how you translated "have born" in verse 8. Alternate translation: "that the son whom Hagar, her handmaid from the country of Egypt, had given birth to for Abraham"

**Genesis 21:9 (#3)****"was mocking"**

Alternate translation: "was mocking Isaac." or "was laughing at Isaac."

**Genesis 21:10 (#1)****"So she said to Abraham"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "So she was upset and told Abraham,"

**Genesis 21:10 (#2)****"Drive away"**

Alternate translation: "Send away"

**Genesis 21:10 (#3)****"that slave woman"**

See how you translated "slave women" in Gen 20:17. Some languages may have a single word (as

Hebrew does) that means this. Alternate translation: "that female slave"

### Genesis 21:10 (#4)

**"and her son"**

Alternate translation: "along with her son!"

### Genesis 21:10 (#5)

**"because the son of that slave woman"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "The son of that slave woman"

### Genesis 21:10 (#6)

**"will not inherit with my son, with Isaac"**

Alternate translation: "will never inherit any part of what our son Isaac inherits from you!" or "will not get anything from you! Only my son Isaac should inherit your estate!"

### Genesis 21:11 (#1)

**"And the matter was very distressing in the eyes of Abraham"**

Alternate translation: "Abraham felt very grieved about that" or "What Sarah said grieved Abraham very much"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 21:11 (#2)

**"on account of his son"**

Alternate translation: "because of his son Ishmael." or "because he also cared about his son Ishmael."

### Genesis 21:12 (#1)

**"But God said to Abraham"**

Alternate translation: "Then God said to him," or "Then God told him,"

### Genesis 21:12 (#2)

**"Do not be distressed in your eyes"**

See how you translated "distressing" in verse 11. Alternate translation: "Do not be sad" or "Do not let yourself be upset"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 21:12 (#3)

**"because of the boy and because of your slave woman"**

Ishmael was about 17 years old at this time, so in verses 12–16 use terms for him in your language that fit with that fact. Alternate translation: "about the boy or your slave woman."

### Genesis 21:12 (#4)

**"All that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice"**

The word **listen** means to hear and do what is being asked. Also, the phrase **her voice** refers to Sarah and what she said. Alternate translation: "Rather, listen to whatever Sarah tells you to do, and do it," or "Do everything that Sarah told you to do,"

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 21:12 (#5)

**"because in Isaac, offspring will be called yours"**

Alternate translation: "because it is in Isaac that the descendants I promised you will be reckoned" or "because Isaac is the one who will be the ancestor of the descendants that I promised to give you." or "because the offspring that I promised to you will come from Isaac."

### Genesis 21:13 (#1)

**"And the son of the slave woman I will also make"**

Alternate translation: "But I will also make the son of your servant woman"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Genesis 21:13 (#2)

**"into a nation"**

Alternate translation: "become the ancestor of an important people group,"

### Genesis 21:13 (#3)

**"because he {is} your offspring"**

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to put this "because ..." clause earlier in this sentence and say, "And/But because/since the son of your slave/servant woman is your offspring/son, I will also make him into a great/important/large people/ethnic group." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "since he is your descendant."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 21:14 (#1)

**"Then Abraham got up early in the morning"**

Alternate translation: "So Abraham got up early the next morning,"

### Genesis 21:14 (#2)

**"and took bread"**

This phrase may refer to bread or more generally to food. Alternate translation: "got some food"

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 21:14 (#3)

**"and a skin of water"**

The word **skin** refers here to an animal skin or hide. Alternate translation: "and a leather bag full of water" or "and a full water bag made of animal hide" or "and a water bag full of water"

### Genesis 21:14 (#4)

**"and gave them to Hagar, putting them on her shoulder"**

Alternate translation: "to Hagar and put them on her shoulder"

### Genesis 21:14 (#5)

**"Then {he gave her} the child and sent her away"**

Alternate translation: "Then he sent her and the boy away," or "Then he sent her off with the youth,"

### Genesis 21:14 (#6)

**"and she left and wandered"**

Alternate translation: "and she left and wandered around" or "and they wandered around"

### Genesis 21:14 (#7)

**"in the wilderness of Beersheba"**

Sometimes in the Bible a place is identified by the well-known name it will be called later. That is the case in this verse, since Beersheba is not given its name until verse 31. Alternate translation: "in the Beersheba Desert." or "in the desert near the city that was later called Beersheba."

### Genesis 21:15 (#1)

**"And when the water from the skin was gone"**

See how you translated **skin** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "When they had drunk all the water that they had in the water container," or "When there was no more water in the water skin" or "When the water bag was empty,"

### Genesis 21:15 (#2)

**"then she threw"**

Make sure your translation of this idiom does not mean that Hagar literally threw Ishmael through the air. Alternate translation: "Hagar hurriedly put"

See: Idiom

## Genesis 21:15 (#3)

"the child"

Alternate translation: "the boy"

## Genesis 21:15 (#4)

"under one of the bushes"

Alternate translation: "under the shade of one of the bushes there," or "under the shade of a nearby bush,"

## Genesis 21:16 (#1)

"and she went and sat down by herself at a distance"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then she went away from him and sat down by herself,"

## Genesis 21:16 (#2)

"as far away as they shoot a bow"

If you do not translate the text literally, the literal text could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "about as far away as someone can shoot a bow" or "about a hundred yards away,"

See: Biblical Distance

## Genesis 21:16 (#3)

"because she said"

Alternate translation: "because she said to herself," or "She said to herself,"

## Genesis 21:16 (#4)

"Do not let me look on the death of the child"

Consider whether it is better to use a noun (**death**) or a verb ("die") in your translation here. Also, see how you translated **child** in verses 14 and 15.

Alternate translation: "I cannot bear to see my son die!"

See:

## Genesis 21:16 (#5)

"And {as} she sat at a distance, then she lifted her voice and sobbed"

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse (so that the events are in the order that they actually occurred) and say, "She thought to herself, 'I cannot bear to watch/see my son die.' So she went away from him and sat down by herself, about as far away as someone can shoot an arrow. Then she started crying loudly." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "As she sat there, she started sobbing loudly." or "Then she started sobbing loudly."

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 21:17 (#1)

"And God heard the voice of the boy"

Alternate translation: "God also heard the youth crying,"

## Genesis 21:17 (#2)

"so the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her"

See how you translated the key term **angel** in Gen 16:7. Alternate translation: "so one of his messengers called to Hagar from heaven and said" or "so he had one of his messengers call to Hagar from heaven and say"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

## Genesis 21:17 (#3)

"What {troubles} you, Hagar"

For some languages it is necessary to put **Hagar** first in this quote. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Hagar, why are you upset?"

**Genesis 21:17 (#4)**

**"Do not be afraid, because God has listened to the voice of the boy where he {is} there"**

The phrase **has listened to** means that God heard the boy and that he will help him. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid, because God has heard the cries of the boy where he is lying and will take care of him." or "Do not be afraid. God has heard the youth crying over there and will take care of him." or "God has heard the youth crying over there, so do not be afraid because he will take care of you both."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 21:18 (#1)**

**"Get up, lift the boy"**

Alternate translation: "So go help the youth to stand up," or "So now, go to your son, help him get up,"

**Genesis 21:18 (#2)**

**"and hold on to him with your hand"**

Alternate translation: "and lead him by the hand to help him walk,"

**Genesis 21:18 (#3)**

**"because I will make him"**

The pronoun **I** refers to Yahweh here. So either Yahweh had taken on the form of an angel, or the angel was representing Yahweh and speaking for him. See what you did for a similar case in Gen 16:10. Also, see how you translated "make ... into a great nation" in verse 13. Also see 18:18, which is similar. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh will make his descendants become"

**Genesis 21:18 (#4)**

**"into a great nation"**

See how you translated **nation** in verse 13. Alternate translation: "an large ethnic group."

**Genesis 21:19 (#1)**

**"Then God opened her eyes and she saw"**

Alternate translation: "Then God helped her to see"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 21:19 (#2)**

**"a well of water"**

See how you translated **well** in Gen 16:14. Alternate translation: "a well."

**Genesis 21:19 (#3)**

**"So she went"**

Alternate translation: "So she walked over to the well,"

**Genesis 21:19 (#4)**

**"and filled the skin {with} water"**

See how you translated **skin** in verses 14–15. Alternate translation: "filled the water bag with water,"

**Genesis 21:19 (#5)**

**"and gave the boy a drink"**

Alternate translation: "and gave Ishmael a drink from it."

**Genesis 21:20 (#1)**

**"And God was with the boy"**

This clause means that God guided, helped, protected, and blessed Ishmael, that is, he took care of him. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom that fits well here. Also consider again how you translated "boy/youth" in verses 12, 17–20. Alternate translation: "God was with the boy and blessed him,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 21:20 (#2)****"and he grew up. And he lived"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "As the boy/youth grew up/older, God was with him and helped/blessed him." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "as he grew up"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 21:20 (#3)****"And he lived in the wilderness"**

For some languages it is more natural to specify here in verse 20 that the name of the wilderness is Paran, rather than wait until verse 21, so that it is clear that both verses refer to the same wilderness. See how you translated **the wilderness** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "And he lived in the desert of Paran" or "He lived in the Paran Wilderness"

**Genesis 21:20 (#4)****"and became a great bowman"**

Alternate translation: "and became a skilled bowhunter"

**Genesis 21:21 (#1)****"And {while} he was living in the wilderness of Paran"**

See how you translated **wilderness** in verse 20. Alternate translation: "While he was living in the Paran Wilderness" or "While he was living in that desert,"

**Genesis 21:21 (#2)****"then his mother took a wife for him"**

Alternate translation: "his mother chose a wife for him" or "his mother arranged for him to marry a woman"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 21:21 (#3)****"from the land of Egypt"**

See how you translated **the land of Egypt** in Gen 13:10. Alternate translation: "who came from the country of Egypt." or "who was Egyptian."

**Genesis 21:22 (#1)****"And it happened at that time"**

Consider what is the best way to introduce a new episode here in your language. Alternate translation: "Around that same time,"

See: Introduction of a New Event

**Genesis 21:22 (#2)****"that Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, spoke to Abraham, saying"**

For some languages it is necessary in your language to make explicit that King Abimelech and Phicol came (or went) to Abraham before they spoke to him. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "King Abimelech went with his army commander Phicol to Abraham and said to him," or "King Abimelech and his army commander Phicol went to Abraham and said to him,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 21:22 (#3)****"God {is} with you in all that you do"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("God was with ...") in verse 20. Alternate translation: "I have noticed that God is with you and blesses you in everything that you do."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 21:23 (#1)****"So now"**

King Abimelech's words to Abraham should sound polite and respectful in your translation, not rude or demanding. See how you translated this phrase in Gen 20:7. Alternate translation: "So now, please"



**Genesis 21:23 (#2)****"swear to me here by God"**

To "swear ... by God" means that Abraham would be accountable to God, asking him to be his witness and to punish him if he breaks his oath/vow/promise to King Abimelech. It does not mean that Abraham used swear words or other foul language. If this custom is not familiar to many people in your language area, you could put this information in a footnote. See how you translated a similar sentence in Gen 14:22. Alternate translation: "solemnly promise me here with God as your witness"

See: Oath Formulas

**Genesis 21:23 (#3)****"if you will deal falsely with me"**

According to custom, Abimelech is leaving out the part of the oath that tells what Yahweh will do to Abraham if he violates the oath. Because of the power of spoken words, people left that part to be understood silently. You could supply these words if it would be clearer and not offensive in your language. Alternate translation: "that he will punish you severely if you deal falsely with me"

See: Ellipsis

**Genesis 21:23 (#4)****"According to the kindness that I have done to you"**

Alternate translation: "Rather, just as I have treated you kindly," or "But just as I have been kind to you,"

**Genesis 21:23 (#5)****"do to me and to the land"**

In this context, the phrase **the land** refers to the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: "vow that you will also be kind to me and the people in this land"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 21:23 (#6)****"which you are sojourning in"**

Alternate translation: "where you are sojourning" or "where you are living as a foreigner"

**Genesis 21:24 (#1)****"And Abraham said"**

Alternate translation: "Abraham said to Abimelech,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 21:24 (#2)****"I swear"**

See how you translated **swear** in verse 23. Alternate translation: "I swear that I will do those things." or "I solemnly promise that I will do that."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 21:25 (#1)****"Then Abraham complained to"**

Alternate translation: "But then he confronted" or "Then he also protested to"

**Genesis 21:25 (#2)****"Abimelech"**

For some languages, it is necessary to include the title "King" every time that Abimelech (or any other king) is referred to by name. For other languages, it is more natural to use the title only occasionally (especially when the focus is on him), or perhaps only the first time he is referred to in a section (so that his status is clear). Do what is best in your language throughout this section.

**Genesis 21:25 (#3)****"on account of"**

Alternate translation: "regarding"

**Genesis 21:25 (#4)****"the well of water"**

See how you translated **well of water** in verse 19.  
Alternate translation: "a well of water" or "the water well" or "a well"

**Genesis 21:26 (#1)****"Then Abimelech said"**

Alternate translation: "But Abimelech responded to him," or "When King Abimelech heard that, he said"

**Genesis 21:26 (#2)****"who has done this thing"**

Alternate translation: "who took your well from you." or "who took control of your well."

**Genesis 21:26 (#3)****"And also"**

Here Abimelech is introducing an additional explanation of his innocence in this matter. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "Furthermore,"

**Genesis 21:26 (#4)****"you did not tell me"**

Alternate translation: "you did not inform me about that before" or "you never told me about this"

**Genesis 21:26 (#5)****"and also"**

Here, Abimelech adds a third reason why he is innocent in this matter. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "furthermore," or "and finally,"

**Genesis 21:26 (#6)****"I have not heard about it until today"**

Alternate translation: "I knew nothing about it until today." or "today is the first time that I have heard about it."

**Genesis 21:27 (#1)****"Then Abraham took sheep and cattle, and he gave them to Abimelech"**

See how you translated **sheep and cattle** in Gen 20:14. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham brought some of his sheep and cattle, and gave them to Abimelech,"

**Genesis 21:27 (#2)****"and the two of them cut a covenant"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 15:18. Alternate translation: "and he and Abimelech made a peace agreement with one another."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 21:28 (#1)****"Then Abraham set apart"**

Alternate translation: "Abraham also isolated"

**Genesis 21:28 (#2)****"seven ewe lambs of the flock by themselves"**

Alternate translation: "seven female lambs from the rest of the sheep." or "seven young female sheep from the rest of the sheep."

**Genesis 21:29 (#1)****"So Abimelech said to Abraham"**

Alternate translation: "So Abimelech asked Abraham"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 21:29 (#2)**

**"What {are} they, these seven ewe lambs that you have set apart by themselves"**

See how you translated **set apart** in verse 28. Alternate translation: “What is the reason that you set apart those seven lambs?” or “Why did you put those seven lambs off by themselves?” or “Why did you isolate those seven lambs from the rest of the sheep?”

### Genesis 21:30 (#1)

**"And he said"**

Alternate translation: “Abraham answered him,”

### Genesis 21:30 (#2)

**"Because you must take the seven ewe lambs"**

Alternate translation: “Those seven lambs are for you to accept” or “Because I want you to take them”

### Genesis 21:30 (#3)

**"so that it can be a witness for me"**

Alternate translation: “to verify to everyone”

### Genesis 21:30 (#4)

**"that I dug this well"**

Alternate translation: “that I dug this well and so it is mine.” or “that I am the one who dug this well and it belongs to me.”

### Genesis 21:31 (#1)

**"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: “That is why” or “So”

### Genesis 21:31 (#2)

**"he called that place"**

The phrase **he called** often means that people in general gave a city or other place a certain name. Here it could be that Abraham named the place Beersheba, and then later other people called it the same name, and it became well known by that name. See how you translated this phrase in Gen

19:22. Alternate translation: “Abraham called that place” or “they call that place” or “that place was called”

### Genesis 21:31 (#3)

**"Beersheba"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Beersheba** in verse 14. Also, if you include the meaning of the name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure that the way you translate “vow” or **oath** here matches the way you translate **oath** later in this verse. Alternate translation: “Well of the Oath,”

### Genesis 21:31 (#4)

**"because there"**

Alternate translation: “because it was there that” or “because that is where”

### Genesis 21:31 (#5)

**"the two of them"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 27. Alternate translation: “he and Abimelech both”

### Genesis 21:31 (#6)

**"swore an oath"**

See how you translated “swear” in verses 23–24. Alternate translation: “made a vow to each other.” or “solemnly promised each other to live in peace.”

### Genesis 21:32 (#1)

**"So they cut the covenant at Beersheba"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a pronoun or nouns here to refer to these men. Some languages have a special dual pronoun for **they** that fits well here. Also, see how you translated the idiom “cut ... covenant” in verse 27. Alternate translation: “After Abraham and King Abimelech established their peace agreement at Beersheba,”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 21:32 (#2)

**"Then Abimelech and Phicol, the commander of his army, got up"**

See how you translated **got up** in verse 22. Alternate translation: "Abimelech and Phicol, his army commander left from there" or "Abimelech and his army commander Phicol left Abraham"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 21:32 (#3)

**"to the land of the Philistines"**

Abimelech and Phicol probably returned to their homes in the city of Gerar (Gen 20:2), which at that time was the Philistines' capital city, where Abimelech ruled from. The place in the desert where Abimelech and Abraham made their covenant (Beersheba) was probably located on the border of the Philistines' territory. Alternate translation: "to the land where the Philistines lived."

### Genesis 21:33 (#1)

**"a tamarisk tree"**

The tamarisk tree (also known as salt-cedar) is a small-leaved evergreen tree that grows up to 30 feet (9 meters) high and provides shade. It grows well in desert areas that have salty soil. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "a salt-cedar tree" or "an evergreen tree named salt-cedar"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 21:33 (#2)

**"and there he called on the name of Yahweh"**

See how you translated this clause in Gen 12:8 and a similar clause in 13:4. Alternate translation: "and he praised Yahweh by name there," or "and he addressed Yahweh there by his name as he praised him," or "and there he praised Yahweh,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 21:33 (#3)

**"the God of eternity"**

This phrase means that God has no beginning and no end. In other words, he has always existed and he will continue to exist forever. Alternate translation: "who is the Eternal God." or "who is the God who has always existed."

### Genesis 21:34 (#1)

**"Then Abraham sojourned"**

See how you translated "sojourning" in verse 23. Alternate translation: "After that, he stayed there"

### Genesis 21:34 (#2)

**"in the land of the Philistines"**

Alternate translation: "in the territory that was occupied by the Philistines" or "in the territory where the Philistines lived"

### Genesis 21:34 (#3)

**"many days"**

Abraham lived in the Philistines' territory for around 25 years, so keep that in mind as you translate this phrase. For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "... lived there for many years in the land ..." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 22:1 (#1)

**"Then it happened after those things"**

This is the beginning of a new episode that takes place around twelve years after Abraham and King Abimelech made their treaty (chapter 21). See how you translated "after those events" in Gen 15:1; it may be necessary to translate this phrase in a slightly different way here because of the different context. Alternate translation: "Sometime after those things happened" or "Several years later"

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 22:1 (#2)

#### "that God tested Abraham"

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like the test was over. Rather it introduces what the following episode is about. Alternate translation: "God wanted to test Abraham."

### Genesis 22:1 (#3)

#### "And he said"

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking here. Alternate translation: "Abraham replied to him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 22:1 (#4)

#### "Behold me"

Abraham's reply is respectful and means that he is listening and ready to do what God wants him to do. Consider what is the best way to say this phrase in your language. Alternate translation: "Yes, Master?" or "What is it, Lord"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 22:2 (#1)

#### "Then he said"

Translate this quote margin in a way that fits this context well. Alternate translation: "Then God said to him," or "Then God told him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 22:2 (#2)

#### "Please take your son"

See how you translated "please" when God is talking to a person in Gen 13:14; 15:5. Your translation of **take** here should not imply the use of force. See how you translated "took" in Gen 11:31 and 12:5.

### Genesis 22:2 (#3)

#### "your only {son} whom you love, Isaac"

This phrase repeats part of the previous phrase in order to emphasize it. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "yes your only son Isaac whom you love,"

### Genesis 22:2 (#4)

#### "and go yourself"

It is understood that he was to take Isaac with him. If this is not clear in your language, you could make that information explicit. Alternate translation: "and go with him"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 22:2 (#5)

#### "to the land of Moriah"

Alternate translation: "to the region called Moriah," or "to the Moriah Region,"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 22:2 (#6)

#### "and sacrifice him there as a burnt offering"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 8:20. Alternate translation: "and offer him there to me as a burnt offering" or "There you are to burn him up on an altar as a offering to me,"

### Genesis 22:2 (#7)

#### "on one of the mountains"

Alternate translation: "on top of one of the mountains" or "on top of a mountain"

### Genesis 22:2 (#8)

#### "that I will tell to you"

Alternate translation: "that I will point out to you."

### Genesis 22:3 (#1)

**"So Abraham got up early in the morning"**

See how you translated **got up early in the morning** in Gen 20:8. Alternate translation: "So the next morning, Abraham got up early" or "Early the next morning Abraham got up"

### Genesis 22:3 (#2)

**"and saddled his donkey"**

A donkey is like a small horse that people used to carry loads (as here). Alternate translation: "and got his donkey ready for the trip."

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 22:3 (#3)

**"Then he took two of his young men with him and Isaac his son"**

Alternate translation: "He took two of his servants with him and his son Isaac," or "Then he took his son Isaac and two of his servants,"

### Genesis 22:3 (#4)

**"and he cut wood"**

The reason Abraham is the only one mentioned in this clause and in the next sentence is that he is in focus. He did not travel alone and he probably did not chop the wood alone. Decide whether or not you need to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "and he split some firewood with them" or "and they chopped some firewood together"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 22:3 (#5)

**"for the burnt offering"**

Some languages must translate this noun phrase using a verb. Do what is natural in your language. See what you did in verse 2. Alternate translation:

"to use for the burnt offering and loaded it on the donkey." or "that they would use to burn the offering and loaded it on the donkey."

See: Abstract Nouns

### Genesis 22:3 (#6)

**"Then he got up and left for the place"**

In this context, **got up** is used as an idiom that means Abraham started an activity. It does not mean that he was sitting down and literally stood up. Alternate translation: "Then he set out with them for the place" or "Then they started traveling to the mountain"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 22:3 (#7)

**"that God had told to him"**

Alternate translation: "that God had told him to go to."

### Genesis 22:4 (#1)

**"On the third day"**

Alternate translation: "After walking for three days,"

### Genesis 22:4 (#2)

**"Abraham lifted his eyes"**

See how you translated the idiom **lifted his eyes** in Gen 18:2. It may be necessary to translate it differently here, because of the different context. Alternate translation: "he looked up"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 22:4 (#3)

**"and he saw the place from a distance"**

Consider where it is best in your language to put the location phrase **from a distance** or "in the distance". Alternate translation: "and he could see the place where they were headed in the distance."

or “and in the distance he could see the place where they were going.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 22:5 (#1)

**"Then Abraham said to his young men"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **young men** in verse 3. Alternate translation: “Then Abraham told his servants,”

### Genesis 22:5 (#2)

**"Stay here by yourselves with the donkey"**

Some languages have special dual pronouns (that refer to only two people) that can be used in verse 5 to refer to Abraham’s two servants.

See: Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural

### Genesis 22:5 (#3)

**"and I and the boy will go"**

See how you translated **the boy** in Gen 21:12, 17–20. We do not know for sure how old Isaac was at this time, but estimates range between 18 and 37 years old. Make sure your translation of **boy** allows for that fact. Alternate translation: “while the young man and I go”

### Genesis 22:5 (#4)

**"over there"**

Alternate translation: “over there to that mountain”

### Genesis 22:5 (#5)

**"and bow down"**

In that culture, people had the custom of bowing down to worship God. Make sure it is clear in your translation why Abraham and Isaac would bow down. Alternate translation: “and bow down to worship God.”

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 22:5 (#6)

**"Then we will come back to you"**

Alternate translation: “Then we will return to you here.” or “After that, we will come back here to you.”

### Genesis 22:6 (#1)

**"Then Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering"**

See how you translated “firewood” and **burnt offering** in verse 3. Alternate translation: “Then he took the firewood for the burnt offering off the donkey,” or “Then he took the firewood that they would use to burn the sacrifice”

### Genesis 22:6 (#2)

**"and put {it} on Isaac his son"**

The Hebrew text does not specify exactly where Abraham put the wood on Isaac. Only specify that in a translation if it is necessary in your language. Alternate translation: “and gave it to his son Isaac to carry,”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 22:6 (#3)

**"and he took in his hand{s}"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: “and he himself carried”

### Genesis 22:6 (#4)

**"the fire {pot}"**

The **fire** can either refer to hot coals (in a pot) or to a flint stone and wood chips that they would use to start the fire on the altar. Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not mean that Abraham was holding fire or hot coals in his bare hands. Alternate translation: “a fire pot with hot embers in it” or “the other things to make a fire”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 22:6 (#5)

**"and the knife"**

Alternate translation: "and a sacrifice knife."

### Genesis 22:6 (#6)

**"Then the two of them went on together"**

Some languages have a dual pronoun that could be used here. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham and Isaac walked on together," or "Then they continued walking toward the mountain,"

See:

### Genesis 22:7 (#1)

**"and Isaac spoke to Abraham his father and said"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: "and as they went Isaac said to his father Abraham,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 22:7 (#2)

**"And he said"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Abraham at this point in the paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: "Abraham said to him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 22:7 (#3)

**"Behold me, my son"**

See how you translated the idiom **Behold me** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "What is it, my son?"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 22:7 (#4)

**"Then he said"**

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits well with what Isaac says next.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 22:7 (#5)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Here is"

### Genesis 22:7 (#6)

**"the fire and the wood"**

Alternate translation: "the fire pot and the firewood," or "what we need to make a fire to burn the sacrifice,"

### Genesis 22:7 (#7)

**"but where {is} the lamb"**

Alternate translation: "but where is the sheep" or "but why is there no lamb"

### Genesis 22:7 (#8)

**"for the burnt offering"**

Alternate translation: "for us to use as the burnt offering?" or "for us to burn as our sacrifice to God?" or "that we will burn as our offering to God?"

### Genesis 22:8 (#1)

**"And Abraham said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Abraham said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 22:8 (#2)

**"God will see for himself"**

This is an idiom that means God will provide the lamb. Make sure this meaning is clear in your



translation. Alternate translation: "God himself will see to it that there is"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 22:8 (#3)

#### "the lamb for the burnt offering"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: "a lamb for the burnt offering," or "a lamb for us to burn as a offering to him,"

### Genesis 22:8 (#4)

#### "my son"

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put this address first in this quote and say, "My son, God himself will ..."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 22:8 (#5)

#### "Then the two of them went on"

See how you translated **the two of them** in verse 6. Alternate translation: "So the two of them walked on together." or "So they continued walking together toward the mountain."

See:

### Genesis 22:9 (#1)

#### "Then they came to"

Alternate translation: "After they got to" or "After they arrived at" or "After they reached"

### Genesis 22:9 (#2)

#### "the place that God had told to him"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: "the mountain that God had told him to go to"

### Genesis 22:9 (#3)

#### "and there Abraham built the altar"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **altar** in Gen 13:4, 18. Alternate translation: "Abraham made a stone altar there"

### Genesis 22:9 (#4)

#### "and arranged the wood"

Abraham arranged the wood on top of the altar so that it would burn well. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like he lit the fire yet; he did not do that until verse 13 when he sacrificed the ram. Alternate translation: "and laid the wood on top of it."

### Genesis 22:9 (#5)

#### "and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood"

Consider which order of these phrases is the clearest and most natural in your language. Alternate translation: "and put him on top of the wood that was on the altar."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 22:10 (#1)

#### "Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife"

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a noun or a pronoun to refer to Abraham here. See how you translated **knife** in verse 6. Alternate translation: "Then he took the knife in his hand"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 22:10 (#2)

#### "to kill his son"

In the process of sacrificing, the first step was to kill the sacrifice and then burn up the body on the altar. If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: "in order to kill his son before sacrificing his body on the altar."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 22:11 (#1)

### "But an angel of Yahweh called"

Make sure in your translation that it does not sound like Abraham killed Isaac. See how you translated this phrase in Gen 21:17. Alternate translation: "But before Abraham could use the knife, an angel from Yahweh called"

## Genesis 22:11 (#2)

### "to him from heaven and said, 'Abraham! Abraham'"

The angel repeats Abraham's name to communicate urgency and that he wants him to stop and listen. Make sure your translation does not sound like the angel was angry or criticizing Abraham.

## Genesis 22:11 (#3)

### "And he said"

Alternate translation: "Abraham replied to the angel,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 22:11 (#4)

### "Behold me"

See how you translated **Behold me** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "What is it, Master?" or "Yes, Master?"

See: Idiom

## Genesis 22:12 (#1)

### "Then he said"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the angel is speaking here, not Abraham. Alternate translation: "Then the angel said,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 22:12 (#2)

### "Do not reach out your hand against"

Consider whether your language has an idiom that has the same meaning as the Hebrew idiom here. Alternate translation: "Do not lay your hands on" or "Do not kill"

See: Idiom

## Genesis 22:12 (#3)

### "the boy"

See how you translated this in verse 5. Alternate translation: "the young man"

## Genesis 22:12 (#4)

### "And {do} not do anything to him"

The angel repeats the previous command (using different words) in order to emphasize that Abraham should not hurt Isaac. Most languages can do something similar. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Do not do anything to harm him" or "You must not do anything to harm him" or "You must not harm him in any way"

See: Parallelism

## Genesis 22:12 (#5)

### "because now I know"

Yahweh is the one talking here, represented by the angel who speaks on his behalf, or perhaps God is appearing to Abraham as an angel. Alternate translation: "Now I see" or "You have shown me"

## Genesis 22:12 (#6)

### "that you fear God"

See how you translated **fear** in Gen 20:11. Alternate translation: "that you fear me" or "that you deeply respect me"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 22:12 (#7)**

**"since you have not withheld your son, your only {son}, from me"**

Alternate translation: "because you obeyed me and did not hold back your son from me, yes your only son." or "because you obeyed me and did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me, even though he is your only son."

**Genesis 22:13 (#1)**

**"Then Abraham lifted his eyes and looked"**

See how you translated **lifted his eyes and looked** in Gen 18:2.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 22:13 (#2)**

**"and behold, a ram {was} behind {him}"**

A ram is an adult male sheep or goat. See how you translated this term in Gen 15:9. Alternate translation: "and suddenly he saw a ram behind him"

**Genesis 22:13 (#3)**

**"caught in the thicket by its horns"**

Alternate translation: "that had caught its horns in the thicket" or "that had its horns caught in a bush."

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 22:13 (#4)**

**"So Abraham went and took the ram"**

For some languages it may be necessary to explicitly state that Abraham untied Isaac and took him off the altar before he sacrificed the ram. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So after releasing Isaac, he took the ram from the thicket" or "So he untied Isaac, went over to the ram and untangled it."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 22:13 (#5)**

**"and sacrificed it as a burnt offering"**

Animals that were sacrificed to God as burnt offerings were killed first before they were burned on an altar. Make sure your translation does not sound like the ram was burned alive. If that is not clear, you could make some of the above implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "Then he killed the ram and burned it on the altar as a offering to God"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 22:13 (#6)**

**"instead of his son"**

Alternate translation: "as a substitute for his son."

**Genesis 22:14 (#1)**

**"So Abraham called the name of that place"**

Make sure it is clear that what Yahweh did in verse 13 is the reason that Abraham gave that place the name **Yahweh-Yireh** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "That is why Abraham called that place" or "Because God provided the ram, Abraham called that place"

**Genesis 22:14 (#2)**

**"Yahweh-Yireh"**

If you include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote, be consistent with how you translate the verb "see/provide" in verse 8 (and later in verse 14), which the name is based on.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 22:14 (#3)**

**"as it is said {to} this day"**

This refers to the time period when Moses was writing this book. If that is not clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Even now people still say,"

**Genesis 22:14 (#4)****"it will be seen"**

See how you translated this idiom in verse 8. Alternate translation: "it will be provided by him." or "he will see to it that we have what we need." or "he will provide what we need."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 22:15 (#1)****"Then the angel of Yahweh called to Abraham a second {time} from heaven"**

See how you translated "called ... from heaven" in verse 11, and how you translated **angel** in verses 11–12.

**Genesis 22:16 (#1)****"and said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 22:16 (#2)****"I swear by myself, a declaration of Yahweh"**

See how you translated **swear** in Gen 21:23–24.

**Genesis 22:16 (#3)****"that it is because you have done this thing"**

Alternate translation: "that since you have done what I said" or "that since you obeyed me"

**Genesis 22:16 (#4)****"and have not withheld your son"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: "and did not refuse to sacrifice your son to me," or "were willing to give your son to me"

**Genesis 22:16 (#5)****"your only {son}"**

See how you translated this in verse 12. Alternate translation: "even though he is your only son"

**Genesis 22:17 (#1)****"that I will greatly bless you"**

Alternate translation: "I will surely bless you," or "I will surely cause you to prosper greatly,"

**Genesis 22:17 (#2)****"and I will greatly multiply your offspring"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "I will greatly increase the number of your descendants so that they will be" or "In fact, I will give you so many offspring that they will be"

**Genesis 22:17 (#3)****"as the stars of the heavens"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is comparing the number of stars and grains of sand to the number of descendants Abraham will have. There will be so many that no one can count them all (as in Gen 13:16 and 15:6). Alternate translation: "as many as the stars in the sky"

See: Simile

**Genesis 22:17 (#4)****"and as the sand that {is} on the shore of the sea"**

Alternate translation: "and as many as the grains of sand on the seashore,"

**Genesis 22:17 (#5)****"and your offspring will possess the gate{s} of their enemies"**

Cities often had high stone walls surrounding them to protect the people inside. The gates in the walls

were the only way to go in or out of a city. The idiom “possess the gates of ... enemies” refers to taking control of the cities and conquering the people living there. Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: “and they will conquer the cities of all their enemies.” or “They will conquer all their enemies and rule over them.” or “Your offspring will ...”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 22:18 (#1)

#### "in your offspring"

See how you translated **offspring** in verse 17. Alternate translation: “In your offspring” or “Because of your offspring” or “By means of your offspring”

### Genesis 22:18 (#2)

#### "And" - "all the nations of the earth will be blessed"

See how you translated a similar sentence (“in/through ... all the ... of/on the earth will be blessed”) in Gen 12:3 and 18:18. Alternate translation: “all the peoples of the earth will be blessed by me,” or “I will bless all the ethnic groups that live on the earth,”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 22:18 (#3)

#### "because you listened to my voice"

Make sure your translation of **my voice** refers to what God commanded Abraham. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “because you heeded my command.”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 22:19 (#1)

#### "Then Abraham returned"

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham returned alone (without Isaac). Alternate

translation: “Afterwards Abraham and Isaac went back”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 22:19 (#2)

#### "to his young men"

Be consistent here with how you translated **young men** in verses 3 and 5. Alternate translation: “to the two servants”

### Genesis 22:19 (#3)

#### "and they got up and went together to Beersheba"

At that time, Abraham and his family were living in Beersheba (Gen 21:31–34). So in your translation, it should not sound like Beersheba was a new destination; they were returning home. Alternate translation: “Then they returned home together to the city of Beersheba,”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 22:19 (#4)

#### "And Abraham stayed at Beersheba"

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham was living alone in Beersheba apart from his family. Alternate translation: “and Abraham continued to live there with his family.” or “where Abraham and his family continued to live.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 22:20 (#1)

#### "Then it happened after those things"

This phrase introduces a new topic. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: “Sometime after that”

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 22:20 (#2)

#### "that it was told to Abraham, saying"

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language.

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 22:20 (#3)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Listen," or "I have some news for you:"

### Genesis 22:20 (#4)

**"Milcah, she too, has born sons for Nahor your brother"**

For some languages it may be better to use an indirect quote in this verse and say, "Sometime later Abraham found out that his brother Nahor and Nahor's wife Milcah had some sons," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Milcah the wife of your brother Nahor has born some sons for him," or "your brother Nahor and his wife Milcah also have some sons,"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 22:21 (#1)

**"Uz his firstborn and Buz his brother and Kemuel"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "including their oldest son Uz, then Buz and Kemuel," or "The first one is Uz, the second is Buz, and the third is Kemuel,"

### Genesis 22:21 (#2)

**"the father of Aram"**

Alternate translation: "who fathered Aram." or "whose son is Aram."

### Genesis 22:22 (#1)

**"and"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the people listed in verse 22 were sons of Nahor and

Milcah, not sons of Kemuel (verse 21). Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

### Genesis 22:22 (#2)

**"Kesed and Hazo and Pildash and Jidlaph and Bethuel"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a conjunction between each name in this list (like Hebrew does), or only before the last name in the list. See what you did for a similar list of names in Gen 10:26–29.

### Genesis 22:23 (#1)

**"And Bethuel fathered Rebekah"**

Some translations put this sentence in parentheses to show that it is a separate comment by the author and not part of the previous quote. Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated **fathered** in Gen 11:27. Alternate translation: "Bethuel was the father of Rebekah."

### Genesis 22:24 (#1)

**"And his concubine, and her name {was} Reumah, and she also bore"**

Alternate translation: "In addition to that, Nahor and his concubine Reumah also had some sons, including"

### Genesis 22:24 (#2)

**"Tebah and Gaham and Tahash and Maacah"**

See how you connected the list of names in verse 22.

### Genesis 23:1 (#1)

**"Now the life of Sarah was 127 years"**

Alternate translation: "Sarah lived 127 years"

**Genesis 23:1 (#2)****"the years of the life of Sarah"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to combine the last part of verse 1 with the beginning of verse 2 and say, "That is how old she was when she died in Kiriath Arba ..." Alternate translation: "Yes, that is how long she lived" or "That is how old she lived to be"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 23:2 (#1)****"Then Sarah died"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the previous sentence. Alternate translation: "Then she died" or "before she died"

**Genesis 23:2 (#2)****"in Kiriath Arba"**

You can spell this name as two words, as in the Hebrew text, or combine them into one word with or without a hyphen. Be consistent with how you spell this name throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: "in the city of Kiriath-arba,"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 23:2 (#3)****"which {is} Hebron"**

The city of Kiriath Arba was later named Hebron (Joshua 14:15). Alternate translation: "which is also named Hebron," or "also known as Hebron," or "that is, Hebron,"

**Genesis 23:2 (#4)****"in the land of Canaan"**

For some languages it is more natural to put a general location before a specific location and say, "in the land of Canaan, in the city of Kiriath Arba, which is Hebron." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "in the land called Canaan."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 23:2 (#5)****"And Abraham went"**

Alternate translation: "Then Abraham came to her" or "Abraham came to her side"

**Genesis 23:2 (#6)****"to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her"**

For some languages it is necessary to translate this sentence using a verb form that expresses completion or past tense so that it is clear that Abraham actually did this. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "to mourn and cry for her."

**Genesis 23:3 (#1)****"Then Abraham got up from beside"**

Alternate translation: "Later he got up from mourning beside" or "After a while, Abraham left"

**Genesis 23:3 (#2)****"his dead one"**

Alternate translation: "her body,"

**Genesis 23:3 (#3)****"and he spoke to the sons of Heth, saying"**

The phrase **sons of Heth** refers to the descendants of Canaan's son Heth (Genesis 10:15; 15:20) who are also known as the Hittites. Consider what is the best way to refer to them here in your language. Also, for some languages it is necessary to make it explicit here in verse 3 that Abraham went to the city gates to meet with the Hittites, rather than wait until verse 10 for that information. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and he went to the elders of the Hittites at the city gates and said to them,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 23:4 (#1)****"I {am}"**

The leaders of the city already knew that Abraham was a foreigner, so make sure your translation of this sentence does not sound like he is telling them something that they did not know. Alternate translation: "I am coming to you as" or "Since I am"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 23:4 (#2)****"a foreigner and a sojourner"**

See how you translated **foreigner** in Gen 15:13. Alternate translation: "a outsider who has settled" or "a outsider who is living"

**Genesis 23:4 (#3)****"among you"**

It is implied by Abraham and understood by the Hittites that Abraham's status as a foreigner means he owns no property. Consider whether or not to make this implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "among you and I have no land of my own." or "in your land and I do not own any property here."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 23:4 (#4)****"Give to me"**

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase sounds polite, not rude or demanding. Alternate translation: "Please give me" or "Please let me buy"

See: Politeness

**Genesis 23:4 (#5)****"property for a burial place among you"**

Alternate translation: "some land among you" or "some of your property"

**Genesis 23:4 (#6)****"so that I can bury my dead from before me"**

Translate this clause in a way that shows respect for the person who has died. Alternate translation: "so I have a place to take my dead wife and bury her." or "where I can bury the body of my wife who has died." or "so that I can give my deceased wife a proper burial."

**Genesis 23:5 (#1)****"Then the sons of Heth replied to Abraham, saying to him"**

See how you translated **the sons of Heth** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "The elders of the Hittites replied to him," or "When the leaders of the Hittites heard that, they responded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 23:6 (#1)****"Listen to us, my lord"**

Abraham was not their actual lord or master. Rather, the Hittites are addressing him in a respectful manner. Also, for some languages it is more natural or respectful to put the form of address "My lord" or "Sir" first in this quote. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Please listen to our proposal, my lord"

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 23:6 (#2)****"You {are} a mighty prince"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "You are a powerful/important leader/man" or (2) "You are a leader/man of/from God". The interpretation that you do not follow in your translation could be put in a footnote.

**Genesis 23:6 (#3)****"among us"**

Alternate translation: "who lives among our people."



**Genesis 23:6 (#4)****"Bury"**

Make sure that the reply of the Hittites sounds polite here in your translation. Alternate translation: "So you may put"

**Genesis 23:6 (#5)****"your dead"**

Alternate translation: "your dead wife"

**Genesis 23:6 (#6)****"our burial places"**

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "So please choose any one of our best burial sites and bury/put your dead/deceased wife there." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "places to bury people who have died." or "tombs."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 23:6 (#7)****"Each of us will not withhold from you his burial place to bury"**

Alternate translation: "Each of us is happy to give you some of his land where you can bury" or "All of us are happy for you to use any of our burial sites to bury"

See: Litotes

**Genesis 23:6 (#8)****"your dead"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Sarah's dead body here since it was just mentioned in the previous sentence. Alternate translation: "your dead wife."

**Genesis 23:7 (#1)****"Then Abraham got up"**

The verb **got up** reflects the fact that Abraham and the leaders/elders of the Hittites were all sitting as they talked to each other. Alternate translation: "So Abraham got up"

**Genesis 23:7 (#2)****"and bowed"**

We do not know how far Abraham bowed down. He may have bowed his upper body from a standing position, or he may have knelt down and touched his forehead to the ground with his arms outstretched. Alternate translation: "and bowed low to the ground in respect" or "and kneeled and touched his forehead to the ground in respect"

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 23:7 (#3)****"to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth"**

The phrase **people of the land** is a term that refers to the leaders of that region who owned land in the area and were the ones to decide whether a foreigner could acquire land. Alternate translation: "in front of the elders of the Hittites, who owned the land in the area" or "before the elders over the Hittites"

**Genesis 23:8 (#1)****"and he said to them, saying"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to have two verbs or just one verb in this quote margin. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and said to them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 23:8 (#2)****"to bury my dead from before me"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: "for me to bury my dead wife here," or "to allow me to bury the body of my wife"

who has died,” or “to let me give my deceased wife a proper burial here,”

### Genesis 23:8 (#3)

**"listen to me and intercede for me with Ephron, the son of Zohar"**

Alternate translation: “please appeal to Ephron the son of Zohar on my behalf”

### Genesis 23:9 (#1)

**"so that he will give to me"**

Alternate translation: “to give to me”

### Genesis 23:9 (#2)

**"the cave of Machpelah, which {belongs} to him, which {is} at the end of his field"**

Machpelah is the name of the area or neighborhood where Ephron’s cave and field were located (verse 17). Alternate translation: “his cave that is at the end of his field in the Machpelah area.”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 23:9 (#3)

**"For full price let him give it to me"**

Alternate translation: “Ask him to give it to me for its full value” or “Ask him to sell it to me and I will pay him the full amount that it is worth”

### Genesis 23:9 (#4)

**"among you"**

Alternate translation: “in front of you all” or “with all of you present to witness the sale”

### Genesis 23:9 (#5)

**"as property for a burial place"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “so that I will have land to bury the

body of my deceased wife.” or “That way I will have a place here where I can bury the body of my wife who has died.”

### Genesis 23:10 (#1)

**"Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth"**

Alternate translation: “Now Ephron the Hittite was sitting there at the meeting among the other Hittite elders,” or “Ephron was one of the Hittite elders who had gathered there at the meeting,”

### Genesis 23:10 (#2)

**"so Ephron the Hittite responded to Abraham"**

Alternate translation: “and he replied to Abraham”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 23:10 (#3)

**"in the ears of the sons of Heth"**

Alternate translation: “in the hearing of the elders of the Hittites,” or “as the other elders listened,”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 23:10 (#4)

**"for everyone who had come {to} the gate of his city"**

The pronoun **his** refers back to **everyone** who had gathered at the city gate, not just one person. Also, in that culture, the leaders of a city would hold their meetings at the city gates, where they would make decisions on important matters such as the one Abraham brought before them. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: “including everyone who had gathered there at their city gate,”

### Genesis 23:10 (#5)

**"saying"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "This is what he said:"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 23:11 (#1)

**"No, my lord"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase sounds polite. In some cultures it is rude to say **No** too directly. Alternate translation: "That is not necessary, sir." or "Sir, there is no need for that."

See: Politeness

### Genesis 23:11 (#2)

**"Listen to me"**

Alternate translation: "Please listen to my proposal:" or "Please accept this proposal:" or "Please listen to what I am proposing:"

### Genesis 23:11 (#3)

**"I give to you the field"**

Ephron is making a formal proposal or offer. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "I hereby offer you the entire field,"

### Genesis 23:11 (#4)

**"and I give to you the cave that {is} in it"**

Alternate translation: "as well as the cave that is in it."

### Genesis 23:11 (#5)

**"before the eyes of the sons of my people"**

Alternate translation: "in the sight of the elders of my people." or "as the elders of my people listen as witnesses." or "and all the elders of my people here are witnesses of this."

### Genesis 23:11 (#6)

**"Bury your dead"**

Alternate translation: "You can bury your dead wife there." or "Please go ahead and bury your dead wife on that land."

### Genesis 23:12 (#1)

**"Then Abraham bowed"**

See how you translated **bowed** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "Once again, Abraham bowed"

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 23:12 (#2)

**"the people of the land"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7. You could translate this in a slightly different way here since these people have been referred to repeatedly before this. Alternate translation: "in front of the people who owned the land in the area," or "to the elders of the Hittites,"

### Genesis 23:13 (#1)

**"and he spoke to Ephron in the ears of the people of the land, saying"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **in the ears of** in verse 10. Alternate translation: "and he said to Ephron while the rest of the elders listened," or "As they all listened, he said to Ephron,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 23:13 (#2)

**"But"**

Alternate translation: "Instead of doing that,"

### Genesis 23:13 (#3)

**"if you would, please"**

In verses 9–15, Abraham and Ephron are bargaining indirectly with each other according to the customs of that culture and time. Keep that in mind as you translate their conversation. Alternate translation: “if you are willing,”

### Genesis 23:13 (#4)

#### "listen to me"

Alternate translation: “please accept my proposal” or “please listen to what I am offering”

### Genesis 23:13 (#5)

#### "I will give the price of the field"

Alternate translation: “I will give you the full price of what the field is worth.” or “I want to give you the full price of the field.”

### Genesis 23:13 (#6)

#### "Take it from me"

Alternate translation: “Please take my money”

See: Politeness

### Genesis 23:13 (#7)

#### "and I will bury my dead there"

Alternate translation: “so that I can bury the body of my dead wife there.” or “so that the field will be mine and I can bury my wife there who has died.” or “then I will have a place to bury the body of my deceased wife.”

### Genesis 23:14 (#1)

#### "Then Ephron answered Abraham, saying to him"

Alternate translation: “Then Ephron said to Abraham,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 23:15 (#1)

#### "My lord"

See how you translated this respectful form of address in verses 6 and 11.

See: Honorifics

### Genesis 23:15 (#2)

#### "listen to me"

See how you translated this clause in verse 13. Make sure Ephron sounds polite here in your translation.

See: Politeness

### Genesis 23:15 (#3)

#### "Land {worth} 400 shekels of silver"

Coins did not exist at that time. Rather people paid each other with shekels of silver or gold, which was a weight measurement. Four hundred shekels of silver was about 10 pounds (4.5 kilos) of silver. Many translation teams like to keep the same numbers that are in the Hebrew text in their translation, and then in a footnote give the equivalent amount in their own currency. Other teams put the equivalent amount in the text and put the literal phrase in a footnote. See how you translated **shekels of silver** in Gen 20:16. Alternate translation: “The field is worth 400 shekels of silver.” or “If I were selling that land, it would cost 400 shekels of silver.”

See: Biblical Money

### Genesis 23:15 (#4)

#### "between me and you"

Alternate translation: “However, since you and I are friends,” or “But as far as you and I are concerned,”

### Genesis 23:15 (#5)

#### "what {is} that"

Decide whether or not a rhetorical question fits here well in your language. Alternate translation:

“what significance is that?” or “that is not important.” or “I would not ask you to pay that.”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 23:15 (#6)

#### "So bury your dead"

Consider again how you translated “bury ... dead” in verses 4, 6, 8, 11, 13, and 15. Alternate translation: “So go ahead and bury your dead wife there.”

### Genesis 23:16 (#1)

#### "So Abraham listened to Ephron"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham did not just hear what Ephron said, but also acted on it.

### Genesis 23:16 (#2)

#### "and Abraham weighed out to Ephron"

Alternate translation: “so he paid him”

### Genesis 23:16 (#3)

#### "the price that he had mentioned"

Alternate translation: “the amount of silver that he had stated”

### Genesis 23:16 (#4)

#### "in the ears of the sons of Heth"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 10. You might need to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: “in the hearing of the other Hittite elders” or “as the rest of the elders of the Hittites watched and listened”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 23:16 (#5)

#### "400 shekels of silver"

Alternate translation: “which was 400 shekels of silver,”

### Genesis 23:16 (#6)

#### "the currency among the merchants"

Alternate translation: “using the same kind of weights that merchants used to accurately weigh silver” or “using the standard shekel that traders used at that time.”

### Genesis 23:17 (#1)

#### "So the field of Ephron" - "was deeded"

Verses 17–18 are a summary of the transaction between Ephron and Abraham. Make sure your translation of these verses does not sound like this was a second time that the field was sold. Alternate translation: “That is how the field that belonged to Ephron”

### Genesis 23:17 (#2)

#### "that {was} in Machpelah"

Alternate translation: “that was in the Machpelah area”

### Genesis 23:17 (#3)

#### "which {was} before Mamre"

Mamre was another name for the city of Hebron (verse 19). The name probably came from Abraham’s friend and ally who lived there (Gen 13:18; 14:13). Alternate translation: “east of the city of Mamre,”

### Genesis 23:17 (#4)

#### "the field and the cave that {was} in it"

Alternate translation: “including both the field and the cave that was in it,”

**Genesis 23:17 (#5)**

**"in the field, that {was} within all of its surrounding borders"**

Alternate translation: "in the field, whatever was inside its borders," or "anywhere inside the borders of the field,"

**Genesis 23:17 (#6)**

**"So" - "was deeded"**

For some languages it may be better to break up this long sentence, change the order of the phrases in this verse, and say, "So Ephron sold his field to Abraham, including the cave that was in the field, as well as all the trees that were inside its boundaries. The field was in the Machpelah area near the city of Mamre. Ephron sold the/that field ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "was legally sold by Ephron" or "Ephron sold all of that"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 23:18 (#1)**

**"to Abraham as his possession"**

Alternate translation: "to Abraham as his property" or "to Abraham, and it became his possession"

**Genesis 23:18 (#2)**

**"before the eyes of the sons of Heth"**

See how you translated the idiom **before the eyes of** in verse 11. Alternate translation: "in the sight of the elders of the Hittites" or "while the leaders of the Hittites watched as witnesses"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 23:18 (#3)**

**"before everyone who had come to the gate of his city"**

For some languages it may be more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in this verse and say, "... to Abraham in front of the leaders of the Hittites who had gathered at the city gates, so that they all witnessed that the land was now

Abraham's property." Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated a similar clause in verse 10. Alternate translation: "including everyone who had gathered at their city gate" or "That included everyone who had met together at their city gates."

**Genesis 23:19 (#1)**

**"Then after that"**

Alternate translation: "After he bought the field,"

**Genesis 23:19 (#2)**

**"Abraham buried Sarah his wife"**

Alternate translation: "he placed the body of his wife Sarah"

**Genesis 23:19 (#3)**

**"in the cave of the field of Machpelah"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Machpelah** in verses 9 and 17. Alternate translation: "in the cave in the field in the Machpelah area,"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 23:19 (#4)**

**"before Mamre"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 17. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled this name in verse 17 and in Gen 14:13, 24; 18:1. Alternate translation: "near the city of Mamre,"

**Genesis 23:19 (#5)**

**"which {is} Hebron"**

Alternate translation: "which is also called Hebron," or "also known as Hebron,"

**Genesis 23:19 (#6)**

**"in the land of Canaan"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2.  
Alternate translation: "in the land called Canaan."

### Genesis 23:20 (#1)

**"So the field and the cave that {was} in it were deeded to Abraham"**

Verse 20 is a concluding summary of chapter 23 and repeats parts of verses 17–18. Make sure that the way you translate this does not sound like Abraham bought another property from the Hittites. Alternate translation: "So that is how that field, including the cave that was in the field, were legally sold to Abraham" or "So in that way, the field of Ephron, including ..."

### Genesis 23:20 (#2)

**"as property for a burial place from the sons of Heth"**

Consider again how you translated **a burial place** in verses 4, 9, and 20, and how you translated **the sons of Heth** in verses 3, 5, 7, 10, 16, 18, and 20. Alternate translation: "by the Hittites as a burial site."

### Genesis 24:1 (#1)

**"Now Abraham was old, advanced in days"**

Verse 1 gives the setting for the new episode and begins with a doublet that emphasizes how old Abraham was. Try to preserve this emphasis in a way that is natural in your translation. Alternate translation: "Abraham was very old now. He had lived many years," or "Now Abraham had become very old,"

See: Doublet

### Genesis 24:1 (#2)

**"and Yahweh had blessed Abraham"**

See how you translated "bless" in Gen 12:2–3. Alternate translation: "and Yahweh had caused him to prosper"

### Genesis 24:1 (#3)

**"in all {things}"**

Alternate translation: "in everything he had done."

### Genesis 24:2 (#1)

**"Then Abraham said to"**

Consider what is the best way to introduce the first event in this episode in your language. Alternate translation: "One day he told"

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 24:2 (#2)

**"his oldest servant of his house"**

Alternate translation: "the oldest servant in his household," or "his senior household servant,"

### Genesis 24:2 (#3)

**"who was in charge of everything"**

Alternate translation: "who managed everything that he owned," or "who took care of his entire estate for him,"

### Genesis 24:2 (#4)

**"Please put your hand under my thigh"**

You can make the meaning of this custom explicit in your translation, or you can put that information in a footnote. What Abraham asks his servant to do here is part of the vow-making process in verse 3. Alternate translation: "Please put your hand under my leg to show that you will do what I ask"

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 24:3 (#1)

**"and I will have you swear"**

Decide the best way to translate this command in your language. Also, see how you translated **swear** in Gen 21:23, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "and vow to me" or "and make an unbreakable promise to me"

See: Imperatives — Other Uses

### Genesis 24:3 (#2)

**"by Yahweh, the God of the heavens and the God of the earth"**

See how you translated "the heavens and the earth" in Gen 1:1. Alternate translation: "with Yahweh as your witness, the God who rules the heavens and the earth,"

### Genesis 24:3 (#3)

**"that you will not take a wife for my son"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make "Isaac" explicit here in verse 3 rather than wait until the end of verse 4. Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated the idiom "took a wife for" in Gen 21:21. Alternate translation: "that you will not get a woman for my son Isaac to marry from among"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 24:3 (#4)

**"from the daughters of the Canaanites whom I am living among"**

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham was living by himself among the Canaanites; his family and servants also lived among them with him. Alternate translation: "the Canaanite women whom we live among"

### Genesis 24:4 (#1)

**"but you will go"**

Alternate translation: "Instead, you must go" or "Instead, I want you to go"

See: Imperatives — Other Uses

### Genesis 24:4 (#2)

**"to my country"**

Alternate translation: "to my home country" or "to the region where I grew up" or "to the country that I came from"

### Genesis 24:4 (#3)

**"and to my relatives"**

Alternate translation: "to my kinfolk who live there,"

### Genesis 24:4 (#4)

**"and take a wife for my son, for Isaac"**

The way you refer to Isaac here will depend on how you referred to him in verse 3. Alternate translation: "and find a wife from there for my son Isaac to marry." or "and get a wife from among them for him to marry." or "and arrange for him to marry one of their daughters."

### Genesis 24:5 (#1)

**"Then the servant said to him"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language so that it fits the context well. Alternate translation: "Then the servant asked Abraham,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 24:5 (#2)

**"Suppose"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 18:24, 28, 29. Alternate translation: "Suppose that"

See: Hypothetical Situations

### Genesis 24:5 (#3)

**"the woman"**

Alternate translation: "the young woman I choose" or "when I find that young woman, she"



**Genesis 24:5 (#4)****"is not willing"**

Alternate translation: "does not want"

**Genesis 24:5 (#5)****"to come with me"**

Alternate translation: "to go back with me" or "to follow me back"

**Genesis 24:5 (#6)****"to this land"**

Alternate translation: "to live in this land?"

**Genesis 24:5 (#7)****"Should I take your son back"**

Alternate translation: "In that case, should I take your son" or "Do you want me to then take your son back there"

**Genesis 24:5 (#8)****"to the country that you came from"**

Alternate translation: "to live in your home country?"

**Genesis 24:6 (#1)****"Then Abraham said to him"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin at this point in the conversation. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham replied to his servant," or "Abraham replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:6 (#2)****"Be sure that you do not take my son back"**

Alternate translation: "No, make sure that you never take my son back" or "No, you must definitely not take my son back"

**Genesis 24:6 (#3)****"there"**

Alternate translation: "to my home land to live"

**Genesis 24:7 (#1)****"Yahweh, the God of the heavens"**Make sure it is clear in your translation that verse 7 gives the reason for verse 6. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here, and see how you translated **the God of the heavens** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh, the God who created the heavens,"**Genesis 24:7 (#2)****"and from the land of my relatives"**

Alternate translation: "and from the land where the rest of my family live,"

**Genesis 24:7 (#3)****"and who spoke to me and who swore to me, saying"**

Alternate translation: "and he made an vow to me and said," or "and he made an unbreakable promise to me and said,"

**Genesis 24:7 (#4)****"To your offspring I will give this land"**The phrase **this land** refers to the land of Canaan here, not the land where Abraham's relatives lived. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct quote or an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "I will give this land to your offspring" or "that he will give this land where we live to my descendants"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 24:7 (#5)****"he will send his angel before you"**

If you begin a new sentence here, make sure that the previous sentence is well-formed and complete in your language. Also, see how you translated **angel** in Gen 22:11, 15. Alternate translation: "He will send one of his angels ahead of you to guide you,"

**Genesis 24:7 (#6)****"and you will take"**

Alternate translation: "so that you will be able to find" or "so that you can get"

**Genesis 24:7 (#7)****"a wife for my son from there"**

See how you translated "take/find a wife for" in verses 3–4. Alternate translation: "a wife from there for my son to marry" or "a wife from my home land for my son to marry."

**Genesis 24:8 (#1)****"But if the woman"**

Alternate translation: "However, if the woman you find"

**Genesis 24:8 (#2)****"is not willing"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: "does not want"

**Genesis 24:8 (#3)****"to come with you"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("to come with me") in verse 5. Alternate translation: "to follow you back here,"

**Genesis 24:8 (#4)****"from this oath of mine"**

An oath is a serious, unbreakable promise or vow that is made before God to guarantee that it will be fulfilled. See how you translated the verb form of this word ("swear" or "vow") in verse 3. Alternate translation: "then you will be released from keeping this oath that I am requesting you to swear now." or "then you will not have to fulfill this binding promise that you are swearing to me now."

**Genesis 24:8 (#5)****"Only"**

Alternate translation: "Just"

**Genesis 24:8 (#6)****"do not take my son back there"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 6. Alternate translation: "you must not take my son back to my home land!"

**Genesis 24:9 (#1)****"Then the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. Also, in that culture, people owned servants and had complete authority over them. Make sure your translation of **master** and **servant** does not imply that the servant was mistreated. Servants were treated well, could hold important positions and were often considered as members of the master's family. See how you translated a related term "mistress/owner" in Gen 16:4, 8–9.

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 24:9 (#2)****"and swore to him"**

See how you translated **swore** in verse 7 and "swear" in verse 3. Alternate translation: "and made an vow to him" or "and made an unbreakable promise to him"

**Genesis 24:9 (#3)****"concerning this matter"**

Some languages need to make explicit what **this matter** refers to. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "that he would do what he had told him to do." or "that he would go find a wife for Isaac."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 24:10 (#1)****"Then the servant took ten camels from the camels of his master"**

Make sure that your translation of **took** does not imply that the servant stole the camels or valuable things from Abraham. Rather, the **good things** that he loaded on the camels included things that he would give as gifts to Isaac's relatives (verse 53). Also, see how you translated **camels** in Gen 12:16.

**Genesis 24:10 (#2)****"and left, and all {kinds of} good {things} from his master {were} in his hand, and he got up"**

For some languages, it is best to make it explicit here in verse 10 that other servants went with Abraham's chief servant, rather than have them appear suddenly in verse 32. Do what is best in your language.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 24:10 (#3)****"and went to"**

This was about a 800 kilometer (500 mile) trip and would take camels about seventeen days to complete. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and made the long journey to" or "Then he traveled to"

**Genesis 24:10 (#4)****"to the city of Nahor"**

Nahor lived in the city of Haran (Gen 11:31-32). That information could be put in a footnote. Make

sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Nahor owned the city.

**Genesis 24:11 (#1)****"by the well of water"**

Each town or city had a well where people from the city came to get their water. See how you translated **well of water** in Gen 21:19. You might need to translate this in a slightly different way here because of the different context. Alternate translation: "near its well" or "by the public well that was there"

**Genesis 24:11 (#2)****"at evening time"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 24:11 (#3)****"at the time the women who draw water come out"**

In that time and culture, there was no running water in homes so people had to come out to the city well to get water for their families. Alternate translation: "the time when the young women of the city came out to draw water from the well for their families" or "when the young women of the city were starting to come out to the well to get water for their families"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 24:12 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Consider what is the best way to begin this paragraph in your language.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:12 (#2)****"Yahweh"**

Consider what is the best way to begin this prayer in your language. Alternate translation: "Oh Yahweh,"

### Genesis 24:12 (#3)

#### "God of my master Abraham"

Alternate translation: "who is the God whom my master Abraham serves,"

### Genesis 24:12 (#4)

#### "please cause it to happen before me today that you show kindness toward my master Abraham"

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "Please be kind/gracious to my master by helping me succeed today." or "Please show your kindness to my master today by helping me find a wife/woman for his son to marry." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 24:12 (#5)

#### "please cause it to happen before me today"

Alternate translation: "please help me do what I have come here to do today"

### Genesis 24:12 (#6)

#### "that you show kindness toward"

Alternate translation: "and in that way show kindness to" or "and be kind to"

### Genesis 24:12 (#7)

#### "my master Abraham"

Alternate translation: "him."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 24:13 (#1)

#### "Behold, I am standing by"

Make sure in your translation that what Abraham's servant says here to Yahweh sounds polite and respectful, not rude, demanding, or complaining. Also, he is not telling God something that God did not already know. Alternate translation: "Look here I am, standing near" or "As you know, I am standing here beside"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 24:13 (#2)

#### "this spring of water"

The phrase **spring of water** (here and in verse 16) refers to the same well that is referred to in verses 11 and 20, which means that this was probably a spring-fed well. Some translation teams use only one term to refer to this spring or well throughout this chapter in order to prevent confusion. Decide what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "this spring-fed well,"

### Genesis 24:13 (#3)

#### "and the daughters of the people of the city"

Alternate translation: "and the daughters of the townspeople" or "and the young women of the city"

### Genesis 24:13 (#4)

#### "are coming out to draw water"

See how you translated "draw/get water" in verse 11. Alternate translation: "are coming out here to get water."

### Genesis 24:14 (#1)

#### "And let it be {that}"

Make sure that your translation of the servant's request to God sounds polite.

See: Politeness

**Genesis 24:14 (#2)****"the young woman whom I say to her"**

The phrase **young woman** is actually a single word in Hebrew (like the old English words "damsel" and "maiden") and refers to a young woman who is old enough to get married, but has never been married before. Some languages have a single word for this; other languages prefer a phrase.

**Genesis 24:14 (#3)****"Please let down your jar"**

The water containers that people used were usually made out of clay. Alternate translation: "Please lower your water jug"

**Genesis 24:14 (#4)****"so that I may drink"**

Alternate translation: "so that I can drink some water," or "so that I can take a drink of water,"

**Genesis 24:14 (#5)****"and she says"**

Alternate translation: "if she says to me,"

**Genesis 24:14 (#6)****"Drink and I will also water your camels"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make one or both of the two embedded direct quotes in this verse into indirect quotes. For example you could say, "Please make it happen that when I ask one of the young women to lower her jug so that I can have a drink of water, she will offer me a drink and will also offer to draw water for my camels." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Have a drink, and I will also get water for your camels"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 24:14 (#7)****"let her {be the one} you have appointed"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 24:14 (#8)****"for your servant, for Isaac"**

Alternate translation: "as a wife for your servant Isaac."

**Genesis 24:14 (#9)****"And by her I will know that you have shown kindness toward my master"**

See how you translated "show kindness toward" in verse 12. Alternate translation: "and that you have been kind to my master Abraham."

**Genesis 24:15 (#1)****"Then it happened before he had finished speaking"**

Many translations omit the phrase **Then it happened**, but this phrase emphasizes the events that follow it and adds suspense, so that the audience wonders what the outcome will be. Do what is natural in your language.

**Genesis 24:15 (#2)****"then behold"**

This phrase spotlights Rebekah and shows that she is the center of attention. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "just then he saw" or "suddenly he saw"

**Genesis 24:15 (#3)****"Rebekah was coming out"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce Rebekah here for the first time in this episode. Some translations use an exclamation point to help show the excitement.

See: Introduction of New and Old Participants

**Genesis 24:15 (#4)****"who was born to Bethuel"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Her father was Bethuel,"

**Genesis 24:15 (#5)****"And her water jar {was} on her shoulder"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "Rebekah was coming out of the city with/carrying her/a water jar/jug on her shoulder." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "She was carrying a water jug on her shoulder." or "She had a water jug on her shoulder."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 24:16 (#1)****"And the young woman {was} a very beautiful-looking virgin"**

See how you translated **young woman** in verses 14 and 15. Alternate translation: "Rebekah was a very beautiful unmarried young woman,"

**Genesis 24:16 (#2)****"and a man had not known her"**

See how you translated the idiom "not known a man" in Gen 19:8. Alternate translation: "whom no man had ever slept with." or "who had never slept with a man." or "who had never had sexual relations with a man."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 24:16 (#3)****"And she went down"**

Notice that the spring or well was at a place that was lower than the place where Abraham's servant was standing. Alternate translation: "She went down"

**Genesis 24:16 (#4)****"to the spring"**

See how you translated **spring** in verse 13. Alternate translation: "to the spring-fed well,"

**Genesis 24:16 (#5)****"and filled her jar"**

Alternate translation: "filled her jar with water,"

**Genesis 24:16 (#6)****"and came up"**

If it is not clear, you may need to make it explicit in your translation that Rebekah still had the jar with her when she came up from the well or spring, especially since she lowers it from her shoulder in verse 18. Alternate translation: "and came back up with it on her shoulder."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 24:17 (#1)****"Then the servant ran to meet her"**

Alternate translation: "Then the servant ran up to her"

**Genesis 24:17 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and requested,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:17 (#3)****"Please let me drink a little water from your jar"**

Alternate translation: "Please let me have a little water to drink from your jar" or "Please give me a little drink from your jar"

**Genesis 24:18 (#1)****"Drink, my lord"**

Make sure that Rebekah's reply is polite and respectful in your language, though the way she addresses Abraham's servant should not make it sound like she is his slave. Also see how you translated **my lord** in Gen 23:6, 11, 15. Alternate translation: "Certainly, sir, you may have a drink."

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 24:18 (#2)****"Then she hurried and lowered her jar to her hand{s}"**

Alternate translation: "Then she quickly lowered her jar from her shoulder to her hands"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 24:18 (#3)****"and gave him a drink"**

Alternate translation: "and let him have a drink."

**Genesis 24:19 (#1)****"And {after} she finished giving him a drink"**

Alternate translation: "After he finished drinking,"

**Genesis 24:19 (#2)****"then she said"**

Alternate translation: "she offered to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:19 (#3)****"I will also draw water for your camels"**

Alternate translation: "Let me also get water for all your camels"

**Genesis 24:19 (#4)****"until they have finished drinking"**

Alternate translation: "until they are done."

**Genesis 24:20 (#1)****"Then she hurried and emptied her jar"**

See how you translated **Then she hurried and** in verse 18. Alternate translation: "So she quickly poured the rest of the water from her jug"

**Genesis 24:20 (#2)****"into the trough"**

The drinking trough was a long, open stone container that several animals could drink from at the same time. Alternate translation: "into the animal drinking place that was there" or "into the stone thing that was there for animals to drink out of"

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 24:20 (#3)****"and ran back to the well to draw water"**

Alternate translation: "and ran back and forth to the well to get more water,"

**Genesis 24:20 (#4)****"and she drew water for all his camels"**

Alternate translation: "until she had brought enough for all of the camels."

**Genesis 24:21 (#1)****"And the man watched her silently"**

Starting in verse 21 the Hebrew text takes Rebekah and Laban's perspective and refers to Abraham's servant as **the man**. This continues until verse 34, when the servant tells everyone that he is Abraham's servant. For some languages this is confusing (because it sounds like two different people), so for those languages it is necessary to

refer to him as “Abraham’s servant” or “the servant” throughout this chapter.

See: Introduction of New and Old Participants

### Genesis 24:21 (#2)

**"to know whether Yahweh had made his journey succeed or not"**

Alternate translation: “to find out whether or not Yahweh had made him successful on his trip to find a wife for Isaac.” or “to see for sure if Yahweh had given him success on his trip.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 24:22 (#1)

**"Then it happened, when the camels had finished drinking"**

Alternate translation: “After all the camels had drunk as much water as they wanted and Rebekah had stopped drawing water,”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 24:22 (#2)

**"then the man took out a gold nose ring, its weight a beka"**

Many translation teams keep the numbers and the names of weights that are used in the Bible text in their translation, and they may or may not put the modern equivalents in pounds or grams in a footnote. Other teams do the opposite. One beka was about 1/5 of an ounce (5.5 grams), and ten shekels (See below) was about 4 ounces (110 grams). Alternate translation: “the servant brought out a gold nose ring weighing one beka and gave it to her” or “the servant gave her a gold nose ring that weighed one beka”

See: Biblical Weight

### Genesis 24:22 (#3)

**"and two gold bracelets"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “He also gave her two gold bracelets”

### Genesis 24:22 (#4)

**"for her arms"**

The Hebrew term is ambiguous here; it can refer to hands, arms, or wrists. However in this context, the bracelets would have been put on the arms or the wrists.

### Genesis 24:22 (#5)

**"their weight ten shekels"**

Alternate translation: “Each bracelet weighed ten shekels.”

See: Biblical Weight

### Genesis 24:23 (#1)

**"And he said"**

Alternate translation: “Then he said to her” or “Then he asked Rebekah,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 24:23 (#2)

**"Whose daughter {are} you? Please tell me"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. The phrase **Please tell me** can go: (1) with the previous question (“Whose daughter are you?”); or (2) with the following question (“Is there a place...to lodge?”). Since Abraham’s servant’s goal was to find a wife for Isaac who was one of Abraham’s relatives, the first interpretation seems most likely.

### Genesis 24:23 (#3)

**"Is there a place at the house of your father"**

If you made **your father** explicit in the previous sentence, it may be more natural to refer to him with the pronoun “his” in this sentence. Alternate translation: “Also, is there enough room in his house” or “Also, does your father have any room in his house”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them



**Genesis 24:23 (#4)****"for us"**

The pronoun **us** includes other servants who came with Abraham's chief servant (as verse 32 shows). If your language has inclusive and exclusive forms of this pronoun, you should use the exclusive form here.

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 24:23 (#5)****"to lodge"**

Alternate translation: "to stay there tonight?"

**Genesis 24:24 (#1)****"Then she said to him"**

Alternate translation: "She answered him," or "She replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:24 (#2)****"I {am} the daughter of Bethuel"**

Alternate translation: "Bethuel is my father,"

**Genesis 24:24 (#3)****"the son of Milcah, whom she bore for Nahor"**

Make sure the way you translate this does not sound like Bethuel was the only son of Milcah and Nahor; they had eight sons (Gen 22: 21–22). Also, in some cultures the father's name is normally given first; in other cultures the mother's name is normally first. Alternate translation: "who is a son of Milcah and Nahor." or "and his parents are Nahor and Milcah."

**Genesis 24:25 (#1)****"Then she said to him"**

Some languages leave this quote margin implied here, because the same person is still talking to the same person. Other languages can keep the quote margin (like the Hebrew text does), to emphasize what Rebekah says next. The quote margin may also indicate that Rebekah paused before she said what she says in verse 25. Alternate translation: "Then she continued,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:25 (#2)****"Plenty of both straw and fodder {are} with us"**

The term **fodder** refers to dry feed that is prepared for animals to eat; it can include chopped hay and grains such as oats and barley. Alternate translation: "We have plenty of both straw and other feed at our house for your camels to eat,"

**Genesis 24:25 (#3)****"There is} also a place"**

Alternate translation: "and there is also enough room in his house for all of you"

**Genesis 24:25 (#4)****"to lodge"**

See how you translated this in verse 23. Alternate translation: "to spend the night there."

**Genesis 24:26 (#1)****"Then the man bowed down and prostrated himself before Yahweh"**

See how you translated **bowed** in Gen 18:2; 19:1. The word **prostrated** means he bowed low to the ground and touched his face or forehead to the ground with outstretched arms, in an act of worship. When combined with **bowed down** as in this verse, it is usually translated as "worshiped".

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 24:27 (#1)****"and said"**

The servant is worshiping God by bowing down and by what he says in verse 27. Alternate translation: "He said,"

**Genesis 24:27 (#2)****"Praised be Yahweh"**

See how you translated this in Gen 9:26. Alternate translation: "I praise Yahweh,"

**Genesis 24:27 (#3)****"the God of my master Abraham"**

See how you translated **God of my master Abraham** in verse 12. Alternate translation: "who is the God whom my master Abraham worships"

**Genesis 24:27 (#4)****"who has not abandoned his kindness and his faithfulness toward my master"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **kindness** in verses 12 and 14. The phrase **not abandoned** is a way of emphasizing that Yahweh had always been kind and faithful to Abraham. Alternate translation: "He has always been kind and faithful to my master,"

See: Litotes

**Genesis 24:27 (#5)****"As for} me, Yahweh has led me on the road"**

The last part of verse 27 is what Abraham's servant is praising God for; it is an example of how God has been kind and faithful to Abraham. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he has guided me on the road here" or "Yes, he guided me on my trip here"

**Genesis 24:28 (#1)****"Then the young woman ran"**

See how you translated **young woman** previously in this chapter, and consider what is the best way to refer to Rebekah here. Alternate translation: "Then Rebekah ran home"

**Genesis 24:28 (#2)****"and announced"**

Alternate translation: "and reported to" or "and shared the news with"

**Genesis 24:28 (#3)****"about those things"**

Alternate translation: "about what the man had said to her."

**Genesis 24:29 (#1)****"Now Rebekah had a brother"**

Laban was Rebekah's older brother. Some languages have a specific term for "older brother" that fits well here. Also, consider what is the best way to introduce this background information in your language. Alternate translation: "Now it so happened that Rebekah had a brother"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 24:29 (#2)****"and his name {was} Laban"**

Alternate translation: "named Laban,"

**Genesis 24:29 (#3)****"and Laban ran"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also consider what is the best way to refer to Laban here in your language. Alternate translation: "and he ran" or "He ran"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 24:29 (#4)****"to the man outside at the spring"**

Alternate translation: "out to the spring where the man was." or "to where the man was standing beside the well."

**Genesis 24:30 (#1)****"And it was when he had seen"**

Verse 30 is a flashback of what had happened before Laban ran to the well (verse 29). Consider what is the best way to express this in your language. For some languages it may be necessary to combine verses 29–30 and put the sentences in the order that things actually happened. For example, "Now Rebekah had a brother named Laban. When he saw the nose ring and the bracelets she was wearing and heard her tell what the man had said to her, he hurried out to meet the man. He found/saw him standing with his camels beside the well." If you do this, you would mark these combined verses as 29–30. Alternate translation: "This is how it was When he had seen" or "As soon as he had seen"

See: Verse Bridges

**Genesis 24:30 (#2)****"the nose ring and the bracelets on the arms of his sister"**

Some languages have a specific term for "younger sister" that fits well here. Also see how you translated **nose ring** and **bracelets** in verse 22. Alternate translation: "the nose ring and the bracelets that his sister was wearing"

**Genesis 24:30 (#3)****"and when he had heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, 'This {is} what the man said to me'"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct quote or indirect quote here. If you want to make it clear who **the man** refers to, you should still translate it generally, for example, "the man I met at the well" because when

Rebekah said this, she did not yet know who he was. Alternate translation: "and had heard her tell what the man at the well had said to her,"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 24:30 (#4)****"then he went to the man"**

Alternate translation: "he went out to where the man was,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 24:30 (#5)****"and behold, he was standing"**

The word **behold** emphasizes what follows it. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and there he was, standing" or "He saw him standing"

**Genesis 24:30 (#6)****"by the camels at the spring"**

Alternate translation: "with his camels at the spring" or "near the well with his camels."

**Genesis 24:31 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Laban is the one talking here. Consider whether or not to include whom he is speaking to in this quote margin. Alternate translation: "Then Laban said to the man"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:31 (#2)****"Come"**

Alternate translation: "Please come stay with us,"

**Genesis 24:31 (#3)****"blessed of Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "you who are blessed by Yahweh."

**Genesis 24:31 (#4)****"Why are you standing out here"**

Laban is being polite here, not accusing or critical. For some languages a rhetorical question does not fit here. Do what is best in your language.

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 24:31 (#5)****"For I have prepared the house"**

Consider whether or not it is necessary in your translation to make any implied information explicit in this sentence. Alternate translation: "because the house is ready for you and your men to lodge there"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 24:31 (#6)****"and a place"**

Alternate translation: "and we also have room there"

**Genesis 24:31 (#7)****"for the camels"**

Alternate translation: "where your camels can stay."

**Genesis 24:32 (#1)****"So the man went to the house"**

The Hebrew verb can be translated **went** or **"came"**, depending on the perspective that is taken. Do what is most natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Then the man went home with Laban."

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 24:32 (#2)****"Then he unloaded the camels"**

The Hebrew text (**he**) is ambiguous here, but since Laban was the host it is most likely that he (or some of his servants) took care of the camels for his guests. Alternate translation: "There Laban took the loads off the camels"

**Genesis 24:32 (#3)****"and gave straw and fodder to the camels"**

See how you translated **straw and fodder** in verse 25. Alternate translation: "and fed them straw and other fodder"

**Genesis 24:32 (#4)****"and water to wash his feet and the feet of the men who {were} with him"**

Make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham's chief servant washed the feet of the other servants who were with him; each person washed off his own feet. See how you translated "wash the dust off your feet" in Gen 19:2.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 24:33 (#1)****"Then food was set before him to eat"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a passive or active construction here. Alternate translation: "Then they brought the servant and his men some food,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 24:33 (#2)****"but he said"**

Alternate translation: "but the man said to them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:33 (#3)****"I will not eat until I have spoken my words"**

Alternate translation: "I will not eat anything until I have told you my message." or "Before I can eat anything, I need to tell you why I am here."

**Genesis 24:33 (#4)****"So he said"**

Alternate translation: "So Laban replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:33 (#5)****"Speak"**

Make sure the way you translate this sounds polite. Alternate translation: "Please tell us what you want to say." or "Go ahead and tell us your message."

See: Politeness

**Genesis 24:34 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Consider again how you referred to "the man" in verses 21, 22, 26, 29–34, and see the note about that at verse 21. Alternate translation: "Then the man told them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:35 (#1)****"And Yahweh has greatly blessed my master"**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh has abundantly prospered my master,"

**Genesis 24:35 (#2)****"so that he has become great"**

Alternate translation: "so that he is wealthy." or "and as a result, he is very wealthy."

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 24:35 (#3)****"And he has given him flock{s} and herd{s}"**

This is the beginning of a list of what Yahweh had given Abraham. Consider the most natural way to list items in your language. Also, see how you translated **flocks and herds** in Gen 13:5.

**Genesis 24:35 (#4)****"and silver and gold"**

See how you translated **silver and gold** in Gen 13:2.

**Genesis 24:35 (#5)****"and men slaves and women slaves"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 20:14. Alternate translation: "many men and women slaves" or "many male and female slaves"

**Genesis 24:35 (#6)****"and camels and donkeys"**

See how you translated **donkeys** in Gen 22:3.

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 24:36 (#1)****"after her old age"**

Alternate translation: "in her old age," or "when she was very old,"

**Genesis 24:36 (#2)****"and he has given to him"**

Alternate translation: "and my master has given his son"

**Genesis 24:36 (#3)****"everything that {belongs} to him"**

Alternate translation: "all of his property."

**Genesis 24:37 (#1)****"And my master made me swear"**

See how you translated **swear** in verse 3, and "swore" in verses 7 and 9. Alternate translation: "Before I came here, my master had me vow to do something for him," or "Before I came here, my master asked me to make an unbreakable promise to him,"

**Genesis 24:37 (#2)****"saying"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he said to me," or "This is what he said to me:"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 24:37 (#3)****"You must not take a wife for my son"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: "You must not get a woman for my son to marry"

**Genesis 24:37 (#4)****"from the daughters of the Canaanites"**

Alternate translation: "from among the Canaanite women"

**Genesis 24:37 (#5)****"whose land I am living in"**

As in verse 3, make sure your translation does not sound like Abraham lived by himself among the Canaanites; his family and servants also lived among them with him. Alternate translation: "whom we live among in this land"

**Genesis 24:38 (#1)****"but rather"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. After you translate a section, it is a good habit to read through it at normal speed as you pay attention to where it is best to begin new sentences so that sentences and paragraphs flow well and it is easy for people to read. Alternate translation: "Instead,"

**Genesis 24:38 (#2)****"you must go to the house of my father"**

See how you translated **house of my father** in verse 7.

**Genesis 24:38 (#3)****"and take a wife for my son"**

Alternate translation: "and find a wife from among them for my son to marry."

**Genesis 24:39 (#1)****"Suppose"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: "Suppose that"

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 24:39 (#2)****"the woman"**

Alternate translation: "the young woman I choose" or "when I find that young woman, she"

**Genesis 24:39 (#3)****"will not come with me"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 5. Alternate translation: "does not want to go back with me?"

**Genesis 24:40 (#1)****"And he said to me"**

Alternate translation: "He told me," or "He replied to me,"

## Genesis 24:40 (#2)

**"Yahweh, whom I walk before"**

See how you translated "walk/live before" in Gen 17:1. This idiom implies that Abraham lived according to God's will. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, whose presence I walk in," or "Yahweh whom I obey,"

See: Idiom

## Genesis 24:40 (#3)

**"will send his angel"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 7.

## Genesis 24:40 (#4)

**"with you"**

Alternate translation: "to go with you" or "to accompany you"

## Genesis 24:40 (#5)

**"and make" - "succeed"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "to make your journey successful,"

## Genesis 24:40 (#6)

**"so that you will take a wife for my son from my clan"**

See how you translated **clan** in verse 38, and consider again how you translated **take a wife for my son** in verses 3, 4, 7, 37–38. Alternate translation: "so that you can get a wife for my son from among my relatives," or "so that you can arrange for my son to marry a woman who is one of my relatives,"

## Genesis 24:40 (#7)

**"and from the house of my father"**

See how you translated **house of my father** in verse 38.

## Genesis 24:41 (#1)

**"Then"**

The word **Then** is a special Hebrew word that can mean "at that time" and implies here that the servant's question (in verse 39) is now being addressed specifically. Alternate translation: "At this time" or "But if this happens," or "There is a situation when"

## Genesis 24:41 (#2)

**"you will be clear from my oath"**

Alternate translation: "you will be released from keeping your vow you are making to me:" or "you will not have to fulfill the vow to me:"

## Genesis 24:41 (#3)

**"When you go to my clan, and if they will not give her to you"**

Alternate translation: "After you go to my clan and find a woman for Isaac, if they are not willing to let her go with you," or "If you find a wife for Isaac but my family refuses to let the woman you have chosen leave with you,"

## Genesis 24:41 (#4)

**"then you will be clear from my oath"**

See how you translated **clear from** earlier in this verse and in verse 8. Alternate translation: "you will be released from keeping the vow that you are making to me." or "you will not have to keep the unbreakable promise you are making to me."

## Genesis 24:42 (#1)

**"Then today I came to the spring"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the servant is now talking about himself. He is no longer quoting Abraham (whose words ended in verse 41).

### Genesis 24:42 (#2)

**"and I said, 'Yahweh'"**

See how you began the prayer in verse 12.

### Genesis 24:42 (#3)

**"God of my master Abraham"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12.  
Alternate translation: "who is the God whom my master Abraham serves"

### Genesis 24:42 (#4)

**"if it is your will"**

Alternate translation: "if you agree,"

### Genesis 24:42 (#5)

**"please make my journey succeed"**

See how you translated this clause in verses 21 and 40. Alternate translation: "please give me success during this trip" or "please make me successful on this trip"

### Genesis 24:42 (#6)

**"that I have come on"**

Alternate translation: "that I have undertaken."

### Genesis 24:43 (#1)

**"Behold, I am standing by"**

See how you translated this in verse 13. Alternate translation: "Look here I am, standing beside" or "As you know, I am standing here near"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 24:43 (#2)

**"this} spring of water"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 13.  
Alternate translation: "this spring-fed well."

### Genesis 24:43 (#3)

**"And let it be {that}"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 14.

See: Politeness

### Genesis 24:43 (#4)

**"and I say to her, 'Please give me a little water to drink from your jar'"**

This direct quote is within a direct quote that is within another direct quote. For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to use an indirect quote here. Decide what is best in your language.  
Alternate translation: "and I ask her to let me drink some water from her water jar"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 24:44 (#1)

**"and she says to me, 'Both you drink and I will also draw water for your camels'"**

See how you translated the embedded direct quote in verse 43. Alternate translation: "if she gives me a drink and also offers to draw water for my camels,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 24:44 (#2)

**"let} her {be} the wife whom Yahweh has chosen for the son of my master"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Abraham's servant is still talking directly to Yahweh in this clause. For example, you could make **you** explicit in this clause.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information



**Genesis 24:45 (#1)****"Before I had finished"**

Alternate translation: "Before I could even finish"

**Genesis 24:45 (#2)****"speaking in my heart"**

Alternate translation: "praying to God in my heart," or "praying to God quietly,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 24:45 (#3)****"then behold"**

Alternate translation: "just then I saw" or "there was"

**Genesis 24:45 (#4)****"Rebekah was coming out"**

See how you translated the first half of verse 15, which is very similar to the first half of verse 45.

**Genesis 24:45 (#5)****"and her jar {was} on her shoulder"**

Alternate translation: "with her empty water jar on her shoulder."

**Genesis 24:45 (#6)****"And she went down to the spring and drew water"**Consider again how you translated **spring** (verses 13, 16, 29–30, 42–43 and 45) and "well" (verses 11 and 20) in this chapter. Both terms refer to the same source of water. See the note about this at verse 13. Alternate translation: "She walked down to the spring and filled up her jar with water,"**Genesis 24:45 (#7)****"and I said to her, 'Please give me a drink'"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this embedded quote in your language. Alternate translation: "so I asked her to please give me a drink."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 24:46 (#1)****"And she hurried and lowered her jar"**Consider again how you translated **jar** in verses 14–18, 20, 43, 45–46. Alternate translation: "She quickly lowered her jar" or "She quickly brought her jar down"**Genesis 24:46 (#2)****"from her"**

Alternate translation: "off her shoulder"

**Genesis 24:46 (#3)****"and said, 'Drink'"**

Make sure Rebekah sounds polite here in your translation.

See: Politeness

**Genesis 24:46 (#4)****"and I will also water your camels"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 14. Also see verse 18, which is similar. Alternate translation: "and I will also give water to your camels." or "and I will also get water for your camels."

**Genesis 24:46 (#5)****"So I drank"**

Alternate translation: "So I drank some water from her jar" or "So I took a drink from her jar"

**Genesis 24:46 (#6)****"and she also watered the camels"**

Alternate translation: “and she also drew water to my camels.”

### Genesis 24:47 (#1)

**"Whose daughter {are} you"**

See how you translated this question in verse 23.

### Genesis 24:47 (#2)

**"And she said"**

Alternate translation: “She answered me,” or “She replied,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 24:47 (#3)

**"The daughter of Bethuel"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 24. Alternate translation: “I am the daughter of Bethuel,”

### Genesis 24:47 (#4)

**"a son of Nahor whom Milcah bore for him"**

Alternate translation: “who is a son of Nahor and his wife Milcah.” or “and his parents are Nahor and Milcah.”

### Genesis 24:47 (#5)

**"Then I put the ring on her nose and the bracelets on her arms"**

See how you translated “nose ring”, **bracelets**, and **arms** in verse 22. Alternate translation: “So I put the nose ring on her nose and the bracelets on her wrists.” or “After that I gave her the nose ring and bracelets to wear.”

### Genesis 24:48 (#1)

**"And I bowed down and prostrated myself before Yahweh, and I praised Yahweh"**

See how you translated “bowed down and prostrated himself” in verse 26, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: “Next I bowed to the ground and worshiped and praised Yahweh,”

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 24:48 (#2)

**"the God of my master Abraham"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12 and 42. Alternate translation: “the God whom my master Abraham serves”

### Genesis 24:48 (#3)

**"who led me"**

Alternate translation: “because he led me”

### Genesis 24:48 (#4)

**"on the right way"**

Alternate translation: “the right direction” or “exactly where I should go”

### Genesis 24:48 (#5)

**"to take"**

Alternate translation: “to get”

### Genesis 24:48 (#6)

**"the daughter of my master's brother"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “the granddaughter of my master’s brother”, which refers to Nahor’s granddaughter; or (2) “the daughter of my master’s relative”, which refers to Bethuel’s daughter. Abraham’s brother Nahor was the father of Bethuel and the grandfather of Rebekah (Genesis 11:26; 22:20–23).

### Genesis 24:48 (#7)

**"for his son"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this refers to Abraham's son, not Nahor's or Bethuel's son.

### Genesis 24:49 (#1)

**"And now if it is your will"**

Throughout this verse "you" is plural. Alternate translation: "So now if you are willing"

### Genesis 24:49 (#2)

**"to show kindness and faithfulness to my master"**

See how you translated **kindness** and **faithfulness** in verse 27. If necessary in your translation, you can make it explicit how they would show kindness and faithfulness to Abraham. Alternate translation: "to let her come with me, and in that way show your kindness and faithfulness to my master," or "to be kind and faithful to my master by sending her with me,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 24:49 (#3)

**"tell me. But if not, tell me"**

It may be clearer or more natural to put this information near the beginning of the sentence and say, "So now, please tell me whether or not you are willing to let her come with me, and in that way show your kindness and faithfulness to my master," or "So now, please tell me whether or not you are willing to be kind and faithful to my master by letting her come with me," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "please tell me, or if you are not willing, tell me,"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 24:49 (#4)

**"so that I will turn to the right or to the left"**

Consider whether your language has the same idiom that Hebrew has here, or a similar idiom, with the same meaning, or whether you need to say this without an idiom. Alternate translation: "so

that I can know which way to turn" or "so that I can know what to do next."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 24:50 (#1)

**"The thing has come from Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "We can clearly see that Yahweh has made all this happen," or "It is obvious that all this is the will of Yahweh,"

### Genesis 24:50 (#2)

**"we are not able"**

Some languages have a dual pronoun that is used here. Alternate translation: "so it is not our right" or "so we have no right"

See:

### Genesis 24:50 (#3)

**"to tell you bad or good"**

Alternate translation: "to tell you anything different from what he has done" or "to decide anything against what he has decided."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 24:51 (#1)

**"Behold, Rebekah {is} before you"**

Alternate translation: "See Rebekah is in front of you."

### Genesis 24:51 (#2)

**"Take her and go"**

Alternate translation: "You may take her with you and go home"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 24:51 (#3)

**"as Yahweh has spoken"**

Alternate translation: "just as Yahweh has decided it should be."

### Genesis 24:52 (#1)

**"Then it happened, when the servant of Abraham heard their words"**

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces the climax of the chapter, when the servant responds to hearing that Yahweh has fulfilled his prayer to find a wife for Isaac. Do what is natural in your language.

### Genesis 24:52 (#2)

**"then he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh"**

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 48. Notice that here in verse 52, the phrase **to the ground** is explicit and emphasized. Alternate translation: "he bowed low to the ground and praised Yahweh."

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 24:53 (#1)

**"Then the servant brought out"**

Alternate translation: "Then he brought out"

### Genesis 24:53 (#2)

**"jewelry of silver and jewelry of gold, and clothing, and gave them to Rebekah"**

Alternate translation: "silver and gold jewelry and other expensive gifts, including beautiful clothing, and gave them to Rebekah." or "valuable gifts, including silver and gold jewelry, and also beautiful clothing, and gave them to Rebekah."

### Genesis 24:53 (#3)

**"And he gave valuable things"**

Alternate translation: "He also gave expensive gifts"

### Genesis 24:53 (#4)

**"to her brother and to her mother"**

Alternate translation: "to her mother and brother."

### Genesis 24:54 (#1)

**"Then he and the men who {were} with him ate and drank and lodged"**

See how you translated **lodged** in verses 23, 25, and 31.

### Genesis 24:54 (#2)

**"Send me to my master"**

Make sure that what Abraham's servant says here sounds polite in your translation, not rude or demanding. Alternate translation: "Please let us return home now to my master."

See: Politeness

### Genesis 24:55 (#1)

**"Let the young woman stay with us"**

Alternate translation: "Please let the young woman remain here with us" or "Please let Rebekah remain here with us"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 24:55 (#2)

**"a few days, at least ten"**

Alternate translation: "around ten more days."

### Genesis 24:55 (#3)

**"After that she will go"**

Alternate translation: "Then she can go with you." or "Then you can leave and take her with you."

### Genesis 24:56 (#1)

**"But he said to them"**

Some languages have a dual pronoun that could be used here. However the servant is probably still addressing the whole family.

See:

### Genesis 24:56 (#2)

**"Do not detain me, since Yahweh has made my journey succeed. Send me off"**

There are two different places where you could begin a new sentence here. Consider what is the most clear and natural way to do this in your language. Also, see how you translated "make my journey succeed" in verse 42. Alternate translation: "Please do not detain me. Since Yahweh has made me successful on my journey, send us off" or "Please do not detain me, now that Yahweh has given me success on my journey. Let us leave"

### Genesis 24:56 (#3)

**"so that I will go to my master"**

Alternate translation: "so that I can go home to my master."

### Genesis 24:57 (#1)

**"Then they said"**

Alternate translation: "They replied to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 24:57 (#2)

**"Let's call for the young woman"**

Consider again how you translated **young woman** in verses 14–16, 28, 43, 55, and 57, and see the note about this at verse 14. You may need to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

### Genesis 24:57 (#3)

**"and ask her mouth"**

Alternate translation: "and ask her to tell us what she wants to do." or "and ask her if she is willing to go now."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 24:58 (#1)

**"So they called for Rebekah"**

Consider whether it is better to use a name or a pronoun to refer to Rebekah here in your language, especially considering how you referred to her in verses 53, 55, and 57. Alternate translation: "Then they summoned her"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 24:58 (#2)

**"Will you go with this man"**

Alternate translation: "Are you willing to go now with this man?"

### Genesis 24:58 (#3)

**"I will go"**

Alternate translation: "Yes, I am willing to go now."

### Genesis 24:59 (#1)

**"Then they sent off Rebekah their sister"**

Notice that Rebekah does not actually leave until verse 61. If this is not clear in your translation, you could include the implied information that they agreed or decided to send her with Abraham's servant. Alternate translation: "So they decided to send their sister Rebekah"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 24:59 (#2)

**"and her nurse"**

The term **nurse** refers here to a servant woman who probably nursed Rebekah as a baby, took care of her as she was growing up, and still served her now.

**Genesis 24:59 (#3)****"and the servant of Abraham and his men"**

Alternate translation: "with Abraham's servant and his men"

**Genesis 24:60 (#1)****"And they blessed Rebekah and said to her"**

Make sure your translation of "blessed ... and said" refers to the same event, not two separate events.

**Genesis 24:60 (#2)****"Our sister"**

This is a term of endearment that family members used to refer to Rebekah even though she was not the actual sister of all of them. This practice is common in many cultures. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Dear little sister,"

**Genesis 24:60 (#3)****"may you become"**

Alternate translation: "may you become the mother of" or "we pray that you will have"

**Genesis 24:60 (#4)****"thousands of myriads"**

Alternate translation: "thousands and thousands of descendants," or "many thousands of descendants,"

**Genesis 24:60 (#5)****"and may your offspring possess"**

Alternate translation: "and we pray that your descendants will defeat" or "and we pray that God will help them defeat"

**Genesis 24:60 (#6)****"the gates of {those} hating them"**

See how you translated the phrase **possess the gates** in Gen 22:17. Alternate translation: "the cities of all their enemies!"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 24:61 (#1)****"Then Rebekah got up and her maids"**

Alternate translation: "Then Rebekah and her maids who were going with her got ready to go, and" or "After Rebekah and her maids who were going with her packed their things,"

**Genesis 24:61 (#2)****"and went with the man"**

Consider again how you translated **the man** in verses 21, 22, 26, 29, 30, 32, 61. See the note about this at verse 21.

**Genesis 24:61 (#3)****"So the servant took Rebekah"**

Alternate translation: "So he took her with him"

**Genesis 24:61 (#4)****"and left"**

Alternate translation: "and left to return home."

**Genesis 24:62 (#1)****"Meanwhile Isaac came from going to"**

Alternate translation: "While they were traveling, Isaac returned home from a trip he had made to"

**Genesis 24:62 (#2)****"Beer Lahai Roi"**

See how you translated the name of this place in Gen 16:14. Alternate translation: “the well called Beer Lahai Roi”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 24:62 (#3)

**"and he was living"**

Alternate translation: “so he was back home where he lived”

### Genesis 24:62 (#4)

**"in the land of the Negev"**

See how you translated **the land of the Negev** in Gen 20:1, and **the Negev** in Gen 12:9; 13:1, 3. Alternate translation: “in the Negev Desert region” or “in the Negev Desert.”

### Genesis 24:63 (#1)

**"And Isaac went to meditate in the field"**

What Isaac does in verse 63 happened sometime after he returned from Beer Lahai Roi, but the Hebrew text does not say exactly when. So introduce this new event in a general way that is not too specific. Alternate translation: “One day he went out in the field to pray” or “After he had returned home, one day he was meditating out in the fields”

### Genesis 24:63 (#2)

**"as it was turning toward evening"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this time phrase earlier in this sentence and say, “One day as it was becoming evening, Isaac/he went ...” or “One evening, Isaac/he went ...” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “as it was becoming dusk” or “late in the afternoon”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 24:63 (#3)

**"and he lifted his eyes"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

See: Idiom

### Genesis 24:63 (#4)

**"and saw that, behold"**

Alternate translation: “and saw in the distance that there were”

### Genesis 24:63 (#5)

**"camels were coming"**

Alternate translation: “some camels heading toward him.” or “some camels approaching him.”

### Genesis 24:64 (#1)

**"And Rebekah lifted her eyes and saw Isaac"**

Alternate translation: “Then Rebekah, as she looked ahead of her, saw Isaac.”

### Genesis 24:64 (#2)

**"Then she dismounted"**

Alternate translation: “Then she quickly jumped down”

### Genesis 24:64 (#3)

**"from the camel"**

Consider again how you translated **camel** throughout chapter 24. Alternate translation: “off the camel that she was riding,”

### Genesis 24:65 (#1)

**"Who {is} that man in the field who is coming to meet us"**

Alternate translation: “Who is that man walking towards us in the field?”

**Genesis 24:65 (#2)****"And the servant said, "He {is} my master"**

Abraham and Isaac were both the servant's masters, especially since Abraham had already given Isaac all of his possessions (verse 36), which included his servants. Consider again how you translated "master/owner" throughout chapter 24.

**Genesis 24:65 (#3)****"So she took the veil and covered herself"**

In that culture a bride-to-be wore a large veil to cover her entire body, especially her face, to show modesty and submission to her husband. Alternate translation: "So she took her veil and covered her face with it to show modesty." or "So she covered herself with her veil to show modesty."

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 24:66 (#1)****"Then the servant reported to Isaac"**

Alternate translation: "When they reached Isaac, the servant told him"

**Genesis 24:66 (#2)****"all the things that he had done"**

Alternate translation: "all that he had done during the trip." or "all that had happened on his journey."

**Genesis 24:67 (#1)****"Then Isaac brought her"**

Alternate translation: "So Isaac took Rebekah"

**Genesis 24:67 (#2)****"into the tent of Sarah his mother"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Sarah still lived there; she had died three years previously (Gen 23:1–2). Alternate translation: "into the tent where his mother Sarah had lived before she died,"

**Genesis 24:67 (#3)****"And Isaac loved her"**

Alternate translation: "Isaac loved Rebekah," or "Isaac fell in love with her"

**Genesis 24:67 (#4)****"and he was comforted"**

Alternate translation: "and he was consoled by her" or "and she made him happy again"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 24:67 (#5)****"after his mother"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation here why Isaac needed comforting.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 25:1 (#1)****"Then Abraham added and took a wife, and her name {was} Keturah"**

Abraham probably married Keturah after Sarah died (Gen 23:1–2) and after Isaac married Rebekah (Gen 24:67). Make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like Abraham had two wives named Keturah. Alternate translation: "Then Abraham married another woman, who was named Keturah."

**Genesis 25:2 (#1)****"And she bore for him"**

See how you translated **bore for him** in Gen 21:3; 24:47. Alternate translation: "Keturah gave birth to sons for him whose names were" or "She bore sons for him whom they named" or "They had sons together whom they named"



**Genesis 25:2 (#2)**

**"Zimran and Jokshan and Medan and Midian and Ishbak and Shuah"**

See how you used commas and conjunctions in similar lists of names in Gen 22:22, 24.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 25:3 (#1)**

**"And Jokshan fathered"**

See how you translated **fathered** in Gen 11:27. Alternate translation: "Jokshan was the father of"

**Genesis 25:3 (#2)**

**"Sheba and Dedan"**

Alternate translation: "sons whom they named Sheba and Dedan."

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 25:3 (#3)**

**"And the descendants of Dedan were the Asshurim and the Letushim and the Leummim"**

See how you translated the names of people groups in Gen 10:4, 13–14, 16–18, and see the note about that at 10:4.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 25:4 (#1)**

**"Ephah and Epher and Hanoah and Abida and Eldaah"**

Consider what is the best way to connect the names in this list in your language.

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 25:4 (#2)**

**"All of those {were} the descendants of Keturah"**

This phrase refers back to all the people listed in verses 2–4, which includes Keturah's six sons,

seven grandsons and three great grandsons. Make sure you spelled **Keturah** consistently in verses 1–4. Alternate translation: "All those were the descendants of Keturah and Abraham."

**Genesis 25:5 (#1)**

**"And Abraham gave everything that {belonged} to him to Isaac"**

Some languages have a specific word such as "left" or "willed" that means to give something as an inheritance. In that time and culture, a father would give his children their inheritance before he died. Alternate translation: "Abraham willed everything that he owned to Isaac." or "And Isaac inherited all that Abraham owned"

**Genesis 25:6 (#1)**

**"And to the sons of the concubines who {belonged} to Abraham, Abraham gave gifts"**

See how you translated "concubine" in Gen 22:24. The word **gifts** in this clause is very general and can include domestic animals, servants, gold, silver, and other things. Alternate translation: "Abraham also gave valuable gifts to the sons he had with his concubines," or "Abraham also gave (valuable gifts) to the sons that his servant wives had for him,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 25:6 (#2)**

**"and while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the land of Kedem"**

The Hebrew word **Kedem** means "east" and refers to the region east of Canaan and the Dead Sea. Consider whether it is best in your language to transliterate (copy) the Hebrew name or to translate the meaning. Alternate translation: "then while he was still alive he sent them eastward to the region in the East" or "but after that he sent them to the east country" or "and after that he made them move away to the east country"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 25:6 (#3)****"away from Isaac his son"**

Alternate translation: "to be far away from his son Isaac." or "so that they would be far away from his son Isaac."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 25:7 (#1)****"And these {are} the days of the years of the life of Abraham that he lived: 175 years"**

Alternate translation: "Abraham lived a total of 175 years."

**Genesis 25:8 (#1)****"Then Abraham exhaled"**

Alternate translation: "Then he breathed out for the last time" or "Then he took his final breath"

**Genesis 25:8 (#2)****"and died at a good old age"**

Alternate translation: "and died at a ripe old age," or "and died when he was very old,"

**Genesis 25:8 (#3)****"elderly and full"**

The idiom **full** refers to a long life that was blessed by God. Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "an old man who had lived a full life, and" or "After he had lived a long and blessed life,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 25:8 (#4)****"and he was gathered to"**

The phrase **gathered to his people** is a euphemism that refers to dying but also implies that God took his spirit to be with his ancestors

who had already died. It is best to translate this phrase fairly literally since it teaches about life after death. Alternate translation: "he was taken by God to be with" or "God took his spirit to be with"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 25:8 (#5)****"his people"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like these ancestors were still alive. They had already died before Abraham died. Alternate translation: "his relatives who had already died." or "his ancestors who had gone before him." or "his deceased relatives."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 25:9 (#1)****"Then Isaac and Ishmael his sons buried him"**

Alternate translation: "His sons Isaac and Ishmael buried his body"

**Genesis 25:9 (#2)****"in the cave of Machpelah"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 23:9, and see the note about that there. Also see how you translated similar phrases in Gen 23:17, 19. Alternate translation: "in the cave of the Machpelah area"

**Genesis 25:9 (#3)****"in the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite"**

Ephron no longer owned the field (See: verse 10).

**Genesis 25:9 (#4)****"which {was} before Mamre"**

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this verse. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated

**before Mamre** in Gen 23:17, 19. Alternate translation: “near the city of Mamre.”

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 25:10 (#1)

**"from the sons of Heth"**

The Hebrew text has two different ways to refer to the Hittites; compare the phrase here with verse 9 where a single Hebrew word is used to refer to this people group. See how you translated **the sons of Heth** in Gen 23:20.

## Genesis 25:10 (#2)

**"There Abraham was buried, and Sarah his wife"**

Abraham had already buried Sarah's body in the cave (Gen 23:19). Make sure your translation of this sentence does not sound like Sarah was buried there a second time. Alternate translation: “Abraham was buried in that cave, where his wife Sarah had also been buried.” or “That is where Sarah had been buried, and they buried Abraham next to her.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 25:11 (#1)

**"then God blessed Isaac his son"**

Use the phrase order in your language that is most natural in this context.

See: Word Order

## Genesis 25:11 (#2)

**"And Isaac lived near"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “who settled near” or “Isaac lived in the region near”

## Genesis 25:11 (#3)

**"Beer Lahai Roi"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Beer Lahai Roi** in Gen 24:62. Alternate translation: “the well called Beer Lahai Roi.”

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 25:12 (#1)

**"Now these {are} the generations of"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce the new topic that begins here. See how you translated this clause in Gen 11:10. Alternate translation: “Here is the genealogy of” or “Here is the list of the descendants of” or “What follows is the record of the descendants of”

See: Introduction of a New Event

## Genesis 25:13 (#1)

**"by their names according to their births"**

Alternate translation: “listed in the order that they were born:”

## Genesis 25:13 (#2)

**"the firstborn of Ishmael {was} Nebaioth"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “His oldest child was Nebaioth,”

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 25:13 (#3)

**"then Kedar and Adbeel and Mibsam"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “After him came Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam,”

## Genesis 25:15 (#1)

**"Hadad and Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedermah"**

See how you translated a similar list of names in verses 2–4.

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 25:16 (#1)

**"and those {are} their names by their settlements and by their camps, twelve rulers according to their tribes"**

The Hebrew words for **settlements** and **camps** overlap in meaning. Both refer to temporary or permanent places where people settled, surrounded by some sort of wall or fence. Also, many translations have "princes" here instead of "rulers," but these Ishmaelite rulers were not actually sons of a king. See how you translated **rulers** in Gen 17:20. Alternate translation: "who became the rulers of twelve tribes that were named after them, and each tribe lived in its own settlements and camps" or "Each of them became the ruler of a tribe that was named after him, and each tribe had its own villages and tent settlements."

### Genesis 25:17 (#1)

**"And these {are} the years of the life of Ishmael: 137 years"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 7.

### Genesis 25:17 (#2)

**"Then he exhaled and died"**

See how you translated **exhaled** in verse 8. Alternate translation: "Then Ishmael breathed out for the last time and died," or "Then Ishmael took his final breath and died,"

### Genesis 25:17 (#3)

**"and he was gathered to"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: "and he was taken by God to be with" or "and God took his spirit to be with the spirits of"

### Genesis 25:17 (#4)

**"his people"**

Alternate translation: "his relatives who had already died." or "his relatives who had gone before him." or "his deceased relatives."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 25:18 (#1)

**"from Havilah to Shur"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Havilah** in Gen 2:11; 10:7, 29 and **Shur** in Gen 16:7; 20:1. The name **Shur** means "wall". The Wilderness of Shur may have been named after a city or fortification named Shur that was located near the eastern border of Egypt (Gen 16:7). Alternate translation: "throughout the area that extended from the region of Havilah to the desert of Shur"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 25:18 (#2)

**"that {is} near Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "that is east of the land of Egypt"

### Genesis 25:18 (#3)

**"as you go"**

Alternate translation: "as you go from there" or "as one goes"

### Genesis 25:18 (#4)

**"toward Asshur"**

Assyria and its capital city Asshur were far east of Shur. Consider again how you spelled **Asshur** in Gen 2:14; 10:11, 22, and 25:3, 18. Alternate translation: "to the city of Asshur in Assyria." or "in the direction of the land of Assyria."

### Genesis 25:18 (#5)

**"He fell in the face of all his brothers"**

The Hebrew text has an idiom here that is ambiguous in this context. It could mean: (1) "He/They lived in hostility toward/against all his/their brothers/relatives." or "They lived as enemies against all their brothers/relatives." See how you translated a different idiom in 16:12 that probably has this meaning. Or it could mean: (2) "They settled/lived in the presence of all their brothers/relatives." or "They settled/lived among/near all their brothers/relatives." or (3) "He/Ishmael died in the presence of all his brothers/relatives." or "He/Ishmael died when/while all his brothers were still alive."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 25:19 (#1)

**"And these {are} the generations of Isaac the son of Abraham"**

We have already heard about much of Isaac's history in previous chapters; now we are told even more. See how you translated **these are the generations of** in verse 12 and Gen 6:9.

### Genesis 25:19 (#2)

**"Abraham fathered Isaac"**

See how you translated **fathered** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "After Abraham had his son Isaac,"

### Genesis 25:20 (#1)

**"then Isaac was a son of forty years when he took Rebekah for himself as a wife"**

See how you translated "was a son of ... years" in Gen 21:5. Alternate translation: "Isaac grew up and married Rebekah when he was 40 years old."

### Genesis 25:20 (#2)

**"the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan Aram"**

Alternate translation: "She was a daughter of Bethuel, who was an Aramean from the land of Paddan Aram,"

### Genesis 25:20 (#3)

**"the sister of Laban"**

Alternate translation: "and she was a sister of Laban"

### Genesis 25:21 (#1)

**"And Isaac entreated Yahweh on behalf of his wife because she {was} barren"**

Isaac and Rebekah had been married for almost 20 years and they still had no children. See how you translated **barren** in Gen 11:30. Also, it may be clearer to change the order of the clauses in this sentence to put them in the order in which they happened. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Isaac prayed earnestly to Yahweh for his wife to have children because she was barren" or "But for many years Rebekah was not able to get pregnant, so Isaac prayed that Yahweh would give her children."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 25:21 (#2)

**"So Yahweh was entreated by him"**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh did what he prayed for,"

### Genesis 25:21 (#3)

**"and Rebekah his wife conceived"**

For some languages it is clearer to include here the fact that Rebekah was pregnant with two babies, rather than wait until verse 22. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "so that Rebekah became pregnant with twins."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 25:22 (#1)

**"And the children struggled against each other inside her"**

Alternate translation: "And the two babies inside her kept pushing against each other," or "After a while the twins wrestled with each other inside her,"

**Genesis 25:22 (#2)****"so she said"**

Alternate translation: "so Rebekah asked,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 25:22 (#3)****"Why {is this} so? Why {am} I {like} this"**

Alternate translation: "What is happening inside me?"

**Genesis 25:22 (#4)****"And she went to inquire of Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "Then she went to Yahweh to ask him what was happening." or "Then she prayed to Yahweh about it."

**Genesis 25:23 (#1)****"And Yahweh said to her"**

Alternate translation: "He answered her,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 25:23 (#2)****"Two nations {are} inside your womb"**

Many translations put Yahweh's words in poetry format in this verse. If your translation team decides to do this, look at a Bible version that does this to know where to divide the clauses. Alternate translation: "Inside you are the ancestors of two people groups." or "The two babies inside your womb will become the fathers of two nations."

**Genesis 25:23 (#3)****"and two peoples"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Those two people groups" or "Those two ancestors"

**Genesis 25:23 (#4)****"will be divided"**

Alternate translation: "will be hostile against each other" or "will be rivals"

**Genesis 25:23 (#5)****"from inside your womb"**

Alternate translation: "starting now even while they are still inside you."

**Genesis 25:24 (#1)****"Then her days were fulfilled to deliver"**

Alternate translation: "Later when it was time for her to give birth,"

**Genesis 25:24 (#2)****"and behold, twins {were} inside her womb"**

Alternate translation: "sure enough, there were twin sons inside her!"

**Genesis 25:25 (#1)****"And the first came out red; all of him {was} like a garment of hair"**

Alternate translation: "When the first baby came out, he was covered with thick red hair so that he was as hairy as a fur robe." or "The first baby who was born was completely covered with thick red hair."

See: Simile

**Genesis 25:25 (#2)****"so they called his name"**

The Hebrew text has **they** here, which probably refers to Esau's parents and may include people in general after his parents named him. Alternate translation: "So he was named"

**Genesis 25:25 (#3)****"Esau"**

Consider whether or not to include the meaning of Esau's name in the text or in a footnote.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 25:26 (#1)****"his brother came out"**

Some languages have a specific term for a younger brother that fits here. See what you did in Gen 4:2.

**Genesis 25:26 (#2)****"so he called his name"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 25 that probably has the same meaning. Alternate translation: "So they called him" or "So he was named"

**Genesis 25:26 (#3)****"Jacob"**

If you decide to include the meaning of Jacob's name in the text or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **grabbing** earlier in this sentence.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 25:26 (#4)****"And Isaac {was} a son of sixty years"**

See how you translated the idiom "was a son of ... years" in verse 20.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 25:26 (#5)****"when she bore them"**

Alternate translation: "when Rebekah gave birth to them."

**Genesis 25:27 (#1)****"Then the boys grew up"**

Alternate translation: "As the boys grew up"

**Genesis 25:27 (#2)****"and Esau became a man who knew hunting"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("mighty hunter") in Gen 10:9. Alternate translation: "Esau became a expert hunter," or "Esau became good at hunting animals for food,"

**Genesis 25:27 (#3)****"a man of the field"**

Alternate translation: "and he preferred being in the open country," or "and he was an outdoorsman,"

**Genesis 25:27 (#4)****"and Jacob {was} a quiet man"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, make sure that it is clear in your translation that Esau and Jacob are being contrasted. Alternate translation: "but Jacob was a quiet man" or "Jacob, on the other hand, had a mild-mannered personality"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

**Genesis 25:27 (#5)****"who stayed among the tents"**

Alternate translation: "and worked close to home." or "and liked to be at home."

**Genesis 25:28 (#1)****"And Isaac loved Esau"**

Your translation should not sound like Isaac and Rebekah did not love both of their sons. Rather, they each had their favorite son. Alternate translation: "Isaac loved Esau most,"

**Genesis 25:28 (#2)****"because {he liked} game meat in his mouth"**

Make sure your translation of **he liked** refers here to Isaac, not Esau. For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "Isaac liked to eat wild animal/deer meat, so his favorite son was Esau". Do what is best your language. Alternate translation: "because he liked to eat the meat of wild deer that he hunted,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 25:28 (#3)****"but Rebekah loved Jacob"**

See how you translated a similar clause earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "but Rebekah loved Jacob most."

**Genesis 25:29 (#1)****"Now Jacob was cooking stew"**

According to verse 34, this stew (or thick soup) was made out of lentils, which are a type of bean; it may also have had pieces of meat in it. Consider what is the best way in your language to introduce the first event in this episode (following the background information in verses 27–28). Alternate translation: "Once Jacob was making some stew" or "One day when Jacob was making some stew"

See: Introduction of a New Event

**Genesis 25:29 (#2)****"and Esau came in from the field"**

See how you translated **field** in verse 27. Alternate translation: "Esau came home from working out in the fields"

**Genesis 25:29 (#3)****"and he {was} exhausted"**

The Hebrew word for **exhausted** means Esau was very tired (perhaps even feeling faint) from his hunting or work, as well as hungry and thirsty from lack of food. Some languages have an idiom for this

that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and he felt weak from hunger." or "and he was weak and hungry." or "very tired and hungry."

**Genesis 25:30 (#1)****"Then Esau said to Jacob"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: "So Esau asked Jacob,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 25:30 (#2)****"Please let me devour"**

Alternate translation: "Please let me eat"

**Genesis 25:30 (#3)****"some of that very red stuff"**

Alternate translation: "some of that dark red stew you are making"

**Genesis 25:30 (#4)****"because I {am} exhausted"**

See how you translated **exhausted** in verse 29. Alternate translation: "because I am weak from hunger!" or "because I am hungry and weak!"

**Genesis 25:30 (#5)****"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: "Because he said that,"

**Genesis 25:30 (#6)****"they called his name"**

Frequently in the Hebrew text, this phrase has a general meaning and does not refer to someone specific. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "he is also called" or "they called him"



**Genesis 25:30 (#7)****"Edom"**

You could include the meaning of **Edom** in your translation or in a footnote so that it is clear why Esau was given that name.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 25:31 (#1)****"But Jacob said"**

Alternate translation: "But Jacob said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 25:31 (#2)****"On this day"**

Alternate translation: "Today right now" or "Right now"

**Genesis 25:31 (#3)****"sell your birthright to me"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob was offering the stew as payment for Esau's birthright as the firstborn son. In Hebrew culture the firstborn son inherited twice as much as the rest of the children in the family (Deuteronomy 21:15–17). That information could be put in a footnote so that people understand what Esau was selling for a bowl of stew. Alternate translation: "give your birthright to me in exchange for some stew" or "trade your rights as the firstborn son to me for some stew then I will give you some."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 25:32 (#1)****"And Esau said"**

Alternate translation: "Esau said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 25:32 (#2)****"Behold, I am about to die"**

Esau is using hyperbole or exaggeration here to emphasize how hungry he is. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Listen, I am so hungry that I feel like I am going to die!"

See: Hyperbole

**Genesis 25:32 (#3)****"So for what use {is} that to me, a birthright"**

Esau uses a rhetorical question to emphasize his point about how hungry he is. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question works well here in your language. Alternate translation: "So how will my birthright benefit me if I die?" or "So my birthright is of no benefit to me right now!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 25:33 (#1)****"Swear to me on this day"**

See how you translated "swear to me by God" in Gen 21:23. Alternate translation: "First make an oath to me today before God that your rights are now mine!" or "You must first promise to me right now that you give your rights to me."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 25:33 (#2)****"So he swore to him"**

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits well with what Jacob just said. Alternate translation: "So he vowed to him" or "So Esau made an unbreakable vow to him"

**Genesis 25:33 (#3)****"and sold his birthright to Jacob"**

See how you translated "sell your birthright" in verse 31. Also see how Hebrews 12:16 is translated, which refers to the same event. Alternate translation: "that he had sold his rights as

the firstborn son to Jacob for the stew" or "that he was selling his firstborn-son-rights to him in exchange for the stew"

### Genesis 25:34 (#1)

#### "Then Jacob gave to Esau bread and lentil stew"

Consider again how you translated "stew/soup" in verses 29 and 34. Lentils are small, round, flat, reddish-brown legume seeds that grow inside a pod (similar to peas or beans). If lentils are not known in your area, you could describe them as "a type of legume/bean called lentils". Alternate translation: "Then Jacob gave Esau some bread and some of the lentil stew" or "Then Jacob gave Esau some of the lentil stew with some bread,"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 25:34 (#2)

#### "and he ate and drank, and got up and left"

Consider what is the most natural way to translate this series of actions that happened quickly one after the other and shows how carelessly Esau treated his birthright. Alternate translation: "and Esau ate, drank, stood up, and left." or "and Esau hurriedly ate the meal and left."

### Genesis 25:34 (#3)

#### "So Esau despised his birthright"

See how you translated **birthright** in verses 31–33. Alternate translation: "So Esau showed that he did not value his rights as the firstborn son." or "In that way, Esau treated his birthright flippantly as if it had little value."

### Genesis 26:1 (#1)

#### "Then there was"

Consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new episode.

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 26:1 (#2)

#### "a famine"

See how you translated **famine** in Gen 12:10. Alternate translation: "another famine" or "another extreme lack of food" or "another time of severe food shortage"

### Genesis 26:1 (#3)

#### "besides the earlier famine that was"

Alternate translation: "in addition to the previous one that occurred" or "This was a different famine from the one that had happened years before,"

### Genesis 26:1 (#4)

#### "So Isaac went"

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac went alone to the city of Gerar; the rest of his family lived with him.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 26:1 (#5)

#### "to Abimelech, the king of the Philistines, to Gerar"

Be consistent here with how you translated "the city of Gerar" in Gen 10:19; 20:1–2 and **Philistines** in Gen 10:14; 21:32, 34. Alternate translation: "went for help to the Philistine king Abimelech, who lived in the city of Gerar."

### Genesis 26:2 (#1)

#### "Then Yahweh appeared to him"

See how you translated **appeared** in Gen 12:7. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to refer to Isaac here with his name or a pronoun. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh came to Isaac"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 26:2 (#2)****"and said"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: "and said to him," or "and told him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 26:2 (#3)****"Do not go down"**

Egypt was lower in elevation and also south of the land of the Philistines. Many translations leave that information implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Do not go south" or "Do not travel"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 26:2 (#4)****"to Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "to the land of Egypt,"

**Genesis 26:2 (#5)****"live in the land that I tell you"**

Alternate translation: "but rather live in the land wherever I tell you to live." or "but rather live wherever I tell you to live."

**Genesis 26:3 (#1)****"Sojourn"**

See how you translated this term in Gen 12:10 and 19:9. You may need to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "You must live for a while" or "Stay temporarily as a foreigner"

**Genesis 26:3 (#2)****"and I will be with you"**

This clause means that God will guide, help, and protect Isaac and provide for his needs. Alternate translation: "and I will be right beside you"

**Genesis 26:3 (#3)****"and bless you"**

Alternate translation: "cause you and your family to prosper."

See:

**Genesis 26:3 (#4)****"For to you and to your offspring I will give all these lands"**

Starting here (and continuing through verse 4) Yahweh explains how he will bless Isaac. Begin this sentence in a way that makes that clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "In fact, I will give all the surrounding lands to you and your offspring"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 26:3 (#5)****"and I will confirm"**

Alternate translation: "and I will continue to fulfill"

**Genesis 26:3 (#6)****"the oath that I swore to Abraham your father"**

Consider again how you translated **oath** in Gen 24:8. It may be necessary to translate this word differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: "the promise that I made to your father Abraham."

**Genesis 26:4 (#1)****"And I will multiply"**

Verse 4 gives the details of the oath that is referred to in verse 3. Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the sentence from verse 3. Alternate translation: "Yes, I will multiply" or "that I will multiply"

**Genesis 26:4 (#2)****"your offspring as the stars of"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 22:17. Alternate translation: "increase the number of your offspring so that they are as numerous as" or "make your offspring as many as" or "give you so many offspring that they will be as numerous as"

See: Simile

**Genesis 26:4 (#3)****"as the stars of the heavens"**

Alternate translation: "as the number of stars in the sky,"

**Genesis 26:4 (#4)****"and I will give"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 26:4 (#5)****"to your offspring"**

Alternate translation: "to your descendants" or "to them"

**Genesis 26:4 (#6)****"all these lands"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3.

**Genesis 26:4 (#7)****"in your offspring"**

See how you translated this phrase and the following clause in Gen 22:18. Alternate translation: "In fact, through your offspring" or "And because of your offspring" or "In fact, by means of your offspring"

**Genesis 26:4 (#8)****"And" - "all the nations of the earth will be blessed"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this passive clause. Alternate translation: "all the people groups on earth will be blessed by me," or "I will bless all the ethnic groups on the earth,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 26:5 (#1)****"because"**

Verse 5 gives the reason that Yahweh will do everything that he says in verses 3 and 4. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "all because"

**Genesis 26:5 (#2)****"Abraham obeyed my voice"**

The phrase **my voice** stands for what Yahweh said to Abraham and also represents Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: "Abraham always did what I told him"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 26:5 (#3)****"and kept my requirements, my commands, my decrees, and my laws"**

This clause is another way of saying **obeyed my voice** (found in the previous clause), and emphasizes that Abraham always obeyed God in everything. Notice that the terms in this clause have much overlap in meaning. Alternate translation: "Yes, he kept all my requirements, including all my commands, decrees, and laws."

See: Parallelism

**Genesis 26:6 (#1)****"So Isaac stayed in Gerar"**

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac lived alone; the rest of his family lived with him. Alternate translation: "So Isaac obeyed what God commanded and stayed with his family in the city of Gerar."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 26:7 (#1)

**"Then the men of the place asked about his wife"**

Alternate translation: "After a while the men from that place started asking him about Rebekah," or "When the men from there started asking him about Rebekah,"

### Genesis 26:7 (#2)

**"and he said"**

Alternate translation: "he said to them" or "he deceived them by saying"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 26:7 (#3)

**"She {is} my sister"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct quote or an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: "that she was his sister"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 26:7 (#4)

**"because he was afraid to say, "{She is} my wife"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you handled the previous quote in this sentence. Alternate translation: "He was afraid to say that she was his wife,"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 26:7 (#5)

**"He thought,} "Lest the men of the place kill me"**

See how you translated **the men of the place** earlier in this verse. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here, and see what you did earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "He thought that the men of that city might kill him" or "He was afraid that the men in that place would kill him"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 26:7 (#6)

**"on account of Rebekah"**

Alternate translation: "because of Rebekah," or "so that they could take Rebekah,"

### Genesis 26:7 (#7)

**"because she {is} beautiful of appearance"**

For some languages it may be better to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Now Rebekah was very beautiful, so the men in that city started asking Isaac about her. Isaac was afraid they might kill him in order to take/have her, so he lied and told them she was his sister." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because she is very beautiful."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 26:8 (#1)

**"Then it happened, when the days had been long for him there"**

Alternate translation: "One day when he and his family had been there a long time,"

### Genesis 26:8 (#2)

**"then Abimelech the king of the Philistines looked down"**

Alternate translation: "Abimelech who was king over the Philistines looked out" or "King Abimelech looked out"

**Genesis 26:8 (#3)****"from a window"**

Alternate translation: "from a window of his house"

**Genesis 26:8 (#4)****"and saw that, behold"**In this context, **behold** means that King Abimelech was surprised at what he saw. Alternate translation: "and was surprised to see"**Genesis 26:8 (#5)****"Isaac was laughing with Rebekah his wife"**There is a word play here in Hebrew (since **Isaac** and **laughing** come from the same root word). Isaac may have been laughing or flirting with Rebekah or physically touching her in an affectionate or intimate way, as a husband would do with his wife. Alternate translation: "that Isaac was flirting with his wife Rebekah."**Genesis 26:9 (#1)****"So Abimelech called for Isaac"**

King Abimelech probably sent a servant to tell Isaac to come talk to him. Alternate translation: "So King Abimelech summoned Isaac" or "Then King Abimelech sent someone to bring Isaac to him"

**Genesis 26:9 (#2)****"and said"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: "and said to him," or "and scolded him by saying,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 26:9 (#3)****"Behold, she {is} really your wife"**

The word "behold" emphasizes what follows it. Consider what is the best way in your language to

translate this term in this context. Alternate translation: "It is clear that she is actually your wife!"

See:

**Genesis 26:9 (#4)****"So how could you say, 'She {is} my sister'"**Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded direct quote (**She is my sister**) as a direct or indirect quote.

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 26:9 (#5)****"And Isaac said to him"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 26:9 (#6)****"Because I said, 'I might die because of her'"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Because I thought that I might die because of her." or "I said that because I was afraid that someone might kill me in order to take her as a wife."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 26:10 (#1)****"Then Abimelech said"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language to fit this context.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 26:10 (#2)****"What {is} this you have done to us"**

King Abimelech uses a rhetorical question here to show strong emotion and to emphasize that what

Isaac did was wrong and should not have been done. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Why did you treat us this way?" or "You should not have done this to us!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 26:10 (#3)

**"One of the people might easily have lain with your wife"**

See how you translated the idiom "lay with" in Gen 19:32–35. It may be necessary to translate this in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "Sooner or later, one of the men whom I rule could have slept with your wife," or "... had physical relations with your wife," or "... committed adultery with your wife,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 26:10 (#4)

**"and you would have brought guilt on us"**

The pronoun **us** in this verse refers to King Abimelech and the Philistines whom he ruled; it does not include Isaac. Alternate translation: "with the result that you would have brought punishment on us!"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Genesis 26:11 (#1)

**"Then Abimelech ordered all the people by saying"**

Alternate translation: "Then King Abimelech told all his people,"

### Genesis 26:11 (#2)

**"Whoever touches this man or his wife will surely be killed"**

In this context **touches** is used as an idiom that means "harms in any way." Many languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "If anyone harms this man Isaac or his wife in any way, I will surely have that person executed!" or "I will surely

execute anyone who harms Isaac or his wife in any way!"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 26:12 (#1)

**"Then Isaac sowed seeds in that land"**

The phrase "sow seeds" means to plant seeds by scattering them by hand on the ground in order to grow crops. If this method of planting is not known in your language area, you could translate this more generally and say, "planted seeds/crops" or "planted large fields with seeds/crops". Alternate translation: "Isaac planted crops in that land"

### Genesis 26:12 (#2)

**"and in that year he obtained a hundredfold"**

Alternate translation: "and during that year he reaped a huge harvest that was a hundred times more than what he had planted" or "and that year he harvested a very large crop"

### Genesis 26:12 (#3)

**"and Yahweh blessed him"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here that continues into verse 13. Alternate translation: "because Yahweh blessed him."

### Genesis 26:13 (#1)

**"And the man became great, and he continued to become even greater"**

Alternate translation: "In that way Isaac kept getting more and more wealthy" or "so that he grew richer and richer"

### Genesis 26:13 (#2)

**"until he was exceedingly great"**

Alternate translation: "until eventually he was very rich."

**Genesis 26:14 (#1)**

**"And he had possession of flocks and possession of herds"**

See how you translated **flocks** and **herds** in Gen 24:35. Alternate translation: "He had many flocks of sheep and herds of cattle" or "He had many sheep and cattle"

**Genesis 26:14 (#2)**

**"and many servants"**

The same Hebrew word is used for both "servant" or "slave". Slaves and servants were owned by their masters but often they were treated as respected members of the family. An example of this was Abraham's head servant who was sent to find a wife for Isaac (Gen 24). Keep this information in mind as you translate **servants** into your language. Alternate translation: "and he also had many slaves." or "He also had many slaves."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 26:14 (#3)**

**"So the Philistines envied him"**

Alternate translation: "Because of that, the Philistines envied him" or "As a result, the Philistines were envious of him"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 26:15 (#1)**

**"and the Philistines stopped up all the wells that the servants of his father had dug in the days of Abraham his father and filled them with dirt"**

See how you translated "well" in Gen 21:30–31.

**Genesis 26:16 (#1)**

**"Then Abimelech said to Isaac"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language. Alternate translation: "Finally King Abimelech said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 26:16 (#2)**

**"Go away from us"**

Although King Abimelech is asking Isaac to leave, he is still trying to be polite. Alternate translation: "We want you to move somewhere else away from us,"

See:

**Genesis 26:16 (#3)**

**"because you are more powerful than we {are}"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, "You are so powerful that we are afraid of you and want you to move away from us." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because you are too powerful for us."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 26:17 (#1)**

**"So Isaac went from there"**

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac moved by himself from the city of Gerar; his family moved with him. See what you did for similar cases in verses 1 and 6. Alternate translation: "So Isaac moved away from the city of Gerar with his family"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 26:17 (#2)**

**"and camped"**

Alternate translation: "and set up his tents"

**Genesis 26:17 (#3)**

**"in the Valley of Gerar"**

Alternate translation: "in the valley near Gerar"

**Genesis 26:17 (#4)**

**"and settled there"**



Alternate translation: "and lived there for a while."

### Genesis 26:18 (#1)

**"Then Isaac returned and dug out the water wells that they had dug in the days of Abraham his father"**

Isaac had his servants re-dig the wells; he did not do that work by himself.

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 26:18 (#2)

**"and {that} the Philistines had stopped up after the death of Abraham"**

Be consistent with how you spelled or translated **Philistines** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 10:14; 21:32, 34; 26:1, 8, 14–15, 18. Alternate translation: "that the Philistines had plugged up with dirt after Abraham had died,"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 26:18 (#3)

**"and he called them names like the names"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He gave those wells the same names" or "He named the wells with the same names"

### Genesis 26:18 (#4)

**"that his father had called them"**

Alternate translation: "that his father had named them."

### Genesis 26:19 (#1)

**"and found a well of living water there"**

The phrase **living water** is an idiom that means the well was spring fed and was a source of continually flowing, fresh water to drink. Alternate translation: "and struck a spring of flowing water there."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 26:20 (#1)

**"The water {belongs} to us"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to use a direct quote or an indirect quote here. Alternate translation: "That water is ours!" or "that the well belonged to them." or "that they owned that water"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 26:20 (#2)

**"So he called the name of the well"**

Alternate translation: "So Isaac named that well"

### Genesis 26:20 (#3)

**"Esek"**

If you include the meaning of this well's name in your translation text or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translate **disputed** in the next clause. This word is different from the word for **quarreled** used earlier in verse 20, but it has the same meaning.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 26:20 (#4)

**"because they disputed with him"**

The herdsmen from Gerar disputed with Isaac indirectly (verse 20b) when they quarreled with his herdsmen (verse 20a). Make sure in your translation that the two halves of this verse do not contradict each other. Alternate translation: "because they disputed with his herdsmen about it."

### Genesis 26:21 (#1)

**"but they quarreled over it too"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **quarreled** in the first part of verse 20. Alternate translation: "but once again the herdsmen from Gerar disputed with them about that well too,"

**Genesis 26:21 (#2)****"so he called its name"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "so he named it" or "So he named the well"

**Genesis 26:22 (#1)****"Then he moved from there"**

In your translation it should not sound like Isaac moved by himself.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 26:22 (#2)****"and he dug"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 18. Alternate translation: "and he had his men dig" or "and his servants dug"

**Genesis 26:22 (#3)****"another well"**

Alternate translation: "a new well,"

**Genesis 26:22 (#4)****"and they did not quarrel over it"**

Alternate translation: "but this time the herdsmen of Gerar did not quarrel about it," or "This time Gerar's herdsmen did not quarrel about it,"

**Genesis 26:22 (#5)****"so he called its name"**

See how you translated this clause in verses 20 and 21. Alternate translation: "so he named the well" or "so he gave it the name"

**Genesis 26:22 (#6)****"Rehoboth"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Rehoboth** in Gen 10:11.

**Genesis 26:22 (#7)****"has made space for us"**

Alternate translation: "has provided room for us," or "given my family enough room to live,"

**Genesis 26:22 (#8)****"and we will be fruitful in the land"**

Alternate translation: "so that we will flourish here in this land."

**Genesis 26:23 (#1)****"Then from there he went up to Beersheba"**

The word **up** refers to the fact that Beersheba is higher in elevation from where they were; it is also south in direction. Some translations leave that information implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "From there he and his family moved south to the city of Beersheba." or "One day he and his family moved from there to the city of Beersheba."

**Genesis 26:24 (#1)****"And Yahweh appeared to him during that night and said"**

See how you translated **Yahweh appeared to him** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "That night Yahweh came to him and said to him,"

**Genesis 26:24 (#2)****"I {am} the God of Abraham your father"**

Alternate translation: "I am the God whom your father Abraham worships." or "I am the God who takes care of your father Abraham."

**Genesis 26:24 (#3)****"Do not be afraid, because I {am} with you"**

Some languages can do as the Hebrew text does and put the result clause (“do not be afraid”) before the reason (**I am with you**). Other languages prefer to put the reason before the result. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “I will always be with you, so do not be afraid.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 26:24 (#4)

**"And I will bless you"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: “I will prosper you”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 26:24 (#5)

**"and multiply your offspring"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4. Alternate translation: “and multiply the number of your offspring” or “and make your offspring numerous” or “and give you many offspring”

### Genesis 26:24 (#6)

**"for the sake of"**

Alternate translation: “because of my promise to” or “in order to keep my promise to”

### Genesis 26:24 (#7)

**"Abraham my servant"**

Alternate translation: “my servant Abraham.”

### Genesis 26:25 (#1)

**"Then he built an altar there"**

See how you translated **altar** in Gen 22:9. Alternate translation: “Then Isaac built an altar there at Beersheba”

### Genesis 26:25 (#2)

**"and called on the name of Yahweh"**

Consider again how you translated the idiom **called on the name of Yahweh** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 4:26, 12:8, 13:4, 21:33, 26:25, and see the note about this at 4:26. Alternate translation: “and offered sacrifices on it to Yahweh as he worshiped him by name.”

### Genesis 26:25 (#3)

**"And he pitched his tents there"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 17. Alternate translation: “He also set up his camp there,”

### Genesis 26:25 (#4)

**"and the servants of Isaac dug a well there"**

Notice that they did not finish digging this well until verse 32. Keep that in mind as you translate this clause.

### Genesis 26:26 (#1)

**"Then Abimelech came to him from Gerar"**

Alternate translation: “Then King Abimelech came to him from the city of Gerar”

### Genesis 26:26 (#2)

**"and Ahuzzath his friend"**

King Abimelech’s friend Ahuzzath was probably his adviser.

### Genesis 26:26 (#3)

**"and Phicol the commander of his army"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 21:22, 32. Alternate translation: “and his army captain Phicol.”

### Genesis 26:27 (#1)

**"Why have you come to me"**

Isaac probably wants to know why King Abimelech and his men are there, but this may also be a rhetorical question that shows his strong emotion. Alternate translation: "Why did you come here,"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 26:27 (#2)

**"since you hate me"**

Alternate translation: "especially since you have treated me hatefully" or "especially since you have been hateful toward me"

### Genesis 26:27 (#3)

**"and you sent me away from you"**

Alternate translation: "and forced me to go away from you!"

### Genesis 26:28 (#1)

**"And they said"**

Alternate translation: "They replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 26:28 (#2)

**"We have clearly seen"**

Make sure your translation of the pronoun **we** does not include Isaac here. Alternate translation: "It is very clear to us"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Genesis 26:28 (#3)

**"that Yahweh has been with you"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 3 and 24. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh is with you and prospering you,"

### Genesis 26:28 (#4)

**"so we said"**

Alternate translation: "so we said to each other" or "so we decided"

### Genesis 26:28 (#5)

**"There should be an oath between us'—between us and you"**

In the Hebrew text, the first **us** in this sentence includes Isaac, but the second **us** excludes him. Notice that in the first two alternate translations, the pronouns **us** and **we** exclude him, but in the third alternate, the pronoun **we** includes him. Alternate translation: "that there should be an vow between us and you." or "that we should make a vow to each other."

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Genesis 26:28 (#6)

**"So let us cut a covenant"**

See how you translated **cut a covenant** in Gen 21:27, 32. Notice that the pronoun **us** in this phrase either excludes Isaac or includes him, depending on whether you use **with you** or "with each other" for the following phrase. Alternate translation: "So please let us make a peace agreement"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Genesis 26:28 (#7)

**"with you"**

Alternate translation: "with each other,"

### Genesis 26:29 (#1)

**"that you will not do evil against us"**

Verse 29 specifies the details of the covenant or treaty that they want Isaac to vow or promise.

### Genesis 26:29 (#2)

**"just as we did not touch you"**

See how you translated **touch** or "harm" in verse 11. Alternate translation: "just as we never harmed you in any way,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 26:29 (#3)

**"and just as we did only good to you"**

Alternate translation: "but only treated you kindly"

### Genesis 26:29 (#4)

**"and sent you away in peace"**

Alternate translation: "and sent you away peacefully." or "and in a peaceful manner asked you to leave."

### Genesis 26:29 (#5)

**"Now you are blessed by Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: "Now because of that, Yahweh has greatly prospered you." or "As a result, Yahweh has now greatly prospered you."

### Genesis 26:30 (#1)

**"and they ate and drank"**

In your translation it should not sound like the feast was only for King Abimelech and his men; Isaac ate with them.

### Genesis 26:31 (#1)

**"Then they got up early in the morning"**

See how you translated **got up early in the morning** in Gen 20:8; 21:14, 22:3.

### Genesis 26:31 (#2)

**"and swore to each other"**

See how you translated **swore** in Gen 25:33. Also, if you make the implied information explicit, it should match the way you translate "covenant" or "treaty" in verse 28. Alternate translation: "and made unbreakable oaths to each other to keep their covenant" or "and made oaths to one another that they would keep their treaty"

### Genesis 26:31 (#3)

**"Then Isaac sent them on their way"**

Alternate translation: "Then Isaac told them goodbye,"

### Genesis 26:31 (#4)

**"and they left from him in peace"**

Alternate translation: "and they left him on peaceful terms and returned home."

### Genesis 26:32 (#1)

**"Then it happened on that day"**

Alternate translation: "On that same day" or "Later that same day"

### Genesis 26:32 (#2)

**"about the matter of the well that they had dug"**

This is the same well that Isaac's servants started digging in verse 25.

### Genesis 26:32 (#3)

**"and said to him"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this quote margin in your language.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 26:32 (#4)

**"We have found water"**

See how you translated **found** in verse 19. Alternate translation: "We have reached water!"

### Genesis 26:33 (#1)

**"So he called it Shibah"**

The name of this well can be spelled **Shibah** or "Shebah."

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 26:33 (#2)

**"the name of the city {is} Beersheba to this day"**

See how you translated **Beersheba** and its meaning in Gen 21:31.

## Genesis 26:34 (#1)

**"And Esau was a son of forty years"**

Consider again how you translated "a son of ... years" in the book of Genesis. See 5:32; 11:10; 12:4; 16:16; 17:1, 17, 24-25; 25:20-21 and 26:34. Alternate translation: "Now Esau was 40 years old, and" or "When Esau was 40 years old,"

## Genesis 26:34 (#2)

**"and he took {as} a wife Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Basemath was Esau's second wife, not Beeri's wife. Alternate translation: "he married a woman named Judith, who was the daughter of a Hittite man named Beeri, and he also married a woman named Basemath, who was the daughter of a Hittite man named Elon."

## Genesis 26:35 (#1)

**"And they were a grief of mind to Isaac and Rebekah"**

Alternate translation: "Those foreign women caused Isaac and Rebekah to be very distressed" or "Isaac and Rebekah were very upset that their son had married foreign women rather than a woman from their own religion and people group."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 27:1 (#1)

**"Then it happened, when"**

The events in chapter 27 happened about 23 years after the end of chapter 26. Make sure your translation begins this verse in a way that fits with that fact. Alternate translation: "Now when"

See: Introduction of a New Event

## Genesis 27:1 (#2)

**"Isaac was old"**

Alternate translation: "Isaac was very old"

## Genesis 27:1 (#3)

**"and his eyes were too dim to see"**

Isaac was either totally blind or so blind that he could not recognize people anymore (See: verses 18-27, 32-33). Alternate translation: "and his eyes were so weak that he could not see," or "and he was almost blind,"

## Genesis 27:1 (#4)

**"then he called"**

Isaac probably told a servant to go and tell Esau to come to him. Alternate translation: "he called for" or "he summoned"

## Genesis 27:1 (#5)

**"And he said to him"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin. Alternate translation: "Esau replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 27:1 (#6)

**"Behold me"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 22:1,7,11. Alternate translation: "Here I am." or "Yes, sir what is it?"

**Genesis 27:2 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to translate this quote margin.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:2 (#2)****"Behold, please"**

Alternate translation: "Listen carefully, please:" or "Please listen carefully:"

**Genesis 27:2 (#3)****"I am old"**

See how you translated **old** or "an old man" in verse 1. Alternate translation: "I am very old"

**Genesis 27:2 (#4)****"I do not know the day of my death"**

Alternate translation: "and I might die soon." or "and I might not live much longer."

**Genesis 27:3 (#1)****"please take your weapons, your quiver, and your bow"**

Consider what is the most natural way to refer to a bow and arrows in your language. Alternate translation: "take your hunting gear, your quiver of arrows, and your bow," or "take your bow and arrows"

**Genesis 27:3 (#2)****"and go out"**

Alternate translation: "then go out"

**Genesis 27:3 (#3)****"in} the field"**

See how you translated **the field** in Gen 25:27. Alternate translation: "to the fields" or "to the open country"

**Genesis 27:3 (#4)****"and hunt game for me"**

See how you translated **game** in Gen 25:28. Alternate translation: "and hunt some wild animal meat for me." or "and go hunting for me."

**Genesis 27:4 (#1)****"Then prepare"**

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit more of the steps that Esau needs to take to prepare the meal, so that it does not sound like the animal would be eaten alive or uncooked. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then use the meat to cook" or "Next butcher the deer and cook"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 27:4 (#2)****"tasty food for me"**

Alternate translation: "some tasty food for me" or "a tasty meal for me"

**Genesis 27:4 (#3)****"such as I love"**

Alternate translation: "the kind I like best," or "just the way that I like it,"

**Genesis 27:4 (#4)****"my soul can bless you before I die"**

Isaac uses the phrase **my soul** to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "before I die I can ask God to prosper you."

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 27:5 (#1)**

**"And Rebekah was listening while Isaac spoke to Esau his son"**

The phrase **his son** probably recalls the fact that Esau was Isaac's favorite son (Gen 25:28). However make sure that your translation of this phrase does not sound like Esau was not also Rebekah's son. Alternate translation: "Rebekah overheard what Isaac said to their son Esau." or "Now while Isaac was speaking to his son Esau, Rebekah was listening"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 27:5 (#2)**

**"Then Esau went {to} the field to hunt game to bring it back"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here that continues into verse 6. Also see how you translated **the field** and **hunt game** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "So after Esau went out to the country to get wild animal meat," or "So after Esau had left to go hunting in the open country,"

**Genesis 27:6 (#1)**

**"Then Rebekah said to Jacob her son, saying"**

The phrase **her son** probably recalls the fact that Jacob was Rebekah's favorite son (Gen 25:28). See how you translated "his son" in verse 5. Alternate translation: "Rebekah said to their son Jacob,"

**Genesis 27:6 (#2)**

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Listen to this:"

**Genesis 27:6 (#3)**

**"I heard your father"**

Alternate translation: "I just heard your father"

**Genesis 27:6 (#4)**

**"speaking to Esau your brother, saying"**

Some languages have a special term for "older brother" that is used here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "say to your brother Esau,"

See: Kinship

**Genesis 27:7 (#1)**

**"Bring game for me"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate Rebekah's quote of Isaac in verse 7 as a direct quote or an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "to bring him some wild deer meat"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 27:7 (#2)**

**"and prepare tasty food for me so that I can eat it"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: "and use it to cook a tasty meal for him to eat."

**Genesis 27:7 (#3)**

**"and I can bless you in the presence of Yahweh, before my death"**

Be consistent in translating the parts of verse 7 as either a direct quote (using first person pronouns) or an indirect quote (using third person pronouns). Alternate translation: "Then before he dies, he will ask Yahweh to bless Esau."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 27:8 (#1)**

**"So now, my son"**

See how you translated **So now** in verse 3. Also, make sure it is clear that Rebekah is no longer quoting Isaac's words (whether directly or indirectly). If necessary, you could begin this verse with: "Rebekah continued," or "Then Rebekah said to Jacob," Alternate translation: "Now son,"



**Genesis 27:8 (#2)****"listen to my voice"**See how you translated **my voice** in Gen 26:5.

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 27:8 (#3)****"to what I command you"**

Alternate translation: "and obey me."

**Genesis 27:9 (#1)****"Please go to the flock"**

Alternate translation: "Go to our flock of goats"

**Genesis 27:9 (#2)****"and bring to me from there"**

Alternate translation: "and bring me"

**Genesis 27:9 (#3)****"two good kids of the goats"**

Alternate translation: "two fine kid goats" or "two of our best kid goats"

**Genesis 27:9 (#4)****"so that I will prepare from them"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "so that I can use the meat from them to cook" or "I will use their meat to cook"

**Genesis 27:9 (#5)****"tasty food for your father"**

See how you translated "prepare some tasty food for" in verses 4 and 7. Alternate translation: "some savory food for your father" or "a tasty meal for your father"

**Genesis 27:9 (#6)****"such as he loves"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 4.

Alternate translation: "the kind he likes best"

**Genesis 27:10 (#1)****"Then you take it to your father"**

Alternate translation: "Then you can take the food to your father"

**Genesis 27:10 (#2)****"and he will eat {it}, so that he will bless you before his death"**See how you translated **will bless** in verses 4 and 7. Alternate translation: "so that he will eat it, and then before he dies, he will ask Yahweh to prosper you."**Genesis 27:11 (#1)****"Then Jacob said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob replied"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:11 (#2)****"to Rebekah his mother"**

Alternate translation: "to her,"

**Genesis 27:11 (#3)****"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Remember that"

**Genesis 27:11 (#4)****"Esau my brother"**See how you translated **brother** in verse 11.

**Genesis 27:11 (#5)****"is} a hairy man"**

See how you talked about Esau's hairy body in Gen 25:25. Alternate translation: "has a lot of hair on his body"

**Genesis 27:11 (#6)****"but I {am} a smooth man"**

Alternate translation: "but I have non-hairy skin." or "but I am not hairy."

**Genesis 27:12 (#1)****"Suppose"**

Alternate translation: "What would happen if" or "I am afraid of what will happen if"

**Genesis 27:12 (#2)****"my father touches me"**

If this sentence is translated as a statement, you could end it with a period or an exclamation point to show that Jacob is worried. Alternate translation: "my father feels my arms"

**Genesis 27:12 (#3)****"Then I will be in his eyes as a deceiver"**

Make sure that your translation of verse 12 describes a hypothetical situation, not something that had happened yet. Some languages have a special verb form (such as "would") to communicate this. Alternate translation: "Certainly he would recognize me and know that I am trying to trick him."

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 27:12 (#4)****"and I will bring a curse on me and not a blessing"**

Alternate translation: "Then I would cause myself to be cursed instead of blessed."

**Genesis 27:13 (#1)****"But his mother said to him"**

Alternate translation: "But his mother responded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:13 (#2)****"Let your curse be on me, my son"**

Make sure that your translation of **your curse** refers to the curse Jacob fears his father might say against him and does not sound like Jacob cursed someone. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put an address like **my son** first in this quote. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "My son, if your father curses you, may that curse fall on me and not on you."

**Genesis 27:13 (#3)****"Just listen to my voice"**

Alternate translation: "Please just do what I say,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 27:13 (#4)****"and go get {them} for me"**

Alternate translation: "and go and bring two goats to me."

**Genesis 27:14 (#1)****"So he went"**

Alternate translation: "So Jacob went to their flock"

**Genesis 27:14 (#2)****"and got {them}"**

Alternate translation: "and got the goats" or "chose two goats"

**Genesis 27:14 (#3)****"and brought {them} to his mother"**

Alternate translation: "and brought them to her."

**Genesis 27:14 (#4)****"Then his mother prepared"**

In some languages it is necessary to specify that the animal was killed and cut up before being cooked. Do what is best in your language. See what you did for a similar case in verse 4. Alternate translation: "Then she had them butchered and she made" or "Then she used the butchered meat from the goats to cook"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 27:14 (#5)****"tasty food"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 4, 7 and 9. Alternate translation: "some savory food" or "a tasty meal"

**Genesis 27:14 (#6)****"such as his father loved"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 4 and 9. Alternate translation: "just the way that his father liked it."

**Genesis 27:15 (#1)****"Then Rebekah took"**

Alternate translation: "She also took out"

**Genesis 27:15 (#2)****"and put them on Jacob her younger son"**

Your translation should not sound like Rebekah dressed Jacob herself as if he were a little child. She probably gave him the clothes and asked him to put

them on himself. Alternate translation: "and gave them to her younger son Jacob to put on."

**Genesis 27:16 (#1)****"And she put the skins of the kid goats over his hands and over"**

See how you translated **skins** in Gen 3:21. The skins still had the goat hair or fur on them.

**Genesis 27:16 (#2)****"the smooth part of his neck"**

See how you translated **smooth** in verse 11. Alternate translation: "the non-hairy part of his neck."

**Genesis 27:17 (#1)****"Then she gave the tasty food and the bread that she had made into the hand{s} of Jacob her son"**

Alternate translation: "Then Rebekah gave to him the savory goat meat dish and some bread she had made." or "Then she gave the tasty food to him, including some bread that she had made."

**Genesis 27:18 (#1)****"and he went to his father"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Jacob took the meal to his father"

**Genesis 27:18 (#2)****"and said, 'My father.' And he said"**

His father answered/replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:18 (#3)****"Behold me. Who {are} you, my son"**

See how you translated **Behold me** in verse 1. It may be necessary to translate this in a different

way here because the context is different. Alternate translation: "Here I am, my son. Who are you?" or "Yes? Which one of my sons are you?"

### Genesis 27:19 (#1)

**"Then Jacob said to his father"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob lied to his father,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:19 (#2)

**"I {am} Esau, your firstborn"**

The term **firstborn** is a key term in the Bible because the firstborn son had special rights, including the fact that he inherited his father's authority and the largest portion of his father's estate. Jacob is claiming those rights by using this term. See how you translated this term in Gen 25:13. Alternate translation: "I am Esau, your firstborn son."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 27:19 (#3)

**"I have done as you told me"**

Alternate translation: "I have done what you told me to do."

### Genesis 27:19 (#4)

**"Please get up, sit and eat some of my game"**

See how you translated "game meat" in verses 3, 5 and 7. Alternate translation: "So now, please sit up and eat some of the game meat that I have prepared for you,"

### Genesis 27:19 (#5)

**"so that your soul will bless me"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 4.

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 27:20 (#1)

**"How {is} this you were quick to find {it}, my son"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first in this quote. Alternate translation: "How were you able to get the animal so quickly, my son?"

### Genesis 27:20 (#2)

**"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob answered him,"

### Genesis 27:20 (#3)

**"Because Yahweh your God"**

Alternate translation: "I was successful because Yahweh, the God you worship"

### Genesis 27:20 (#4)

**"caused {it} to happen before me"**

See how you translated this clause in Gen 24:12. Alternate translation: "helped me to hunt it." or "brought it to me."

### Genesis 27:21 (#1)

**"Then Isaac said to Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "But Isaac said to him,"

### Genesis 27:21 (#2)

**"Please come close, so that I can touch you, my son"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first or earlier in this quote. Also see what you did in verses 13 and 20. Alternate translation: "Please come close to me, my son, so that I can touch you" or "My son, please come here so that I can touch you"

**Genesis 27:21 (#3)**

**"and know} whether you are really my son Esau or not"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and be sure that you are really my son Esau." or "I want to know for sure whether or not you really are my son Esau."

**Genesis 27:22 (#1)**

**"So Jacob went close to Isaac his father"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob came close to his father Isaac,"

**Genesis 27:22 (#2)**

**"and he touched him"**

See how you translated "touch" or "feel" in verses 12 and 21. Alternate translation: "and his father touched him" or "and his father felt his arms"

**Genesis 27:22 (#3)**

**"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and said to himself,"

**Genesis 27:22 (#4)**

**"The voice {is} the voice of Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "Hmm, he talks like Jacob,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 27:22 (#5)**

**"but the hands {are} the hands of Esau"**

In Hebrew, the word for "hand" is the same word as for "arm". Isaac probably felt Esau's hands and arms. Alternate translation: "but he feels like Esau."

**Genesis 27:23 (#1)**

**"So he did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy like the hands of Esau his brother"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **hands** or "arms" in verses 16 and 22. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to change the original order of clauses in this sentence, as in the second alternate translation above.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 27:23 (#2)**

**"and he was about to bless him"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here that continues into verse 24. Alternate translation: "Then Isaac was prepared to bless him" or "Isaac was getting ready to bless him"

**Genesis 27:24 (#1)**

**"But he said"**

Alternate translation: "But he still was not certain, so he asked him," or "but first he wanted to be completely certain, so he asked him,"

**Genesis 27:24 (#2)**

**"Are} you really my son Esau"**

Alternate translation: "Are you truly my son Esau?"

**Genesis 27:24 (#3)**

**"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob answered him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:24 (#4)**

**"I {am}"**

Alternate translation: "Yes, I am Esau." or "Yes, Father I am."

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:25 (#1)

**"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "So his father said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:25 (#2)

**"Bring {the food} to me"**

Your translation of Isaac's request should sound polite, not rude or demanding. It should also not sound like he was begging or pleading. Alternate translation: "Please bring me the food"

See:

### Genesis 27:25 (#3)

**"and I will eat some of my son's game, so that my soul will bless you"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 19. Alternate translation: "so that I can eat some of your wild animal meat and bless you."

### Genesis 27:25 (#4)

**"Then he brought {it} to him, and he ate"**

Alternate translation: "So Jacob brought the meal to his father, and he ate it."

### Genesis 27:25 (#5)

**"and he brought wine to him, and he drank"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Also, see how you translated **wine** in Gen 19:32-35. Alternate translation: "Jacob also brought him wine, and he drank it."

### Genesis 27:26 (#1)

**"Then Isaac his father said to him"**

Alternate translation: "Then Isaac said to him"

### Genesis 27:26 (#2)

**"Please come close"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 21. Alternate translation: "Come near to me"

### Genesis 27:26 (#3)

**"and kiss me, my son"**

It was a Hebrew custom for relatives and close friends to greet each other with a kiss on each cheek. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to put the address **my son** first in this quote.

### Genesis 27:27 (#1)

**"So he went close"**

See how you translated **went close** in verse 22. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob came close to his father"

### Genesis 27:27 (#2)

**"and kissed him"**

Alternate translation: "and kissed him on his cheek"

### Genesis 27:27 (#3)

**"so he blessed him"**

Alternate translation: "Then he blessed him"

### Genesis 27:27 (#4)

**"and said"**

Alternate translation: "by saying to him," or "He said to him,"

**Genesis 27:27 (#5)****""See, the smell of my son"**

Some translations put the words of Isaac's blessing in poetry format (beginning here and through verse 29). Be consistent here with how your translation team decides to format passages like this. Alternate translation: "Ahh, my son smells"

**Genesis 27:27 (#6)****"like the smell of a field"**

Alternate translation: "wonderful like the fragrance of a green field" or "wonderful the way a green field smells"

**Genesis 27:27 (#7)****"that Yahweh has blessed"**

Alternate translation: "that Yahweh has caused to be very productive!"

**Genesis 27:28 (#1)****"And may God give to you"**

In the Hebrew text, **you** is singular in verses 28–29 and refers to both Jacob and his descendants. If necessary, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "May God give you and your descendants" or "I pray that God will give you and your descendants"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 27:28 (#2)****""from the dew of the heavens"**

Alternate translation: "plenty of dew from the heavens for your crops and animals and riches from the soil" or "plenty of rain and rich soil,"

**Genesis 27:28 (#3)****"and an abundance of grain and wine"**

Alternate translation: "including an abundance of food and drink." or "so that you have abundant food and much wine."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 27:29 (#1)****""May peoples serve you,"**

If possible in your language, it is best to keep both halves of this parallelism, which is used to emphasize what Isaac is saying to Jacob. Alternate translation: "May people groups serve you and your descendants, and may they bow down to you in respect"

See: Parallelism

**Genesis 27:29 (#2)****"Be master"**

Alternate translation: "May you rule" or "You will even rule"

**Genesis 27:29 (#3)****"over your brothers"**

Jacob only had one brother, so this phrase refers here to Esau and his descendants. Alternate translation: "over your brother and his descendants,"

**Genesis 27:29 (#4)****"and may the sons of your mother bow down to you"**

This clause is another way of referring to Jacob's authority over Esau and his descendants. Consider again how you translated the singular **you** in verses 28–29. You could use a plural **you** here or you could say "you and your descendants". Alternate translation: "and they will bow down to you in submission." or "Yes, they too will submit to you and bow down to you."

See: Parallelism

**Genesis 27:29 (#5)****""May} those {who} curse you be cursed,"**

See how you translated **curse** in Gen 12:3. Alternate translation: "Whoever curses you will be cursed by God, but whoever blesses you will be blessed by him." or "I ask God to curse those who curse you, and I ask him to bless those who bless you."

**Genesis 27:30 (#1)****"Then it happened, just as Isaac finished blessing Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "Just as Isaac finished blessing Jacob,"

**Genesis 27:30 (#2)****"came in from his hunt"**

Alternate translation: "came back from hunting."

**Genesis 27:31 (#1)****"Then he too prepared tasty food"**

Consider again how you translated **prepared tasty food** in verses 4, 7, 9, 14, 31 and **tasty** in verse 17. Alternate translation: "Then Esau also cooked a tasty meal with the meat he had hunted,"

**Genesis 27:31 (#2)****"and he brought {it} to his father"**

Alternate translation: "and he carried it to his father Isaac"

**Genesis 27:31 (#3)****"and said to his father"**

Alternate translation: "and requested,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:31 (#4)****"Let my father get up"**

Esau's request to his father should sound polite in your translation, not rude or demanding.

See: Politeness

**Genesis 27:31 (#5)****"and eat from his son's game"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Esau is referring to himself in this phrase. Alternate translation: "and eat some of my wild animal meat"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 27:31 (#6)****"so that your soul can bless me"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verses 4, 19, 25 and 31. Alternate translation: "and then you can bless me."

**Genesis 27:32 (#1)****"But Isaac his father said to him"**

For some languages it is more natural to make **Isaac** explicit in verse 31 and leave it implied here in verse 32. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then his father asked him," or "But his father exclaimed,"

**Genesis 27:32 (#2)****"Who {are} you"**

Isaac knew from what Esau just said in verse 31 that one of his sons was talking to him. Also, Isaac is very upset, so some translations add an exclamation point after the question mark to help communicate that. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Which of my sons are you?!"

**Genesis 27:32 (#3)****"And he said"**



Alternate translation: "Esau answered him," or "Esau replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:32 (#4)

**"I {am} your son, your firstborn Esau"**

See how you translated **firstborn** in verse 19. Alternate translation: "I am your firstborn son Esau." or "I am Esau, your oldest son."

### Genesis 27:33 (#1)

**"Then Isaac trembled a very great tremble"**

Alternate translation: "Then Isaac became so upset that he shook very violently" or "Then Isaac was very upset, so that he began to shake all over,"

### Genesis 27:33 (#2)

**"Then who {was} it"**

Alternate translation: "Then where is the one"

### Genesis 27:33 (#3)

**"that hunted game and brought {it} to me"**

Consider again how you translated **game** in Gen 27:3, 5, 7, 19, 25, 31 and 33. It may be necessary to translate it in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "who hunted game meat and brought a meal to me?" or "who brought to me a meal made from wild animal meat?"

### Genesis 27:33 (#4)

**"And I ate from {it} all just before you came"**

Alternate translation: "Just before you came to me, I finished eating the meal" or "I finished eating it just before you came here"

### Genesis 27:33 (#5)

**"and I blessed him. Indeed, he will be blessed"**

Consider where it is most natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and then I blessed him. And God will surely bless him." or "Then I asked God to bless him, so God will definitely bless him."

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 27:34 (#1)

**"When Esau heard the words of his father"**

Alternate translation: "When Esau heard what his father said to him,"

### Genesis 27:34 (#2)

**"then he cried out a great and exceedingly bitter cry"**

Alternate translation: "he burst out with an extremely loud and bitter cry" or "he was so upset that he yelled out loudly"

### Genesis 27:34 (#3)

**"and said to his father"**

Alternate translation: "and begged him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:34 (#4)

**"Bless me, me too, my father"**

For some languages it is more natural to put the address "My father" or "Father" first in this sentence. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Father, please bless me too!"

### Genesis 27:35 (#1)

**"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "But his father replied to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:35 (#2)****"Your brother came in deceit and took your blessing"**

Alternate translation: "Your brother came to me and deceived me and stole the blessing that I was planning to give you." or "Your brother deceived me so that I blessed him instead of you!"

**Genesis 27:36 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Esau exclaimed angrily," or "When Esau heard that, he said angrily,"

**Genesis 27:36 (#2)****"Is it because his name is called Jacob that he has defrauded me these two times"**

Esau uses a rhetorical question here to show his strong emotion. Do what is most natural in your language. Also, in order to help readers understand why Esau said this about Jacob, some translations include a footnote like the following: The name **Jacob** means "heel-grabber" and can imply deception. He was given that name because when he was born, he was grabbing hold of Esau's heel (Genesis 25:26). Alternate translation: "It is no wonder that he is called Jacob, since he has cheated me two times!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 27:36 (#3)****"He took my birthright, and behold, now"**

Alternate translation: "First he stole my rights as the oldest son, and now see what he has done:" or "Not only did he take my birthright, but now see what he has done:"

**Genesis 27:36 (#4)****"he has taken my blessing"**

Alternate translation: "he has also stolen my blessing!" or "he has tricked you into blessing him instead of me!"

**Genesis 27:36 (#5)****"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "Then he begged his father," or "Then he pleaded with his father,"

**Genesis 27:36 (#6)****"Have you not reserved a blessing for me"**

Alternate translation: "Is there still some way you can ask God to bless me?"

**Genesis 27:37 (#1)****"But Isaac responded and said to Esau"**

Alternate translation: "Isaac replied to Esau" or "Isaac answered him,"

**Genesis 27:37 (#2)****"Behold, I have made him master over you"**

See how you translated **master** in verse 29. Alternate translation: "Look I have already appointed Jacob to be your master,"

**Genesis 27:37 (#3)****"and I have given all his brothers to him as servants"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated **brothers** in verse 29. Alternate translation: "In fact, I said that you and all your descendants will serve him." or "In fact, I have asked God to make it so that you and your descendants will serve him and his descendants."

**Genesis 27:37 (#4)****"And I have sustained him with grain and wine"**

See how you translated **grain and wine** in verse 28. Alternate translation: "Besides that, I have also supplied him with abundant food and wine" or "I have also asked God to supply him with plenty of food and wine"

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 27:37 (#5)

**"So then, what can I do for you, my son"**

Isaac uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that there is no blessing left for Esau. Alternate translation: "So my son, there is no blessing left for you!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 27:38 (#1)

**"But Esau said to his father"**

Alternate translation: "But Esau continued to beg his father and said," or "But again Esau begged"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:38 (#2)

**"Is there one blessing that you have, my father"**

It may be more natural to put **my father** or "Father" first in this quote. See what you did in verse 34.

### Genesis 27:38 (#3)

**"Bless me, me too, my father"**

See how you translated this sentence in verse 34. Alternate translation: "Father, please bless me too!"

### Genesis 27:38 (#4)

**"Then Esau lifted his voice and sobbed"**

See how you translated "lifted ... voice and sobbed" in Gen 21:16. Alternate translation: "Then Esau started sobbing loudly."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 27:39 (#1)

**"Then Isaac his father responded and said to him"**

Alternate translation: "So his father Isaac said to him," or "His father replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:39 (#2)

**"Behold, your dwelling will be"**

What Isaac says in verses 39–40 applies to Esau and his descendants. See what you did for a similar case in verses 28–29.

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 27:39 (#3)

**"away from the fatness of the earth"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "away from the fatness of the earth and away from the dew of the heavens from above." or "in a place/region where the earth/land/ground is not rich/fertile and where there is very little dew/rain." or "in a place/region where the land/soil is not good for farming and where there is not much rain." or (2) "of the fatness of the earth and of the dew of the heavens from above." or "in a place where the land is good/fertile for farming and where there is plenty of dew/rain." See how you translated **fatness of the earth** and **dew of the heavens** in verse 28.

### Genesis 27:40 (#1)

**"And you will live by your sword"**

The phrase **live by your sword** is an idiom that means Esau and his descendants will have violent conflict with others, often in order to survive. Alternate translation: "You and your descendants will survive by using your swords to protect yourselves," or "You and your descendants will continually be fighting battles with other peoples"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 27:40 (#2)****"and you will serve your brother"**

Alternate translation: "and you and your descendants will serve your brother and his descendants." or "and you and your descendants will be servants for your brother and his descendants."

**Genesis 27:40 (#3)****"But it will happen when you become restless"**

Consider again how you translated the singular **you** in verses 39–40. You could use a plural **you** here or you could say "you and your descendants". See what you did for a similar case in verses 28–29. Alternate translation: "But when you revolt against him"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 27:40 (#4)****""then you will break his yoke"**

The metaphor **break his yoke off of your neck** means Esau and his descendants will be free from the control of Jacob and his descendants. A yoke is a wooden collar that is placed around the necks of work animals to control them as they pull a plow or cart. Alternate translation: "you will get free from his rule over you." or "you will no longer be under his rule."

See: Metaphor

**Genesis 27:41 (#1)****"Then Esau hated Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "After that, Esau held a grudge against Jacob" or "Esau continued to be very angry at Jacob"

**Genesis 27:41 (#2)****"because of the blessing that his father had blessed him with"**

Consider again how you translated the terms "bless" and **blessing** in chapter 27. See verses 4, 7, 10, 19, 23, 25, 27, 29–31, 33–36, 38 and 41.

Alternate translation: "because his father had given his blessing to Jacob." or "because their father had blessed Jacob instead of him."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 27:41 (#3)****"and Esau said in his heart"**

Alternate translation: "So Esau said to himself,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:41 (#4)****"The days of the mourning of my father are near"**

In that culture, they had the custom of mourning the death of a loved one for a certain period of time, anywhere from a week to a month or more. See how you translated "mourn" in Gen 23:2. Alternate translation: "Soon my father will die, and we will have a time of mourning for him, then"

**Genesis 27:41 (#5)****"then I will kill"**

Alternate translation: "I am going to kill" or "I plan to kill"

**Genesis 27:42 (#1)****"But the words of Esau her older son were told to Rebekah"**

It was probably a servant who told Rebekah about Esau's plan to kill Jacob. Alternate translation: "Then someone told Rebekah what Esau was saying so" or "Then Rebekah heard about what her older son Esau was planning, so" or "When Rebekah heard what Esau was planning to do,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 27:42 (#2)****"so she sent and called for Jacob her younger son"**

Alternate translation: “she sent for her younger son Jacob to come to her” or “she sent a messenger to tell Jacob to come to her” or “she summoned her son Jacob”

### Genesis 27:42 (#3)

**"and said to him"**

Alternate translation: “and warned him,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 27:42 (#4)

**"Behold, Esau your brother is consoling himself about you, planning to kill you"**

Alternate translation: “Look your brother Esau is making himself feel better by planning to kill you.”

### Genesis 27:43 (#1)

**"So now, my son"**

See how you translated **So now** in verses 3 and 8.

Alternate translation: “Now son,”

### Genesis 27:43 (#2)

**"listen to my voice"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 8 and 13. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the context. Alternate translation: “do what I tell you:”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 27:43 (#3)

**"and get up, flee for yourself"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “get ready immediately and flee” or “Hurry and flee” or “Flee immediately”

### Genesis 27:43 (#4)

**"to Laban my brother in Haran"**

For some languages, it is more natural to put the location (Haran) before the person who lives there (Laban). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “to my brother Laban who lives in the city of Haran!” or “to the city of Haran, to the house of my brother Laban!”

### Genesis 27:44 (#1)

**"And stay with him for a few days"**

Alternate translation: “Stay with him for a short time”

### Genesis 27:44 (#2)

**"until the fury of your brother turns away"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to end this sentence here or to continue the sentence into verse 45. Also, the phrase **turns away** is used here as an idiom that means “becomes less” or “goes away”. Alternate translation: “until your brother is no longer furious with you”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 27:45 (#1)

**"until the anger of your brother turns away from you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, notice that the Hebrew word for **anger** here is different from the stronger word (“fury”) in verse 44. Alternate translation: “until his anger against you is gone” or “After a while, when your brother is no longer angry with you”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 27:45 (#2)

**"and he forgets what you have done to him"**

Rebekah is not saying that Esau would totally forget what Jacob did, but that at some point he would not hold it against him anymore. Alternate translation: “and he no longer thinks about what you did”

**Genesis 27:45 (#3)****"Then I will send and get you from there"**

Alternate translation: "I will send someone to tell you when it is safe to come back home."

**Genesis 27:45 (#4)****"Why should I also lose both of you {in} one day"**

Rebekah knew that if Esau were to kill Jacob, he himself would have been killed for that crime. Consider whether it is best in your language to use a rhetorical question or an exclamation to emphasize Rebekah's concern. Alternate translation: "I do not want both my sons to be killed!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 27:46 (#1)****"Then Rebekah said to Isaac"**

Alternate translation: "Soon after that, Rebekah said to Isaac,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 27:46 (#2)****"I am disgusted with my life"**

Rebekah is exaggerating how she feels to influence Isaac to do what she wants. Alternate translation: "I do not enjoy living" or "I am very upset"

See: Hyperbole

**Genesis 27:46 (#3)****"because of the daughters of Heth"**

To show that Rebekah is speaking with strong emotion, you could use an exclamation point at the end of this sentence and the following one. Alternate translation: "because of the Hittite women whom Esau married!"

**Genesis 27:46 (#4)****"If Jacob takes a wife from the daughters of Heth like these, from daughters of the land"**

Alternate translation: "If Jacob also marries a Hittite woman from around here,"

**Genesis 27:46 (#5)****"what {would} life {be} to me"**

Rebekah uses a rhetorical question and hyperbole to emphasize how upset she would be if Jacob married a Hittite woman. Alternate translation: "my life will not be worth living!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 28:1 (#1)****"Then Isaac called for Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "So Isaac sent for Jacob to come to him" or "Because of what Rebekah said, Isaac summoned Jacob"

**Genesis 28:1 (#2)****"and blessed him"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, for some languages it may be necessary to make it explicit that Jacob arrived. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then he blessed him" or "After he came, Isaac blessed him"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 28:1 (#3)****"and commanded him and said to him"**

Alternate translation: "and instructed him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 28:1 (#4)****"Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan"**

If the word “woman” is used here in your translation, make sure it refers to a virgin woman who has never been married, or is general enough to include that. Alternate translation: “Do not marry a woman who is a descendant of Canaan.” or “You must not take a wife from among the Canaanite women.” or “Do not marry a Canaanite woman.”

### Genesis 28:2 (#1)

#### "Get up, go"

See how you translated “get up” in Gen 27:43. Alternate translation: “Rather get up and go”

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Genesis 28:2 (#2)

#### "to Paddan Aram"

Be consistent here with how you translated **Paddan Aram** in Gen 25:20. Alternate translation: “to the land of Paddan Aram,”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 28:2 (#3)

#### "and take a wife for yourself from there"

Alternate translation: “and find a woman from there to marry”

### Genesis 28:2 (#4)

#### "from the daughters of Laban the brother of your mother"

Laban was Rebekah’s older brother. Some languages have a special term for this that is used here.

See: Kinship

### Genesis 28:3 (#1)

#### "And may God Almighty bless you"

Most translation teams translate the meaning of God’s title here (**God Almighty**). A few teams

transliterate the title as “El Shaddai” as if it were a personal name (which it is not). See how you handled **God Almighty** in Gen 17:1. Alternate translation: “I pray that Almighty God will bless you” or “I ask God, who is all-powerful, to bless you” or “I pray that God, who is all-powerful, will prosper you”

### Genesis 28:3 (#2)

#### "and make you fruitful"

Alternate translation: “and enable you to have many children”

### Genesis 28:3 (#3)

#### "and multiply you"

See how you translated **fruitful and multiply** in Gen 17:20. It may need to be translated in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “so that you have many descendants and”

### Genesis 28:3 (#4)

#### "so that you become a community of peoples"

Alternate translation: “so that you become the ancestor of many ethnic groups.” or “so that many people groups will descend from you.” or “so that they become many ethnic groups.”

### Genesis 28:4 (#1)

#### "And may he give the blessing of Abraham to you, to you and to your offspring with you"

Alternate translation: “I also ask God to bless you and your descendants the same way that he blessed Abraham,”

### Genesis 28:4 (#2)

#### "so that you possess the land of"

Alternate translation: “so that you will own the land” or “so that you will take possession of the land”

**Genesis 28:4 (#3)****"your sojournings"**

See how you translated **land of your sojournings** in Gen 17:8; it may be necessary to translate this differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: "where you have been residing as a outsider," or "where you and your ancestors have been living as outsiders,"

**Genesis 28:4 (#4)****"which God gave to Abraham"**

Alternate translation: "the same land which God promised to him."

**Genesis 28:5 (#1)****"Then Isaac sent Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "Then Isaac said good-bye to Jacob,"

**Genesis 28:5 (#2)****"and he went"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like Jacob had already arrived at Paddan Aram. Alternate translation: "and he left to go" or "and Jacob started traveling"

**Genesis 28:5 (#3)****"to Paddan Aram, to Laban"**

Consider whether is more natural in your language to refer to Paddan Aram first or to Laban first in this sentence. Also see how you translated **to Paddan Aram** in verses 2 and 5. Alternate translation: "to the land of Paddan Aram, to Laban"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 28:5 (#4)****"the son of Bethuel the Aramean"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, be consistent with how you spelled the name **Bethuel** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 22:22–23; 24:15, 24, 47, 50; 25:20; 28:2, 5. Alternate translation: "who was the son of Bethuel the Aramean"

**Genesis 28:6 (#1)****"Now Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob and had sent him to Paddan Aram"**

Alternate translation: "Now Esau had observed Isaac bless Jacob and send him to the land of Paddan Aram"

**Genesis 28:6 (#2)****"to take a wife for himself from there"**

Alternate translation: "to marry a wife from among his relatives there"

**Genesis 28:6 (#3)****"and that} when he blessed him, then he commanded him, saying"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated **commanded** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "and that as Isaac was blessing Jacob, he told him" or "As Isaac was blessing Jacob, Esau heard him tell him"

**Genesis 28:6 (#4)****"Do not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this direct quote as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "You must not take a woman who is a descendant of Canaan," or "that he must not choose a wife from among the Canaanite women,"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations



**Genesis 28:7 (#1)**

**"and {that} Jacob listened to his father and to his mother"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and he also observed that Jacob obeyed his father and mother" or "Esau also noticed that Jacob obeyed his parents"

**Genesis 28:7 (#2)**

**"and went to Paddan Aram"**

Alternate translation: "and immediately left to go to Paddan Aram."

**Genesis 28:8 (#1)**

**"Then Esau saw that"**

Alternate translation: "That is how Esau understood that"

**Genesis 28:8 (#2)**

**"the daughters of Canaan were displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father"**

Alternate translation: "his father Isaac did not want his sons to marry Canaanite women."

**Genesis 28:9 (#1)**

**"So Esau went to Ishmael"**

Most likely Ishmael was already dead by this time, so that Esau went to the region where Ishmael's children and other descendants were living. Alternate translation: "Then Esau traveled to the clan of Ishmael"

**Genesis 28:9 (#2)**

**"the sister of Nebaioth"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Nebaioth** in Gen 25:13. Since Nebaioth was Ishmael's oldest child, Mahalath was his younger sister, probably from the same mother. Use a kinship term here in your language for **sister** or "brother" that fits with

those facts. Alternate translation: "and who was the younger sister of Nebaioth," or "and whose older brother was Nebaioth,"

See: Kinship

**Genesis 28:9 (#3)**

**"in addition to his wives {who belonged} to him"**

For some languages it may be better to change the order of some of the clauses in this sentence and say, "So, in addition to the two wives he already had, Esau went to the family of Abraham's son Ishmael and married Ishmael's daughter Mahalath, whose brother was Nebaioth." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "besides the two wives he already had."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 28:10 (#1)**

**"And Jacob left from Beersheba and set out"**

Verse 10 refers back to verse 5, where Jacob had left his parents' home in Beersheba to go to Paddan Aram. Make sure your translation does not sound like he left a second time here in verse 10. Alternate translation: "Meanwhile Jacob had left the city of Beersheba and was traveling"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 28:10 (#2)**

**"for Haran"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob was heading toward the same place that his father had told him to go to in verse 2. The author assumed here that his audience knew that Haran was a city located in the Paddan Aram region. It may be helpful to include a map in your translation that shows the locations of the city of Haran and the region of Paddan Aram. Alternate translation: "toward the city of Haran in the region of Paddan Aram."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 28:11 (#1)**

**"Then he reached a {certain} place, and he stopped there"**

Alternate translation: "That evening he reached a good place to camp so he stayed the night there" or "Late that evening he came to a place where he stayed for the night"

**Genesis 28:11 (#2)**

**"because the sun had gone"**

For some languages it is more natural to put the information in this clause first in this sentence and say, "After the sun went down, he reached a good place to camp/sleep, so he stopped/stayed there for the night." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because the sun had gone down."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 28:11 (#3)**

**"And he took {one} of the stones of the place"**

The way you translate "stone" should refer to something that would be large enough to support Jacob's head, but not so large that it would be too heavy for him to lift. For example in English, a pebble is too small and a boulder is too big. Alternate translation: "He picked out a large flat stone that he found there"

**Genesis 28:11 (#4)**

**"and put it under his head"**

Alternate translation: "and rested his head on it as a pillow," or "and used it as a headrest" or "to use as a pillow,"

**Genesis 28:11 (#5)**

**"and he lay down in that place"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "then he lay down there and went to sleep." or "Then he lay down there on the ground and went to sleep." or "then he went to sleep there."

**Genesis 28:12 (#1)**

**"And he dreamed"**

Alternate translation: "And as he dreamed," or "As he slept, he had a dream and"

**Genesis 28:12 (#2)**

**"and behold, a stairway was set up on the earth"**

This stairway was wide enough for there to be angels moving up and down on it at the same time. Alternate translation: "he saw a staircase whose base was resting on the ground" or "he saw a staircase. The base of the stairway was on the ground"

See:

**Genesis 28:12 (#3)**

**"and its top reached to the heavens"**

Alternate translation: "and the top of it went all the way up into the sky,"

**Genesis 28:12 (#4)**

**"and behold, angels of God were ascending and descending on it"**

See how you translated "angel" in Gen 24:7, 40. Alternate translation: "and there were angels of God who were going up and down on the stairway."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 28:13 (#1)**

**"And behold, Yahweh was standing above it"**

The phrase for **above it** in the Hebrew text is ambiguous. It could mean: (1) **above it** or "at the top of the stairway" or (2) "above/beside him/Jacob". The interpretation that is not followed in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Then suddenly Yahweh was standing at the top of the stairway," or "And Yahweh was also there, standing at the top of the stairway"

**Genesis 28:13 (#2)**

**"the God of Abraham your grandfather and the God of Isaac"**

Abraham was Jacob's grandfather and ancestor. Alternate translation: "the God whom your forefathers Abraham and Isaac serve" or "the God who takes care of your forefathers Abraham and Isaac."

**Genesis 28:13 (#3)**

**"The land that you are lying on I will give to you and to your offspring"**

In the Hebrew text, "the land that you are lying on" comes first in this sentence in order to emphasize it and show its importance. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The land where you are lying I am giving to you and your descendants." or "I will give you and your descendants this land that you are sleeping on."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 28:14 (#1)**

**"And your offspring will be"**

Alternate translation: "And your descendants will be" or "You will have so many descendants that they will be"

**Genesis 28:14 (#2)**

**"like the dust of the earth"**

See how you translated **dust** in Gen 13:16. Alternate translation: "as many as the dust specks on the ground,"

See: Simile

**Genesis 28:14 (#3)**

**"and you will spread out"**

In this clause **you** refers to Jacob's descendants. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

Alternate translation: "and your people will spread out" or "so that they expand their territory"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 28:14 (#4)**

**"to the west and to the east and to the north and to the south"**

See how you translated the names of the directions "west," "east," "north," and **south** in Gen 13:14. Notice that they are in a different order there. Alternate translation: "to the west, east, north, and south." or "to the north, south, east, and west."

**Genesis 28:14 (#5)**

**"in you and in your offspring"**

Be consistent here with how you translated **your offspring** in Gen 22:18 and 26:4. Alternate translation: "In you and your offspring" or "Because of you and your offspring" or "By means of you and your offspring"

**Genesis 28:14 (#6)**

**"And" - "all the families of the earth will be blessed"**

For some languages it may be better to change the order of phrases in this sentence and say, "And I will bless all the families in the world through you and your offspring/descendants." or "I will use you and your offspring/descendants to bless all the families on earth." See how you translated similar Messianic blessings in Gen 12:3, 18:18, 22:18, and 26:4. Alternate translation: "all the families on the earth will be blessed by me." or "I will bless all the clans in the world."

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 28:15 (#1)**

**"And behold"**

Alternate translation: "Listen to this:"

**Genesis 28:15 (#2)****"I {am} with you"**

See how you translated **I am with you** in Gen 26:24 and "I will be with you" in Gen 26:3. Alternate translation: "I will always stay with you." or "I promise to always be with you and help you."

**Genesis 28:15 (#3)****"and I will watch over you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "I will guard you" or "I will take care of you"

**Genesis 28:15 (#4)****"in every {place} that you go"**

Alternate translation: "everywhere that you go" or "wherever you live,"

**Genesis 28:15 (#5)****"and I will bring you back to this land"**

Alternate translation: "and I will guide you back to this land."

**Genesis 28:15 (#6)****"For I will not leave you"**

Alternate translation: "In fact, I will never abandon you"

**Genesis 28:15 (#7)****"until I have done what I have spoken to you"**

Make sure your translation of **until** does not sound like God will only be with Jacob up to the time that he fulfills his promises. Rather the focus is on the period of time between now when God is speaking to Jacob and the time later on when Jacob would see the fulfillment of God's promises to him.

**Genesis 28:16 (#1)****"Then Jacob woke up from his sleep and said"**

Alternate translation: "Suddenly Jacob woke up from his dream and said to himself," or "When Jacob woke up from his dream, he said to himself,"

**Genesis 28:16 (#2)****"Surely Yahweh is in this place"**

Alternate translation: "Certainly Yahweh is here in this place," or "Yahweh definitely lives here,"

**Genesis 28:16 (#3)****"but I did not know {it}"**

Alternate translation: "but I did not realize it before now!" or "but I was not aware of that before!"

**Genesis 28:17 (#1)****"So he was afraid and said"**

Alternate translation: "He was afraid, so he also said"

**Genesis 28:17 (#2)****"How awesome this place is"**

The word **awesome** refers here to the terror that Jacob was feeling from being in the holy presence of Almighty God. Alternate translation: "This is an awesome place!" or "This place is terrifying!"

**Genesis 28:17 (#3)****"This is nothing other than the house of God"**

Alternate translation: "It must be the house where God himself lives!"

**Genesis 28:17 (#4)****"and this {is} the gateway of heaven"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation:

"It can only be the gateway to heaven!" or "It must be the gateway to heaven!"

### Genesis 28:18 (#1)

**"Then in the morning Jacob got up early"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob got up early the next morning,"

### Genesis 28:18 (#2)

**"and he took the stone that he had put under his head"**

See how you translated **stone** and **under his head** in verse 11. Alternate translation: "took the stone that he had used as a headrest"

### Genesis 28:18 (#3)

**"and stood it up"**

Alternate translation: "and stood it up on its end"

### Genesis 28:18 (#4)

**"as} a pillar"**

The word **pillar** refers here to a stone that is used to commemorate something. In this case, Jacob used a stone to mark and help him remember the place where God had appeared to him. Alternate translation: "as a marker," or "as a memorial stone," or "to mark that place where God had appeared to him."

### Genesis 28:18 (#5)

**"and he poured oil on its top"**

In Bible times people poured olive oil on a person's head or on objects (as here) to dedicate that person or object to God. Make sure that the way you translate **oil** does not refer to motor oil. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then he poured some olive oil on top of the pillar to dedicate the place to God."

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 28:19 (#1)

**"And he called the name of that place Bethel"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bethel** in Gen 12:8 and 13:3.

### Genesis 28:19 (#2)

**"even though Luz {had been} the name of the town at first"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "even though originally that town was called Luz." or "Originally the name of that town had been Luz."

### Genesis 28:20 (#1)

**"Then Jacob vowed a vow, saying"**

See how you translated a clause that has a similar meaning ("swear to ...") in Gen 21:23, 31. Alternate translation: "Then he made a pledge to God and said,"

### Genesis 28:20 (#2)

**"If God will be with me"**

Since Jacob is making this vow to God, for some languages it is more natural to address God directly (as "you") throughout verses 20–22, rather than only in the last half of verse 22 (as the Hebrew text does). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "God, if you will be with me"

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 28:20 (#3)

**"and watch over me"**

See how you translated **watch over** in verse 15. Alternate translation: "and guard me" or "and take care of me"

**Genesis 28:20 (#4)****"on this road that I am walking on"**

The way you translate this phrase should reflect that fact that Jacob's journey from his home to the city of Haran was about 725 kilometers (450 miles) long. Alternate translation: "on this long journey I am taking" or "as I travel on this long journey"

**Genesis 28:20 (#5)****"and give to me bread to eat and clothes to wear"**

In this context **bread** refers to food in general, not just bread. Alternate translation: "and if you give me food to eat and clothes to wear," or "and if you provide me with food and clothes,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 28:21 (#1)****"and {if} I return in peace"**

Alternate translation: "and if I come back safely"

**Genesis 28:21 (#2)****"to the home of my father"**

This phrase especially refers to Jacob's father's family members, not just the physical home. Alternate translation: "to my family,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 28:21 (#3)****"then Yahweh will be God to me"**

Alternate translation: "then Yahweh, you will be the God whom I worship," or "then I will serve you Yahweh as my God,"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 28:22 (#1)****"and this stone that I have stood up {as} a pillar will be the house of God"**

See how you translated **as a pillar** in verse 18. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "This stone that I have set up will be your house and will mark this place where you appeared to me," or "and this memorial stone that I set up will remind people that you live here,"

**Genesis 28:22 (#2)****"and all that you give to me I will tithe a tenth to you"**

Consider again how you translated the way Jacob refers to Yahweh in verses 20–22; see the note about this at verse 20. Also see how you translated **tithe** in Gen 14:20. Alternate translation: "and everything that you give to me, I will give a tenth of it back to you." or "and I will give back to you ten percent of everything that you give to me."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 29:1 (#1)****"Then Jacob lifted his feet and went"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob continued traveling until he came"

**Genesis 29:1 (#2)****"to the land of the sons of the east"**

This land was located east of the land of Canaan and included the region of Paddan Aram where Jacob's uncle Laban lived in the city of Haran (Gen 27:43; 28:5). See how you translated **east** in Gen 28:14. Alternate translation: "to the land in the east where various ethnic groups lived." or "to the region that was east of the land of Canaan where the eastern ethnic groups lived."

**Genesis 29:2 (#1)****"And he looked"**

Jacob was now near the city of Haran (verse 4), which was in the land east of Canaan (verse 1). Alternate translation: "Then he looked around," or "When he got there, he looked around," or "When

he arrived at a place near the city of Haran, he looked around,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 29:2 (#2)

**"and behold, a well {was} in the field"**

The word **field** refers to an open area of land, not a fenced-in area. See how you translated this term in Gen 25:27, 29. Alternate translation: "and he saw a well in an open area" or "and there in an open field was a well"

### Genesis 29:2 (#3)

**"and behold, three flocks of sheep were lying there"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He saw three flocks of sheep that were lying down" or "There were three flocks of sheep lying down"

### Genesis 29:2 (#4)

**"near it"**

Alternate translation: "beside it," or "beside the well waiting for water,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 29:2 (#5)

**"because from that well the flocks were watered"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "because that was the well where the shepherds got water for the flocks," or "That was the well that sheep drank water from,"

### Genesis 29:2 (#6)

**"and the stone over the mouth of the well {was} large"**

This stone would have been very large and heavy and probably had been cut into a circular shape to cover the round opening of the well. You could include here in your translation a picture of a well with a round, flat stone covering it. Alternate translation: "but the stone covering the top of the well was large and heavy." or "but there was a heavy large stone over the opening of the well."

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 29:3 (#1)

**"And all the flocks would be gathered there, then they would roll the stone"**

Verse 3 tells what happened regularly every day. Consider what is the best way to communicate this in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translated **stone** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "Every day shepherds would bring all their flocks of sheep there. They would work together to roll the stone" or "After all the shepherds brought their flocks there, together they would remove the stone"

### Genesis 29:3 (#2)

**"from over the mouth of the well"**

Alternate translation: "off the top of the well"

### Genesis 29:3 (#3)

**"and water the sheep"**

See how you translated "watered" in verse 2, and how you translated a different word that has a similar meaning ("draw water") in Gen 24:19–20. Alternate translation: "and get water from it for the sheep to drink."

### Genesis 29:3 (#4)

**"Then they would return the stone to its place"**

Alternate translation: "Then they would roll the stone back"

**Genesis 29:3 (#5)****"over the mouth of the well"**

Alternate translation: "over the opening of the well."

**Genesis 29:4 (#1)****"Then Jacob said to them"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob greeted the shepherds,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 29:4 (#2)****"My brothers"**

This is a polite, friendly idiom used as a greeting; it does not mean that the shepherds were actually Jacob's relatives. Many languages have a similar greeting. Alternate translation: "Friends,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 29:4 (#3)****"And they said"**

Alternate translation: "They replied to him," or "They answered him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 29:4 (#4)****"We {are} from Haran"**

Your translation should not sound like the city of Haran was far away from there; it was nearby. Alternate translation: "We live in the city of Haran."

**Genesis 29:5 (#1)****"Then he said to them"**

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to translate quote margins in a conversation that goes back and forth quickly like the one in verses 4–8. After the conversation gets started, it often sounds more life-like and natural to

shorten the quote margins and leave implied some of the references to the people who are being talked to (as long as it is still clear who is talking to whom).

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 29:5 (#2)****"Do you know Laban, the grandson of Nahor"**

Consider what is the best way to order this question in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 29:5 (#3)****"And they said"**

Alternate translation: "They replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 29:5 (#4)****"We know him"**

Hebrew does not have a single word for "Yes", but rather repeats words from what was asked. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yes, we know him."

**Genesis 29:6 (#1)****"Then he said to them"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob asked,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 29:6 (#2)****"Are {things} well for him"**

Jacob is asking about Laban's general well-being, not just his health. Alternate translation: "Are things going well for him?"

**Genesis 29:6 (#3)****"Things are} well"**



Alternate translation: "Yes, things are good for him."

### Genesis 29:7 (#1)

**"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob said to them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 29:7 (#2)

**"Behold, the day {is} still large"**

This is an idiom that means there are still many more hours of daytime left. Consider whether your language has an idiom for this. Alternate translation: "Look, it is still the middle of the day" or "Look, the sun is still high in the sky" or "There is still a lot of daylight left"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 29:7 (#3)

**"It is} not time for the livestock to be gathered"**

Alternate translation: "so it is too soon to gather the flocks for the night."

### Genesis 29:7 (#4)

**"Water the sheep"**

For some languages it sounds too rude for Jacob to make a direct command here, so it is better to make this a suggestion or even a rhetorical question. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "You ought to get water for them" or "It seems like you should water your sheep" or "So why not water your sheep"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 29:7 (#5)

**"and go pasture {them}"**

Alternate translation: "then take them back out to the fields to graze some more." or "then you can take them out to eat more grass."

### Genesis 29:8 (#1)

**"But they said"**

Alternate translation: "But they said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 29:8 (#2)

**"We cannot"**

Alternate translation: "We have to wait"

### Genesis 29:8 (#3)

**"until all the flocks are gathered"**

Alternate translation: "until all the shepherds have brought their flocks here"

### Genesis 29:8 (#4)

**"and they roll the stone"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the ones who are talking here are also shepherds. See how you translated this phrase in verse 3." Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and we all remove the stone"

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 29:8 (#5)

**"from over the mouth of the well"**

See how you translated this phrase in verses 2 and 3. Alternate translation: "off the top of the well"

### Genesis 29:8 (#6)

**"Then we will water the sheep"**

Alternate translation: "and draw water for the flocks."

**Genesis 29:9 (#1)****"He was still talking with them"**

Alternate translation: "While Jacob was still talking to the shepherds,"

**Genesis 29:9 (#2)****"because she was tending them"**

Alternate translation: "because she was the one who tended them."

**Genesis 29:10 (#1)****"Then it happened, when"**

Alternate translation: "When"

**Genesis 29:10 (#2)****"then Jacob went over"**

Alternate translation: "he went over to the well"

**Genesis 29:10 (#3)****"and rolled the stone from over the mouth of the well"**

Alternate translation: "and took the stone off the top of the well," or "removed the stone that was covering it,"

**Genesis 29:10 (#4)****"and watered"**

See how you translated **watered** in verses 2–3, 7–8, and in 24:14, 20. Alternate translation: "and got water for"

**Genesis 29:11 (#1)****"Then Jacob kissed Rachel"**

In that culture it was common to greet a relative with a kiss on the cheek (or both cheeks). However, if it would be offensive in your culture for Jacob to kiss Rachel here, you could translate this more

generally (See: the second alternate translation above). Also see how you translated "kiss" in Gen 27:26–27. Alternate translation: "Then he kissed Rachel on the cheek" or "Then he greeted Rachel enthusiastically as one of his relatives"

**Genesis 29:11 (#2)****"and lifted his voice and cried"**

See how you translated the idiom **lifted his voice** in Gen 27:38. However, here Jacob is crying because he is happy, not upset. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "and he started crying loudly because he was so happy."

**Genesis 29:12 (#1)****"Then Jacob told Rachel"**

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to refer to Jacob and Rachel in this context.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 29:12 (#2)****"that he {was} a relative of her father and that he {was} a son of Rebekah"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to use an indirect quote here or a direct quote. Alternate translation: "that her father Laban was his uncle and that her aunt Rebekah was his mother."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 29:12 (#3)****"Then she ran and told her father"**

Alternate translation: "Then she ran home and told her father the news." or "So she ran home to her father and informed him about Jacob."

**Genesis 29:13 (#1)****"And it happened, when Laban heard"**

Alternate translation: "When Laban found out" or "As soon as Laban heard"

### Genesis 29:13 (#2)

**"the news about Jacob the son of his sister"**

Alternate translation: "that his nephew Jacob was there,"

### Genesis 29:13 (#3)

**"then he ran to meet him"**

Alternate translation: "he ran out to meet him."

### Genesis 29:13 (#4)

**"Then he embraced him"**

Alternate translation: "Then he hugged Jacob" or "He gave him a hug"

### Genesis 29:13 (#5)

**"and kissed him"**

See how you translated **kissed** in verse 11. Alternate translation: "and kissed him on his cheeks" or "and greeted him warmly as one of his relatives"

### Genesis 29:13 (#6)

**"and brought him to his house"**

Alternate translation: "and took him back to his house." or "and took him home."

### Genesis 29:13 (#7)

**"Then he told Laban all these things"**

Laban's response in verse 14 implies that Jacob told him about himself here in verse 13. Alternate translation: "Then he told Laban about himself and everything that had happened,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 29:14 (#1)

**"and Laban said to him"**

Alternate translation: "and Laban responded"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 29:14 (#2)

**"You {are} indeed my bone and my flesh"**

This is an idiom that means Jacob is a close, biological relative of Laban. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom. Alternate translation: "You are definitely my own flesh and blood!" or "You are definitely my close relative!"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 29:14 (#3)

**"Then he stayed with him"**

Your choice here in verse 14 will determine whether or not this sentence continues into verse 15. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob stayed and served for Laban"

### Genesis 29:14 (#4)

**"a month of days"**

Alternate translation: "for thirty days"

### Genesis 29:15 (#1)

**"Then Laban said to Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "Laban asked him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 29:15 (#2)

**"Because you {are} my relative, should you then serve me for nothing"**

See how you translated **relative** in verse 12. This rhetorical question expects the implied answer "No, of course not!" Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a statement here

instead. Alternate translation: “Just because you are my nephew, does that mean that you should work for me without pay?” or “Even though you are my relative that does not mean that you should have to work for me for free!” or “You should not have to work for me for nothing just because you are my nephew!”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 29:15 (#3)

**"Tell me, what {are} your wages"**

Alternate translation: “So tell me what your wages should be.” or “So tell me what you want me to pay you for your work.”

### Genesis 29:16 (#1)

**"Now Laban had two daughters"**

Verses 16–17 introduce background information for what happens in the verses that follow that. Translate this in a way that is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: “Now it so happened that Laban had two daughters:”

See: Connect — Background Information

### Genesis 29:16 (#2)

**"The name of the older {was} Leah, and the name of the younger {was} Rachel"**

Alternate translation: “The name of the older daughter was Leah, and the younger daughter was Rachel.” or “The older one was named Leah and the younger daughter was named Rachel.”

### Genesis 29:17 (#1)

**"And the eyes of Leah {were} delicate"**

The Hebrew word for **delicate** is ambiguous in this context. It can have: (1) a positive meaning of “pretty” or **lovely** or (2) a negative meaning of “weak”, which implies that Leah’s eyes were plain, dull, or unattractive.

### Genesis 29:17 (#2)

**"but Rachel was lovely of form and beautiful of appearance"**

Alternate translation: “whereas Rachel was extremely beautiful in every way.”

### Genesis 29:18 (#1)

**"And Jacob loved Rachel"**

Alternate translation: “Jacob had fallen in love with Rachel,”

### Genesis 29:18 (#2)

**"so he said"**

Alternate translation: “so he responded to Laban,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 29:18 (#3)

**"I will serve you seven years"**

Jacob is offering seven years of work as the dowry or bride-price for Rachel. Translate this sentence in a way that reflects that.

### Genesis 29:18 (#4)

**"for Rachel your younger daughter"**

Alternate translation: “in exchange for your younger daughter Rachel as my wife.” or “if you will give me your younger daughter Rachel to be my wife.”

### Genesis 29:19 (#1)

**"It is} better for me to give her to you than for me to give her to" - "man"**

Alternate translation: “I agree to your terms. I would much rather give her to you to marry than give her to some other man.”

**Genesis 29:19 (#2)****"Stay with me"**

Alternate translation: "So stay and work with me."

**Genesis 29:20 (#1)****"So Jacob served seven years for Rachel"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob worked seven years for Laban so that he could have Rachel,"

**Genesis 29:20 (#2)****"but in his eyes they were like a few days because of his love for her"**

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of the clauses in this sentence so that the cause is mentioned before the effect (See: the second alternate translation above). Do what is most clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "but to him it seemed like only a few days had passed because he loved her so much." or "but he loved her so much that to him the years seemed to pass quickly like only a few days."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 29:21 (#1)****"Then Jacob said to Laban"**

Alternate translation: "After that, Jacob requested of Laban,"

**Genesis 29:21 (#2)****"Give {me} my wife, because my days are completed, so that I may go to her"**

Consider what is the best order for the clauses in this sentence in your language. Also make sure that Jacob's request here sounds polite in your translation, not rude or demanding. It should also not sound like he was begging or pleading. Alternate translation: "Please let me marry your daughter Rachel now so that I can live with her as my wife, because I have finished my seven years of service for you." or "I have fulfilled the seven years of service that we agreed on, so please let me have

your daughter Rachel so that I can marry her and live with her."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 29:22 (#1)****"Then Laban gathered all the people of the place and made a feast"**

Consider what is the best way to order these events in your language. Alternate translation: "Then Laban gathered all the local people and held a wedding feast." or "Then Laban prepared a marriage feast and invited everyone who lived in town to attend."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 29:23 (#1)****"But it happened in the evening"**

Alternate translation: "However this is what happened that evening:"

**Genesis 29:23 (#2)****"that he took Leah his daughter and brought her to him"**

Alternate translation: "Laban took Leah to Jacob instead of Rachel,"

**Genesis 29:23 (#3)****"and he went"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that **he** refers here to Jacob, not Laban. Alternate translation: "so he" or "so that Jacob"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 29:23 (#4)****"and he went to her"**

Make sure that your translation of **he** refers here to Jacob, not Laban. See how you translated the euphemism **went to** in Gen 16:4 (and "go to" in Gen 16:2 and 29:21). Translate this in a way that is

natural, clear, and acceptable for reading in public. Alternate translation: “so that he had sexual relations with Leah.” or “so he slept with Leah.” or “spent the night with her”

See: Euphemism

## Genesis 29:24 (#1)

### "And Laban gave"

It is not clear in the Hebrew text when Laban gave Zilpah to Leah, so it is probably best to keep it that way in your translation. Some translations say that Laban “had already given” Zilpah to Leah before the wedding night. However according to Jewish history (outside the Bible), it was on the wedding night that Laban did this as part of his plan to deceive Jacob: Zilpah was younger than Bilhah, so everyone would expect her to be given to Rachel as the younger sister; seeing Zilpah (instead of Bilhah) would help Jacob think that his veiled bride was Rachel. Since we do not know for sure which interpretation is right, it is probably best to be like the Hebrew text and not specify when Laban gave Zilpah to Leah. Some translations put this verse in parentheses because it seems to interrupt the telling of the main events. Alternate translation: “In addition, Laban gave”

## Genesis 29:24 (#2)

### "to her Zilpah his maidservant, to Leah his daughter"

Alternate translation: “to Leah a female servant named Zilpah”

## Genesis 29:24 (#3)

### "to be) a maidservant"

Alternate translation: “to be her personal attendant.” or “to serve her.” or “to attend to her.”

## Genesis 29:25 (#1)

### "Then it happened in the morning"

Alternate translation: “The next morning”

## Genesis 29:25 (#2)

### "that behold, she {was} Leah"

Translate **behold** in a way that shows Jacob's surprise at finding out that he had married Leah instead of Rachel. Also, make sure that your translation of **she** refers here to Leah, not Zilpah (who was mentioned in verse 24). Alternate translation: “Jacob saw that his new wife was Leah!” or “Jacob was shocked to discover that it was Leah he had married!”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 29:25 (#3)

### "So he said to Laban"

Some languages use an honorific title such as “his father-in-law” here now that Jacob is married. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “So he complained to his father-in-law Laban,” or “So he rebuked Laban and said,”

See:

## Genesis 29:25 (#4)

### "What {is} this you have done to me"

In this verse, Jacob uses rhetorical questions to communicate how angry and upset he is. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Also see how you translated this question in Gen 12:18, 20:9, 26:10. Alternate translation: “Why have you treated me like this?”

See: Rhetorical Question

## Genesis 29:25 (#5)

### "Was {it} not for Rachel that I served with you"

Alternate translation: “You know very well that I worked for you in order to marry Rachel!”

See: Rhetorical Question

## Genesis 29:25 (#6)

### "So why have you deceived me"

See how you translated a different word ("deceit") that has a similar meaning in Gen 27:35. Alternate translation: "So why did you deceive me?" or "Tell me why you tricked me!"

## Genesis 29:26 (#1)

### "But Laban said"

Alternate translation: "But Laban said to him," or "Laban responded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 29:26 (#2)

### "It is not done so in our place"

For some languages it is necessary to say what the custom is, rather than what it is not. For example, you could say, "Our custom/practice here is to wait until the firstborn/oldest daughter is married before we let the younger daughters/ones get married." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "It is not customary in our land" or "It is not the custom here"

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 29:26 (#3)

### "to give the younger"

Alternate translation: "to give the younger daughter in marriage" or "to marry off the younger daughter"

## Genesis 29:26 (#4)

### "before the firstborn"

Alternate translation: "before the oldest one marries."

## Genesis 29:27 (#1)

### "Fulfill the week of this {one}"

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit the fact that it is assumed that Leah would still remain his wife. Only make this information explicit if it is necessary to avoid wrong meaning.

Alternate translation: "So then, complete this week of celebrating your wedding to my daughter Leah,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 29:27 (#2)

### "then we will also give you this {one}"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then our family will also give you my other daughter to marry" or "Then you may also marry my other daughter"

## Genesis 29:27 (#3)

### "for service that you will serve with me"

See how you translated **serve** in verses 15, 18, 20, 21 and 25. Alternate translation: "in exchange for working for me"

## Genesis 29:27 (#4)

### "for another seven years"

Alternate translation: "for seven more years."

## Genesis 29:28 (#1)

### "So Jacob did so"

Alternate translation: "So that is what Jacob did:"

## Genesis 29:28 (#2)

### "and he fulfilled the week {for} that {one}"

See how you translated "fulfill" in verse 27. Alternate translation: "he completed his wedding week with Leah."

## Genesis 29:28 (#3)

### "Then he gave to him Rachel his daughter as a wife for him"

Alternate translation: "Then Laban gave Jacob his daughter Rachel to marry." or "Then Laban gave his daughter Rachel to Jacob to be his wife."

**Genesis 29:29 (#1)****"And Laban gave"**

See how you translated verse 24, which is similar to verse 29. Alternate translation: "he also gave" or "In addition, Laban gave"

**Genesis 29:29 (#2)****"Bilhah his maidservant to Rachel his daughter"**

Alternate translation: "his female servant Bilhah to his daughter Rachel" or "Rachel a female servant named Bilhah"

**Genesis 29:29 (#3)****"as a maidservant for her"**

Alternate translation: "to be her personal servant." or "to serve her."

**Genesis 29:30 (#1)****"Then he also went to Rachel"**

See how you translated **went to** in verse 23. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob slept with Rachel,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 29:30 (#2)****"And he served him"**

At this point Jacob begins another seven years of work, but he does not finish the work until Gen 30:25–26. Alternate translation: "Then he worked for Laban"

**Genesis 29:30 (#3)****"for another seven years"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 27.

**Genesis 29:31 (#1)****"Now Yahweh saw"**

Alternate translation: "Meanwhile Yahweh knew" or "During that time, Yahweh saw"

**Genesis 29:31 (#2)****"that Leah was hated"**

Jacob did not actually hate Leah. Rather, this is hyperbole that emphasizes how much he loved Rachel compared to Leah (verse 30). Alternate translation: "that Leah was loved less than Rachel," or "that Jacob did not love Leah very much,"

See: Hyperbole

**Genesis 29:31 (#3)****"so he opened her womb"**

Alternate translation: "so he made it so that she could conceive,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 29:31 (#4)****"but Rachel {was} barren"**

See how you translated **barren** in Gen 11:30 and 25:21. Alternate translation: "but he did not enable Rachel to have children."

**Genesis 29:32 (#1)****"and bore a son"**

Alternate translation: "and had a son"

**Genesis 29:32 (#2)****"and she called his name Reuben"**

You could include the meaning of Reuben's name in your translation (or in a footnote), so that people understand why Leah gave him that name. If you do that, make sure the meaning of Reuben's name matches the way you translate "looked/seen" later in this verse.



See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 29:32 (#3)

**"because she said"**

Alternate translation: "because when he was born she had said"

### Genesis 29:32 (#4)

**"Because Yahweh has looked on my misery, surely now my husband will love me"**

Consider what is the best way to order these clauses in your language. Also see how you translated **misery** in Gen 16:11. Alternate translation: "Now that Yahweh has seen that I am suffering and has helped me, surely my husband will love me!" or "Surely my husband will love me now, since Yahweh has seen that I am suffering and has helped me."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 29:33 (#1)

**"and bore a son"**

Alternate translation: "and had another son"

### Genesis 29:33 (#2)

**"and she said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "so she exclaimed,"

### Genesis 29:33 (#3)

**"Because Yahweh heard that I am hated"**

See how you translated **hated** in verse 31. Also consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive verb here. Alternate translation: "Yahweh heard that I am not loved, so"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 29:33 (#4)

**"then he gave to me this {son} also"**

Alternate translation: "he has given me this son too!" or "he has given me another son"

### Genesis 29:33 (#5)

**"So she called his name"**

Alternate translation: "So she named that son" or "So she gave him the name"

### Genesis 29:33 (#6)

**"Simeon"**

If you include the meaning of Simeon's name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated **heard** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 29:34 (#1)

**"Then she conceived again"**

Alternate translation: "Once again Leah became pregnant"

### Genesis 29:34 (#2)

**"and bore a son"**

Alternate translation: "and had another son,"

### Genesis 29:34 (#3)

**"and she said"**

Alternate translation: "She exclaimed,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 29:34 (#4)

**"will be joined to me"**

Many languages have an idiom that is similar to the Hebrew idiom and fits well here. Do what is best in

your language. Alternate translation: “will become attached to me”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 29:34 (#5)

**"because I have born three sons for him"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, “I have born/had three sons for my husband, so now finally he will become attached to me.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “because I have had three sons for him.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 29:34 (#6)

**"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: “Because she had said that,”

### Genesis 29:34 (#7)

**"he called his name"**

Although this phrase could mean that Jacob named Levi, most translations translate this in a general or indefinite way that does not specify who named him. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “he was named”

### Genesis 29:34 (#8)

**"Levi"**

If you include the meaning of Levi’s name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated **be joined** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 29:35 (#1)

**"Then she conceived again"**

Alternate translation: “Then Leah became pregnant again”

### Genesis 29:35 (#2)

**"and bore a son"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 34. Alternate translation: “and had a son,”

### Genesis 29:35 (#3)

**"and she said"**

Alternate translation: “She said”

### Genesis 29:35 (#4)

**"This time I will praise Yahweh"**

Alternate translation: “Now I will praise Yahweh for giving me this son!”

### Genesis 29:35 (#5)

**"For that {reason}"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 34. You may need to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “Because she praised Yahweh,”

### Genesis 29:35 (#6)

**"she called his name"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 33. Alternate translation: “she named that son” or “she gave him the name”

### Genesis 29:35 (#7)

**"Judah"**

See how you translated **praise** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 29:35 (#8)

**"Then she stopped bearing"**

Leah had more children at a later time. So it was only temporarily that she stopped having children. Alternate translation: “Then Leah stopped bearing

babies for a while.” or “After that, Leah did not give birth to any more babies for a while.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 30:1 (#1)

**"Now Rachel saw that she was not bearing {children} for Jacob"**

Alternate translation: “Now when Rachel saw that she was not able to have any children for Jacob,”

### Genesis 30:1 (#2)

**"so Rachel envied her sister"**

Alternate translation: “she was envious of her sister Leah,”

### Genesis 30:1 (#3)

**"and she said to Jacob"**

Use a quote margin here in your language that fits the context well. Alternate translation: “and she pleaded with Jacob,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 30:1 (#4)

**"Give me children, and if not"**

Alternate translation: “Help me get pregnant! Otherwise”

### Genesis 30:1 (#5)

**"I will die"**

Rachel is using hyperbole (exaggeration) to show how desperate and deeply ashamed she feels about not having children. You could include a footnote here in your translation that explains how in that culture it was considered very shameful for a woman to be barren (See: Gen 30:23). Alternate translation: “I have no reason to live!”

See: Hyperbole

### Genesis 30:2 (#1)

**"And Jacob's anger burned against Rachel, and he said"**

Some languages have an idiom that is similar to the Hebrew idiom here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Jacob became very angry with Rachel and said”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 30:2 (#2)

**"Am I in the place of God, who has kept the fruit of the womb from you"**

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to show that he is upset with Rachel and to strongly emphasize his point. Do what is best in your language to communicate this. Alternate translation: “I am not in the place of God, who has kept you from having children!” or “I am not God! He is the one who has kept you from having children!”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 30:3 (#1)

**"Then she said"**

Alternate translation: “Rachel replied to him,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 30:3 (#2)

**"Behold my slave woman Bilhah"**

Alternate translation: “Here is my servant woman Bilhah.” or “You can take my servant woman Bilhah as a wife.”

### Genesis 30:3 (#3)

**"Go to her"**

See how you translated this euphemism in Gen 16:2. Alternate translation: “Sleep with her”

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 30:3 (#4)****"so that she will bear {children}"**

Alternate translation: "so that she can give birth to children" or "so that she can have children"

**Genesis 30:3 (#5)****"on my knees"**

The idiom **bear children on my knees** means that Bilhah's children would be considered Rachel's children. It may come from the custom of immediately putting a newborn child on the lap of the father and mother to symbolize that the child belonged to them. Alternate translation: "for me who will sit on my lap," or "as my surrogate"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 30:3 (#6)****"and I also will be built up from her"**

See how you translated **built up from her** in Gen 16:2. Alternate translation: "so that from her children I too can build a family." or "so that I too can build a family."

**Genesis 30:4 (#1)****"And she gave to him Bilhah her maidservant"**

See how you translated **maidservant** in Gen 29:24, 29. Also see how you translated a different word ("servant woman") in verse 3 that has the same meaning. Some translations use the same term in both verses to prevent confusion. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So Rachel gave Jacob her maid Bilhah"

**Genesis 30:4 (#2)****"as a wife"**

Make sure your translation does not sound like Bilhah replaced Rachel as Jacob's wife; Bilhah was an additional wife. Alternate translation: "as his wife," or "to be a wife for him,"

**Genesis 30:4 (#3)****"and Jacob went to her"**

See how you translated "go to" in verse 3 and **went to** in Gen 16:3. Alternate translation: "and Jacob slept with her."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 30:5 (#1)****"and bore a son for Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "and gave birth to a son for Jacob"

**Genesis 30:6 (#1)****"and Rachel said"**

Consider whether it is more natural here in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the sentence from verse 5. Alternate translation: "Then Rachel said"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 30:6 (#2)****"God has vindicated me"**

Some translations have "judged me" here. However, make sure your translation of this phrase has a positive meaning (making a decision in Rachel's favor) and not a negative meaning (condemning her).

**Genesis 30:6 (#3)****"and indeed, he has listened to my voice and given to me a son"**

Alternate translation: "Yes indeed, he has heard my request and given me a son!"

**Genesis 30:6 (#4)****"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: "Because of that"

**Genesis 30:6 (#5)****"she called his name"**

Make sure it is clear here in your translation that Bilhah's son is the one being named, not God (who was the subject of the previous sentence). See how you translated **called his name** in Gen 29:32. Alternate translation: "she called him" or "she gave him the name" or "she named her baby"

**Genesis 30:6 (#6)****"Dan"**

If you include the meaning of Dan's name in your translation (or in a footnote), make sure it matches the way you translated "he has vindicated" earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 30:7 (#1)****"Then Bilhah the maidservant of Rachel conceived again"**

See how you translated verse 5 which is very similar to verse 7.

**Genesis 30:7 (#2)****"and bore a second son for Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "and gave birth to a second son for Jacob."

**Genesis 30:8 (#1)****"So Rachel said"**

Alternate translation: "So Rachel exclaimed,"

**Genesis 30:8 (#2)****"With} mighty wrestlings I have wrestled with my sister"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "I have had a mighty/difficult struggle/contest with my sister" or "I have struggled intensely/hard with/against my sister". That would be the

meaning if the Hebrew word "elohim" in this phrase is used as an adjective that means "mighty/powerful." (2) "I have wrestled/struggled with God because of my sister", which could refer to a struggle against her sister praying to God for children. That would be the meaning if the word "elohim" in this phrase means "God."

**Genesis 30:8 (#3)****"Indeed I have prevailed"**

Alternate translation: "and I have won!" or "but now I have defeated her!" or "but now I am winning!"

**Genesis 30:8 (#4)****"And she called his name"**

See how you translated **called his name** in verse 6. Alternate translation: "So she called him" or "So she called that son" or "So she gave him the name"

**Genesis 30:8 (#5)****"Naphtali"**

As always, if you include the meaning of a name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure that it matches the text that the name is based on.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 30:9 (#1)****"Now Leah saw that she had ceased from bearing {children}"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 1. Alternate translation: "When Leah saw that she had stopped bearing children,"

**Genesis 30:9 (#2)****"so she took Zilpah her maidservant"**

Alternate translation: "she took her servant Zilpah to Jacob"

**Genesis 30:9 (#3)****"and gave her to Jacob as a wife"**

See how you translated "gave ... as a wife" in verse 4. Alternate translation: "and gave her to him as his wife." or "and gave her to Jacob to be another wife for him."

**Genesis 30:10 (#1)****"Then Zilpah the maidservant of Leah bore a son for Jacob"**

See how you translated verses 5–8, which are very similar in structure to verses 10–13.

**Genesis 30:11 (#1)****"What good fortune"**

Alternate translation: "What good luck!" or "I am very lucky!"

**Genesis 30:11 (#2)****"So she called his name"**

Alternate translation: "So she called him" or "So she called him" or "So she gave him the name"

**Genesis 30:11 (#3)****"Gad"**

If you include the meaning of Gad's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translated **good fortune** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 30:13 (#1)****"How blessed I am"**

Although many translations have "happy" in this verse instead of "blessed," the Hebrew noun (and the verb it is based on) is more general and has to do with a person's blessed state (which results in joy and happiness). The same Hebrew word is used in Psalm 1:1, and the equivalent Greek word is used

in Luke 1:48 and Matthew 5:3–11. Alternate translation: "I am truly blessed!" or "God has greatly blessed me!"

**Genesis 30:13 (#2)****"For women will call me blessed"**

Alternate translation: "Now other women will say that I am blessed by God." or "Now other women will say that God has blessed me."

**Genesis 30:13 (#3)****"So she called his name"**

Alternate translation: "So she named him" or "So she gave him the name"

**Genesis 30:13 (#4)****"Asher"**

If you include the meaning of Asher's name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translated **blessed** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 30:14 (#1)****"Then in the days of the wheat harvest, Reuben went out"**

Wheat is a type of grain that is ground into flour to make bread, which was one of the people's main foods. The harvest time for wheat in that part of the world is in March and April. Alternate translation: "One day during ..."

**Genesis 30:14 (#2)****"and found mandrakes in the field"**

The roots of mandrake plants were used to help people be more fertile. If mandrakes are not known in your language area, you could describe them as a kind of fertility plant. You could also put information about mandrakes in a footnote or glossary. Alternate translation: "and found some

love plants called mandrakes in a field," or "in a field and found some love plants there,"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 30:14 (#3)

**"and he brought them to Leah his mother"**

Alternate translation: "and he took them to his mother." or "and he took the plants to his mother."

### Genesis 30:14 (#4)

**"Then Rachel said to Leah"**

Alternate translation: "When Rachel found out about the plants, she asked Leah,"

### Genesis 30:14 (#5)

**"Please give to me some of your son's mandrakes"**

See how you translated **mandrakes** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "Please give me some of the love plants that your son found."

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 30:15 (#1)

**"Is it a small matter you have taken my husband"**

Leah uses two rhetorical questions in verse 15 to scold Rachel and show how upset she is with her. Consider whether or not rhetorical questions are the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "No! It was bad enough that you took my husband from me!" or "You already took my husband from me!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 30:15 (#2)

**"Then Rachel said"**

Alternate translation: "Rachel said to her"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 30:15 (#3)

**"Therefore"**

Rachel's response shows that she realizes that even though Leah was scolding her, she was also bargaining with her. Alternate translation: "Very well,"

### Genesis 30:15 (#4)

**"he may lie with you tonight"**

Alternate translation: "I will let him stay with you tonight" or "Jacob can stay with you tonight" or "Jacob can spend tonight with you"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 30:15 (#5)

**"for your son's mandrakes"**

See how you translated "in exchange for" in Gen 29:18.

### Genesis 30:16 (#1)

**"Then Jacob came from the field in the evening"**

Consider where it is best in your language to put the time phrase in this clause. Also see how you translated **field** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "So as Jacob came back that evening from working in the fields," or "That evening as Jacob was coming home from working in the fields,"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 30:16 (#2)

**"and Leah went out to meet him"**

Alternate translation: "Leah came out to greet him"

### Genesis 30:16 (#3)

**"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and she said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 30:16 (#4)

**"You must come to me"**

Alternate translation: "You must lie with me tonight," or "You must spend tonight with me,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 30:16 (#5)

**"because I have surely hired you with my son's mandrakes"**

See how you translated **mandrakes** in verses 14 and 15.

### Genesis 30:16 (#6)

**"So he lay with her during that night"**

Alternate translation: "So that night Jacob slept with her" or "So Jacob spent that night with her"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 30:17 (#1)

**"and God listened to Leah"**

See how you translated **listened to** in verse 6. Alternate translation: "God heard Leah and answered her prayers," or "God did what Leah had been asking him to do,"

### Genesis 30:17 (#2)

**"and bore a fifth son for Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "and gave birth to a fifth son for Jacob."

### Genesis 30:18 (#1)

**"Then Leah said"**

Alternate translation: "Then she exclaimed,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 30:18 (#2)

**"God has given {me} my reward"**

Some languages must translate the noun **reward** as a verb. Do what is best in your language.

See: Abstract Nouns

### Genesis 30:18 (#3)

**"because I gave my maidservant to my husband"**

Alternate translation: "for giving my servant to my husband as another wife."

### Genesis 30:18 (#4)

**"So she called his name"**

Make sure the way you translate **his name** refers here to Leah's baby son, not to her husband or God (who were both mentioned earlier in this verse). Alternate translation: "So she called him" or "So she gave him the name"

### Genesis 30:18 (#5)

**"Issachar"**

See how you translated **reward** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 30:19 (#1)

**"and bore a sixth son for Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "and gave birth to a sixth son for Jacob."

### Genesis 30:20 (#1)

**"And Leah said"**

Alternate translation: "Then she exclaimed,"



**Genesis 30:20 (#2)****"God has presented me a good present"**

Alternate translation: "God has given me a precious gift"

**Genesis 30:20 (#3)****"This time my husband will honor me"**

Alternate translation: "so now my husband will honor me"

**Genesis 30:20 (#4)****"because I have born six sons for him"**

Alternate translation: "because I have given him six sons."

**Genesis 30:20 (#5)****"So she called his name"**

Make sure the way you translate **his name** refers here to Leah's baby son, not to her husband (who was mentioned in the previous sentence).  
 Alternate translation: "So she called him" or "So she named that son" or "So she gave him the name"

**Genesis 30:20 (#6)****"Zebulun"**See how you translated **honor** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 30:21 (#1)****"Then later"**

Alternate translation: "Sometime later"

**Genesis 30:21 (#2)****"she bore a daughter"**

Alternate translation: "Leah gave birth to a daughter" or "she had a daughter"

**Genesis 30:21 (#3)****"and called her name Dinah"**

Alternate translation: "and called her Dinah." or "whom she named Dinah."

**Genesis 30:22 (#1)****"Then God remembered Rachel"**

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not imply that God forgot about Rachel. See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 8:1.  
 Alternate translation: "God had kept Rachel in mind,"

**Genesis 30:22 (#2)****"and God listened to her"**

See how you translated **listened to** in verses 6 and 17. Alternate translation: "so he heard her requests" or "so he did what she had been asking him to do"

**Genesis 30:22 (#3)****"and opened her womb"**

See how you translated this idiom in Gen 29:31. Alternate translation: "and made it so that she could conceive."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 30:23 (#1)****"Then she conceived"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the sentence from verse 22. Alternate translation: "so that finally she conceived" or "So Rachel became pregnant"

**Genesis 30:23 (#2)****"and bore a son"**

Alternate translation: "and gave birth to a son,"

### Genesis 30:23 (#3)

**"and she said"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then she said"

### Genesis 30:23 (#4)

**"God has taken away my disgrace"**

Alternate translation: "God has removed my shame" or "God has made it so that I am no longer barren and humiliated!"

### Genesis 30:24 (#1)

**"And she called his name"**

Alternate translation: "She called her son" or "She gave him the name"

### Genesis 30:24 (#2)

**"Joseph"**

If you include the meaning of Joseph's name here in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate what Rachel says next.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 30:24 (#3)

**"saying"**

For some languages it is more natural to put the last half of verse 24 first in the verse and say, "She also said, "May Yahweh add/give another son to me." So she named that/her son Joseph, which means "may he add/give another." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 30:24 (#4)

**"May Yahweh add another son to me"**

Alternate translation: "I ask that Yahweh will give me another son." or "I ask Yahweh to give me another son."

### Genesis 30:25 (#1)

**"Then it happened, after Rachel bore Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "Soon after Rachel gave birth to Joseph,"

### Genesis 30:25 (#2)

**"then Jacob said to Laban"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob went to Laban and said to him,"

### Genesis 30:25 (#3)

**"Send me off"**

Make sure that your translation of Jacob's request here sounds polite, not rude or disrespectful. It should also not sound like he is begging or pleading. See how you translated the same request in Gen 24:54. Alternate translation: "Please send me on my way,"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 30:25 (#4)

**"so that I may go to my place and to my land"**

Alternate translation: "so that I may return to my own home in my own country." or "so that I can go to my homeland."

### Genesis 30:26 (#1)

**"Give me my wives and my children"**

Alternate translation: "Let me have my wives and my children"

**Genesis 30:26 (#2)****"for whom I have served you"**

Alternate translation: "whom I have finished serving you for,"

**Genesis 30:26 (#3)****"so that I may go"**

Alternate translation: "so that I may leave with them." or "and let me go with them." or "so that I can take them with me."

**Genesis 30:26 (#4)****"For you yourself know"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the previous sentence. Alternate translation: "because you yourself know"

**Genesis 30:26 (#5)****"my service that I have served you"**

Alternate translation: "that I have served you well" or "how well I have served you." or "how faithfully I have worked for you."

**Genesis 30:27 (#1)****"Then Laban said to him"**

Alternate translation: "But Laban responded to Jacob,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 30:27 (#2)****"Please {stay}, if I have found favor in your eyes"**

Alternate translation: "If you are pleased with me, please stay," or "Please be gracious to me and stay," or "Please do me a favor and do not go,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 30:27 (#3)****"I have learned by divination"**

The word **divination** refers to trying to find out information by looking at signs (omens) and interpreting them either by God's power (Gen 44:5, 15) or by witchcraft and false gods (Ezekiel 21:21). Laban may have consulted his household gods (mentioned in Gen 31:19, 30). It could also be that Laban meant that he had figured this out simply by observing how God had blessed him through Jacob's expert tending of his flocks. Alternate translation: "because I have learned from experience"

**Genesis 30:27 (#4)****"that Yahweh has blessed me"**

Alternate translation: "that Yahweh has caused me to prosper"

**Genesis 30:27 (#5)****"because of you"**

Alternate translation: "because you have been working for me."

**Genesis 30:28 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Some translations delete this quote margin, since the same person is still speaking to the same person as in the previous verse. However it could be that there was a pause in the conversation, or the author may want to show that there is a change in topic or emphasize what is said next. So if possible, it is best to keep the quote margin here in your translation. Alternate translation: "Then he said to him," or "Then Laban added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 30:28 (#2)****"Name your wages to me, and I will give {them}"**

See how you translated **wages** in Gen 29:15. Alternate translation: "Tell me what you want your wages to be, and that is what I will give you." or

"Tell me what you want me to pay you, and I will give that to you." or "Set your wages, and that is what they will be."

### Genesis 30:29 (#1)

"And he said to him"

Alternate translation: "Jacob said to him"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 30:29 (#2)

"You yourself know how I have served you"

See how you translated "you yourself know" in verse 26. Alternate translation: "You yourself know how well I have worked for you"

### Genesis 30:29 (#3)

"and how your livestock have been"

Alternate translation: "and how well your flocks have fared"

### Genesis 30:29 (#4)

"with me"

Alternate translation: "ever since I have been taking care of them." or "while I have been tending them."

### Genesis 30:30 (#1)

"For {there was} little that was yours before me, and it has prospered to abundance"

Alternate translation: "Before I came, you had very little wealth, but now you are prospering abundantly" or "The few animals that you owned before I came have increased greatly." or "Before I worked for you, you owned very few animals, but now you have a huge number of animals."

### Genesis 30:30 (#2)

"and Yahweh has blessed you"

See how you translated **blessed** in verse 27. Alternate translation: "That is how Yahweh has prospered you" or "Yes, Yahweh has prospered you"

### Genesis 30:30 (#3)

"at my feet"

Alternate translation: "because I am here." or "because I have been working for you."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 30:30 (#4)

"But now, when will I also do something for my household"

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to express his strong feelings. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "But now I need to also provide for my own household"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 30:31 (#1)

"Then he said"

Alternate translation: "So Laban asked Jacob," or "Laban responded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 30:31 (#2)

"What should I give to you"

Alternate translation: "What do you want me to give you so that you will stay and work for me?" or "What can I give you to persuade you to stay here?"

### Genesis 30:31 (#3)

"And Jacob said"

Alternate translation: "Jacob replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 30:31 (#4)****"Do not give anything to me"**

Alternate translation: "Do not give me anything." or  
 "You do not need to give me anything."

**Genesis 30:31 (#5)****"If you will do this thing for me"**

Alternate translation: "But if you will do this one  
 thing for me,"

**Genesis 30:31 (#6)****"I will continue tending your flock{s} watching over {them}"**

See how you translated "watches over" in Gen 28:20. Alternate translation: "I will continue to tend and watch over your flocks:" or "I will keep taking care of your flocks:"

**Genesis 30:32 (#1)****"I will pass through all your flock{s} today"**

Alternate translation: "Let me go through all your flocks today" or "Today I will go through all your sheep and goats"

**Genesis 30:32 (#2)****"to remove from there"**

Alternate translation: "and take away from them"

**Genesis 30:32 (#3)****"every speckled and spotted lamb and every dark-colored lamb among the sheep"**

The Hebrew word for **speckled** refers to small spots, whereas **spotted** refers to medium-sized and bigger spots. In that part of the world, most sheep were white and most goats were solid brown or black. So Jacob was asking for the irregular animals for himself, including white sheep with dark marks, dark-colored goats with light marks and dark-colored lambs. You could put some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation:

"all the lambs that have speckles or spots, or that are dark-colored,"

**Genesis 30:32 (#4)****"and the spotted and speckled {young} among the goats"**

Alternate translation: "and all the kid goats that are spotted or speckled."

**Genesis 30:32 (#5)****"And that will be my wages"**

Alternate translation: "They will be my wages" or  
 "Those animals will be my wages"

**Genesis 30:33 (#1)****"So my righteousness will testify for me in future days"**

The phrase **my righteousness** is referred to here as if it can testify like a person can. Some languages cannot personify righteousness like that. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Also, in the future you will know whether or not I am being honest" or "That way too, in the future it will be easy for everyone to know whether or not I am being honest"

See: Personification

**Genesis 30:33 (#2)****"when you go over my wages in front of you"**

For some languages it is more natural to move this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "Also, in the future, whenever you check the animals you have paid/given me, you will know whether or not I am being honest." Do what is best in your own language. Alternate translation: "whenever you check the animals you have given me."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 30:33 (#3)**

**"any that is not speckled and spotted among the goats and dark-colored among the sheep"**

Alternate translation: "If you see that I have any sheep or goats that are not speckled or spotted or any sheep that are not dark-colored," or "If you see any sheep or goats among my flocks that do not have speckles or spots or any sheep that are not dark-colored,"

**Genesis 30:33 (#4)**

**"it was stolen {if it is} with me"**

Alternate translation: "it will be obvious that I stole them from you."

**Genesis 30:34 (#1)**

**"And Laban said"**

Alternate translation: "Laban said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 30:34 (#2)**

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Yes," or "I agree with that,"

**Genesis 30:34 (#3)**

**"let it be according to your word"**

Alternate translation: "we will do exactly what you have said"

**Genesis 30:35 (#1)**

**"Then on that day he removed"**

Make sure your translation of **he** in this clause refers to Laban, not Jacob (as verse 36 confirms). Also, what Laban does in verse 35 does not follow the agreement he just made with Jacob in verses 32–34. Alternate translation: "But that very day, he removed from his flocks"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

**Genesis 30:35 (#2)**

**"the male goats that were streaked and spotted, and all the female goats that were speckled and spotted"**

Alternate translation: "all the he-goats that had streaks or spots, and all the she-goats that had speckles or spots,"

**Genesis 30:35 (#3)**

**"any that {had} white on it"**

The goats were normally dark brown or black, so if they had streaks or spots on them those marks would be white. In the Hebrew text, there is a pun (play-on-words) in verses 35 and 37: the name "Laban" means **white**, so verse 35 literally says that any goats with "Laban" (**white**) on them became Jacob's. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "any that had any white marks on them,"

**Genesis 30:35 (#4)**

**"and all the dark-colored {ones} among the lambs"**

Alternate translation: "as well as all the lambs that were dark-colored."

**Genesis 30:35 (#5)**

**"Then he gave {them} into the hand of his sons"**

Alternate translation: "Then he had his sons tend them," or "Then he put his sons in charge of them,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 30:36 (#1)**

**"and he put a three-day journey between himself and Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "and he and his sons took those animals a three-day walking distance away from Jacob."

**Genesis 30:36 (#2)**

**"And Jacob was tending the rest of Laban's flock{s}"**

See how you translated **tending** in verse 31 and Gen 13:7.

**Genesis 30:37 (#1)**

**"of poplar and almond and plane trees"**

If the three kinds of trees are not known in your language area, you could transliterate the names of the trees or be more general and leave out the names (if they are too distracting). Alternate translation: "from poplar trees, hazel trees, and plane trees," or "from three different kinds of trees,"

See:

**Genesis 30:37 (#2)**

**"and peeled white stripes in them"**

Alternate translation: "and peeled off long pieces of bark," or "and made white stripes on them by stripping off long pieces of bark,"

**Genesis 30:37 (#3)**

**"exposing the white that {was} inside the branches"**

Alternate translation: "which showed the white wood under the bark," or "so that the white wood that was inside the branches was exposed"

**Genesis 30:38 (#1)**

**"Then he put the branches that he had peeled in the troughs, in the water troughs"**

See how you translated "trough" in Gen 24:20. Alternate translation: "Then he set those striped branches in all the stone drinking tubs"

**Genesis 30:38 (#2)**

**"where the flock{s} came to drink"**

The way you translate this should allow for the fact that the animals came to the watering troughs repeatedly or regularly throughout the day, not just one time.

**Genesis 30:38 (#3)**

**"in front of the flock{s}"**

Alternate translation: "in front of them." or "so that the flocks would see the branches there."

**Genesis 30:38 (#4)**

**"And they were in heat when they came to drink"**

The way you translate this clause will determine whether you begin the next verse with a conjunction ("and" or "so") or without a conjunction. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "The flocks often mated when they came to the tubs to drink," or "That way, whenever the animals that were ready to breed came to the tubs to drink,"

**Genesis 30:39 (#1)**

**"and the flock{s} would mate by the branches"**

Make sure your translation of the verbs in this verse refers to a repeated or habitual activity, not a one-time event. Alternate translation: "so they would mate in front of the branches," or "they would mate where they could see the branches," or "they would see the branches as they were breeding,"

**Genesis 30:39 (#2)**

**"and the flock{s} would bear streaked, speckled, and spotted {young}"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **speckled** and **spotted** in verses 32–33 and 35. Also consider what is the most natural way in your language to refer to the flocks in verses 38 and 39. Alternate translation: "As a result, they would bear offspring that were streaked or speckled or spotted."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 30:40 (#1)

**"and he made the faces of the flock{s} look at"**

The Hebrew text uses an idiom here that means Jacob put the marked and unmarked animals together (so that they would mate).

See: Idiom

## Genesis 30:40 (#2)

**"the streaked and all the dark-colored {animals}"**

See how you translated **streaked** in verses 35 and 39, and how you translated **dark-colored** in verses 32–33 and 35. Alternate translation: "all the striped animals and dark-colored animals"

## Genesis 30:40 (#3)

**"in the flock{s} of Laban"**

You may need to make it explicit in your translation why Jacob put the unmarked sheep and goats with Laban's streaked and spotted animals, so that people understand what Jacob was doing.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 30:40 (#4)

**"And he put flocks for himself by themselves"**

Alternate translation: "In that way, over time he made separate flocks of sheep and goats for himself"

## Genesis 30:41 (#1)

**"So it happened whenever"**

This verse includes more details about what Jacob was doing on a regular basis. Alternate translation: "So whenever"

## Genesis 30:41 (#2)

**"the strong animals"**

Alternate translation: "the best female animals" or "the hardy female sheep and goats"

## Genesis 30:41 (#3)

**"were in heat"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 38. Alternate translation: "were ready to breed,"

## Genesis 30:41 (#4)

**"then Jacob put the branches in the troughs"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 38. Alternate translation: "Jacob set the striped branches in the watering tubs"

## Genesis 30:41 (#5)

**"before the eyes of the flocks so that they would mate by the branches"**

See how you translated **mate** and **the branches** in verse 39. Alternate translation: "in front of those animals so that they would see the branches as they were breeding," or "so that as they were mating, they would see the branches."

See:

## Genesis 30:42 (#1)

**"But when the animals were weak"**

Alternate translation: "But whenever the feeble female animals were ready to mate"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

## Genesis 30:42 (#2)

**"he did not put {them} {in}"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob did not set the branches in the tubs."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information



**Genesis 30:42 (#3)****"the weak {ones}"**

Alternate translation: "the young from the feeble animals"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 30:42 (#4)****"and the strong {ones}"**

See how you translated **strong** in verse 41.  
Alternate translation: "and the young from the hardy animals"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 30:42 (#5)****"to Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "went to Jacob,"

**Genesis 30:43 (#1)****"so that the man prospered"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated **prospered** in verse 30.  
Alternate translation: "So Jacob became very wealthy" or "As a result, Jacob became very rich"

**Genesis 30:43 (#2)****"and he owned large flock{s}"**

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and owned large flocks of sheep and goats," or "He owned many sheep and goats,"

**Genesis 30:43 (#3)****"and maidservants and menservants and camels and donkeys"**

See how you translated "maidservants," "menservants," "camels," and **donkeys** in Gen 12:16 and 24:35.

**Genesis 31:1 (#1)****"Then he heard"**

Alternate translation: "Then one day someone told Jacob"

**Genesis 31:1 (#2)****"Jacob has taken everything that {belonged} to our father"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob has taken for himself all that our father owned,"

**Genesis 31:1 (#3)****"and from what {belonged} to our father he has gained all this wealth"**

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes Laban's sons' complaint against Jacob. The phrase **all this wealth** especially refers to all the livestock that Jacob had gained during the years he worked for Laban.

See: Parallelism

**Genesis 31:2 (#1)****"And Jacob saw"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob also saw"

**Genesis 31:2 (#2)****"the face of Laban, and behold, he was not with him as yesterday {and} three days ago"**

The clause **he was not with him** is used here as an idiom that means Laban was no longer happy with Jacob or that he no longer liked him. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Alternate translation: "that Laban no longer looked at him in a friendly way like he did previously" or "that Laban was no longer happy with him like he was previously" or "that Laban no longer acted kind toward him the way he did in the past."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 31:3 (#1)****"Then Yahweh said to Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh commanded Jacob,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 31:3 (#2)****"Go back to the land of your fathers and to your relatives"**

Alternate translation: "Return to the land where your ancestors lived and where your other relatives also live,"

**Genesis 31:3 (#3)****"and I will be with you"**

See how you translated this clause in Gen 26:3 and how you translated similar clauses in Gen 26:8, 24; 28:15. Alternate translation: "and I will stay with you and bless you."

**Genesis 31:4 (#1)****"Then Jacob sent and called for Rachel and Leah to the field"**

See how you translated **sent and called for** in Gen 27:42. Alternate translation: "So Jacob sent for Rachel and Leah to come to the pasture" or "Then Jacob sent a message to Rachel and Leah that they should meet him in the pasture"

**Genesis 31:4 (#2)****"to his flock{s}"**

Alternate translation: "where he was tending his flocks of sheep and goats."

**Genesis 31:5 (#1)****"Then he said to them"**

Consider whether in your language it is necessary to make explicit that Rachel and Leah had come to Jacob before he spoke to them. Alternate translation: "There he told them,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 31:5 (#2)****"the face of your father, that he is not toward me as yesterday {and} three days ago"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 2. Alternate translation: "that your father no longer looks at me in a kind way like he did in the past," or "that your father is no longer happy with me as he was previously" or "that your father no longer acts friendly toward me the way he did before,"

**Genesis 31:5 (#3)****"but the God of my father"**

See how you translated "the God of ..." in Gen 28:13. Alternate translation: "but the God whom my father worships" or "but the God who takes care of my father"

**Genesis 31:5 (#4)****"has been with me"**

See how you translated the idiom "be with you" in verse 3. Alternate translation: "has stayed with me and has blessed me."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 31:6 (#1)****"And you know"**

In the Hebrew text, **you** is an emphatic pronoun. Also, some languages have a special dual pronoun that fits here well. Do what is best in your language.

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

**Genesis 31:6 (#2)****"that with all my might I have served your father"**

Alternate translation: “that I have served your father with all my might” or “that I have tried as hard as I could to serve your father well,” or “how I have worked for your father as faithfully as I could,”

### Genesis 31:7 (#1)

**"but your father has deceived me"**

Alternate translation: “but in spite of that, he has deceived me” or “but yet he has treated me unfairly”

### Genesis 31:7 (#2)

**"and changed my wages ten times"**

Alternate translation: “and ten times he has changed what he said that he would pay me.”

### Genesis 31:7 (#3)

**"However, God has not allowed him to harm me"**

In this context, **harm** especially refers to financial harm, but it can also include physical harm. Alternate translation: “However, God has not permitted him to harm me.” or “But God has kept him from hurting me.” or “But God has protected me so that he could not hurt me.”

### Genesis 31:8 (#1)

**"If he said like this"**

The examples Jacob is describing in verse 8 took place repeatedly (as verse 7 indicates). Alternate translation: “For example, if he told me”

### Genesis 31:8 (#2)

**"The speckled {animals} will be your wages"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated **speckled** in Gen 30:32, 33, 35, 39. Alternate translation: “that only the speckled animals would be my pay,” or “that he would pay me by giving me only the animals with speckles on them,”

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 31:8 (#3)

**"then all the flock{s} bore"**

Alternate translation: “then all the female animals in the flocks gave birth to” or “then all the female sheep and goats gave birth to”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 31:8 (#4)

**"speckled {young}"**

Alternate translation: “speckled babies.” or “young that were speckled.”

### Genesis 31:8 (#5)

**"But if he said like this"**

Alternate translation: “But if he said to me” or “Then if he changed his mind and told me”

### Genesis 31:8 (#6)

**"The streaked {ones} will be your wages"**

See how you translated **streaked** in Gen 30:35, 39, 40. Alternate translation: “that only the striped animals would be my pay,” or “that he would pay me by giving me only the animals with stripes on them,”

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 31:8 (#7)

**"then all the flock{s} bore"**

Alternate translation: “then all the females in the flocks gave birth to” or “then all the female sheep and goats had”

### Genesis 31:8 (#8)

**"streaked {young}"**

Alternate translation: "striped young" or "young that had stripes on them."

### Genesis 31:9 (#1)

**"the livestock of your father"**

The term **livestock** usually includes all kinds of domestic animals, but in this context it refers to the sheep and goats that Jacob was taking care of for Laban. Alternate translation: "many of the animals that belonged to your father"

### Genesis 31:9 (#2)

**"and gave {them} to me"**

Alternate translation: "and gave them to me instead."

### Genesis 31:10 (#1)

**"And it happened"**

Alternate translation: "One night"

### Genesis 31:10 (#2)

**"in the season"**

Alternate translation: "during the time" or "during the time of year"

### Genesis 31:10 (#3)

**"the flock{s} were in heat"**

Alternate translation: "that the female sheep and goats were in heat," or "that the flocks of sheep and goats were mating"

### Genesis 31:10 (#4)

**"and I lifted my eyes and saw in a dream that, behold"**

The word **behold** emphasizes what Jacob saw and might also express that he was surprised at what he saw. Alternate translation: "I had a dream and in the dream I looked around and saw that"

### Genesis 31:10 (#5)

**"the he-goats that were mounting the flock{s}"**

Some languages have special terms for male and female goats or sheep. For example, billy goats and nanny goats (for male and female goats) and rams and ewes (for male and female sheep). Choose terms in your language that are natural and well-known.

### Genesis 31:10 (#6)

**"were} streaked, speckled, and spotted"**

It may be more natural to put this phrase earlier and say, "... saw that the male goats and sheep that were streaked, speckled, and spotted were the only ones that were mating with the female goats and sheep." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "were streaked speckled, or spotted" or "had a striped, speckled, or blotched pattern in their fur"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 31:11 (#1)

**"Then an angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob'"**

In some languages it is more natural to put **in the dream** earlier in this clause. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **an angel of God** in Gen 21:17.

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 31:11 (#2)

**"and I said"**

Alternate translation: "and I responded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 31:11 (#3)

**"Behold me"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 22:1 and 27:11. Alternate translation: "Here I am!" or "Yes, sir?" or "Yes, I am listening."

### Genesis 31:12 (#1)

"Then he said"

Alternate translation: "The angel said"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 31:12 (#2)

"Please lift up your eyes"

See how you translated this idiom in Gen 22:13. Also see how you translated Gen 22:2, another passage where Yahweh uses **Please**. Alternate translation: "Look around you" or "Look carefully"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 31:12 (#3)

"and see"

Alternate translation: "and observe that"

### Genesis 31:12 (#4)

"all the he-goats that are mounting the flock{s}"

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 10.

### Genesis 31:12 (#5)

"are} streaked, speckled, and spotted"

See how you translated this phrase in verses 8 and 10. Alternate translation: "are streaked speckled, or spotted" or "have a streaked speckled, or spotted pattern in their fur"

### Genesis 31:12 (#6)

"because I have seen"

Sometimes an angel says **I** as God's representative, but in this context, it seems to be Yahweh himself

(in the form of an angel) who is speaking to Jacob (See verse 13). That information could be put in a footnote, and you could make "Yahweh" explicit in the text to make that clear. Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, have caused that to happen, because I have observed"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 31:12 (#7)

"all that Laban is doing to you"

Alternate translation: "all the wrong things that Laban has done to you." or "all the ways that Laban has been treating you badly"

### Genesis 31:13 (#1)

"where you anointed a pillar"

See how you translated "poured oil on top of" in Gen 28:38 and **pillar** in Gen 28:18, 22. Alternate translation: "where you poured olive oil on top of a memorial pillar to dedicate the place to me,"

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 31:13 (#2)

"where you vowed a vow to me"

See how you translated **vowed a vow** in Gen 28:20. Alternate translation: "and where you made a vow to me."

See:

### Genesis 31:13 (#3)

"Now get up, go out from this land"

The phrase **get up** means that Jacob should immediately get ready to go and then leave; see how you translated this phrase in Gen 27:43. Alternate translation: "So now get up and leave this region immediately," or "Now go at once from this land"

### Genesis 31:13 (#4)

"and return to"

Alternate translation: "and travel back to"

## Genesis 31:13 (#5)

### "the land of your birth"

The Hebrew word for **birth** in this phrase can also be translated as "relatives" here (as in verse 3). See how you translated this phrase in Gen 24:7. Alternate translation: "the land where you were born." or "the land where your relatives live." or "your native land."

## Genesis 31:14 (#1)

### "Then Rachel replied, and Leah, and they said to him"

Alternate translation: "Then Rachel and Leah responded to him" or "Rachel and Leah replied to him"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 31:14 (#2)

### "Is there still for us a portion or inheritance"

This rhetorical question expects the answer "no." It also expresses Rachel's and Leah's strong emotion and emphasizes that there is nothing for them to inherit from their father. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question fits well here in your language. Alternate translation: "We no longer have any part in the inheritance" or "We will never inherit anything"

See: Rhetorical Question

## Genesis 31:15 (#1)

### "Are we not regarded by him"

This rhetorical question expects the answer "yes" and expresses Rachel's and Leah's anger at how their father treats them. Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use a rhetorical question here. Alternate translation: "It is obvious that he regards us" or "He obviously is treating us"

See: Rhetorical Question

## Genesis 31:15 (#2)

### "as} foreigners"

Make sure that the punctuation you use here fits with how you translate this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "like outsiders and not family" or "as if we were foreigners instead of family"

## Genesis 31:15 (#3)

### "For he sold us"

This sentence is an example of how Laban treated his daughters like foreigners. Alternate translation: "After all, he sold us to you,"

## Genesis 31:15 (#4)

### "and he has indeed completely eaten up"

The phrase **eaten up** is used here as an idiom that means Laban had spent or kept for himself all the wealth he had gained from Jacob's 14 years of working for him. Many languages have a similar idiom that could be used here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and then he used up all"

See: Idiom

## Genesis 31:15 (#5)

### "our silver"

In that culture at that time, silver was a currency used to buy and sell things. Alternate translation: "the wealth that should have been ours." or "the money that belonged to us."

See: Translate Unknowns

## Genesis 31:16 (#1)

### "For all the wealth that God took from our father"

Alternate translation: "In fact, all the abundance of flocks that God has taken from our father" or "In reality, all the flocks that made our father wealthy and that God has taken from him"

**Genesis 31:16 (#2)****"belongs} to us and to our children"**

Alternate translation: "actually belongs to us and our children." or "should have been given to us and our children anyway."

**Genesis 31:16 (#3)****"So now, do"**

The words **So now** introduce Rachel and Leah's conclusion that is based on what they just said. Do what is best in your language to communicate that. Alternate translation: "So go ahead and do" or "So we totally agree that you should do"

**Genesis 31:16 (#4)****"all that God has said to you"**

Alternate translation: "everything God has commanded you to do." or "exactly what God told you to do."

**Genesis 31:17 (#1)****"So Jacob got up"**

See how you translated "get up" in verse 13. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob immediately got packed for the journey"

**Genesis 31:17 (#2)****"and put his sons and his wives on the camels"**

Jacob took all his children with him, not just his sons. Alternate translation: "and helped his wives and his sons mount up onto the camels."

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 31:18 (#1)****"Then he drove"**

Alternate translation: "Then he led" or "Then he started driving"

**Genesis 31:18 (#2)****"all his livestock and all his property that he had acquired, the livestock in his possession that he had acquired"**

The word **livestock** is general here and includes all of Jacob's animals. Alternate translation: "the camels and all his other livestock and along with them, he also took all the other possessions that he had acquired"

**Genesis 31:18 (#3)****"in Paddan Aram"**

Be consistent here with how you translated "the land/region of Paddan Aram" in Gen 25:20. Alternate translation: "while living in the land of Paddan Aram,"

**Genesis 31:18 (#4)****"to go to Isaac his father, to the land of Canaan"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "Then he started driving/herding the camels and all his other animals to/toward the land/region of Canaan where his father Isaac lived. He took with him all his possessions that he had accumulated, including all the livestock that he had acquired/accumulated while living in the land/region of Paddan Aram." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "to go to Canaan, to the home of his father Isaac." or "to the land of Canaan, where his father Isaac lived."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 31:19 (#1)****"Now Laban"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in verse 19 happened before Jacob and his family had left. Also, for some languages it is more natural to first make "the Aramean" explicit here in verse 19 rather than wait until verse 20. Do what is best in your language.

See: Background Information

**Genesis 31:19 (#2)****"had gone to shear his sheep"**

In that culture, sheep wool was very important since it was used to make clothing and blankets. The process of shearing many sheep would have taken several days. You could include some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "had gone away for several days to cut the wool off his sheep"

**Genesis 31:19 (#3)****"so Rachel stole"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "While he was gone, Rachel entered his tent and took"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 31:19 (#4)****"the idols that {belonged} to her father"**

These idols were statues made of wood or precious metals. They were small enough to be used in a private home. In this chapter these statues are referred to as **idols** (in verses 19, 34, 35 when the author refers to them) and "gods" (in quotes in verses 30 and 32 when Laban or Jacob talk about them). If it is confusing in your language to switch back and forth between these two terms, you could use "gods" throughout this chapter, since Laban would not have called them idols, and Jacob would not have used that term in his presence. However, if possible, it is best to translate the two terms the way the Hebrew text has them. Alternate translation: "his family gods," or "the gods that he had"

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 31:20 (#1)****"and Jacob stole the heart of"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and Jacob tricked" or "At the same time, Jacob tricked"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 31:20 (#2)****"Laban the Aramean"**

If you used **Aramean** earlier (verse 19), it may not be natural here. Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated this phrase in Gen 25:20.

**Genesis 31:20 (#3)****"by not informing him that he was fleeing"**

Alternate translation: "by not telling him that he was fleeing" or "by leaving secretly without informing him that he was leaving."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 31:21 (#1)****"And he fled"**

This statement summarizes an event that already happened (See verses 18 and 20). Make sure your translation of this verse does not sound like Jacob left a second time. To make this clear you could say, "After Jacob and his family ran away with everything that they owned, they quickly crossed the Euphrates River and headed toward the hill country of Gilead." Alternate translation: "So Jacob and his family ran away"

**Genesis 31:21 (#2)****"and all"**

Alternate translation: "with all" or "and took all"

**Genesis 31:21 (#3)****"that {belonged} to him"**

Make sure that your choice of pronouns throughout this verse fits with how you translate the beginning of this sentence. Alternate translation: "that belonged to them." or "that he had"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them



**Genesis 31:21 (#4)****"And he got up and crossed the River"**

The Euphrates River was also called **the River** because it was large and well-known. It was about 50 miles (80 kilometers) from Haran, where Laban lived. This information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "He quickly crossed the Euphrates River"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 31:21 (#5)****"and set his face {toward}"**

Alternate translation: "and went in the direction of"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 31:21 (#6)****"the mountain{s} of Gilead"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could refer to: (1) mountains or hill country; or (2) a specific mountain ("Mount Gilead"). Alternate translation: "the mountain region called Gilead." or "the hill country called Gilead."

**Genesis 31:22 (#1)****"And on the third day it was told to Laban"**

Alternate translation: "Three days after they had left, someone informed Laban" or "Three days later Laban found out"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 31:22 (#2)****"that Jacob had fled"**

See how you translated "fleeing" and **fled** in verses 20–21. Alternate translation: "that Jacob and his family had run away."

**Genesis 31:23 (#1)****"So he took his relatives with him"**

Alternate translation: "So Laban gathered some of his relatives"

**Genesis 31:23 (#2)****"and pursued after him a seven-day journey"**

Alternate translation: "and followed after Jacob and his household for seven days"

**Genesis 31:23 (#3)****"and overtook him"**

Alternate translation: "until they overtook them" or "until they caught up with him"

**Genesis 31:23 (#4)****"in the mountain{s} of Gilead"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 21. Alternate translation: "in the mountain region called Gilead." or "in the hill country called Gilead."

**Genesis 31:24 (#1)****"But God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream that night"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 20:3. Also see how you translated **Laban the Aramean** in verse 20. Alternate translation: "Then that same night God appeared to Laban in a dream" or "That night Laban had a dream and in it God appeared to him"

**Genesis 31:24 (#2)****"Watch yourself that you do not speak with Jacob either good or bad"**

God is warning Laban not to say or do anything that would harm Jacob (See verse 29). Alternate translation: "Be careful that you do not say or do anything to Jacob to try to stop him from leaving." or "Be sure that you do not harm Jacob in any way."

See: Merism

**Genesis 31:25 (#1)****"And Laban overtook Jacob"**

Make sure that the way you translate this clause does not sound like Laban overtook Jacob a second time. This is referring to what already happened in verse 23. See how you translated **overtook** there. Alternate translation: "So when Laban overtook Jacob,"

See: Background Information

**Genesis 31:25 (#2)****"and Jacob had pitched his tent{s}"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob had already pitched his tents before Laban arrived. Also see how you translated "pitched his tent" in Gen 12:8 and 26:25. Alternate translation: "Jacob and his family had already put up his tents" or "Jacob and his family had already set up camp"

See: Background Information

**Genesis 31:25 (#3)****"in the mountain{s}"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to make **Gilead** explicit here (rather than later in this verse). Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **mountains of Gilead** in verses 21 and 23. Alternate translation: "in the mountain region of Gilead,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 31:25 (#4)****"so Laban with his relatives"**

Alternate translation: "so Laban and all his relatives that were with him"

**Genesis 31:25 (#5)****"pitched {theirs}"**

Alternate translation: "also put up their tents" or "also camped"

**Genesis 31:25 (#6)****"in the mountain{s} of Gilead"**

If you made **Gilead** explicit earlier in this verse in your translation, it may not be necessary to repeat it here. Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 31:26 (#1)****"Then Laban said to Jacob"**

See how you translated a similar quote margin in 29:25, when the roles were reversed and Jacob confronted Laban. Alternate translation: "Then the next day Laban came to Jacob and complained to Jacob" or "The next day Laban met with Jacob and rebuked Jacob and said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 31:26 (#2)****"What have you done"**

Laban uses a rhetorical question here to express his anger at Jacob. Do what is best in your language to communicate that. Alternate translation: "Why have you done this?" or "What you have done is wrong!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 31:26 (#3)****"And you have stolen my heart"**

See how you translated the idiom "stole the heart of" in verse 20. Alternate translation: "You have tricked me" or "You have acted deceitfully toward me"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 31:26 (#4)****"and carried away my daughters"**

Laban uses exaggeration to show he is angry and to try to make Jacob feel guilty for what he did. Alternate translation: "and dragged away my

daughters with you” or “and forced my daughters to leave with you”

See: Hyperbole

### Genesis 31:26 (#5)

**"like captives of the sword"**

Alternate translation: “as if you had captured them in battle!”

See: Simile

### Genesis 31:27 (#1)

**"Why did you secretly flee and deceive me"**

Alternate translation: “Why did you trick me and secretly run away” or “Why did you deceive me by secretly running away”

### Genesis 31:27 (#2)

**"and not tell me"**

Verse 27 is one long rhetorical question in the Hebrew text that expresses Laban’s anger at Jacob. For some languages it is better to break it up into two or more sentences. Do what is best in your language, and make sure that the punctuation fits well. Alternate translation: “without telling me you were leaving!”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 31:27 (#3)

**"For I would have sent you with joy and with songs"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in this clause are contrary-to-fact (hypothetical). Alternate translation: “If I had known, I would have held a feast and sent you on your way, singing joyful songs together,” or “If I had known, I could have sent you on your way by having a feast and singing joyful songs together,”

See: Hypothetical Situations

### Genesis 31:27 (#4)

**"with tambourine{s} and with lyre{s}"**

For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, “If I had known, we could have held a feast and sung joyful songs and danced together, with tambourines and lyres playing, before sending you on your way.” Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated “lyres/harps” in Gen 4:21. Alternate translation: “with tambourines and harps playing!” or “with the music of musical instruments!”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 31:28 (#1)

**"And you did not let me kiss my grandchildren and my daughters"**

For some languages, it may be more natural to mention the daughters before the children. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **kiss** in Gen 27:26–27. Alternate translation: “You did not even let me kiss my daughters and my grandchildren goodbye before they left!”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 31:28 (#2)

**"Now you have acted foolishly by doing {that}"**

Alternate translation: “What you have done is very stupid!” or “You acted foolishly when you left secretly like that!”

### Genesis 31:29 (#1)

**"It is in the power of my hand to do harm to you"**

The pronoun **you** is plural here, so it probably refers to Jacob and everyone in his household. Alternate translation: “I and my men have the ability to harm all of you,”

See: Forms of ‘You’ — Singular

### Genesis 31:29 (#2)

**"but last night the God of your father"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put this time phrase later and say “ ... said to me in a dream last night”. Do what is best in your language. See how you translated a similar phrase (“the God of my father”) in verse 5.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 31:29 (#3)

**"said to me, saying, 'Keep yourself from speaking with Jacob either good or bad"**

For some languages it is necessary to make this embedded quote an indirect quote. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated a similar quote in verse 24. Alternate translation: “warned me to not harm you in any way.”

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 31:30 (#1)

**"So now, you have surely gone"**

Begin this verse in a way which shows that Laban is introducing a new topic. Also notice that **you** shifts to singular here in verse 30. Alternate translation: “Now then, I know that you left” or “Now, I know that you ran away”

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

### Genesis 31:30 (#2)

**"because you greatly long"**

Alternate translation: “because you longed so much” or “because you were very homesick”

### Genesis 31:30 (#3)

**"for the house of your father"**

This phrase refers to the people in Jacob’s father’s household and other relatives living nearby. Alternate translation: “to return home to your father and other relatives,”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 31:30 (#4)

**"Why did you steal my gods"**

Alternate translation: “but what is the reason that you stole my gods?”

### Genesis 31:31 (#1)

**"Then Jacob answered and said to Laban"**

Alternate translation: “Jacob answered him,” or “Then Jacob told Laban”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 31:31 (#2)

**"Because I was afraid"**

Make sure it is clear here in your translation that Jacob is answering Laban’s question in verse 27, not his question in verse 30.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 31:31 (#3)

**"because I said"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “I told myself that if you knew,”

### Genesis 31:31 (#4)

**"that perhaps you would seize your daughters from me"**

Make sure you translate this sentence in a way that shows it is hypothetical. Also see how you translated “seized” in Gen 21:25.

See: Hypothetical Situations

### Genesis 31:32 (#1)

**"Whomever you find your gods with"**

See how you translated **gods** in verse 30. Alternate translation: “However we did not steal your gods. In fact, if you find your gods with anyone here,”

**Genesis 31:32 (#2)****"will not live"**

Alternate translation: "that person will be put to death as punishment for stealing them!"

**Genesis 31:32 (#3)****"In front of our relatives"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to both Jacob's and Laban's relatives. Alternate translation: "So with our relatives as witnesses,"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 31:32 (#4)****"observe for yourself what {is} with me"**

Alternate translation: "search for yourself what I have with me here"

**Genesis 31:32 (#5)****"and take {what belongs} to you"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and take whatever you find that is yours."

**Genesis 31:32 (#6)****"Now Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them"**

Translate this background information in a way that is clear and natural in your language. Also see how you translated "stole" in verses 19 and 30.

See: Background Information

**Genesis 31:33 (#1)****"Then Laban went into the tent of Jacob"**

See how you translated **tent** in verse 25.

**Genesis 31:33 (#2)****"and into the tent of Leah"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 31:33 (#3)****"and into the tent of the two slave women"**

Consider again how you translated "slave/servant woman" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 20:17; 21:10, 12-13; 30:3; 31:33. Alternate translation: "and in the tent where the two maidservants lived,"

**Genesis 31:33 (#4)****"but he did not find {anything}"**

Alternate translation: "but he did not find his gods."

**Genesis 31:34 (#1)****"Now Rachel had taken the idols and put them inside the camel's saddle"**

This kind of saddle was used as a seat and also had compartments or bags for carrying things. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Rachel had hidden the idols before Laban entered her tent. Also see how you translated **idols** in verse 19. Alternate translation: "But Rachel had put the idols inside her camel saddlebag to hide them," or "But Rachel had hidden the idols inside her camel saddlebag"

See: Background Information

**Genesis 31:34 (#2)****"and was sitting on them"**

Alternate translation: "and she was sitting on the gods"

**Genesis 31:34 (#3)****"And Laban felt throughout the entire tent"**

Alternate translation: "Laban rummaged through everything else in the tent, but" or "So when Laban searched everywhere else in her tent,"

**Genesis 31:34 (#4)****"but he did not find {them}"**

For some languages, it may be better to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "So Laban was not able to find them, even though he searched her tent thoroughly." Alternate translation: "he could not find anything." or "he did not find his idols"

**Genesis 31:35 (#1)****"And she said to her father"**

Alternate translation: "Rather Rachel had said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 31:35 (#2)****"Do not let it burn in the eyes of my lord"**

Make sure you translate **my lord** in a way that is appropriate for a daughter to show respect to her father; it should not sound like she was Laban's slave or servant. The word **burn** is used here as an idiom that means to be angry. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that would work well here. Also see how you translated this idiom in Gen 30:2. Alternate translation: "Please do not be angry at me, sir" or "Sir please do not be angry at me"

See:

**Genesis 31:35 (#3)****"that I am not able to stand up in your presence"**

Alternate translation: "that I am not able to stand up to greet you,"

**Genesis 31:35 (#4)****"because the way of women {is} on me"**

Translate this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people when this is read aloud in public. Alternate translation: "because it is that time of the month when I feel weak." or "because I am having my monthly cycle."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 31:36 (#1)****"Then it burned within Jacob"**

See how you translated the idiom "burn" in verse 35.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 31:36 (#2)****"and he disputed with Laban, and Jacob responded and said to Laban"**

Alternate translation: "and contended with him and said," or "and rebuked him by saying to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 31:36 (#3)****"What {is} my crime"**

Jacob's rhetorical questions in this verse show that he was angry at Laban. Do what is best in your language to communicate his anger. Alternate translation: "Tell me what crime I have done"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 31:36 (#4)****"What {is} my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me"**

Alternate translation: "How have I sinned against you so that you have a reason to pursue me so intensely" or "Tell me what sin I have committed against you that gives you the right to pursue after me!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 31:37 (#1)****"Since you have felt through all my things"**

See how you translated **felt through** in verse 34. Alternate translation: "Now that you have felt through all my things"

**Genesis 31:37 (#2)**

**"what have you found from any of the things of your house? Put {it} here"**

Alternate translation: "did you find anything that anyone took from your household? If so, bring it here" or "show us what you have found that belongs to you! If you found anything, put it here"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 31:37 (#3)**

**"in front of my relatives and your relatives"**

Alternate translation: "where all our relatives can see it,"

**Genesis 31:37 (#4)**

**"and let them judge"**

Alternate translation: "so that they can judge whether you or I am right!" or "and they will judge which one of us is right!"

**Genesis 31:38 (#1)**

**"These twenty years I {have been} with you"**

Alternate translation: "For the past twenty years I have worked for you!"

**Genesis 31:38 (#2)**

**"Your ewes and your she-goats"**

Alternate translation: "During those years your female sheep and goats"

**Genesis 31:38 (#3)**

**"did not miscarry"**

Alternate translation: "bore their young without any problems,"

**Genesis 31:38 (#4)**

**"and I have not eaten rams from your flocks"**

Make sure your translation does not sound here like Jacob is talking about eating animals while they are still alive; the animals would be killed and cooked first. Alternate translation: "and I have never killed and eaten any rams from your flocks." or "and I never took any animals from your flocks to eat."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 31:39 (#1)**

**"I did not bring torn {animals} to you"**

Alternate translation: "And whenever wild animals killed any of your animals, I never brought the dead animal to you to show I was innocent."

**Genesis 31:39 (#2)**

**"I bore the loss of it myself"**

Normally it was the owner of the flocks (not the shepherds) who took care of the expense when an animal was killed or stolen. You could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Rather I paid for that loss myself." or "Rather I replaced them at my own expense."

**Genesis 31:39 (#3)**

**"You required it from my hand"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "You also made me pay for"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 31:39 (#4)**

**"those} stolen by day and {those} stolen by night"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "any animals that got stolen by thieves, whether it happened in the day or at night."

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 31:40 (#1)****"There I was"**

Alternate translation: "That is how it was for me!" or "That was my life"

**Genesis 31:40 (#2)****"In the day, heat devoured me"**

Consider whether or not you can talk about heat and frost in your language as if they could harm Jacob the way a person could harm him. Alternate translation: "During the day the heat of the sun pounded me,"

See: Personification

**Genesis 31:40 (#3)****"and in the night the frost, so that" - "fled"**

Alternate translation: "and at night I suffered from the cold, so that I could hardly sleep." or "and during the nights it was so cold that I could hardly sleep."

**Genesis 31:41 (#1)****"That {is how it was} for me"**

Alternate translation: "That is what it was like for me"

**Genesis 31:41 (#2)****"twenty years in your house"**

Alternate translation: "for the twenty years that I worked for you."

**Genesis 31:41 (#3)****"I served you fourteen years for your two daughters"**

Alternate translation: "For fourteen years I worked for you in exchange for marrying your two daughters,"

**Genesis 31:41 (#4)****"and six years for your flock{s}"**

Alternate translation: "and for six more years I worked for you to earn flocks of sheep and goats from you,"

**Genesis 31:41 (#5)****"and you changed my wages ten times"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 7. Alternate translation: "even though you changed my wages ten times." or "even though ten times you changed what you said you would pay me."

**Genesis 31:42 (#1)****"If the God of my father, the God of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac," - "not"**

The phrase **the Fear of Isaac** is a title for God that is ambiguous in Hebrew (and English). It could mean: (1) "the One/God whom Isaac fears/reveres" or (2) "Isaac's God whom people/others are afraid/terrified of". The interpretation that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is only talking about one God in this verse, not two or three. Also notice that **my father** and **Isaac** both refer to Jacob's father Isaac, not two different people. Alternate translation: "If God, the Awesome One, whom my father Isaac and grandfather Abraham serve" or "If God, whom my ancestors Abraham and Isaac serve and fear"

**Genesis 31:42 (#2)****"If" - "had not been with me"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that the events in this sentence are contrary-to-fact (hypothetical) and imply that God actually had been with Jacob, so that Laban did not send him away empty-handed. Alternate translation: "had not been with me protecting me and guiding me,"

See: Hypothetical Situations



**Genesis 31:42 (#3)****"surely now you would have sent me away"**

Alternate translation: "you would certainly be sending me away now" or "there is no question that I would now be leaving here"

**Genesis 31:42 (#4)****"empty-handed"**

Alternate translation: "without anything at all."

**Genesis 31:42 (#5)****"God has seen my affliction"**

Alternate translation: "But God knows how much I have suffered under you" or "But God knows how much you have oppressed me"

**Genesis 31:42 (#6)****"and the toil of my palms"**

Alternate translation: "and the hard work I did with my hands for you,"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 31:42 (#7)****"and he judged {you} last night"**

See how you translated "judge" in verse 37. It may be necessary to translate this word in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "so last night he judged against you in my favor."

**Genesis 31:43 (#1)****"And Laban responded and said to Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "Laban replied to Jacob,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 31:43 (#2)****"The daughters {are} my daughters, and the children {are} my grandchildren"**

Alternate translation: "These are my daughters and my grandchildren,"

**Genesis 31:43 (#3)****"and the flock{s} {are} my flock{s}"**

Alternate translation: "and these flocks also belong to me."

**Genesis 31:43 (#4)****"And everything that you see {belongs} to me"**

Laban is lying or exaggerating here to make it sound like he was wronged, when actually he is the one who was dishonest in his dealings with Jacob. Alternate translation: "In fact, everything that you see here is mine!" or "Yes, everything that is here with you is actually mine!"

See: Hyperbole

**Genesis 31:43 (#5)****"But what can I do today about these daughters of mine or about their children whom they have born"**

Laban uses this rhetorical question to express his emotions and emphasize that there is nothing that he can do. Consider whether or not a rhetorical question fits well here in your language. Alternate translation: "But there is nothing I can do now to keep my daughters and grandchildren from leaving!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 31:44 (#1)****"So now, come, let us cut a covenant, I and you"**

For some languages it may be more natural to put **I** and **you** earlier in the sentence. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **So now** in verse 16 and **cut a covenant** in Gen 26:28. Alternate translation: "So then, you and I should

make a peace covenant with each other," or "So I invite you to make a covenant with me,"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 31:44 (#2)

"and let it be"

The subject of the Hebrew verb in this phrase is masculine singular, so it cannot refer to "covenant," which is feminine singular. It is probably best to translate this phrase in a general way. Alternate translation: "and let there be"

### Genesis 31:44 (#3)

"a witness between me and you"

If your language has a dual pronoun for **us**, you could use it in this verse. Also, if your language distinguishes exclusive and inclusive pronouns, you could use the inclusive form of **us** here. Alternate translation: "a memorial to remind us of our covenant" or "something to remind us to keep that covenant"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Genesis 31:45 (#1)

"So Jacob took a stone"

See how you translated **stone** in Gen 28:18.

### Genesis 31:45 (#2)

"and set it up {as} a pillar"

See how you translated **pillar** in verse 13 and **set it up as a pillar** in Gen 28:18, 22. Alternate translation: "and stood it up on its end as a monument to mark the place where they made their covenant" or "and set it up as a reminder stone to mark the place as special."

### Genesis 31:46 (#1)

"Then Jacob said to his relatives"

These relatives would have included Jacob's sons, as well as Laban and his men who had come with

him. See how you translated **relatives** in verses 23, 25, 32, 37. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob told his relatives,"

### Genesis 31:46 (#2)

"Gather stones"

Make sure that your translation of Jacob's request sounds polite here, not rude or demanding, but also not begging. Alternate translation: "Please gather some stones."

See:

### Genesis 31:46 (#3)

"So they took stones and made a heap"

Alternate translation: "So they all brought stones and put them in a large pile"

### Genesis 31:46 (#4)

"Then they ate there"

Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob ate without Laban and his men. Alternate translation: "Then they ate a meal together there"

### Genesis 31:46 (#5)

"by the heap"

Alternate translation: "near the heap of stones." or "next to the mound of stones."

### Genesis 31:47 (#1)

"And Laban called it"

Alternate translation: "Laban gave the heap the Aramaic name"

### Genesis 31:47 (#2)

"Jegar Sahadutha"

If the meaning of **Jegar Sahadutha** and **Galeed** is included in your translation or in a footnote, be sure that it fits with how you translate

“heap/pile/mound” in verses 46 and 48, and “witness” in verse 48.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 31:47 (#3)

**"but Jacob called it Galeed"**

Alternate translation: “whereas Jacob gave it the Hebrew name Galeed, which has the same meaning.”

### Genesis 31:48 (#1)

**"And Laban said"**

Alternate translation: “Then Laban said to Jacob” or “Laban said to Jacob,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 31:48 (#2)

**"This heap {is} a witness between me and you today"**

Alternate translation: “This pile of stones is to remind us to keep our peace covenant” or “Starting today, when we see this mound of stones, we will remember our peace covenant”

### Genesis 31:48 (#3)

**"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: “That is the reason”

### Genesis 31:48 (#4)

**"he called its name Galeed"**

The phrase **he called its name** is used here in a general way that means “they/people call it”; the pronoun **he** does not refer here to Laban. Make sure that is clear in your language. Alternate translation: “they call it Galeed.” or “that place is called Galeed.”

### Genesis 31:49 (#1)

**"It is} also Mizpah"**

Alternate translation: “It was also named Mizpah,” or “People also call the place, Mizpah,”

### Genesis 31:49 (#2)

**"because he said"**

Make sure that your translation of **he** refers here to Laban.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 31:49 (#3)

**"May Yahweh watch between me and you"**

Alternate translation: “May Yahweh watch each of us” or “May Yahweh keep watch on us”

### Genesis 31:49 (#4)

**"when we are hidden one from the other"**

The pronoun **we** is inclusive here and includes both Laban and Jacob. Some languages have a dual pronoun that fits here well. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “to make sure we keep our covenant while we are away from each other.”

See:

### Genesis 31:50 (#1)

**"If you afflict my daughters"**

See how you translated **afflict** in Gen 15:13 and 16:6, and how you translated a related word (“affliction”) in verse 42. Alternate translation: “If you oppress my daughters,”

### Genesis 31:50 (#2)

**"or if you take wives besides my daughters"**

Alternate translation: “or if you marry other women besides them,”

**Genesis 31:50 (#3)**

**"even though} there is not someone with us, behold"**

See how you translated the pronoun "we" in verse 49.

See:

**Genesis 31:50 (#4)**

**"God {is} a witness between me and you"**

In his role as witness, God would also punish anyone who broke the covenant. You could make this information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Alternate translation: "God always sees us and will punish us if we break our covenant"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 31:51 (#1)**

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "See" or "Look at"

**Genesis 31:51 (#2)**

**"this heap"**

See how you translated **heap** in verses 46 and 48. Alternate translation: "this mound of stones,"

**Genesis 31:51 (#3)**

**"and behold"**

Alternate translation: "and see" or "and look at"

**Genesis 31:51 (#4)**

**"the pillar"**

See how you translated **pillar** in verse 45. Alternate translation: "this memorial stone"

**Genesis 31:51 (#5)**

**"which I set up between me and you"**

Jacob set up the stone as a pillar, but Laban and Jacob, along with their relatives, worked together to make the pile of stones. Alternate translation: "which I helped set up between us to remind us to keep our peace treaty." or "which we set up between us to remind us about our peace covenant"

**Genesis 31:52 (#1)**

**"This heap {is} a witness and the pillar {is} a witness"**

See how you translated **witness** in verses 44 and 48. Alternate translation: "This heap of stones is a reminder and this pillar is also a witness" or "This mound of stones and this memorial both remind us"

**Genesis 31:52 (#2)**

**"that I will not pass by this heap to you"**

Laban and Jacob could go to each other's homes in peace but not to harm each other. Alternate translation: "that I will never go past this heap to harm you,"

**Genesis 31:52 (#3)**

**"and that you will not pass by this heap and this pillar to me, to do harm"**

Alternate translation: "and that you will never go past this pile and this memorial to harm me."

**Genesis 31:53 (#1)**

**"the God of Abraham"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 28:13. Alternate translation: "May the God whom your grandfather Abraham served"

**Genesis 31:53 (#2)**

**"and the gods of Nahor, the gods of their father"**

Abraham trusted in Yahweh, the one and only true God (Gen 15:6). Terah worshiped other gods (Joshua 24:2), and so did Laban (verses 19, 30),

which suggests that Nahor served the same gods that his father Terah served, and then taught his son Laban to do the same thing. In spite of that, many translations still capitalize **God** all three times here in verse 53. Be consistent with how you spelled **Nahor** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 11:22–25, 29; 12:26–27; 22:20, 24, 28; 24:9, 15, 24, 47; 29:5; 31:53. Alternate translation: “and the gods that my grandfather Nahor and his father Terah worshiped”

### Genesis 31:53 (#3)

**"May" - "judge between us"**

Alternate translation: “judge between us and punish us if we break our covenant”

### Genesis 31:53 (#4)

**"Then Jacob swore"**

Jacob refused to swear by the gods of Nahor and Terah. See how you translated **swore** in Gen 26:31, and compare that to how you translated a related phrase (“vowed a vow”) in 31:13. Alternate translation: “But Jacob swore” or “But Jacob vowed a vow”

See:

### Genesis 31:53 (#5)

**"by the Fear of his father Isaac"**

See how you translated “the Fear of Isaac” in verse 42. Alternate translation: “by the God whom his father Isaac feared that he would keep their treaty,” or “with the Fear of his father Isaac as his witness”

### Genesis 31:54 (#1)

**"and Jacob sacrificed a sacrifice on the mountain"**

Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob burned the animal while it was still alive. Also see how you translated **sacrificed** in Gen 22:13. Alternate translation: “and he offered an animal sacrifice to God on an altar on a hill.” or “and Jacob burned the body of an animal on an altar as a sacrifice to God on a hill.”

### Genesis 31:54 (#2)

**"Then he called his relatives to eat bread"**

In the Bible, **bread** is often used as an idiom that refers to food in general. In this context, it was a meal that they shared together. Make sure that is clear in your translation.

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 31:54 (#3)

**"Then they ate bread and spent the night on the mountain"**

As in Genesis 26:30, eating together was an important part of the covenant or treaty process, since it shows unity and close relationship, as if they were part of the same family. Some of that information could be included in a footnote. Alternate translation: “Then after they had eaten the meal, they spent the night there on the hill.”

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 31:55 (#1)

**"Then in the morning Laban got up early"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 28:18. Alternate translation: “The next morning Laban got up early”

### Genesis 31:55 (#2)

**"and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters"**

It was a Hebrew custom for relatives and close friends to greet each other with a kiss on each cheek. Only make this information explicit here if it is necessary to prevent wrong meaning. Alternate translation: “said goodbye to his daughters and grandchildren and kissed them on the cheeks”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 31:55 (#3)

**"Then Laban left and returned to his place"**

Alternate translation: "Then Laban and his men left from there and returned home." or "Then he left from there with his men and went back home."

## Genesis 32:1 (#1)

**"Then Jacob went on his way"**

You can make implied information explicit in your translation if it is necessary to make the meaning accurate and clear. Alternate translation: "Meanwhile Jacob also left from there and continued on his journey home with his family,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 32:1 (#2)

**"and angels of God met him"**

Translate **met** in a way that allows for the fact that no conversation is recorded between the angels and Jacob and that the angels were probably not hostile; for example, they may have been sent by God to escort and protect him. Alternate translation: "and some angels from God encountered him."

## Genesis 32:2 (#1)

**"And when he saw them, Jacob said"**

Make sure that you refer to Jacob and the angels here in a way that is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "When Jacob saw the angels, he said in surprise,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 32:2 (#2)

**"So he called the name of that place Mahanaim"**

If you include the meaning of the name **Mahanaim** in your translation or in a footnote, be sure it matches the way you translated **God's camp** earlier in the verse so that it is clear why Jacob gave the place that name. Also see how you translated **he called the name of that place** in Gen 28:19.

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 32:3 (#1)

**"Then Jacob sent messengers before him"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob sent some of his servants ahead of him to deliver a message to his brother Esau"

## Genesis 32:3 (#2)

**"to the land of Seir"**

Alternate translation: "who was living in the land of Seir,"

## Genesis 32:3 (#3)

**"the country of Edom"**

Alternate translation: "that is, the land of Edom." or "which was also called the land of Edom."

## Genesis 32:4 (#1)

**"And he commanded them, saying"**

Alternate translation: "As they left, he instructed them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 32:4 (#2)

**"This {is what} you will say to my lord, to Esau"**

Jacob uses **my lord** and **your servant** in verse 4 and 5 to show his brother Esau great respect. Do this in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I want you to tell Esau whom I highly respect:"

See:

## Genesis 32:4 (#3)

**"This {is what} your servant Jacob says"**

Verses 4 and 5 have two levels of embedded quotes. Some languages need to use indirect quotes for one or both of those levels; for example, "Your servant Jacob wants you to know that he has been sojourning/staying with your uncle Laban all this time." Do what is best in your language. Alternate

translation: "This is a message from Jacob who wants to serve you:"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 32:4 (#4)

**"I have been sojourning with Laban and have remained there until now"**

Alternate translation: "Since we last saw each other, I have been living with Uncle Laban."

### Genesis 32:5 (#1)

**"And I have"**

Consider whether it is more natural to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: "I now have" or "Also tell him that I own"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 32:5 (#2)

**"cattle and donkey{s}, flock{s}"**

See how you translated **donkeys** and **flocks** in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: "many cattle, donkeys, and flocks of sheep and goats,"

### Genesis 32:5 (#3)

**"and menservant{s} and maidservant{s}"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: "as well as many men and women slaves"

### Genesis 32:5 (#4)

**"And I have sent {messengers} to speak with my lord"**

If you use indirect quotes in this section, make sure each part fits with the other parts, especially in your choice of pronouns. It is helpful if you read your translation aloud to check for accuracy and naturalness. Alternate translation: "Sir, I sent these messengers to you,"

See:

### Genesis 32:5 (#5)

**"so that I will find favor in your eyes"**

See how you translated the idiom "found favor in your eyes" in Gen 30:27. Alternate translation: "hoping that you will be gracious to me when I arrive." or "so that when we see each other you will be pleased with me and welcome me."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 32:6 (#1)

**"saying"**

Alternate translation: "and said to him," or "and informed him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 32:6 (#2)

**"We went to your brother, to Esau"**

Alternate translation: "We went to your brother Esau and told him your message." or "We delivered the message to your brother Esau."

### Genesis 32:6 (#3)

**"And also, he is coming to meet you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, notice that the word **meet** is neutral in this context and does not imply whether or not Esau had hostile intent against Jacob. Alternate translation: "and he is already headed here to meet you,"

### Genesis 32:6 (#4)

**"and 400 men with him"**

Alternate translation: "and there are also 400 men coming with him!" or "and he has 400 men with him!"

**Genesis 32:7 (#1)****"And Jacob was exceedingly afraid"**

Alternate translation: "When Jacob heard the report, he was terrified"

**Genesis 32:7 (#2)****"and it was distressing for him"**

Alternate translation: "and very worried."

**Genesis 32:7 (#3)****"so he divided the people who {were} with him and the flock{s} and the herd{s} and the camels into two camps"**

Consider what phrase order for this sentence is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So he divided all the people and animals that were with him into two large camps including his family, his servants and all his flocks of sheep and goats, herds of cattle and camels."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 32:8 (#1)****"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "He was thinking,"

**Genesis 32:8 (#2)****"If Esau comes to one camp and strikes them"**

Alternate translation: "If Esau and his men come and attack the people in one camp"

**Genesis 32:8 (#3)****"then the camp that is left will escape"**

Alternate translation: "then the people in the other camp can escape." or "then the other camp might be able to escape."

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 32:9 (#1)****"Then Jacob said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob prayed,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 32:9 (#2)****"God of my grandfather Abraham, and God of my father Isaac, Yahweh"**

Make sure that your translation of this address refers to only one God, not two or three different Gods. Also make sure it is clear that Jacob is talking directly to Yahweh, not talking about him. Alternate translation: "Dear Yahweh, the God whom my grandfather Abraham and my father Isaac worshiped,"

**Genesis 32:9 (#3)****"who said to me, 'Return to your land and to your relatives'"**Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Also see how you translated **land** and **relatives** in Gen 31:3. Alternate translation: "you told me to go back to my homeland where my relatives live,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 32:9 (#4)****"and I will cause things to prosper with you"**Make sure your choice of **I** or **you** (for God) and **you** or **me** (for Jacob) in this clause fits with the way you translated the previous part of this quote. Alternate translation: "and that you would make things go well for me."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 32:10 (#1)****"I am unworthy"**

Alternate translation: "I do not deserve"



**Genesis 32:10 (#2)**

**"of all the kindnesses and of all the faithfulness that you have shown your servant"**

Alternate translation: "the way you have always treated me so kindly and faithfully as your servant." or "how kind and loyal you have always been to me as I have served you."

**Genesis 32:10 (#3)**

**"For I crossed this Jordan with my staff"**

Alternate translation: "I crossed the Jordan River with only my staff," or "When I first left home and crossed the Jordan River, all that I had was my walking stick,"

**Genesis 32:10 (#4)**

**"but now I have become two camps"**

Alternate translation: "but now I have so many people in my household and so many possessions that there are two large camps" or "but now my family and belongings are enough to make two large groups."

**Genesis 32:11 (#1)**

**"from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau"**

Alternate translation: "from the power of my brother Esau,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 32:11 (#2)**

**"because I am afraid of him, that"**

Alternate translation: "I am very worried that"

**Genesis 32:11 (#3)**

**"he will come and strike me {and} the mothers with the children"**

Alternate translation: "he and his men will come and attack me as well as these mothers with their

children!" or "he and his men will attack and kill us all, including these mothers with their children!"

**Genesis 32:12 (#1)**

**"But you said"**

Alternate translation: "For you told me," or "But remember that you promised me,"

**Genesis 32:12 (#2)**

**"I will surely cause things to prosper with you, and I will make your descendants as the sand of the sea"**

For some languages it is more natural to use an indirect quote here, especially since Jacob is quoting the one he is talking to. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated "I will cause things to prosper with you" in verse 9 and how you translated **as the sand** in Gen 22:17. Alternate translation: "that you would surely prosper me, and that you would make my descendants as numerous as the grains of sand on the seashore,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 32:12 (#3)**

**"which cannot be counted from {their} abundance"**

Alternate translation: "which cannot be counted because there are so many." or "which are so many that no one can count them all."

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 32:13 (#1)**

**"and he took gifts from what was in his hand"**

Alternate translation: "and during that time he selected many of his animals as gifts" or "and while he was there he picked out many of the animals he had with him"

**Genesis 32:14 (#1)**

**"two hundred she-goats and twenty he-goats,  
two hundred ewes and twenty rams"**

Consider what is the most natural way in your language to list these animals, here and in verse 15. See how you translated **she-goats, he-goats, ewes** and **rams** in Gen 31:10. Alternate translation: "including 200 nanny goats and twenty billy goats, 200 female sheep and twenty male sheep," or "including 200 nanny goats, twenty billy goats, 200 female sheep, twenty male sheep,"

**Genesis 32:15 (#1)**

**"thirty nursing camels and their young"**

Alternate translation: "thirty mother camels with their young"

**Genesis 32:15 (#2)**

**"forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys"**

See how you translated **female donkeys** and **male donkeys** in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: "forty cows, ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys."

**Genesis 32:16 (#1)**

**"And he gave them into the hand{s} of his servants"**

Alternate translation: "He put his servants in charge of the animals,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 32:16 (#2)**

**"each herd by itself"**

Alternate translation: "with each kind of animal in a separate herd" or "and had them put the different kinds of animals in different groups."

**Genesis 32:16 (#3)**

**"And he said to his servants"**

Alternate translation: "Then he told his servants,"

**Genesis 32:16 (#4)**

**"Go before me, and put space between each herd"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Alternate translation: "Go ahead of me, one herd at a time, and keep some space between each herd of animals." or "to go ahead of him, one herd at a time, keeping some distance between each herd"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 32:17 (#1)**

**"And he commanded the first {one}, saying"**

Alternate translation: "He also instructed the servant in charge of the first herd of animals,"

**Genesis 32:17 (#2)**

**"Whom do you {belong} to, and where are you going"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a direct or indirect quote in verses 17–20a. Alternate translation: "who your master is and where you are going"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 32:17 (#3)**

**"And whom do these {animals} {belong} to {that are} before you"**

Alternate translation: "and asks who owns the animals that you are herding,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 32:18 (#1)**

**"then you say"**

Alternate translation: "then you must tell him," or "then you are to answer him,"

**Genesis 32:18 (#2)**

"They belong} to your servant, to Jacob. They {are} a gift sent to my lord, to Esau"

Also see how you translated **your servant** and **my lord** in verse 4.

See:

**Genesis 32:18 (#3)**

"And behold, he {is} also behind us"

Notice that the pronoun **us** is exclusive here.

**Genesis 32:19 (#1)**

"Then he also commanded"

See how you translated **commanded** in verse 17.  
Alternate translation: "In the same way, Jacob instructed" or "Jacob gave the same orders to"

**Genesis 32:19 (#2)**

"the second {servant}, also the third"

Alternate translation: "the servant in charge of the second herd and the servant in charge of the third group," or "the servants who were in charge of the second and third herds of animals,"

**Genesis 32:19 (#3)**

"also all who followed behind the herds, saying"

Alternate translation: "as well as all the other servants who were in charge of the other herds"

**Genesis 32:19 (#4)**

"Say the same thing to Esau when you find him"

Alternate translation: "When you meet Esau, you are to tell him the same thing that I told the first servant."

**Genesis 32:20 (#1)**

"And also say, 'Behold, your servant Jacob {is} behind us"

See how you translated **is behind us** in verse 18.

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 32:20 (#2)**

"For he said"

Alternate translation: "Jacob did all that, because he said"

**Genesis 32:20 (#3)**

"I will cover his face with the gift"

The idiom **cover his face** means to try to calm someone's anger by doing something to please him. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom you could use here. Alternate translation: "I can pacify Esau by sending" or "Perhaps Esau will stop being angry at me if I send"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 32:20 (#4)**

"with the gift that is going before me"

For some languages it is more natural to use an indirect quote here and say, "because he thought that if he sent the gifts of animals ahead of himself to Esau, then Esau would stop being angry at him." Notice that this alternate translation also changes the clause order. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "him this gift of animals ahead of me" or "this gift of animals to him ahead of me"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 32:20 (#5)**

"and after that, when I see his face, perhaps he will receive my face"

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous clauses as either a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "After that, perhaps he will forgive me"

and welcome me when we see each other face to face."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 32:21 (#1)

**"Then the gift went before him"**

See how you translated **gift** in verses 13, 18, 20. Alternate translation: "So the animal gifts for Esau were taken ahead of Jacob by his servants,"

### Genesis 32:21 (#2)

**"and he himself stayed for that night in the camp"**

Alternate translation: "but Jacob and his family stayed behind at the camp that night." or "but Jacob himself slept for part of the night in the camp."

### Genesis 32:22 (#1)

**"Then during that night he got up"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this is the same night that was referred to in verse 21. Also, the phrase **got up** often refers to initiating an action, but here it may also imply that Jacob got up out of bed after sleeping for a while. Alternate translation: "Later that same night Jacob woke up and took" or "Sometime during that night"

### Genesis 32:22 (#2)

**"his two wives and his two maidservants and his eleven sons"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to list these people. See what you did for a similar list of people in Gen 7:13. Alternate translation: "his two wives, two concubines and eleven sons"

### Genesis 32:22 (#3)

**"and crossed over"**

Alternate translation: "and walked across"

### Genesis 32:22 (#4)

**"the ford of the Jabbok"**

A ford is a very shallow place in a stream that is fairly easy and safe for people and animals to walk across. The Jabbok Stream was a small river that flowed from east to west into the Jordan River about halfway between the Dead Sea and the Sea of Galilee. Jacob took his wives and children from the north side of the stream to the south side; his brother was coming towards them from further south. It might be helpful to include a map here in your translation that includes the places named in this chapter and shows where Jacob and Esau were coming from. Alternate translation: "a shallow place on the Jabbok River." or "a place in the Jabbok Stream that was shallow."

### Genesis 32:23 (#1)

**"So he took them and had them cross over the stream"**

Verse 23 refers back to what already happened in verse 22. Make sure your translation does not sound like Jacob's wives and children crossed the Jabbok Stream twice in verses 22–23. Alternate translation: "After he had taken them across the river," or "After he did that,"

### Genesis 32:23 (#2)

**"and he sent what {belonged} to him across"**

At some point, Jacob went back to the north side of the Jabbok Stream, while his family waited for him on the south side. His belongings included the animals that he had not sent ahead to Esau as well as all his other possessions. Alternate translation: "he went back and had his servants take everything that he owned across the river too." or "he went back and had his servants take all his livestock and other possessions across the river too."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 32:24 (#1)

**"Then Jacob was left alone"**

Alternate translation: "After that, Jacob was alone there for a while,"

**Genesis 32:24 (#2)****"and a man wrestled with him"**

At some point, Jacob realized that this man was Yahweh in the form of a man (verse 30), so translation teams that capitalize references to God will capitalize all the pronouns that refer to him in verses 24–29 and may or may not capitalize “Man” in these verses. See what you did for a similar case when Yahweh appeared as a man to Abraham in Gen 18. Alternate translation: “and then a man came and wrestled with him”

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 32:24 (#3)****"until the dawn came up"**

The word **dawn** refers to the time before sunrise when the sky begins to get light. Alternate translation: “until dawn” or “until daylight started to appear.”

**Genesis 32:25 (#1)****"And he saw that he was not prevailing over him"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to in verses 25–29. Alternate translation: “Then the man realized that he could not defeat him so” or “When the man saw that he was not able to defeat him”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 32:25 (#2)****"so he touched {him} on the socket of his hip"**

Alternate translation: “he hit him on his hip,”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 32:25 (#3)****"so that the socket of Jacob's hip was dislocated"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use an active or passive clause here. Also consider whether it is more natural in your language to use a noun phrase or a pronoun here to refer to Jacob's hip joint. Alternate translation: “so that it was put out of place” or “and his hip joint went out of place”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 32:25 (#4)****"as he wrestled with him"**

Alternate translation: “as he fought with the man.” or “as they fought against each other.”

**Genesis 32:26 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: “Then the man said to Jacob,” or “Then the man demanded,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 32:26 (#2)****"Release me"**

Alternate translation: “You must let me go now,”

**Genesis 32:26 (#3)****"because the dawn has come up"**

See how you translated “the dawn came up” in verse 24. Alternate translation: “because it is dawn” or “because daylight is beginning to come!”

**Genesis 32:26 (#4)****"But he said"**

Alternate translation: “But Jacob said to him,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 32:26 (#5)****"I will not release you unless you bless me"**

Alternate translation: “No! First you must bless me, and then I will let you go!” or “I will let you go only if you bless me!”

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

## Genesis 32:27 (#1)

**"So he said to him"**

Alternate translation: “Then the man asked him”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 32:27 (#2)

**"What {is} your name"**

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: “Tell me your name.” or “what his name was.”

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

## Genesis 32:27 (#3)

**"And he said, “Jacob”**

Make sure in your translation that Jacob’s reply sounds respectful. Also consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

## Genesis 32:28 (#1)

**"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: “Then the man said to Jacob,”

## Genesis 32:28 (#2)

**"Your name will not be called Jacob anymore"**

The wording here is similar to what God said when he changed Abram’s name to Abraham (Gen 17:5) and Sarai’s name to Sarah (17:15). After that, Abraham and Sarah were no longer called by their previous names. In the case of Jacob, he continues to be referred to by both of his names in this chapter (**Jacob** in verses 29–30, 32; **Israel** in verse

32) and throughout the rest of the Bible, including by God (Gen 46:2). It could be that although God was changing Jacob’s primary name to “Israel,” he was still known by his previous name too. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: “You will no longer be named Jacob,”

## Genesis 32:28 (#3)

**"but Israel"**

If you include the meaning of the name **Israel** in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translate **struggled** in the following clause.

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 32:28 (#4)

**"because you have struggled with God and with men"**

The Hebrew word for **struggled** here is more general than the word for “wrestled” in verses 24 and 25. Alternate translation: “because you have struggled against both God and men”

## Genesis 32:28 (#5)

**"and you have prevailed"**

See how you translated **prevailed** in verse 25 and Gen 30:8. It may be necessary to translate this term in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “and you have overcome.”

## Genesis 32:29 (#1)

**"Then Jacob asked and said"**

Consider again whether or not you have capitalized references to the man in verses 24–29. See the note about this at verse 24. Alternate translation: “Then Jacob asked him”

See: Honorifics

**Genesis 32:29 (#2)****"Please tell {me} your name"**

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: "What is your name?" or "what his name was."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 32:29 (#3)****"But he said"**

Alternate translation: "But the man replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 32:29 (#4)****"Why {is} this you are asking"**

This rhetorical question probably means that there was no need for Jacob to ask the man what his name was; he should have known without asking. Consider whether or not it is best to use a rhetorical question here in your language. Alternate translation: "You do not need to ask me"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 32:29 (#5)****"for my name"**

Alternate translation: "to tell you my name!"

**Genesis 32:30 (#1)****"I saw God face to face"**

Alternate translation: "I saw God in person here,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 32:30 (#2)****"but my life was preserved"**

Jacob was amazed that he was still alive because, although there were exceptions (Exodus 33:11; Judges 13:22), normally people could not see God face to face and live (Exodus 33:20). You could put

that information in a footnote so that readers understand why Jacob was surprised. Alternate translation: "but yet my life was spared by him!" or "but yet he has allowed me to live!"

**Genesis 32:31 (#1)****"And the sun rose on him"**

Alternate translation: "The sun shined on Jacob" or "The sun was rising"

**Genesis 32:31 (#2)****"as he passed Penuel"**

Penuel is another name for the place that is called Peniel in verse 30. That information could be put in a footnote. Or you could use the same spelling in both verses to avoid confusion; **Penuel** is the spelling in the rest of the Old Testament. Alternate translation: "as he left Penuel and returned to his family."

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 32:31 (#3)****"and he was limping"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "As he walked, he was limping"

**Genesis 32:31 (#4)****"because of his hip"**

Alternate translation: "because his hip joint was injured"

**Genesis 32:32 (#1)****"to this day"**

Alternate translation: "even now" or "even in the present"

**Genesis 32:32 (#2)****"the sons of Israel"**

Alternate translation: "the descendants of Israel" or "the Israelites"

**Genesis 32:32 (#3)****"do not eat the muscle of the tendon"**

Alternate translation: "do not eat the tendon"

**Genesis 32:32 (#4)****"that {is} on the socket of the hip"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this is talking about eating meat from an animal, not about cannibalism.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 32:32 (#5)****"because he touched the socket of Jacob's hip on the muscle of the tendon"**

See how you translated the idiom **touched** in verse 25.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 33:1 (#1)****"Then Jacob lifted his eyes and looked"**

Make sure your translation of this idiom does not mean that Jacob looked straight up. Rather, he probably looked carefully to the south (the direction that his brother was coming from). Alternate translation: "Then Jacob looked up and saw" or "Then Jacob looked ahead of him and saw"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 33:1 (#2)****"and behold, Esau was coming"**

Esau was still a fair distance away, which gave Jacob time to do everything that he does in verses

1–3. Alternate translation: "that Esau was in the distance coming his way,"

**Genesis 33:1 (#3)****"and with him 400 men"**

Alternate translation: "with 400 men!" or "and that he had 400 men with him!"

**Genesis 33:1 (#4)****"Then he divided the children among Leah and Rachel and the two maidservants"**

Each of the women had her own children with her (verse 2). See how you translated **divided** in Gen 32:7 and "his two maidservants" in Gen 32:22. Alternate translation: "So he quickly put his children into groups with their own mothers, Leah, Rachel and his two servant wives." or "So he had his children quickly gather with their own mothers, so that Leah, Rachel and his two concubines were each with her own children."

**Genesis 33:2 (#1)****"And he put the maidservants and their children"**

See how you translated "his two maidservants" in Gen 32:22. Alternate translation: "He put his two servant wives with their children" or "He put the group that had his two servant wives and their children"

**Genesis 33:2 (#2)****"first"**

For some languages it is more natural to put phrases like **first** and **after them** at the beginning of their clauses and say, "First in line he put his two servant wives and/with their children. Behind them he put Leah and/with her children, and last of all he put Rachel and/with her son Joseph." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "in front of all the others,"

See: Information Structure



**Genesis 33:2 (#3)****"and Leah and her children"**

Alternate translation: "then he put Leah and her children"

**Genesis 33:2 (#4)****"after them"**

Alternate translation: "next,"

**Genesis 33:2 (#5)****"and Rachel and Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "and he put Rachel and her son Joseph"

**Genesis 33:2 (#6)****"after them"**

Alternate translation: "behind them all." or "in the rear."

**Genesis 33:3 (#1)****"Then he himself went before them"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob himself walked ahead of them all toward his brother," or "Then he started going toward his brother ahead of them all,"

**Genesis 33:3 (#2)****"and he bowed to the ground seven times as he came near to his brother"**

See how you translated "bow down" in Gen 27:29. Alternate translation: "and he bowed with his face to the ground seven times to show respect as he went closer to him" or "As he approached Esau, he prostrated himself with his face to the ground seven times to show respect."

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 33:4 (#1)****"But Esau ran to meet him and embraced him"**

This sentence shows a contrast between what Jacob was expecting and what actually happened.

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

**Genesis 33:4 (#2)****"and he fell on his neck and kissed him"**

See how you translated "hugged him ... and kissed him on the cheek/cheeks" in Gen 29:13. Make sure that the way you translate **fell on his neck** does not imply that Esau accidentally fell. Rather, this is an idiom that means he embraced Jacob warmly, with much emotion. Alternate translation: "and he threw his arms around his shoulders and kissed him," or "He held Jacob tightly and kissed him on the cheek"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 33:4 (#3)****"and they cried"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, some languages have a dual pronoun for **they** that could be used here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and they both cried for joy." or "Both of them cried because they were so happy to see each other again."

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

**Genesis 33:5 (#1)****"Then he lifted his eyes"**

See how you translated the idiom "lifted ... eyes" in verse 1 and Gen 31:10. It may be necessary to translate this idiom in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "Then Esau looked up"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 33:5 (#2)****"and saw the women and the children"**

Alternate translation: "and saw the women and children who were there with Jacob,"

### Genesis 33:5 (#3)

"and he said"

Alternate translation: "so he asked him"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 33:5 (#4)

"Who {are} these with you"

Esau wants to know if these people are Jacob's family members or his servants or someone else; he is not asking what their names are. Alternate translation: "How are these people related to you?"

### Genesis 33:5 (#5)

"And he said"

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking to whom here. Alternate translation: "He answered him"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 33:5 (#6)

"The children"

Alternate translation: "They are the children and the wives" or "They are my wives and my children"

### Genesis 33:5 (#7)

"whom God has graciously given to your servant"

Jacob uses the phrase **your servant** to be polite and show respect to Esau; he was not actually Esau's servant. For some languages it is more natural to put the honorific title first in this sentence and say, "Sir, they are the wives and children whom God has graciously given to me." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "whom God has kindly given to me, your servant." or "whom God has graciously given to me, sir."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 33:6 (#1)

"Then the maidservants came near, they and their children"

See how you translated **maidservants** in verses 1–2. Alternate translation: "Then the two maidservants came closer to Esau along with their children,"

### Genesis 33:6 (#2)

"and they bowed down"

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "and they all bowed to the ground in front of him to show respect."

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 33:7 (#1)

"Then Leah also came near and her children"

Alternate translation: "Then Leah also came closer to Esau along with her children" or "Next Leah and her children also came closer"

### Genesis 33:7 (#2)

"Then after {that}, Joseph came near and Rachel"

Alternate translation: "Then last of all, Joseph and his mother Rachel came closer"

### Genesis 33:7 (#3)

"and they bowed down"

Some languages have a dual pronoun for **they** that fits here well. See what you did in verse 4.

See:

### Genesis 33:8 (#1)

"Then he said"

Alternate translation: "Then Esau said to Jacob,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 33:8 (#2)

**"What to you {are}"**

Alternate translation: "What do you mean by" or "What is the purpose of"

### Genesis 33:8 (#3)

**"all these groups"**

Alternate translation: "all those groups of livestock"

### Genesis 33:8 (#4)

**"that I met"**

Alternate translation: "that I saw on my way here?" or "that came to me on my way here?"

### Genesis 33:8 (#5)

**"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 33:8 (#6)

**"To find favor in the eyes of my lord"**

See how you translated **my lord** and the idiom "find favor in ... eyes" in Gen 32:5. Alternate translation: "I sent them so that you would be gracious to me, sir." or "They are gifts for you so that you would be pleased with me, sir."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 33:9 (#1)

**"Then Esau said"**

What Esau says is in contrast to what Jacob said, but it may not be necessary to use a conjunction

here at all. Do what is best in your language.

Alternate translation: "Esau said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 33:9 (#2)

**"I have plenty, my brother"**

For some languages it is more natural to put the address **my brother** first in this quote. Some languages also have a special term for "younger brother" that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "My brother, I already own enough livestock"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 33:9 (#3)

**"Let what {belongs} to you be yours"**

Alternate translation: "Keep what you own for yourself." or "so keep your livestock for yourself."

### Genesis 33:10 (#1)

**"But Jacob said"**

Alternate translation: "But Jacob responded to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 33:10 (#2)

**"No, please"**

In verses 10 and 11, Jacob speaks urgently to Esau, because in that culture if Esau accepts Jacob's gift, he is committing himself to treat Jacob as a friend. Alternate translation: "No, I beg you."

### Genesis 33:10 (#3)

**"If, please, I have found favor in your eyes"**

See how you translated the idiom "find/gain favor in your eyes" in verse 8. Alternate translation: "Rather, if you are pleased with me," or "Rather, if you want to be gracious to me, then"

**Genesis 33:10 (#4)****"then take my gift from my hand"**

Alternate translation: "please accept from me what I have given you."

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 33:10 (#5)****"For indeed"**

Alternate translation: "The fact is,"

**Genesis 33:10 (#6)****"I have seen your face, {which is} like seeing the face of God, and you have received me"**

In Old Testament times it was terrifying for someone to see God in person, because normally people could not see God's face and live (Exodus 33:20). However, God had been gracious to Jacob and allowed him to live (Genesis 32:30). In the same way, it was a terrifying thing for Jacob to see Esau who had 400 men with him, but Esau was gracious to him (33:4). See how you translated a different Hebrew word that means "receive" or "welcome" in Gen 32:20. Alternate translation: "I thought you were still angry at me, so I was afraid of seeing you again in person, just as I would be afraid of meeting God in person, but you forgave me and welcomed me!"

See: Simile

**Genesis 33:11 (#1)****"Please take my blessing that was brought to you"**

Alternate translation: "So please accept my gift of livestock that my servants brought to you," or "So please accept the livestock from me that I sent to you,"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 33:11 (#2)****"because God has been gracious to me"**

Alternate translation: "because God has been generous to me," or "because God has blessed me,"

**Genesis 33:11 (#3)****"and because I have everything"**

Alternate translation: "and he has given me everything that I need." or "so that I own all that I need"

**Genesis 33:11 (#4)****"And he urged him"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who and what is being referred to at every point in this sentence. Alternate translation: "He kept urging him to accept his gift" or "He kept insisting that he accept the livestock from him"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 33:11 (#5)****"so he took {it}"**

Alternate translation: "until finally Esau accepted it"

**Genesis 33:12 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Esau said to Jacob,"

**Genesis 33:12 (#2)****"and I will go in front of you"**

Esau is suggesting that he would accompany or escort Jacob and his family, not that he would go far ahead of them. Alternate translation: "and I will lead you."

**Genesis 33:13 (#1)****"But he said to him"**

Alternate translation: "But he replied to him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 33:13 (#2)

**"My lord knows that"**

See how you translated "my lord" in verse 8.  
Alternate translation: "Sir, you know that"

### Genesis 33:13 (#3)

**"the children {are} tender"**

Alternate translation: "my children are weak,"

### Genesis 33:13 (#4)

**"and the flock{s} and the herd{s} {that} are nursing {are} with me"**

See how you translated "flocks and herds" in Gen 12:16. Alternate translation: "and some of my sheep and cattle are nursing their young."

### Genesis 33:13 (#5)

**"And if they drive them one day"**

Alternate translation: "If my men drive the livestock too hard in one day," or "If I force the livestock to go too fast for even one day,"

### Genesis 33:13 (#6)

**"then all the flock{s} will die"**

This phrase especially refers to the sheep and cattle that were nursing, but Jacob is probably using hyperbole here (**all**) to emphasize that he does not want to travel too fast. Alternate translation: "then all the flocks and herds will die." or "then all of them will die."

See: Hyperbole

### Genesis 33:14 (#1)

**"Please let my lord go on before his servant"**

See how you translated Jacob's use of **my lord** (in verse 8) and **servant** (in verse 5) to show respect

and deference to Esau. Here he uses both terms for emphasis.

See:

### Genesis 33:14 (#2)

**"and I will lead them on at my gentle pace, at the pace of the livestock that {are} ahead of me and at the pace of the children"**

Alternate translation: "Then I will travel along slowly at a speed that is good for the livestock and children that are with me,"

### Genesis 33:14 (#3)

**"until I come to my lord"**

Alternate translation: "until we reach you, sir," or "We will catch up to you later, sir,"

### Genesis 33:14 (#4)

**"in Seir"**

See how you translated "the land of Seir" in Gen 32:3. The land of Seir was a mountainous region southeast of the land of Canaan (and the Dead Sea) and was where Esau had settled. It was also called "Edom" (Gen 32:3), which was Esau's nickname (Gen 25:30). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "in the land of Seir."

### Genesis 33:15 (#1)

**"And Esau said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Esau said to Jacob"

### Genesis 33:15 (#2)

**"Please let me leave with you some of the people who {are} with me"**

Alternate translation: "Okay, then please let me leave you some of my men to escort you." or "Okay, then may I leave some of my men with you to escort you?"

**Genesis 33:15 (#3)****"But he said"**

Make sure the way you translate this quote margin fits with how you translate the previous and following sentences. Alternate translation: "Jacob said to him," or "Jacob answered him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 33:15 (#4)****"Why {do} that"**

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that there is no need for Esau to leave any of his men with him. For some languages it is clearer and more natural to use a statement here instead. Do what is best in your language.

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 33:15 (#5)****"Let me find favor in the eyes of my lord"**

Consider again how you translated **my lord** in verses 8,13–15. For some languages it is more natural to put this address earlier in this quote. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated the idiom **find favor in the eyes of** in verse 8. Alternate translation: "Just please continue to be gracious to me, sir." or "Sir, please just continue to treat me kindly."

See:

**Genesis 33:16 (#1)****"So on that day Esau went on his way back"**

Alternate translation: "So that very day Esau and his men started on their way back" or "So that very day Esau and his men left and headed back"

**Genesis 33:16 (#2)****"to Seir"**

See how you translated **Seir** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "home to the region of Seir."

**Genesis 33:17 (#1)****"And Jacob traveled to Succoth"**

Jacob went northwest to Succoth, instead of going south to the region of Seir as he had said he would do (verse 14). Also see how you translated "travel" in verse 12. Alternate translation: "But Jacob went to the town of Succoth instead," or "Meanwhile, instead of going to Seir, Jacob and his family went to the town of Succoth,"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

**Genesis 33:17 (#2)****"and he built a house for himself"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "There he and his servants built a house for himself and his family" or "where he and his men built a house for his family"

**Genesis 33:17 (#3)****"and for his livestock he made shelters"**

The term **livestock** is general here and includes all of Jacob's animals. Alternate translation: "and they also built some shelters for his livestock" or "and shelters for his animals."

**Genesis 33:17 (#4)****"For that {reason}"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 32:32. Alternate translation: "Because of that,"

**Genesis 33:17 (#5)****"he called the name of the place Succoth"**

The phrase "he/they called" could refer to Jacob, or it could refer to people in general (as it often does in Genesis). If you include the meaning of the name Succoth in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it matches the way you translate **shelters** earlier in this verse.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 33:18 (#1)**

"Then Jacob came {in} peace {to} the city of Shechem, which {was} in the land of Canaan, when he came from Paddan Aram"

Jacob and his family had left Paddan Aram and had been traveling back to the land of his ancestors in Canaan (Gen 31:3, 13, 18). See how you translated **in peace** in Gen 28:21. Alternate translation: "Later Jacob and his family arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the land of Canaan, as he continued traveling home from the region of Paddan Aram," or "After that, Jacob and his family continued their journey home from the region of Paddan Aram, until eventually they arrived safely at the city of Shechem in the land of Canaan,"

**Genesis 33:18 (#2)**

"and he camped"

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **camped** in Gen 26:17. Alternate translation: "and he set up camp in a field" or "Then he set up his tents in a field"

**Genesis 33:18 (#3)**

"before the city"

Alternate translation: "near the city." or "on the edge of the city."

**Genesis 33:19 (#1)**

"And he bought the portion of the field"

Alternate translation: "Then he bought the plot of land"

**Genesis 33:19 (#2)**

"where he pitched his tent{s}"

Alternate translation: "where they had set up their camp" or "where he were camping"

**Genesis 33:19 (#3)**

"from the hand{s} of the sons of Hamor, the father of Shechem, for a hundred kesitahs"

The weight and value of a hundred kesitahs of silver is not known. Some ancient translations (including the LXX and Latin Vulgate) have "a hundred lambs" here, but most modern translations have "a hundred pieces of silver/money". Alternate translation: "for one hundred pieces of money from the sons of Hamor who was the father of Shechem."

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 33:20 (#1)**

"And there he set up an altar"

See how you translated **altar** in Gen 26:25. Alternate translation: "On that land Jacob also built a stone altar," or "Jacob also made an altar out of stones on that land,"

**Genesis 33:20 (#2)**

"and he called it El Elohe Israel"

The name **El Elohe Israel** could also mean "Powerful/Mighty is the God of Israel," because the Hebrew word "el" can mean "God" or "powerful." You could put that information in a footnote.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 34:1 (#1)**

"Then Dinah, the daughter of Leah, whom she had born for Jacob, went out"

These events took place at an unspecified time after Jacob and his family set up their camp beside the city of Shechem (Gen 33:18). Consider what is the best way to introduce a new event in your language. Also be consistent here with how you spelled **Dinah** in Gen 30:21. Alternate translation: "Now one day Dinah, who was the daughter whom Leah had for Jacob, went out" or "One day, Dinah, who was the daughter of Jacob and Leah, went to the city"

See: Introduction of a New Event

**Genesis 34:1 (#2)****"to see"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. The verb **to see** could mean: (1) "to visit with"; many languages have a similar idiom. (2) "to see/observe" the local women, for example, how they dressed and what jewelry they wore.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 34:1 (#3)****"the daughters of the land"**

See how you translated **daughters of the land** in Gen 27:46, and how you translated a similar phrase ("people of the land") in Gen 23:7, 12. Alternate translation: "some of the women who were native to that area" or "some of the native women."

**Genesis 34:2 (#1)****"And Shechem, the son of Hamor the Hivite, the ruler of the land, saw"**

Consider which order of phrases is best here in your language. Also see how you translated "Hivites" in Gen 10:17 and **ruler** in Gen 25:16. Alternate translation: "Then Shechem, who was the son of the Hivite named Hamor who ruled that region, saw" or "Now the ruler of that region was a Hivite named Hamor. His son Shechem saw"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 34:2 (#2)****"her, and he took her"**

Alternate translation: "Dinah, and he grabbed hold of her" or "how beautiful Dinah was, so he took hold of her"

**Genesis 34:2 (#3)****"and lay with her and violated her"**

This is a euphemistic way of saying that Shechem forced Dinah to have sex with him. Translate this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when hearing your translation read

aloud. Alternate translation: "and forced her to go to bed with him."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 34:3 (#1)****"And his soul was attached to Dinah the daughter of Jacob, and he loved"**

Alternate translation: "He admired her so much that he fell in love with her"

**Genesis 34:3 (#2)****"and spoke to the heart of the young woman"**

See how you translated **young woman** in Gen 24:14, and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "and spoke tenderly to her to try to persuade her." or "and tried to win her heart by speaking kindly to her."

**Genesis 34:4 (#1)****"Then Shechem said to Hamor his father, saying"**

Alternate translation: "Then Shechem went to his father Hamor and requested"

**Genesis 34:4 (#2)****"Get this girl for me as a wife"**

At that time it was normal for parents to negotiate with another family to get a spouse for their child. The negotiations would include a bride-price and other details. You could put some of that information in a footnote. The term **girl** that Shechem uses here is less respectful than the term "young woman" that is used in verses 3 and 12.

**Genesis 34:5 (#1)****"Then Jacob heard that"**

Alternate translation: "When Jacob was told by someone that"



**Genesis 34:5 (#2)****"he had defiled Dinah his daughter"**

Alternate translation: "Shechem had disgraced his daughter Dinah," or "his daughter Dinah had been disgraced by Shechem,"

**Genesis 34:5 (#3)****"and his sons were with his livestock in the fields"**

Alternate translation: "his sons were still tending his livestock out in the fields," or "his sons were still out in the fields taking care of his livestock"

**Genesis 34:5 (#4)****"so Jacob kept quiet"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase does not mean that Jacob was totally silent. Rather, it means he did not speak about what Shechem had done to Dinah.

**Genesis 34:5 (#5)****"until they came"**

Alternate translation: "until they came back home."

**Genesis 34:6 (#1)****"And Hamor the father of Shechem came out"**

For some languages it is more natural to introduce Shechem here, rather than wait and have him appear too suddenly in verse 11. Do what is best in your language.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 34:6 (#2)****"to Jacob to talk with him"**

Alternate translation: "to talk with Jacob."

**Genesis 34:7 (#1)****"When they heard"**

Many translations put "when they heard" with the previous sentence. However, unless someone else told Jacob's sons the news of what happened, that interpretation contradicts verse 5, which says that Jacob kept quiet about it until his sons got home. Alternate translation: "When they heard that Shechem had raped their sister,"

**Genesis 34:7 (#2)****"then the men were grieved"**

See how you translated **grieved** in Gen 6:6. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "they were very shocked"

**Genesis 34:7 (#3)****"and it burned within them greatly"**

See how you translated the idiom "it/anger burned within ..." in Gen 32:36. Alternate translation: "and filled with anger,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 34:7 (#4)****"because he had done something disgraceful to Israel"**

Notice in this verse that the Hebrew text has both of Jacob's names, **Jacob** and "Israel," to emphasize that Shechem had sinned against Jacob and all of his descendants (the people of Israel). You could put that information in a footnote. Make sure that your translation of **Israel** does not refer here to a place, since Israel was not yet a country or a territory. Alternate translation: "that Shechem had disgraced the family of Israel"

**Genesis 34:7 (#5)****"and such a thing should not have been done"**

Alternate translation: "Such a wicked thing should never be done by anyone!" or "No one should ever do such a wicked crime!"

**Genesis 34:8 (#1)****"But Hamor spoke with them, saying"**

Alternate translation: "But Hamor pleaded with Jacob and his sons and said," or "But Hamor begged Jacob and his sons,"

**Genesis 34:8 (#2)****"to your daughter"**

The pronoun **your** is plural here, which shows that Hamor is addressing not only Jacob but also his sons. Alternate translation: "My son Shechem has fallen completely in love with your daughter and sister."

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 34:8 (#3)****"Please give her to him as a wife"**

The way **give** and "take" are used in verses 8, 9, 12, 16 and 21 reflects the culture at that time, when parents or families arranged marriages for their daughters. Also see the note about this at verse 4. Alternate translation: "So please permit him to marry her."

**Genesis 34:9 (#1)****"Give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves"**

Alternate translation: "so that your daughters will marry our young men and your young men will marry our daughters." or "so that you allow our young men to marry your daughters and we allow your young men to marry our daughters."

**Genesis 34:10 (#1)****"and settle with us"**

Alternate translation: "You can also live among us." or "We also invite you to live among us."

**Genesis 34:10 (#2)****"And the land is before you. Settle and trade in it"**

Normally foreigners were not allowed to own land or to move around in the land to trade freely. So that is why Hamor is offering this in exchange for Jacob allowing his family to intermarry with the Hivites. Alternate translation: "The land is available for you to choose what you want; settle in it wherever you want. You can also trade freely here," or "You can settle wherever you want in the land. You can also do business buying and selling things wherever you want,"

**Genesis 34:10 (#3)****"and acquire {property} in it"**

Alternate translation: "and you can buy your own property"

**Genesis 34:11 (#1)****"Let me find favor in your eyes"**

See how you translated the idiom "Let me find favor in the eyes of ..." in Gen 33:15. Alternate translation: "Please be gracious to me and let me marry Dinah,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 34:11 (#2)****"and what you say to me I will give"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then I will give you whatever you ask from me for her."

**Genesis 34:12 (#1)****"Increase greatly the dowry and gift for me"**

The **dowry** was the payment that a groom (and his family) had to give to the bride's family. It could include things like money, land, and livestock. The term **gift** probably refers to additional gifts given to the bride and her family members (as in Gen 24:53). If the custom of paying a dowry is not

known in your culture, you could include an explanation in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Set the dowry and wedding gifts that I must pay to marry her as high as you want,"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 34:12 (#2)

**"and I will give according to what you say to me"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 11. Alternate translation: "and I will give you whatever you ask from me."

### Genesis 34:12 (#3)

**"Then give the young woman to me as a wife"**

See how you translated **young woman** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "Only please let me marry the young woman."

### Genesis 34:13 (#1)

**"because he had defiled Dinah their sister"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But because/since Shechem had defiled/dishonored their sister Dinah, the sons of Jacob deceived/tricked Shechem and his father Hamor 14 by saying to them," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because he had disgraced their sister Dinah." or "because he had done a shameful thing to their sister Dinah."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 34:14 (#1)

**"And they said to them"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the sentence that started in verse 13. Alternate translation: "and said to them,"

### Genesis 34:14 (#2)

**"We are not able to do this thing"**

Alternate translation: "We are not able to do such a thing as" or "It would be not be right for us"

### Genesis 34:14 (#3)

**"to give our sister to a man who has a foreskin"**

Translate **who has a foreskin** in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when hearing your translation read aloud. Alternate translation: "to let our sister marry a man like you who has not had his foreskin removed," or "to allow a man like you who is not circumcised to marry our sister,"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 34:14 (#4)

**"because that {is} a disgrace to us"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "because that would humiliate our family!" or "That would cause great shame to our family!"

### Genesis 34:15 (#1)

**"Only on this {condition} will we consent with you"**

Alternate translation: "The only way that we will agree with your proposal is" or "We will do what you ask only if you do this one thing:"

### Genesis 34:15 (#2)

**"if you become like us"**

Alternate translation: "You and your people must first become like us"

### Genesis 34:15 (#3)

**"by every male among you being circumcised"**

See how you translated **circumcised** in Gen 17:10. Alternate translation: "by circumcising all your males."

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 34:16 (#1)**

**"Then we will give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters for us"**

The pronouns "we," "our," and **us** are exclusive in verses 14–17 except for the last **we** in verse 16. Also see how you translated "give ... daughters ... take ... daughters ..." in verse 9. Alternate translation: "Then we will let our daughters marry your young men, and our young men will marry your daughters." or "After you do that, then we will allow your young men to marry our daughters, and we will allow your daughters to marry our young men."

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 34:16 (#2)**

**"And we will settle with you"**

See how you translated **settle with** in verse 10. Alternate translation: "We will also settle among you in this land,"

**Genesis 34:16 (#3)**

**"and we will become one people"**

Here the **we** is inclusive because Jacob's sons are including Shechem and Hamor's people. If you have an inclusive form of this pronoun in your language, you could use it here. Alternate translation: "and as a result we will all be one ethnic group."

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 34:17 (#1)**

**"But if you will not listen to us to be circumcised"**

Alternate translation: "But if you refuse to agree with our requirement that you circumcise your males," or "But if you do not circumcise your males as we say,"

**Genesis 34:17 (#2)**

**"then we will take our daughter and go"**

The phrase **our daughter** reflects the fact that Jacob's sons are using their father's perspective and authority here. If that is confusing, you could say "our sister" instead. See how you translated "our family's daughter" in verse 8. Alternate translation: "then we will leave and take our sister with us."

**Genesis 34:18 (#1)**

**"And their words were good in the eyes of Hamor and in the eyes of Shechem, Hamor's son"**

See how you translated the idiom "good in ... eyes" in Gen 19:8. It may need to be translated in different ways, depending on the context.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 34:19 (#1)**

**"So the young man did not delay"**

Alternate translation: "So Shechem immediately started" or "So right away Shechem took action"

**Genesis 34:19 (#2)**

**"to do the thing"**

Alternate translation: "to do what they proposed," or "to do their requirement,"

**Genesis 34:19 (#3)**

**"and he was honored more than all of the house of his father"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "So right away Shechem, who was the most respected member in his father's household/family, started to do what they required, because he was thrilled with Jacob's daughter." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 34:20 (#1)****"and they spoke to the men of their city, saying"**

In that culture the leaders of a city held their meetings at the main city gates (as in Gen 23:3). Cities were surrounded by walls (that had gates) for protection. You could put some of that information in a footnote so that people understand what was happening. Alternate translation: "and they spoke to the city elders who had gathered there. They said," or "and they told the leaders of their city about Jacob and his sons,"

**Genesis 34:21 (#1)****"These men {are} peaceful with us"**

Here **us** includes Hamor, Shechem and the men they are talking to. Alternate translation: "Jacob and his family are at peace with us,"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 34:21 (#2)****"so let them settle in the land"**

See how you translated **settle** in verse 10. Alternate translation: "so we should let them live in our land"

**Genesis 34:21 (#3)****"and let them trade in it"**

See how you translated **trade in it** in verse 10. Alternate translation: "and let them buy and sell things wherever they want."

**Genesis 34:21 (#4)****"And behold, the land {is} broad of hands before them"**

Alternate translation: "Look, there is enough land to support them and us." or "After all, there is more than enough room in this land for them too."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 34:21 (#5)****"We can take their daughters for ourselves as wives, and we can give our daughters to them"**

See how you translated similar clauses in verses 9 and 16. It may be necessary to translate these in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "That way too, we can choose their daughters to be our wives, and we can let their young men marry our daughters."

**Genesis 34:22 (#1)****"Only on this {condition} will the men consent with us to settle with us"**

See how you began verse 15, which is very similar to verse 22. Alternate translation: "There is just one requirement: They will only agree to settle among us" or "But they will only consent to live among us"

**Genesis 34:22 (#2)****"to become one people"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 16.

**Genesis 34:22 (#3)****"when every male among us is circumcised"**

See how you translated "every male among ... circumcised" in verse 15. Alternate translation: "if all our males are circumcised"

**Genesis 34:22 (#4)****"just as they are circumcised"**

Alternate translation: "as their males are."

**Genesis 34:23 (#1)****"Their livestock and their property and all their animals"**

Alternate translation: "Then all their livestock and animals, and all their other property" or "But if we do that, all their possessions, including their livestock and all their other animals"

**Genesis 34:23 (#2)****"will they not {belong} to us"**

This rhetorical question emphasizes that all of Jacob's livestock and property will belong to the people of Shechem. If a rhetorical question does not fit here in your language, you could make this a statement. Alternate translation: "will be ours!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 34:23 (#3)****"Only let us consent with them"**

Alternate translation: "So we should just do what they propose"

**Genesis 34:23 (#4)****"and they will settle with us"**

See how you translated **settle with us** in verses 10 and 22. Alternate translation: "so that they will settle among us!"

**Genesis 34:24 (#1)****"And all who went out of the gate of his city listened"**

Make sure that your translation of this idiom refers here to the same men who had gathered at the city gates in verse 20. Alternate translation: "All the men who were elders of the city" or "All the men who were there at the city gate"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 34:24 (#2)****"And" - "listened to Hamor and to Shechem his son"**

Alternate translation: "agreed to do what Hamor and his son Shechem said,"

**Genesis 34:24 (#3)****"and every male was circumcised, all who went out of the gate of his city"**

Alternate translation: "so all of them and all the other males in the city were circumcised."

**Genesis 34:25 (#1)****"Then it happened on the third day"**

Alternate translation: "On the third day after that,"

**Genesis 34:25 (#2)****"when they were in pain"**

Alternate translation: "when it was still painful for the men of the city to move"

**Genesis 34:25 (#3)****"then two of Jacob's sons, Simeon and Levi, brothers of Dinah, each took"**

These brothers had the same father and mother as Dinah. Some languages have a special term for this. Do what is best in your language.

See: Kinship

**Genesis 34:25 (#4)****"his sword and went upon the city boldly"**

See how you translated **sword** in Gen 27:40. Alternate translation: "their swords and attacked the city, with no one resisting them."

**Genesis 34:25 (#5)****"and killed every male"**

The children who were males were probably not killed, since later (verse 29) it says that all the children were captured. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here that continues into verse 26. Alternate translation: "They killed all the males there"

**Genesis 34:26 (#1)**

**"And they killed Hamor and Shechem his son with the mouth of the sword"**

Some languages have dual pronouns for **they** and "you" that can be used in verses 25–26 and 30–31 to refer to Simeon and Levi. Do what is best in your language.

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

**Genesis 34:26 (#2)**

**"and left"**

Alternate translation: "and returned home."

**Genesis 34:27 (#1)**

**"The sons of Jacob came upon the slain and plundered the city"**

All of Jacob's sons probably joined Simeon and Levi in plundering the city, after those two had killed all the men there (verse 25).

**Genesis 34:27 (#2)**

**"because they had defiled their sister"**

See how you translated **defiled** in verses 5 and 13. Even though Shechem was the one who actually defiled Dinah (verses 2, 5, 7, 13), Jacob's sons held everyone in the city responsible for the crime that their ruler's son had committed (verses 25–29). If that is not clear, you could put that information in a footnote. Make sure that your translation of **they** does not refer to Jacob's sons. Alternate translation: "They did that because that was where Shechem had disgraced their sister." or "to get revenge for the shameful thing that had been done to their sister there."

**Genesis 34:28 (#1)**

**"They took their flock{s} and their herd{s} and their donkeys, and what {was} in the city and what {was} in the field{s}"**

See how you translated **donkeys** in Gen 32:15.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 34:29 (#1)**

**"And all their wealth and all their little ones and their women they took captive, and they also plundered everything that {was} in the houses"**

See how you translated **plundered** in verse 27. Alternate translation: "They carried away all the valuable things the people of Shechem had owned, including everything that was in their houses. They also captured all their women and children." or "They took away everything that was valuable and also captured all the children and women. They seized and took away everything that was in the houses."

**Genesis 34:30 (#1)**

**"Then Jacob said to Simeon and to Levi"**

Alternate translation: "Later when they came home, Jacob scolded Simeon and Levi by saying,"

**Genesis 34:30 (#2)**

**"You have brought trouble on me"**

Alternate translation: "You have caused me serious problems" or "You have put me in great danger"

**Genesis 34:30 (#3)**

**"by making me stink among {those} who live in the land, among the Canaanites and among the Perizzites"**

The idiom **making me stink** means Jacob's sons had caused him to have a very bad reputation, so that people would hate him and his family. Some languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **the Canaanites** and **the Perizzites** in Gen 13:7; 15:20–21. There were other people groups also living in the land, but these two groups are the ones being emphasized here. Alternate translation: "by causing the people who live in this land to despise us, including the Canaanites and Perizzites!" or "by causing the Canaanites and Perizzites who live in this land to hate me"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 34:30 (#4)****"And I am few of number"**

The words "I," "me," and **my** refer in this verse to all of Jacob's family; he uses these pronouns because he is the leader of his family. Alternate translation: "We only have a few men to defend us,"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 34:30 (#5)****"and if they gather together against me and attack me"**

Make sure your use of the pronouns **me** or "us" fits with the way you translate the rest of this sentence. Alternate translation: "so if they all join forces against me and attack me"

**Genesis 34:30 (#6)****"then I will be destroyed, I and my house"**

Alternate translation: "then I and my family will be killed!" or "they will kill us and the rest of my household!"

**Genesis 34:31 (#1)****"But they said"**

Alternate translation: "But Simeon and Levi replied angrily,"

**Genesis 34:31 (#2)****"Should he have treated our sister like a prostitute"**

This rhetorical question shows Simeon and Levi's anger and emphasizes that Shechem was wrong to do what he did and implies that he (and his city) deserved justice. Some languages have an idiom for this. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "He should not have treated our sister as a prostitute"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 35:1 (#1)****"Then God said to Jacob"**

Translate this quote margin in a way that is natural in your language and that fits with what God says. Alternate translation: "Then God told Jacob,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 35:1 (#2)****"Get up"**

Alternate translation: "Get packed"

**Genesis 35:1 (#3)****"go up to Bethel and settle there"**

The verb **go up** reflects the fact that the town of Bethel is higher in elevation than the city of Shechem; it does not refer to the direction they were going, which was south. Many translations leave **up** implied (to prevent confusion). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and travel to the town of Bethel and live there."

**Genesis 35:1 (#4)****"and make an altar there"**

See how you translated **altar** in Gen 33:20.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 35:1 (#5)****"to the God"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that God is referring to himself as he speaks here to Jacob. Alternate translation: "to me as the God" or "to me, the God"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 35:1 (#6)****"who appeared to you"**



See how you translated **appeared** in Gen 26:2, 24.  
Alternate translation: “who came to you there” or “who introduced myself to you there”

### Genesis 35:1 (#7)

**"when you were fleeing"**

See how you translated “flee” in Gen 31:20–21, 27.

### Genesis 35:1 (#8)

**"from the presence of Esau your brother"**

Alternate translation: “from the anger of your brother Esau.”

### Genesis 35:2 (#1)

**"So Jacob said to his household"**

Alternate translation: “So Jacob told the members of his family”

### Genesis 35:2 (#2)

**"and to all who {were} with him"**

This included Jacob’s servants and the people (women and children) whom his sons had just captured from the city of Shechem (Gen 34:29). You could put some of that information in a footnote.

### Genesis 35:2 (#3)

**"Remove the foreign gods that {are} among you"**

See how you translated “idols” and **gods** in Gen 31:19, 30, 32. Alternate translation: “Get rid of the idols you have that pagan ethnic groups worship.” or “Give up the idols that you have from foreigners”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 35:2 (#4)

**"and purify yourselves"**

They were to make themselves physically clean as a sign that they were preparing themselves mentally and spiritually to worship God (as their only God) at Bethel, which was a holy place where God had met with Jacob before. Some languages may have a special word for **purify** that communicates this. Do what is best in your language. Also consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “and cleanse yourselves”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 35:2 (#5)

**"and change your clothes"**

Alternate translation: “and get on clean clothes.”

### Genesis 35:3 (#1)

**"Then let us get up"**

See how you translated **get up** in verse 1. Alternate translation: “Then we must pack up our things” or “Then we must leave here”

### Genesis 35:3 (#2)

**"and go up to Bethel"**

See how you translated **go up** in verse 1. Alternate translation: “and go to the town of Bethel,”

### Genesis 35:3 (#3)

**"and there I will make an altar to God"**

The Hebrew text has **I** here, but probably also implies that others in Jacob’s household would help him build the altar. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you translated **make an altar** in verse 1. Alternate translation: “where I will build an altar to worship God,” or “There I will build an altar and worship God,”

### Genesis 35:3 (#4)

**"who answered me"**

Alternate translation: "because he answered me" or "who granted my prayers for help"

### Genesis 35:3 (#5)

**"in the day of my distress"**

The phrase "In the day of" is used here as an idiom that could refer to the time when Jacob was fleeing from Esau, or it could be more general and also include other times when Jacob was suffering, such as the years he worked for Laban. Alternate translation: "during the days when I was in trouble."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 35:3 (#6)

**"And he has been with me"**

See how you translated the idiom **with me** in Gen 31:5, where it also means that God is not only present with him but also helps him and takes care of him. Alternate translation: "He has always stayed with me and taken care of me"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 35:3 (#7)

**"in the way that I have gone"**

Alternate translation: "everywhere that I have gone"

### Genesis 35:4 (#1)

**"So they gave to Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "Then they gave Jacob" or "Then they turned over to Jacob"

### Genesis 35:4 (#2)

**"all the foreign gods that {were} in their hand{s}"**

See how you translated **foreign gods** in verse 2. You could translate this differently here since this is the second time they are mentioned in this

paragraph. Alternate translation: "all the pagan gods that they had with them"

### Genesis 35:4 (#3)

**"and the rings that {were} in their ears"**

These earrings seem to have been part of their idol worship and may have had images of their idols on them. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "and the earrings they wore on their ears."

### Genesis 35:4 (#4)

**"and Jacob hid them"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob hid everything in the ground" or "Then Jacob hid all those things in the ground"

### Genesis 35:4 (#5)

**"under"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob buried these things in the ground beside the tree, not directly under the trunk of the tree. Alternate translation: "beside" or "at the foot of"

### Genesis 35:4 (#6)

**"the terebinth tree"**

Although this phrase refers to a terebinth tree, many translations have "oak tree" instead, or some other type of large, strong tree that is well known. See how you translated a different Hebrew word that is also translated **terebinth tree** or "oak tree" in Gen 12:6; 13:18; 14:13; 18:1. Another Hebrew word in Gen 35:8 is also translated as "oak." Alternate translation: "a oak tree"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 35:5 (#1)

**"Then they set out"**

Alternate translation: "Then they all left there and started traveling,"

**Genesis 35:5 (#2)**

**"and the dread of God was on the cities that {were} around them, so that" - "not"**

The Hebrew word "Elohim" probably means **God** in this phrase (as it usually does in the Bible); most English versions translate it that way here. Or it could be an adjective that modifies "dread/terror" and means "great/deep dread/terror" (similar to Gen 23:6, 30:8). See how you translated **dread** in Gen 9:2. Alternate translation: "and God caused the people in the nearby cities to be afraid, so that" or "and God made the people in the nearby cities so afraid that"

**Genesis 35:5 (#3)**

**"so that they did not pursue after"**

Make sure your translation of **they** refers here to the people in the surrounding towns, not Jacob's sons. Alternate translation: "no one attacked" or "none of them came after"

**Genesis 35:5 (#4)**

**"the sons of Jacob"**

Jacob's sons are mentioned here since they are in focus as the ones who just plundered the city of Shechem; Jacob and the rest of his family were there with his sons and were also in danger. Alternate translation: "them." or "Jacob and his family."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 35:6 (#1)**

**"Then Jacob came to Luz"**

Be consistent in this verse with how you spelled **Luz** and **Bethel** in Gen 28:19. Alternate translation: "Soon Jacob arrived at the town of Luz,"

**Genesis 35:6 (#2)**

**"which {is} Bethel"**

See how you translated **which is** in Gen 23:2, 19. Alternate translation: "which is also called Bethel," or "that is, Bethel," or "which now has the name Bethel,"

**Genesis 35:6 (#3)**

**"which {is} in the land of Canaan"**

Since Shechem (verse 4) and Bethel were both in the land or region of Canaan, for some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this location phrase earlier in the verse and say, "Jacob/He and his family continued traveling in the land/region of Canaan and arrived at the town of Luz, which also/now has the name Bethel," Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "which is also in Canaan,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 35:6 (#4)**

**"he and all the people who {were} with him"**

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase near the beginning of this verse. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "he and his whole family."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 35:7 (#1)**

**"And there he built an altar"**

Consider again how you translated **altar** throughout the book of Genesis. See Gen 8:20; 12:7-8; 13:4, 18; 22:9; 26:25; 33:20; 35:1, 3, 7. Alternate translation: "There he built an altar," or "Then he built an altar there,"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 35:7 (#2)**

**"and he called the place"**

Alternate translation: "and he named that place" or "and he named it"

**Genesis 35:7 (#3)****"because there"**

Alternate translation: "because it was at Bethel that"

**Genesis 35:7 (#4)****"God had revealed himself to him"**

Compare how you translated a different Hebrew word that has a similar meaning ("appeared") in verses 1 and 9. Alternate translation: "God had first introduced himself to him" or "God had first appeared to Jacob"

**Genesis 35:7 (#5)****"when he was fleeing"**

See how you translated **fleeing** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "while he was running away"

**Genesis 35:7 (#6)****"from the presence of his brother"**

See how you translated **from the presence of** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "from the anger of his brother."

**Genesis 35:8 (#1)****"Then Deborah, the nurse of Rebekah, died"**

See how you translated **nurse** in Gen 24:59.

**Genesis 35:8 (#2)****"and was buried"**

Alternate translation: "and her body was buried by Jacob in the ground" or "They buried her body in the ground"

**Genesis 35:8 (#3)****"below Bethel"**

The town of Bethel was built on a hill, so the phrase **below Bethel** means that Deborah was buried near Bethel, in a valley or place that was lower in elevation than the town, and possibly to the south of it. Alternate translation: "in the valley below the town of Bethel," or "at a place south of the town of Bethel,"

**Genesis 35:8 (#4)****"under the oak tree"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("under the terebinth/oak tree") in verse 4. Many translations translate this phrase the same way in both places ("under an oak tree"), even though different Hebrew words are used for the type of tree. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put this phrase before the previous phrase and say, "at the base of an oak tree, below/near the town of Bethel." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "beside an oak tree" or "at the foot of an oak tree."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 35:8 (#5)****"So he called its name"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) that people in general called the tree or place Allon Bacuth; or (2) that Jacob was the one who named the place. See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 31:38. Alternate translation: "So he named the tree" or "That is why the place is known as"

**Genesis 35:8 (#6)****"Allon Bacuth"**

If you include the meaning of this name in your translation text or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translated **oak tree** in the previous sentence.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 35:9 (#1)**

**"Then God appeared to Jacob again when he had come from Paddan Aram"**

Alternate translation: "Now that Jacob had come from the land of Paddan Aram, God appeared to him at Bethel again" or "Now that Jacob had returned to Bethel from the land of Paddan Aram, God appeared to him there again"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 35:9 (#2)**

**"and he blessed him"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and blessed him" or "and showed his goodness toward him"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 35:10 (#1)**

**"and God said to him"**

What God says to Jacob in verses 10–12 is the blessing. So make sure your translation of "blessed" (verse 9) and **said** (verse 10) refers to the same event, not two separate events. See how you translated "blessed ... and said" in Gen 1:28. Alternate translation: "by saying to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 35:10 (#2)**

**"Your name {is} Jacob"**

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like God was telling Jacob something he did not know.

**Genesis 35:10 (#3)**

**"Your name will not be called Jacob anymore"**

Notice that Jacob is referred to by both of his names in this chapter (**Jacob** in verses 11–20, 22–29; **Israel** in verses 10 and 21). You could put that information in a footnote. Also see how you translated this clause in Gen 32:28, and see the note

about Jacob's names there. Alternate translation: "that will no longer be your only name," or "it will no longer be that,"

**Genesis 35:10 (#4)**

**"but Israel will be your name"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Rather, your name will also be Israel!" or "Rather, you will also have the name Israel!"

**Genesis 35:10 (#5)**

**"So he called his name Israel"**

This was not the first time God had given Jacob the name Israel (See: Gen 32:28). To make that clear, you could make "once again" explicit here.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 35:11 (#1)**

**"Then God said to him"**

In verse 11, God continues the blessing that he started in verse 10, perhaps after a pause. Alternate translation: "Then God also said to him" or "Then God also blessed him by saying," or "God continued blessing him by saying to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 35:11 (#2)**

**"I {am} God Almighty"**

See how you translated the title **God Almighty** in Gen 17:1 and 28:3. Alternate translation: "I am God who is all-powerful."

**Genesis 35:11 (#3)**

**"Be fruitful"**

Consider again how you translated **Be fruitful and multiply** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 1:22, 28; 8:17; 9:1, 7; 35:11. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context.

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 35:11 (#4)

**"and multiply"**

Alternate translation: "and increase in number." or "so that you and your descendants become very many."

## Genesis 35:11 (#5)

**"A nation and a community of nations will be from you"**

Compare how you translated a similar phrase ("a multitude of nations") in Gen 17:4–5 and another similar phrase ("a community of peoples") in Gen 28:3. Alternate translation: "Your descendants will become a large people group. In fact, many ethnic groups will descend from you," or "Your descendants will become many ethnic groups,"

## Genesis 35:11 (#6)

**"and kings will come from your loins"**

The phrase **come from your loins** is an idiom that refers to having children, grandchildren and other descendants. Consider whether you have a similar idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "and kings will descend from you."

See: Euphemism

## Genesis 35:12 (#1)

**"And the land that I gave to Abraham and to Isaac I will give to you, and I will give the land to your descendants after you"**

Alternate translation: "Also, I am giving to you the land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac, and I will also give it to your descendants who live after you."

## Genesis 35:13 (#1)

**"Then God went up from him at the place where he spoke with him"**

See how you translated **went up from** in Gen 17:22. Alternate translation: "Then God left Jacob there where he had been speaking to him."

## Genesis 35:14 (#1)

**"Then Jacob set up a pillar"**

See how you translated a similar passage in Gen 28:18 about Jacob setting up a memorial stone pillar. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob set a large stone up on its end" or "Then Jacob chose a large stone that was there and set it up on its end"

## Genesis 35:14 (#2)

**"at the place where he had spoken with him, a pillar of stone"**

Alternate translation: "at the place where God had spoken to him, to mark the place as special." or "as a memorial stone to remember the place where God had talked to him."

## Genesis 35:14 (#3)

**"and he poured a drink offering on it, and he poured oil on it"**

A drink offering was probably wine that Jacob poured on the stone as a sacrifice to God, to worship and thank him. See how you translated "poured oil on ..." in Gen 28:18. Alternate translation: "Then he poured some wine and some olive oil on the stone pillar to thank God and dedicate the place to him."

See: Symbolic Action

## Genesis 35:15 (#1)

**"And Jacob called the name of the place where God spoke with him Bethel"**

See how you translated "called the name of that place Bethel" in Gen 28:19.

## Genesis 35:16 (#1)

**"Then they set out from Bethel"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bethel** throughout the book of Genesis and whether you

refer to it as a town or a city. See Gen 12:8; 13:3; 28:19; 31:13; 35:1, 3, 7, 15, 16. Alternate translation: “Then they left the town of Bethel” or “Later Jacob and his family moved on from the town of Bethel”

### Genesis 35:16 (#2)

**"and there was still a distance of land to come to Ephrath"**

The phrase **a distance of land** is very general, but your translation should not make it sound like the distance was too far, because Rachel's grave is about two kilometers (one mile) from Ephrath (Bethlehem). Alternate translation: “and started heading toward the town of Ephrath. But while they were still a distance away from there,”

### Genesis 35:16 (#3)

**"but was having great difficulty while she was giving birth"**

Alternate translation: “but she was having a very difficult time delivering the baby.”

### Genesis 35:17 (#1)

**"And it happened when she was in hard labor"**

The phrase **hard labor** refers to when childbirth contractions are close together and very painful, often right before a baby is born. Alternate translation: “Then when she was at the most difficult time in her labor,” or “Then when her childbirth pains were the most severe,”

### Genesis 35:17 (#2)

**"then the midwife said to her"**

Alternate translation: “the midwife told her,” or “the baby was born and the midwife who was helping her deliver exclaimed to her,”

### Genesis 35:17 (#3)

**"Do not be afraid"**

Alternate translation: “Do not worry”

### Genesis 35:17 (#4)

**"because this {is} also a son for you"**

Alternate translation: “You now have another boy!” or “You just gave birth to another son”

### Genesis 35:18 (#1)

**"Then it happened as her soul was leaving {her}—for she was dying"**

Some translations use an idiom here, for example, “as she was taking her last breath” or “as her life was slipping/fading away”, but it is best to translate this in a way that preserves the biblical teaching that at death the soul or spirit leaves the body. Alternate translation: “But Rachel was dying, and as her soul was leaving her body,” or “But in fact Rachel was about to die, and just before her soul left her,”

### Genesis 35:18 (#2)

**"then she called his name Ben-oni"**

The meaning of this name could imply that the child caused Rachel's death. In the Hebrew text this name is two words connected with a dash (**Ben-oni**). Many translations write it that way or as one word (“Benoni”), and a few translations write it as “Ben Oni.” Any of these spellings is fine.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 35:18 (#3)

**"but his father"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that this phrase refers to Jacob. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 35:18 (#4)

**"called him Benjamin"**

The phrase “son of my right hand” is an idiom that means “favored son” or “son of strength.” Alternate translation: “named him Benjamin instead.”

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 35:19 (#1)

#### "So Rachel died and was buried"

See how you translated **was buried** in verse 8. Alternate translation: “After Rachel died, her body was buried by Jacob” or “After Rachel died, Jacob buried her body”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 35:19 (#2)

#### "on the way to Ephrath"

Alternate translation: “beside the road that goes to the town of Ephrath,”

### Genesis 35:19 (#3)

#### "which {is} Bethlehem"

See how you translated a similar phrase (“which is Bethel”) in verse 6. Alternate translation: “which is also called Bethlehem.” or “that is, Bethlehem.”

### Genesis 35:20 (#1)

#### "And Jacob set up a pillar"

See how you translated this clause in verse 14. Also consider again how you translated **set up** and **pillar** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 28:18, 22; 31:13, 45, 51, 52; 35:14, 20. Alternate translation: “Jacob set a large stone up on its end”

### Genesis 35:20 (#2)

#### "over her grave"

Alternate translation: “over her burial place to show where it was.” or “to show where her tomb was.” or “to mark the place where he had buried her body.”

### Genesis 35:20 (#3)

#### "to this day"

The phrase **to this day** refers to the time when the author (Moses) was living. Even in modern times, Rachel’s grave is still marked beside the road about eight kilometers (five miles) south of Jerusalem and two kilometers (one mile) north of Bethlehem. Alternate translation: “in the present day.” or “now.”

### Genesis 35:21 (#1)

#### "Then Israel set out"

Make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that **Israel** (verses 21–22) and “Jacob” (verses 20, 22) refer to the same person, not two different people. Alternate translation: “Then Israel that is, Jacob, and his family moved on from there” or “Then Israel and his family started traveling again”

### Genesis 35:21 (#2)

#### "and pitched his tents"

Alternate translation: “and put up his tents”

### Genesis 35:21 (#3)

#### "beyond"

This phrase reflects the perspective of Jacob, who was traveling south. Alternate translation: “on the other side of”

### Genesis 35:21 (#4)

#### "Migdal Eder"

Many translations transliterate **Migdal Eder** (like most other names). Many others translate the meaning of **Migdal** as “the tower” and transliterate “Eder.” A few translate the meaning of the entire name as “the Tower of the Flock.” This was apparently a place near Bethlehem where sheep were raised (Micah 4:8); shepherds may have watched over their flocks from the tower. Alternate translation: “Eder Tower.”

See: How to Translate Names



**Genesis 35:22 (#1)****"And it happened while Israel was living"**

Alternate translation: "While Israel and his family were still living" or "During the time that they were living"

**Genesis 35:22 (#2)****"in that land"**

Alternate translation: "in that region," or "there,"

**Genesis 35:22 (#3)****"then Reuben went and lay with"**

Translate this idiom in a way that will not offend or embarrass people, especially when read aloud in public. See how you translated "lain with" in Gen 26:10.

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 35:22 (#4)****"and Israel heard"**

See how you translated **heard** in Gen 34:5, 7. Alternate translation: "but Israel found out about it." or "and Israel was told by someone about it."

**Genesis 35:22 (#5)****"Now the sons of Jacob were twelve"**

Alternate translation: "After the birth of Benjamin, Jacob now had a total of twelve sons."

**Genesis 35:23 (#1)****"The sons of Leah {were}"**

Throughout verses 23–26, many translations have a colon (:) instead of **were**. Do what is best in your language. See what you did in chapter 10. Alternate translation: "The sons he had with his wife Leah were" or "These are the names of the sons he had with his wife Leah:"

**Genesis 35:24 (#1)****"The sons of Rachel {were} Joseph and Benjamin"**

Alternate translation: "The sons Jacob had with Rachel were Joseph and Benjamin." or "These are the names of the sons that Jacob had with his wife Rachel: Joseph and Benjamin."

**Genesis 35:26 (#1)****"And the sons of Zilpah, the maidservant of Leah, {were} Gad and Asher"**

Consider again how you translated **maidservant** throughout the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:16, 16:1–3, 5–6, 8; 20:14; 24:35; 25:12; 29:24, 29; 30:4, 7, 9–10, 12, 18, 43; 32:5, 22; 33:1–2, 6; 35:25–26. It may be necessary to translate this word in slightly different ways, depending on the context. Compare that to how you translated a different Hebrew word that has a similar meaning ("slave/servant woman"); see Gen 31:33 for a list of where this word occurs in Genesis.

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

**Genesis 35:26 (#2)****"Those {are} the sons of Jacob who were born to him"**

Alternate translation: "All those were the sons Jacob had"

**Genesis 35:26 (#3)****"in Paddan Aram"**

Jacob started having children during the time he was living with Laban in Paddan Aram, but his last son Benjamin was not born until after they had left there (verse 18). Translate this in a way that allows for that.

**Genesis 35:27 (#1)****"Then Jacob came to Isaac his father"**

Alternate translation: "Then Jacob came home to his father Isaac who was living" or "Then Jacob continued traveling and came to where his father Isaac was living"

## Genesis 35:27 (#2)

### "in Mamre"

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Mamre** in Gen 23:17, 19.

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 35:27 (#3)

### "Kiriath Arba, which {is} Hebron"

See how you translated Gen 23:2, which says that Kiriath Arba (where Sarah died) was also known as Hebron. Alternate translation: "which is now called Kiriath Arba, that is, Hebron," or "which is also known as Kiriath Arba or Hebron,"

## Genesis 35:27 (#4)

### "where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "where Abraham and Isaac and their families had stayed for a while as outsiders." or "That is where Isaac and his family had been staying for a while as foreigners and where his father Abraham had also stayed for a while."

## Genesis 35:28 (#1)

### "And the days of Isaac were 180 years"

See how you translated **the days of** in Gen 5:4–31 and 11:32.

## Genesis 35:29 (#1)

### "Then Isaac exhaled and died"

See how you translated **exhaled** in Gen 25:8 and 17. Alternate translation: "Then he breathed out for the last time and died," or "Then he took his final breath and died,"

See: Euphemism

## Genesis 35:29 (#2)

### "and he was gathered to"

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 25:8 and 17. Alternate translation: "and he was taken by God to be with" or "and God took his spirit to be with"

## Genesis 35:29 (#3)

### "his people"

Alternate translation: "his relatives who had already died." or "his relatives who had gone before him." or "his deceased relatives."

## Genesis 35:29 (#4)

### "old and full of days"

For some languages it is more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "Then, after living a long, full life, he breathed/took his last breath, died and joined his ancestors/relatives who had died before him." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "He was very old and had lived a long, full life."

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 35:29 (#5)

### "And Esau and Jacob, his sons, buried him"

See how you translated "his sons ... buried him" in Gen 25:9.

## Genesis 36:1 (#1)

### "And these {are} the generations of Esau"

See how you translated **the generations of** in 25:12, 19. Alternate translation: "Now this is the family-line of Esau," or "These are the descendants of Esau," or "Here is the history about the family of Esau,"

**Genesis 36:1 (#2)****"who {is} Edom"**

The name Edom means "red" and is the nickname that Esau got for trading his birthright to Jacob for some reddish-colored stew (Genesis 25:29–34). The region of Edom and the Edomites were named after Esau, which is probably why this chapter repeatedly mentions that Esau is Edom. Alternate translation: "who was also called Edom." or "that is, Edom."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 36:2 (#1)****"Esau had taken his wives from the daughters of Canaan"**

Only the first two wives mentioned in this chapter were Canaanites; see the comment about Basemath at verse 3. The Canaanites were the descendants of Noah's grandson Canaan (Ham's son) and included the Hittites and Hivites (verse 2; Genesis 10:15–18) and several other people groups. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Esau had chosen two of his wives from among the Canaanite women:" or "Esau had married two women who were descendants of Canaan"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 36:2 (#2)****"Adah"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "whose names were Adah,"

**Genesis 36:2 (#3)****"the daughter of Elon the Hittite"**

Make sure your translation does not sound like Elon was the only Hittite. See how you translated "Hittites" in Gen 27:46. Alternate translation: "whose father was Elon, who was a descendant of Heth," or "the daughter of a man named Elon, who was a member of the Heth people group,"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 36:2 (#4)****"and Oholibamah"**

Notice that the names of Esau's two Canaanite wives here are different from the names of his wives mentioned in Gen 26:34. It could be that they each had two names, or these may be different wives that he married later. Alternate translation: "and also Oholibamah," or "as well as Oholibamah,"

**Genesis 36:2 (#5)****"the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of"**

Notice that Elon, Anah, and Zibeon are the names of men here, not women.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 36:2 (#6)****"Zibeon the Hivite"**

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not sound like Zibeon was the only Hivite. Consider again how you translated "Hivites" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 10:17; 34:2; 36:2. Alternate translation: "Zibeon who was a descendant of Hivi." or "Zibeon who was a member of the Hivi people group."

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 36:3 (#1)****"and Basemath"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Since this Basemath was a daughter of Ishmael (who was a descendant of Noah's son Shem), she was not a Canaanite, in contrast to Esau's first two wives (verse 2). She was also known as Mahalath (Gen 28:9); you could include some of that information in a footnote. Be consistent here with how you spelled Basemath (a different woman with the same name) in Gen 26:34.

**Genesis 36:3 (#2)**

**"the daughter of Ishmael {and} the sister of Nebaioth"**

Since Nebaioth was Ishmael's oldest child (Gen 25:13), Basemath (Mahalath) was his younger sister, probably from the same mother. Use a kinship term here in your language that fits with those facts. See how you translated **the sister of Nebaioth** in Gen 28:9. Alternate translation: "whose father was Ishmael and whose older brother was Nebaioth."

See: Kinship

**Genesis 36:4 (#1)**

**"And Adah bore Eliphaz for Esau"**

Alternate translation: "Adah had a son for Esau whom they named Eliphaz,"

**Genesis 36:4 (#2)**

**"and Basemath bore Reuel"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to break this long sentence into two or more shorter sentences. Alternate translation: "while his wife Basemath bore a son named Reuel,"

**Genesis 36:5 (#1)**

**"Jeush and Jalam and Korah"**

Alternate translation: "sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah."

**Genesis 36:6 (#1)**

**"Then Esau took his wives and his sons and his daughters"**

Alternate translation: "Later Esau took his wives, his sons, his daughters,"

**Genesis 36:6 (#2)**

**"and all the people of his house"**

This phrase refers to other relatives (besides Esau's wife and children), as well as servants or slaves who lived with him.

**Genesis 36:6 (#3)**

**"and his livestock and all his animal{s} and all his possession{s}"**

Alternate translation: "as well as his livestock and all the rest of his animals and all the other possessions"

**Genesis 36:6 (#4)**

**"that he had acquired in the land of Canaan"**

See how you translated **acquired** and **land of Canaan** in Gen 12:5 and 31:18. Alternate translation: "that he had gotten while they lived in the land of Canaan,"

**Genesis 36:6 (#5)**

**"and he went to a land from the presence of Jacob his brother"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause at the beginning of this verse and say, "Then/Later Esau moved to a land that was away from his brother Jacob. He took with him his wives ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and he moved to an area that was away from his brother Jacob." or "and he traveled to a different region and settled there, away from where his brother Jacob was living."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:7 (#1)**

**"because"**

Alternate translation: "He did that because" or "The reason Esau moved away is that"

**Genesis 36:7 (#2)**

**"their possession{s} were {too} great for them to remain together"**

The phrase **their possessions** is general, but here it refers primarily to livestock. Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to both Esau and Jacob's livestock, not just Esau's. Alternate translation: "he and Jacob both owned so many livestock that they could no longer live near each other." or "they both owned so many livestock that they could not live together in the same area"

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 36:7 (#3)

#### "the land of their sojournings"

See how you translated Gen 13:6, which is similar in content to this verse. Alternate translation: "The land where they were living"

### Genesis 36:7 (#4)

#### "and" - "was not able to support them because of their livestock"

For some languages it is necessary to switch the order of verses 6 and 7, and say, "After a while, Esau and Jacob had so many animals and other possessions that the land was not able to support both their families. So Esau took his wives ..." If you do this in your translation, you should label these verses as "6-7". Alternate translation: "was just not big enough to feed them all because they owned so many animals." or "did not have enough grazing areas or water to support all the livestock that both families owned"

See: Verse Bridges

### Genesis 36:8 (#1)

#### "So Esau settled"

Alternate translation: "That is why Esau and his family" or "That is the reason Esau took his family and"

### Genesis 36:8 (#2)

#### "in the mountains of Seir"

Esau had already been living in the region of Seir (Genesis 32:3, 33:16). Here he moves to the part of that region that had mountains. To make that clear,

you could put that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "moved to the hill-country in the land of Seir." or "went to live in the Seir Mountains."

### Genesis 36:8 (#3)

#### "Esau"

Alternate translation: "That is the history about Esau,"

### Genesis 36:8 (#4)

#### "who {is} Edom"

Some translations put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, "So Esau, that is, Edom, moved with his family to the mountains of Seir and settled there." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "who was also known as Edom." or "who was also called Edom."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 36:9 (#1)

#### "Now these {are} the generations of Esau"

Consider again how you translated **generations** in the book of Genesis when it is followed by a genealogy (list of names). See Gen 5:1, 10:1, 11:10, 25:12, 36:9. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "What follows is more of the history of Esau," or "This is a more detailed genealogy about the descendants of Esau,"

### Genesis 36:9 (#2)

#### "the father of the Edomites"

Alternate translation: "who was the ancestor of the Edom people group"

### Genesis 36:9 (#3)

#### "in the mountains of Seir"

Consider again how you translated **mountains** or "hill country" throughout the book of Genesis. See

Gen 10:30; 12:8; 14:6, 10; 19:17, 19, 30; 22:2, 14; 31:21, 23, 25, 54; 36:8–9, and see the note about this at 10:30. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “who live in the Seir Hills.” or “who live in the hill-country of Seir.”

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 36:10 (#1)

**"These {are} the names of the sons of Esau"**

Only two of Esau's many sons are listed in verse 10.

### Genesis 36:10 (#2)

**"Eliphaz, the son of Esau's wife Adah"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Eliphaz** and **Adah** in verse 4. Alternate translation: “Eliphaz, who was the son of his wife Adah,” or “Eliphaz, whom Esau had with his wife Adah,”

### Genesis 36:10 (#3)

**"and Reuel, the son of Esau's wife Basemath"**

See how you spelled **Basemath** and **Reuel** in verse 4. Alternate translation: “and Reuel, who was the son of his wife Basemath.” or “and Reuel, whom Esau had with his wife Basemath.”

### Genesis 36:11 (#1)

**"And the sons of Eliphaz were"**

Alternate translation: “The sons of Eliphaz and his wife were”

### Genesis 36:12 (#1)

**"And Timna was a concubine for Esau's son Eliphaz, and she bore Amalek for Eliphaz"**

See how you translated **concubine** in Gen 22:24, 25:6; 35:22. Alternate translation: “Eliphaz also had a servant-wife named Timna, and she had a son with him named Amalek.” or “Eliphaz and his concubine Timna had a son they named Amalek.”

### Genesis 36:12 (#2)

**"Those {were} the grandsons of"**

Alternate translation: “All those sons of Eliphaz were grandsons of”

### Genesis 36:12 (#3)

**"Adah, the wife of Esau"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Adah's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 36:13 (#1)

**"And these {were} the sons of Reuel"**

Alternate translation: “The sons of Reuel were named” or “Reuel and his wife had these sons:”

### Genesis 36:13 (#2)

**"Those were the grandsons of"**

Alternate translation: “Those sons of Reuel were grandsons of”

### Genesis 36:13 (#3)

**"Basemath, the wife of Esau"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Basemath's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons. See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 12.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 36:14 (#1)

**"And these were the sons of Esau's wife Oholibamah"**

Alternate translation: “Here are the sons that Esau had with his wife Oholibamah,”

**Genesis 36:14 (#2)**

"the daughter of Anah {and} the {grand}daughter of Zibeon"

See how you translated these phrases in verse 2. Alternate translation: "whose father was Anah and whose grandfather was Zibeon:"

**Genesis 36:14 (#3)**

"and she bore Jeush and Jalam and Korah for Esau"

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Esau and his wife Oholibamah had sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. Oholibamah was the daughter of Anah and the granddaughter of Zibeon." or "The sons that Oholibamah had with Esau were Jesush, Jalam, and Korah. She was the daughter of ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "She had sons whom they named Jeush, Jalam, and Korah."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:15 (#1)**

"These {were}"

Alternate translation: "Here is a list of" or "The following are"

**Genesis 36:15 (#2)**

"were} Chief Teman, Chief Omar, Chief Zepho, Chief Kenaz"

Alternate translation: "who became chiefs were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz," or "who became tribal leaders were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,"

**Genesis 36:16 (#1)**

"Chief Korah, Chief Gatam, Chief Amalek"

Make sure you are consistent in whether or not you use the title **Chief** in verses 15–16.

**Genesis 36:16 (#2)**

"Those {were} the chiefs of Eliphaz in the land of Edom"

Be consistent with how you spelled **Eliphaz** throughout this chapter; see verses 4, 10–12, 15–16. Alternate translation: "Those are the chiefs who descended from Eliphaz and lived in the region called Edom." or "All those sons of Eliphaz were tribal leaders who lived in the region of Edom."

**Genesis 36:16 (#3)**

"Those {were} the grandsons of"

Alternate translation: "They were the grandsons of"

**Genesis 36:16 (#4)**

"Adah"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Adah's grandsons were also Esau's grandsons. Also, be consistent with how you spelled **Adah** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 4:19–20, 23; 36:2, 4, 10, 12, 16.

**Genesis 36:17 (#1)**

"Those {were} the chiefs of Reuel in the land of Edom"

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 16. Also be consistent with how you spelled **Reuel** throughout this chapter; see verses 4, 10, 13, 17. Alternate translation: "They were the chiefs who descended from Reuel and lived in the region called Edom." or "All those sons of Reuel were clan leaders who lived in the region of Edom."

**Genesis 36:17 (#2)**

"Those {were} the grandsons of"

See how you translated this phrase in verses 12, 13 and 16. Alternate translation: "All those sons of Reuel were grandsons of"

**Genesis 36:17 (#3)****"Basemath, the wife of Esau"**

See how translated this phrase in verse 13 and a similar phrase in verse 12. Also be consistent with how you spelled **Basemath** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 26:34–35; 36:3–4, 10, 13, 17.

**Genesis 36:18 (#1)****"Those {were} the chiefs of Esau's wife Oholibamah"**

Alternate translation: "They were the chiefs who descended from Esau and his wife Oholibamah," or "They were the tribal leaders ..."

**Genesis 36:19 (#1)****"He {is} Edom"**

Some translations put this phrase earlier in this verse and say, "All those chiefs were the descendants of Esau, that is, Edom, and each one led his own family group." Do what is best in your language. See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 8. Alternate translation: "Esau was also known as Edom." or "Esau was also called Edom." or "That is the record about Edom."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:20 (#1)****"These {were} the sons of Seir the Horite who were inhabiting the land"**

The name "Horites" is an alternate name for the Hivites (verse 2). Also, this genealogy is mentioned here because Seir was the ancestor of Esau's Canaanite wife Oholibamah (verse 25) and the Seir mountains where Esau was living (verse 8) were probably named after Seir. You could put some of that information in a footnote. See how you translated "Horites" in Gen 14:6. Alternate translation: "Here is a list of the descendants of Seir the Horite who were also living in that land:" or "The sons of Seir the Horite who were also living in that land were"

**Genesis 36:21 (#1)****"Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, the sons of Seir"**

See how you translated the names of people groups in verses 2. Alternate translation: "Those descendants of Seir became the chiefs of the Horites" or "They were the descendants of Seir who became tribal leaders for the Horites"

**Genesis 36:21 (#2)****"in the land of Edom"**

Alternate translation: "who were living in the region of Edom."

**Genesis 36:22 (#1)****"And the sons of Lotan were Hori and Hemam"**

Some translations spell the name **Hemam** as "Heman" or "Homam." You could use any of these spellings in your translation.

**Genesis 36:22 (#2)****"and the sister of Lotan {was} Timna"**

Timna became a concubine of Esau's son Eliphaz (verse 12). This genealogy (verses 20–22) also shows that she was the daughter of Chief Seir (since her brother Lotan was the son of Chief Seir). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Also, according to Jewish history outside the Bible, Timna was Lotan's younger sister. If your language has a special term for "younger sister" or "older brother," you could use one of those here. Alternate translation: "and the name of his sister was Timna."

See: Kinship

**Genesis 36:23 (#1)****"Alvan and Manahath and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam"**

Alternate translation: "Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam."



**Genesis 36:24 (#1)****"He {is} Anah who found"**

Alternate translation: "He is the same Anah who found" or "Anah is the one who found"

**Genesis 36:24 (#2)****"the hot springs"**

The term used here in the Hebrew text occurs only once in the Bible and its meaning is not certain. Most translations have either **hot springs** or "water." Alternate translation: "water"

**Genesis 36:24 (#3)****"in the wilderness when he was pasturing the donkeys for Zibeon his father"**

See how you translated "pasture" in Gen 29:7.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:26 (#1)****"Hemdan and Eshban and Ithran and Keran"**

The Hebrew name **Keran** can also be spelled "Cheran." Each of these spellings is found in many translations. Be consistent here with how you spelled **Dishon** in verse 21.

**Genesis 36:27 (#1)****"These {were} the sons of Ezer: Bilhan and Zaavan and Akan"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Ezer** in verses 20–21.

**Genesis 36:29 (#1)****"These {were} the chiefs of the Horites"**

Alternate translation: "The leaders over the Horite clans were" or "The Horites who became chiefs were"

**Genesis 36:29 (#2)****"Chief Lotan, Chief Shobal, Chief Zibeon, Chief Anah"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Lotan** and **Shobal** in verse 20, how you spelled **Zibeon** in verses 2, 14, 20, 24, 29, and how you spelled **Anah** in verses 2, 14, 18, 20, 24–25, 29.

**Genesis 36:30 (#1)****"Chief Dishon, Chief Ezer, Chief Dishan"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Dishon** in verses 21, 25–26, how you spelled **Ezer** in verses 21, 27, 30, and how you spelled **Dishan** in verses 21, 28, 30.

**Genesis 36:30 (#2)****"Those {were} the chiefs of the Horites, according to their clans"**

Be consistent with how you translated **Horites** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 14:6; 36:20–21, 29–30. Alternate translation: "Those were the Horite chiefs. They had their own family groups" or "Those were the tribal leaders for the Horites. They had their own tribes"

**Genesis 36:30 (#3)****"in the land of Seir"**

Be consistent with how you spelled **Seir** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 14:6; 32:3; 33:14, 16; 36:8–9, 20–21, 30. Alternate translation: "and lived in the region of Seir." or "who were living in the region of Seir."

**Genesis 36:31 (#1)****"And these {were} the kings"**

See how you translated **kings** in Gen 17:6 and 35:11. Be sure to distinguish **kings** (verses 31–39) from "chiefs" (verses 15–19, 21, 28, 40–43) in your translation of this chapter. Alternate translation: "These are the names of the kings" or "This is a history about the kings"

**Genesis 36:31 (#2)****"who reigned in the land of Edom"**

Alternate translation: "who ruled over the people of the region of Edom"

**Genesis 36:31 (#3)****"before a king reigned for the sons of Israel"**

See how you translated **the sons of Israel** in Gen 32:3. Alternate translation: "before there were any kings ruling over the descendants of Israel." or "during the time period when the Israelites did not yet have their own king."

**Genesis 36:32 (#1)****"And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom"**

Alternate translation: "Bela, who was the son of Beor, was the first king to rule over the people of the region of Edom." or "The first king to reign over the people of the region of Edom was Bela, the son of Beor."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:32 (#2)****"and the name of his city {was} Dinhabah"**

Dinhabah was probably King Bela's hometown and his capital city that he ruled the land of Edom from. Alternate translation: "His capital city that he ruled from was Dinhabah."

**Genesis 36:33 (#1)****"and Jobab the son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place"**

The phrase **from Bozrah** probably means this was Jobab's hometown, which he ruled from, much like the meaning of "his city" in verses 32, 35, and 39. Alternate translation: "Jobab, who was the son of Zerah, succeeded Bela as king and ruled from his hometown of Bozrah."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:34 (#1)****"and Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place"**

King Husham may have been a descendant of Esau's grandson Teman (verse 11). You could put that information in a footnote. Also compare how you translated verse 33. Alternate translation: "Husham succeeded Jobab as king and reigned from his hometown, which was in the region where the Temanites lived."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:35 (#1)****"and" - "reigned in his place"**

Alternate translation: "succeeded him as king."

**Genesis 36:35 (#2)****"who struck the Midianites"**

See how you translated the idiom **struck** in Gen 14:5, 7. Alternate translation: "King Hadad is the one who defeated the Midianites in war"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 36:35 (#3)****"in the field of Moab"**

Moab was a large region located to the east of the Dead Sea. This battle probably took place in the countryside or an unpopulated area (a **field**) within this region. Alternate translation: "in a field in the region of Moab." or "in the country of Moab."

**Genesis 36:35 (#4)****"And the name of his city {was} Avith"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 32. Alternate translation: "His capital city that he ruled from was Avith."

**Genesis 36:36 (#1)**

**"and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place"**

Alternate translation: "Samlah succeeded Hadad as king and ruled from his hometown of Masrekah."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:37 (#1)**

**"and Shaul from Rehoboth {on} the river reigned in his place"**

See how you translated similar sentences in verses 33, 34 and 36. Alternate translation: "Shaul succeeded him as king and ruled from his hometown of Rehoboth, which was beside the Euphrates River."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 36:38 (#1)**

**"Then Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan the son of Achbor reigned in his place"**

Alternate translation: "When King Shaul died, Baal-Hanan, who was the son of Achbor, took his place as king." or "... succeeded him as king."

**Genesis 36:39 (#1)**

**"Then Baal-Hanan the son of Achbor died, and Hadar reigned"**

Most translations follow the Hebrew text and have **Hadar** here. Some translations (and ancient versions such as SP, LXX, Syriac, and Vulgate) have "Hadad" here instead, in order to spell this name the same way it is spelled in 1 Chronicles 1:50–51. However, that could cause confusion, because "Hadad" is also the name of a different king in verses 35–36 above.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 36:39 (#2)**

**"and" - "reigned in his place"**

Consider again how you translated this phrase in verses 33–39. Alternate translation: "took his place as king" or "succeeded him as king"

**Genesis 36:39 (#3)**

**"and the name of his city {was} Pau"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also see how you translated a similar clause in verses 32 and 35. Alternate translation: "His capital city that he ruled from was Pau."

**Genesis 36:39 (#4)**

**"the daughter of Matred {and} the granddaughter of Me-Zahab"**

Notice that **Matred** and **Me-Zahab** are the names of men. See how you translated similar phrases in verses 2 and 14. Alternate translation: "whose father was Matred and whose grandfather was Me-Zahab."

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 36:40 (#1)**

**"And these {are} the names of"**

Alternate translation: "The following list of names includes"

**Genesis 36:40 (#2)**

**"the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, according to their places, by their names"**

Notice that the chiefs listed below are different from those listed in the verses above, except for Kenaz and Teman (verse 15). Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to break up this long sentence into two shorter sentences. Alternate translation: "more of the chiefs who descended from Esau. These chiefs led their own family groups in their own territories, which were named after them:" or "more of the descendants of Esau who were tribal leaders; the tribes and the regions where they lived were named after them:"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 36:40 (#3)****"Chief Timna, Chief Alvan, Chief Jetheth"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. (1) Most translations treat all the names in verses 40–43 as the names of chiefs (as in the ULT and UST of these verses). (2) However, some scholars think that all the names in verses 40–43 are the names of regions or clans and say, "These are/were the names of the clans/tribes that descended from Esau. Each clan/tribe lived in the land of Edom in its own region that was named after that clan/tribe. The names of the clans/tribes were Timna, Alvan ... Iram. Those were the names of the clans/tribes of the Edomites. Each of the clans/tribes lived in their own part of the land of Edom that they owned ..."

**Genesis 36:41 (#1)****"Chief Oholibamah, Chief Elah, Chief Pinon"**

Make sure that the way you translate verses 41–43 fits with the interpretation you followed in verse 40.

**Genesis 36:43 (#1)****"Chief Magdiel, Chief Iram"**

Make sure you are consistent in whether or not you use the title **Chief** in verses 40–43.

**Genesis 36:43 (#2)****"Those {were} the chiefs of"**

Consider again how you translated "chief" throughout this chapter; see verses 15–19, 21, 29–30, 40–43. Alternate translation: "Those were the names of more of the chiefs over" or "All of those were chiefs over" or "Those were more of the clan leaders of"

**Genesis 36:43 (#3)****"Edom"**

Alternate translation: "the Edom people group;"

**Genesis 36:43 (#4)****"according to their dwellings"**

Alternate translation: "each of them led their own tribes in the places where they lived"

**Genesis 36:43 (#5)****"in the land of their possession"**

Alternate translation: "in the land that they owned"

**Genesis 36:43 (#6)****"That {was} Esau"**

Alternate translation: "That was the record about Esau," or "This concludes the history about Esau,"

**Genesis 36:43 (#7)****"the father of the Edomites"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 9. Also compare how you translated the names of other people groups in this chapter, including "Hittite" and "Hivite" in verse 2; **Edomites** in verse 9; "Horite/Horites" in verses 20, 21, 29, 30; "Temanites" in verse 34; and "Midianites" in verse 35. Alternate translation: "who was the ancestor of the Edom people group."

**Genesis 37:1 (#1)****"And Jacob lived"**

Chapter 37 continues the history about Jacob that left off at the end of chapter 35. Begin this chapter in a way that is natural in your language. Make sure the way you translate **lived** allows for the fact that Jacob was already living in Canaan and had settled near the city of Hebron, where his father and grandfather had lived previously (Gen 35:27). Alternate translation: "Now Jacob was still living"

**Genesis 37:1 (#2)**

**"in the land of his father's sojournings, in the land of Canaan"**

See how you translated “sojourned” in Gen 35:27 and **the land of Canaan** in Gen 35:6. Alternate translation: “in the land of Canaan where his father Isaac had lived for a while as a outsider.”

## Genesis 37:2 (#1)

### "These {are} the generations of Jacob"

Consider again how you translated **These are the generations of** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 2:4; 6:9; 11:27; 25:19; 36:1; 37:2, where what follows is a narrative or history of events. Compare that to Gen 5:1; 10:1; 11:10; 25:12; 36:9, where what follows is more of a genealogy (list of names). It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “This is more of the history about Jacob and his family.” or “What follows tells more about Jacob and his family.”

## Genesis 37:2 (#2)

### "Joseph, a son of seventeen years"

This verse may be referring to a single incident or it may be referring to what happened regularly.

## Genesis 37:2 (#3)

### "was shepherding the flock{s}"

See how you translated **flocks** in Gen 4:2.

## Genesis 37:2 (#4)

### "with his brothers, and he {was} a young man with"

As the youngest of these brothers, Joseph was their helper as they took care of their father's flocks. Alternate translation: “as an helper for his brothers who were”

## Genesis 37:2 (#5)

### "the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives"

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Bilhah** in Gen 29:29 and **Zilpah** in 29:24.

## Genesis 37:2 (#6)

### "and Joseph brought a bad report about them to their father"

The Hebrew text does not specify what Joseph's brothers had done wrong, so neither should your translation. Also, make sure your translation of **their father** does not sound like the sons of Bilhah and Zilpah had a different father than Joseph had. Alternate translation: “and he told his father about the bad things they were doing.” or “and he gave bad reports to his father about them.”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 37:3 (#1)

### "Now Israel"

This verse introduces background information for the events that happen next. Consider what is the best way to begin this sentence in your language. Make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that Jacob (verse 1) and Israel (verse 3) refer to the same person, not two separate people. For a note about this, see Gen 35:10. Alternate translation: “Now Jacob, whose other name was Israel,”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

## Genesis 37:3 (#2)

### "because he {was} a son of his old age"

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, “Now Joseph was born to Israel when he was old, so he/Israel loved him more than all the rest of his sons.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “because Joseph was born to him when he was old.”

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 37:3 (#3)

### "So he made a multicolored tunic for him"

The meaning of the Hebrew text is not certain here. Many translations (including the Greek Septuagint and Latin Vulgate) say that the tunic or robe was **multicolored** or “colorful.” This **tunic** was

probably full-length to the ankles and had long sleeves that reached to the hands. Alternate translation: "So he made a beautiful tunic for him that had many colors." or "So he made a special colorful robe for him"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 37:4 (#1)

**"so they hated him and were not able to speak to him peaceably"**

Make sure it is clear here in your translation that the brothers hated Joseph, not their father. Alternate translation: "they despised Joseph so much that they could not speak to him kindly" or "... they refused to speak to him in a kind way." or "... they always spoke unkindly to him."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 37:5 (#1)

**"Then Joseph dreamed a dream"**

Alternate translation: "Then one night Joseph had a dream"

### Genesis 37:5 (#2)

**"and told it to his brothers"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "The next day he told his brothers what he dreamed"

### Genesis 37:5 (#3)

**"and they continued to hate him even more"**

Alternate translation: "and they became even more hateful toward him." or "That made them despise him even more than before."

### Genesis 37:6 (#1)

**"And he said to them"**

Alternate translation: "He told them,"

### Genesis 37:6 (#2)

**"Please hear this dream that I dreamed"**

Alternate translation: "Please listen to me tell about this dream that I had." or "I had a dream that I want to tell you about. Please listen to me tell it."

### Genesis 37:7 (#1)

**"And behold"**

Alternate translation: "In my dream I saw"

### Genesis 37:7 (#2)

**"we were binding sheaves in the middle of a field"**

A sheaf of grain is a bunch of grain stalks that have been cut and tied together in a bundle, with the heads of grain at the top. Wheat and barley were the grains that were common in this region at that time, not corn or oats. Alternate translation: "that we all were out in the middle of a field cutting stalks of grain and tying the stalks into sheaves" or "us working together out in a field cutting and tying sheaves of wheat stalks."

### Genesis 37:7 (#3)

**"and behold"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

### Genesis 37:7 (#4)

**"my sheaf"**

Alternate translation: "my sheaf of grain" or "the sheaf that I had made"

### Genesis 37:7 (#5)

**"got up and also stood upright"**

Alternate translation: "stood up on its end"

**Genesis 37:7 (#6)****"and behold"**

Alternate translation: "Then behold"

**Genesis 37:7 (#7)****"your sheaves"**

Alternate translation: "your sheaves of grain" or "the bundles that you had made"

**Genesis 37:7 (#8)****"gathered around"**

Alternate translation: "stood around my sheaf" or "stood in a circle around my bundle"

**Genesis 37:7 (#9)****"and bowed down to my sheaf"**

Alternate translation: "and bowed down to the ground to my sheaf to show submission." or "and bowed respectfully to my sheaf" or "and bowed down in front of it in respect."

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 37:8 (#1)****"Then his brothers said to him"**

Alternate translation: "His brothers retorted angrily,"

**Genesis 37:8 (#2)****"Will" - "really"**

The brothers use two rhetorical questions in this verse to express their disagreement with Joseph and to emphasize that they are not happy with him. Do what is best in your language.

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 37:8 (#3)****"you" - "reign over us"**For languages that mark inclusive and exclusive pronouns, **us** excludes Joseph in this sentence. Alternate translation: "reign over us!"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 37:8 (#4)****"And they continued to hate him even more"**Consider again how you translated **hate** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 24:60; 26:27; 29:31, 33; 37:4-5, 8. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "So they despised him even more strongly than they did before"**Genesis 37:8 (#5)****"because of his dreams and because of his words"**

For some languages, it is more natural to switch the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "So because of what he/Joseph had told them about his dreams, his brothers hated him even more strongly/intensely than they did before." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "for his dreams and for what he told them about the dreams."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 37:9 (#1)****"Then he dreamed yet another dream, and he related it to his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "Sometime after that, Joseph told his brothers about another dream that he had."

**Genesis 37:9 (#2)****"And he said"**

Alternate translation: "Here is what he said:"

**Genesis 37:9 (#3)****"and behold"**

Alternate translation: “and amazingly in this dream”

### Genesis 37:9 (#4)

#### "were bowing down"

See how you translated “bowed down” in verse 7. Alternate translation: “were bowing down to the ground”

### Genesis 37:9 (#5)

#### "to me"

Bowing down to someone was a way of showing respect and honor to that person. If that is not clear in your culture, you could make that information explicit in your translation or in a footnote. If it is understood, you can leave it implied (as the Hebrew text does). Alternate translation: “to me to show respect.” or “in front of me to honor me.”

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 37:10 (#1)

#### "And he related it to his father and to his brothers"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. Verse 10 could refer to: (1) a second time that Joseph told his dream; for example, “Then/Later Joseph told the same dream to both his father and his brothers, but his father ...” or (2) the same time that he told this dream to his brothers in verse 9; for example, “When Joseph related/told the dream to his father and his brothers, his father ...”

### Genesis 37:10 (#2)

#### "but his father rebuked him and said to him"

Your translation of this quote margin should not sound like two separate events; the verbs **rebuked** and **said** refer to the same event. Alternate translation: “but his father rebuked him by saying,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 37:10 (#3)

#### "What {is} this dream that you dreamed"

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to show that he is not happy about Joseph’s dream. Decide the best way to translate this in your language. Alternate translation: “Your dream is ridiculous”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 37:10 (#4)

#### "Will your mother and I and your brothers really"

See how you translated a similar rhetorical question in verse 8. Alternate translation: “Your mother and I and your brothers will never”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 37:10 (#5)

#### "come to bow down to the ground"

See how you translated **bow down** in verse 7. Alternate translation: “come to you and bow down to the ground”

### Genesis 37:10 (#6)

#### "to you"

Alternate translation: “in front of you”

### Genesis 37:11 (#1)

#### "And his brothers envied him"

See how you translated **envied** in Gen 26:14; 30:1.

### Genesis 37:11 (#2)

#### "but his father kept the matter {in mind}"

Alternate translation: “but his father continued to wonder about what it all could mean.” or “but his father kept thinking about the dreams and wondered what they meant.”



**Genesis 37:12 (#1)****"near Shechem"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Shechem** in Gen 35:4.

**Genesis 37:13 (#1)****"And Israel said to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "So one day Israel said to Joseph,"

**Genesis 37:13 (#2)****"Aren't your brothers shepherding"**

Israel uses a rhetorical question to remind Joseph of something he already knows and to introduce what he wants Joseph to do. Decide the best way to communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: "As you know, your brothers are pasturing our flocks"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 37:13 (#3)****"near Shechem"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12.

**Genesis 37:13 (#4)****"And he said to him"**

Alternate translation: "He responded," or "He answered him,"

**Genesis 37:13 (#5)****"Behold me"**

Alternate translation: "Yes, sir."

**Genesis 37:14 (#1)****"Then he said to him"**

Alternate translation: "Then Israel told Joseph,"

**Genesis 37:14 (#2)****"Please go and see"**

Alternate translation: "Please go find out"

**Genesis 37:14 (#3)****"the well-being of your brothers and the well-being of the flock{s}"**

Alternate translation: "whether or not things are going well for your brothers and the flocks,"

**Genesis 37:14 (#4)****"and bring me word"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then come tell me how they are doing."

**Genesis 37:14 (#5)****"So he sent him"**

Alternate translation: "So Israel sent Joseph on his way"

**Genesis 37:14 (#6)****"from the valley of Hebron"**

Be consistent in how you spell **Hebron** throughout the book of Genesis. See Gen 13:18; 23:2, 19; 35:27; 37:14.

**Genesis 37:14 (#7)****"and he went to Shechem"**

The trip from the city of Hebron to the city of Shechem was about 100 kilometers (60 miles). Alternate translation: "and he went to the city of Shechem."

**Genesis 37:15 (#1)****"And a man found him, and behold"**

In this context **found** means the man happened to meet Joseph as Joseph was walking around looking for his brothers; the man was not intentionally looking for him. Also, for some languages it is clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "He started wandering around searching in the fields near there, where/and he met a man who asked ..." or "As he was wandering around searching in the fields near there, he met a man who asked ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "There he met a man who had seen him"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 37:15 (#2)****"he was wandering around in the fields. So the man asked him, saying"**

The word **fields** refers here to large, open places with no fences and few trees, where sheep and goats could easily graze. Alternate translation: "searching around in the nearby countryside and asked him"

**Genesis 37:15 (#3)****"What are you looking for"**

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or an indirect quote here in your language. Alternate translation: "Who are you looking for?" or "what he was looking for."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 37:16 (#1)****"Please tell me"**

Alternate translation: "Do you know"

**Genesis 37:16 (#2)****"where they are shepherding"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause earlier in the verse and say, "I am looking for

my brothers who were somewhere around here shepherding/pasturing/tending their flocks. Do you know where they are now?" Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "where they are pasturing their flocks?"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 37:17 (#1)****"Then the man said"**

Alternate translation: "The man answered him," or "The man replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 37:17 (#2)****"They set out from here"**

Alternate translation: "I saw them, but then they left from here"

**Genesis 37:17 (#3)****"For I heard them say"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "In fact, I heard them say to each other" or "but I overheard them say to each other"

**Genesis 37:17 (#4)****"Let us go to Dothan"**

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your translation.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 37:17 (#5)****"Then Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan"**

Alternate translation: "So Joseph went to the town of Dothan and found his brothers near there."

**Genesis 37:18 (#1)****"But they saw him from a distance"**

Alternate translation: "While he was still some distance away from them, they saw him,"

**Genesis 37:18 (#2)****"and before he came near to them"**

Alternate translation: "and before he got close to where they were,"

**Genesis 37:18 (#3)****"then they conspired against him to kill him"**

Alternate translation: "they plotted to kill him."

**Genesis 37:19 (#1)****"Behold, that master of dreams is coming"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph's brothers are being sarcastic and disrespectful here as they make fun of Joseph. Alternate translation: "Look here comes that master dreamer!"

**Genesis 37:20 (#1)****"into one of the cisterns"**

A cistern was a large hole or pit that had been dug in the ground to catch rain water and store it there. It was wide at the bottom and had a small opening at the top. The sides of the hole were covered with plaster so that it would hold water. Alternate translation: "into one of the empty pits here."

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 37:20 (#2)****"Then we will say an evil animal"**

Alternate translation: "Then we will tell people that a ferocious wild animal"

**Genesis 37:20 (#3)****"devoured him"**

Alternate translation: "has eaten him," or "ate him down,"

**Genesis 37:20 (#4)****"and we will see"**

Alternate translation: "and everyone will see"

**Genesis 37:20 (#5)****"what his dreams become"**

Joseph's brothers are speaking here in a disdainful way, continuing to mock him. Alternate translation: "what will become of his dreams!" or "what happens to his great dreams!" or "if his great dreams come true!"

**Genesis 37:21 (#1)****"But Reuben heard"**

Alternate translation: "When Reuben heard what they were planning,"

**Genesis 37:21 (#2)****"and he rescued him from their hand{s}"**

The phrase **their hands** refers to Joseph's brothers and their power to harm him. Consider whether you have a similar figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: "he tried to save Joseph from them"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 37:21 (#3)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and said to them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 37:21 (#4)****"Let us not strike his life"**

Consider again how you translated the idiom **strike** in Gen 4:15; 34:30; 37:21. Alternate translation: "We must not take his life." or "We must not kill him."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 37:22 (#1)****"And Reuben said to them"**

Some translations do not include this phrase, possibly because Reuben is still speaking to the same people. However, he may have paused between verses 21 and 22 to see the effect of what he said in verse 21. Also, the repeated quote margin helps emphasize what he says in verse 22. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then he added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 37:22 (#2)****"Do not shed blood"**

See how you translated the idiom **shed blood** in Gen 9:6. Alternate translation: "Do not kill him."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 37:22 (#3)****"Throw him into this cistern"**

See how you translated **cistern** in verse 20. Alternate translation: "Instead put him into this dry well"

**Genesis 37:22 (#4)****"which {is} in the wilderness"**

Consider again how you translated **wilderness** or "desert" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 14:6 (and note); 16:7; 21:14, 20–21; 36:24; 37:22. Also see when it occurs as implied information in Gen 12:9–10; 13:1, 3; 20:1; 24:62. Alternate translation: "here in the wilderness"

**Genesis 37:22 (#5)****"but do not lay a hand on him"**

The phrase **lay a hand on** is an idiom that emphasizes that they are not to harm him at all, not even in the smallest way. Alternate translation: "but you must not harm him in any way."

**Genesis 37:22 (#6)****"in order to rescue him from their hand{s}"**

See how you translated "rescued him from their hands" in verse 21. Alternate translation: "Reuben was planning to save him from them" or "He said that in order to save him from being killed by them"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 37:22 (#7)****"to return him to his father"**

Make sure your translation of **his father** does not sound like Joseph had a different father than his brothers had. Alternate translation: "so that he could return him safely to his father." or "and take him back home to his father."

**Genesis 37:23 (#1)****"Then it happened when Joseph came to his brothers"**

As usual, the phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes an important set of events. Many translations leave it implied. Do what is natural in your language.

**Genesis 37:23 (#2)****"then they stripped Joseph of his tunic, the multicolored tunic"**

See how you translated **multicolored tunic** in verse 3. Alternate translation: "they grabbed hold of him and tore off his colorful robe"

**Genesis 37:23 (#3)****"that {was} on him"**

Alternate translation: "he had on."

**Genesis 37:24 (#1)****"Then they took him"**

If the phrase "grabbed/took hold of him" is made explicit in your translation in verse 23, it can be left implied here in verse 24.

**Genesis 37:24 (#2)****"and threw him into the cistern"**

See how you translated "throw him" and **cistern** in verse 20. Alternate translation: "and put him into the well."

**Genesis 37:24 (#3)****"And the cistern {was} empty; there was not water in it"**

Alternate translation: "Now the well was empty; it had no water in it." or "The well was empty and completely dry inside."

**Genesis 37:25 (#1)****"Then they sat down to eat bread"**

It is clear from verse 29 that Reuben was not there when his brothers made the plan to sell Joseph to the traders.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 37:25 (#2)****"and they lifted their eyes and looked"**

See how you translated the idiom "lifted ... eyes" in Gen 22:13. Alternate translation: "and while they were eating, they looked around"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 37:25 (#3)****"and behold"**

Alternate translation: "and saw that" or "and they saw that"

**Genesis 37:25 (#4)****"a caravan of"**

A **caravan** is a large group of people who are traveling together. Alternate translation: "a large company of"

**Genesis 37:25 (#5)****"Ishmaelites"**

See how you translated the names of other people groups in Gen 15:19–21. Alternate translation: "Ishmaelite merchants" or "traders from the Ishmael people group" or "traders who were descendants of Ishmael"

**Genesis 37:25 (#6)****"was coming from Gilead"**

For some languages it may be clearer to change the order of some of the implied information in this sentence and say, "... and saw/noticed that headed their way/direction was a large group of Ishmaelite traders/merchants that was coming/traveling from the region of Gilead." Do what is best in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Gilead** in Gen 31:21, 23, 25. Alternate translation: "was coming toward them from the region of Gilead." or "was traveling from the region of Gilead and was headed their way."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 37:25 (#7)****"And their camels were carrying"**

Consider again how you translated "camel" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:16 (and note); 24:10–11, 14, 19–20, 22, 25, 30–32, 35, 44, 46, 61, 63–64; 30:43; 31:17, 18, 34; 32:7, 15; 37:25.

**Genesis 37:25 (#8)****"spices and balm and myrrh"**

Gilead was a mountainous region east of the Jordan River that was famous as a source of balm (or balsam), which was a rare tree resin that was used for perfume and for medicine. Myrrh was another type of tree resin that was used as incense and as medicine. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "expensive spices, healing resin and incense"

See:

**Genesis 37:25 (#9)****"that} they were going to take down to Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "that they were transporting down to the country of Egypt to sell there." or "that they were taking to sell in the country of Egypt."

**Genesis 37:26 (#1)****"Then Judah said to his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "Then Judah asked his brothers,"

**Genesis 37:26 (#2)****"What gain {is there}"**

Judah uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize his point. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "What will we gain"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 37:26 (#3)****"if we kill our brother and cover up his blood"**

The phrase **cover up** is an idiom that means to prevent people from knowing about something evil that was done. Also, the phrase **his blood** is an idiom that refers to Joseph's death. Alternate translation: "if we kill our brother and try to keep people from finding out about it"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 37:27 (#1)****"Come and let us sell him"**

See how you translated "come and" in verse 20. Alternate translation: "Instead, we should sell him"

**Genesis 37:27 (#2)****"to the Ishmaelites"**

See how you translated **Ishmaelites** in verse 25. Alternate translation: "to those Ishmaelites over there" or "to those Ishmaelite merchants over there"

**Genesis 37:27 (#3)****"so that our hand{s} will not be on him"**

Translate this idiom in a way that is natural and clear in your language. Alternate translation: "so that we do not harm him."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 37:27 (#4)****"For he {is} our brother, our flesh"**

The phrase **our flesh** refers to the fact that they are closely related biologically. See how you translated a similar idiom ("my bone and my flesh") in Gen 29:14. Alternate translation: "After all, as our brother, he is member of our family."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 37:27 (#5)****"And his brothers listened"**

See how you translated **listened** in Gen 34:24.

**Genesis 37:28 (#1)****"Then the Midianite men, traders, passed by"**

The Ishmaelites (verses 25, 27–28; 39:1) and Midianites (verses 28 and 36) were the descendants of Abraham's sons Ishmael and Midian (16:15; 25:1–2). However, sometimes (as here) the names of those people groups are used

interchangeably for the same people (also see Judges 8:22, 24, 26). Perhaps that was because the two people groups had intermarried. Or there may have been merchants from the two people groups in this caravan who bought and sold Joseph together. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "So as the Midianite (that is, Ishmaelite) merchants came by them," or "So when the Ishmaelite traders who were also called Midianites were going by them,"

### Genesis 37:28 (#2)

**"and they drew Joseph up and lifted him out of the cistern"**

Not all of Joseph's brothers were there, because we know from the next verse that at least Reuben was somewhere else when they sold Joseph.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 37:28 (#3)

**"and sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty {shekels of} silver"**

See the note about shekels at Gen 20:16. Twenty shekels of silver was equal to about one-fourth of a kilo (half a pound) and was the average price for a slave. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "and sold him to the Ishmaelite traders for twenty pieces of silver."

See: Biblical Money

### Genesis 37:29 (#1)

**"Then Reuben returned to the cistern"**

Consider again how you translated **cistern** in verses 20, 22, 24, 28–29. Alternate translation: "Later Reuben who had been gone for a while returned to the well," or "Then Reuben went back to the well to get Joseph,"

### Genesis 37:29 (#2)

**"but behold, Joseph was not in the cistern"**

Alternate translation: "but to his surprise Joseph was gone!"

### Genesis 37:29 (#3)

**"so he tore his clothes"**

Alternate translation: "So he tore his clothes to show grief." or "Then he was so grieved that he tore his clothes."

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 37:30 (#1)

**"Then he returned to his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "Then he went back to where his brothers were"

### Genesis 37:30 (#2)

**"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and said to them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 37:30 (#3)

**"The boy"**

Joseph was seventeen years old (verse 2), so this phrase should be translated in a way that is appropriate for his older brother to refer to him here. See how you translated a different word that has a similar meaning in Gen 21:12. Alternate translation: "The lad" or "Our younger brother"

### Genesis 37:30 (#4)

**"is not {there}"**

Alternate translation: "is missing!"

### Genesis 37:30 (#5)

**"And I, where am I going"**

Reuben uses a rhetorical question here to express how distressed he is and to emphasize that he does not know what to do. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Now what can I do?"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 37:31 (#1)

**"Then they took"**

Alternate translation: "So they"

### Genesis 37:31 (#2)

**"Then they took Joseph's tunic"**

Alternate translation: "took his robe," or "picked up his tunic"

### Genesis 37:31 (#3)

**"and slaughtered a kid of the goats"**

Alternate translation: "killed a male goat"

### Genesis 37:31 (#4)

**"and dipped the tunic in the blood"**

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Then/So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat, took Joseph's/his tunic/robe, and dipped it in the goat's blood." or "Then/So Joseph's brothers killed a young goat and dipped Joseph's/his tunic/robe in the goat's blood." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and dipped the robe in its blood."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 37:32 (#1)

**"Then they sent the multicolored tunic and had it brought to their father and said"**

Consider again how you translated "multicolored/colorful tunic/robe" in verses 3, 23, 32. Alternate translation: "Then they had someone bring the colorful tunic back to their father and say to him for them,"

### Genesis 37:32 (#2)

**"We found this. Please examine"**

See how you translated **examine** in Gen 31:32. Alternate translation: "We found this tunic Please look at it to see"

### Genesis 37:33 (#1)

**"And he examined it and said"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob examined the robe and exclaimed,"

### Genesis 37:33 (#2)

**"It is) my son's tunic"**

Alternate translation: "This robe belongs to my son Joseph!"

### Genesis 37:33 (#3)

**"An evil animal has devoured him! Surely Joseph was torn to pieces"**

See how you translated "an evil animal devoured him" in verse 20. Alternate translation: "Surely a fierce wild animal has torn Joseph to pieces and eaten him up!"

### Genesis 37:34 (#1)

**"Then Jacob tore his clothes"**

See how you translated **tore his clothes** in verse 29. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob tore his clothes in sorrow," or "Jacob was so grieved that he tore his clothes,"

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 37:34 (#2)

**"and put sackcloth on his loins"**

It was a Hebrew custom to wear sackcloth, which was a rough/coarse garment made/woven from black goats' hair, to show that the person was mourning for someone's death. If this custom is not familiar in your culture, you could put that



information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "put on sackcloth,"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 37:34 (#3)

**"and he mourned for his son many days"**

See how you translated "mourn" in Gen 27:41. Alternate translation: "and for many days he grieved that his son had died." or "and for a very long time he grieved because his son was gone."

### Genesis 37:35 (#1)

**"but he refused to be comforted"**

Alternate translation: "but he did not want to be consoled" or "but he did not let them console him"

### Genesis 37:35 (#2)

**"and said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

### Genesis 37:35 (#3)

**"For I will go down to my son in Sheol mourning"**

Sheol is the Hebrew name for the world of the dead, that is, the place where the spirits of dead people lived. You could put that information in a footnote. Your translation of **Sheol** should not refer to hell or a place of punishment. Some translations have "the grave" here, but that leaves out the idea of an afterlife that this sentence implies. Alternate translation: "No, I will continue to mourn until I die and join my son down in Sheol."

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 37:36 (#1)

**"And the Midianites sold him in Egypt"**

The event in verse 36 occurred during the time that the events in verses 29–35 happened. Alternate translation: "Meanwhile, when the Midianite

traders got to the country of Egypt, they sold Joseph"

### Genesis 37:36 (#2)

**"to Potiphar, an official of Pharaoh"**

See how you translated **Pharaoh** in Gen 12:15–20. Alternate translation: "to Potiphar, who was an official under Pharaoh the king over Egypt;"

### Genesis 37:36 (#3)

**"the chief of the guards"**

Alternate translation: "he was the captain over the royal guards." or "he was the leader of the soldiers who guarded the king."

### Genesis 38:1 (#1)

**"And it happened at that time"**

The phrase **And it happened** introduces a new episode here. Some translations leave it implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Meanwhile," or "At this time,"

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 38:1 (#2)

**"that Judah went down from his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "Judah left his brothers and traveled down"

### Genesis 38:1 (#3)

**"and settled near an Adullamite man"**

The word **Adullamite** refers to the fact that Hirah was from the town of Adullam; it is not the name of a people group. The town of Adullam was about 19 kilometers (12 miles) northwest of the city of Hebron (37:14), and was lower in elevation, which is why the text says that Judah **went down** to get there. Alternate translation: "and lived in the town of Adullam near the home of a man from there" or "to the town of Adullam and lived near the home of a man from there"

**Genesis 38:2 (#1)**

**"And there Judah saw the daughter of a Canaanite man, and his name {was} Shua"**

Alternate translation: "While he was living there, Judah met the daughter of a Canaanite man named Shua," or "While he was living there, Judah met a Canaanite woman whose father was Shua,"

**Genesis 38:2 (#2)**

**"and he took her"**

See how you translated a similar idiom ("took a wife") in Gen 25:1. Alternate translation: "and he took her as his wife."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 38:2 (#3)**

**"Then he went to her"**

See how you translated the idiom **went to** in Gen 6:4. Alternate translation: "Then he lay with her," or "Then he had sexual relations with her,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 38:3 (#1)**

**"and bore a son"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "and gave birth to a son,"

**Genesis 38:3 (#2)**

**"and he called his name Er"**

Throughout Genesis, sometimes the father, sometimes the mother, and sometimes both are said to give their child his name. Alternate translation: "whom he named Er."

**Genesis 38:4 (#1)**

**"Then she conceived again"**

See how you translated verse 3, which is similar to verse 4.

**Genesis 38:5 (#1)**

**"Then she continued further"**

Alternate translation: "Then she conceived again"

**Genesis 38:5 (#2)**

**"And he was in Kezib when she bore him"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "He/Judah was in/at the town of Kezib when she gave birth to Shelah." or "When she gave birth to Shelah, Judah was in the town of Kezib." or (2) "It was in the town of Kezib that she gave birth to him/Shelah." or "She was in Kezib when she gave birth to him/Shelah."

**Genesis 38:6 (#1)**

**"Then Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, and her name {was} Tamar"**

See how you translated the phrase **took a wife for** in Gen 21:21. Alternate translation: "Years later, Judah chose a wife named Tamar for his firstborn son Er."

**Genesis 38:7 (#1)**

**"But Er, the firstborn of Judah, was"**

Some languages leave **the firstborn of Judah** implied here since Er was already called the firstborn in verse 6. The Hebrew text repeats that information here to emphasize Er's relationship to Judah in the following events. Do what is best in your language.

**Genesis 38:7 (#2)**

**"But" - "was evil in the eyes of Yahweh"**

The Hebrew text does not specify what Er had done wrong, so neither should your translation. See how you translated the idiom **in the eyes of Yahweh** in Gen 6:8. Alternate translation: "did something that Yahweh judged to be evil"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 38:7 (#3)

**"so Yahweh killed him"**

Alternate translation: "so Yahweh took his life."

### Genesis 38:8 (#1)

**"Go to the wife of your brother"**

The Israelites practiced the custom of Levirate marriage, which meant that if a man died without any children, it was his oldest brother's duty to marry his widow so that together they could have a son who would carry on the deceased man's family line and inherit his estate (See: [Deuteronomy 25:5-6](#)). You could put some of that information in a footnote.

### Genesis 38:8 (#2)

**"and perform your duty to her"**

Alternate translation: "so that you fulfill your duty to her as her brother-in-law"

### Genesis 38:8 (#3)

**"and produce offspring"**

Alternate translation: "and produce children with her"

### Genesis 38:8 (#4)

**"for your brother"**

Alternate translation: "to carry on the name of your brother Er."

### Genesis 38:9 (#1)

**"However, Onan knew that the offspring would not be his"**

Alternate translation: "But Onan knew that the children they would have together would not belong to him."

### Genesis 38:9 (#2)

**"so it happened when"**

Alternate translation: "So every time"

### Genesis 38:9 (#3)

**"he went to"**

Alternate translation: "he lay with" or "he had physical relations with"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 38:9 (#4)

**"then he spilled {it} on the ground"**

Translate this clause in a way that is polite and will not shame or embarrass people when this verse is read aloud in public. Make sure it is clear that Onan did something to keep Tamar from getting pregnant. Alternate translation: "he let his semen to go on the ground"

### Genesis 38:9 (#5)

**"so that he would not give offspring to his brother"**

Alternate translation: "so that he would not have offspring for his brother." or "to keep her from getting pregnant and having any offspring for his brother."

### Genesis 38:10 (#1)

**"And what he did was evil in the eyes of Yahweh"**

See how you translated **evil in the eyes of Yahweh** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "Yahweh judged what he did to be evil"

### Genesis 38:10 (#2)

**"so he killed him also"**

Alternate translation: "so he took his life too" or "so Yahweh caused him to die too."

### Genesis 38:12 (#1)

**"Then the days were many"**

Alternate translation: "Many years later," or "Years went by and then"

### Genesis 38:12 (#2)

**"and Shua's daughter, the wife of Judah, died"**

Notice that Shua was the father of Judah's wife. Be consistent here with how you spelled his name in verse 2.

### Genesis 38:12 (#3)

**"Then Judah was comforted"**

See how you translated **comforted** in Gen 37:35. Alternate translation: "After Judah finished grieving for her, one day" or "After Judah had completed the customary time of mourning for her,"

### Genesis 38:12 (#4)

**"and he went up to Timnah"**

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Judah had already arrived at Timnah, because he does not actually reach there until verse 19. His trip from the town of Adullam (verse 1) to the town of Timnah was about 13 kilometers (8 miles).

### Genesis 38:12 (#5)

**"to {the men} who were shearing his sheep"**

See how you translated "shear his sheep" in Gen 31:19 and see the note about that there. Alternate translation: "where his men were shearing his sheep for him."

### Genesis 38:12 (#6)

**"he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "... and he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite went up to the town of Timnah where men were shearing Judah's sheep for him." Do what is best in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you spelled **Hirah** and how you translated **Adullamite** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "His friend Hirah the Adullamite went with him."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 38:13 (#1)

**"And it was told to Tamar, saying"**

Alternate translation: "Then someone told Tamar,"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 38:13 (#2)

**"is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep"**

See how you translated "shearing his sheep" in verse 12. Alternate translation: "is on his way to shear his sheep in the town of Timnah."

### Genesis 38:14 (#1)

**"So she took off her widow's clothes from her"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Tamar did not just take off her widow's clothes, but that she also put different clothes on. Alternate translation: "So she changed into different clothes from the kind of clothes that widows wear"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 38:14 (#2)

**"and covered herself with a veil"**

A veil was a large piece of thin cloth that was used to cover the face and/or the body. See how you translated **veil** in Gen 24:65. Alternate translation: "and covered herself with a large veil" or "and covered her face with a thin veil"

**Genesis 38:14 (#3)****"and wrapped herself"**

Alternate translation: "and disguised herself as a prostitute." or "to disguise herself."

**Genesis 38:14 (#4)****"Then she sat at the entrance of Enaim, which {is} on the road to Timnah"**

Some languages need to specify that Tamar traveled to Enaim before she sat down there. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then she sat by the gateway to the town of Enaim, which was on the way to the town of Timnah," or "Then she went toward the town of Timnah and sat down at the entrance of the town of Enaim, which was along the way."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 38:14 (#5)****"because she saw that Shelah had grown up"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 38:14 (#6)****"but she had not been given to him as a wife"**

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Tamar had seen/noticed that Shelah was now grown up, but Judah had not given her to him to marry as he was supposed/required to do. So she changed from her widow's clothes ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "but Judah had not given her to Shelah to marry as he was required to do."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 38:15 (#1)****"and he thought she was a prostitute because she had covered her face"**

See how you translated **prostitute** in Gen 34:31 and **covered her face** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "but since she had covered her face with a veil he could not see who she was and he thought that she was a prostitute."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 38:16 (#1)****"So he turned to her beside the road"**

Alternate translation: "So he went over to where she was sitting by the road"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 38:16 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and propositioned her by saying," or "and requested,"

**Genesis 38:16 (#3)****"Please come, let me come to you"**

Alternate translation: "Let me lie with you." or "Let me have relations with you."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 38:16 (#4)****"because he did not know that she {was} his daughter-in-law"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "He did not realize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar, so he went over to her beside the road and said ..." Alternate translation: "He said that because he did not realize that she was his daughter-in-law Tamar."

**Genesis 38:16 (#5)****"What will you give to me"**

Alternate translation: "What will you give me in exchange"

**Genesis 38:16 (#6)****"if you will come"**

Alternate translation: "if I allow you to"

**Genesis 38:16 (#7)****"you will come to me"**

See how you translated the idiom **come to** earlier in this verse. Alternate translation: "lie with me?" or "have relations with me?" or "do that?"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 38:17 (#1)****"I will send a kid goat from the flock"**See how you translated **kid goat** in Gen 27:9, 16.**Genesis 38:17 (#2)****"If you will give a pledge"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "Ok, if you will give me a pledge/deposit ..." or "I will agree, if you give me something valuable of yours to keep ..." or (2) "Will you give me a pledge/deposit ...?"

**Genesis 38:17 (#3)****"until you send {it}"**

Alternate translation: "until you send the goat to me."

**Genesis 38:18 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Alternate translation: "So Judah asked her,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 38:18 (#2)****"What {is} the pledge that I should give to you"**

Alternate translation: "What should I give to you as a pledge"

**Genesis 38:18 (#3)****"Your signet and your cord"**

A **signet** or "identification seal" was a ring or small cylinder-shaped object that had the owner's name engraved on it and was worn around his neck on a cord. It was used to prove his identity and to sign documents that were written on clay tablets, by rolling the cylinder over the soft clay. If people in your culture are not familiar with these things, you could put some of this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Give me your signature thing with its string that you wear around your neck,"

See: Translate Unknowns

**Genesis 38:18 (#4)****"and your staff"**

Alternate translation: "and your cane"

**Genesis 38:18 (#5)****"and went to her"**

Consider again how you translated the idiom **went to** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 6:4 (See: note); 16:2, 4; 19:31; 30:3-4; 38:2, 8-9, 16, 18. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context; for example, the relationship in Gen 38:16, 18 was outside of marriage. Alternate translation: "Then he lay with her,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 38:18 (#6)****"and she conceived by him"**

Consider again how you translated "conceive" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 4:1, 17; 16:4-5; 19:36; 21:2; 25:21; 29:32-35; 30:5, 7, 17, 19, 23; 38:3-4, 18. Alternate translation: "and she became pregnant by him." or "and he caused her to become pregnant."

**Genesis 38:19 (#1)****"Then she got up and left"**

Alternate translation: "After that, Tamar left Judah and went home" or "After Tamar left Judah, she went home"

**Genesis 38:19 (#2)****"and she took off her veil from her"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **veil** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "took off her shawl" or "Then she took her veil off"

**Genesis 38:19 (#3)****"and put on her widow's clothes"**

See how you translated **widow's clothes** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "and put back on her clothes that showed she was a widow." or "and put back on the kind of clothes that widows wear."

**Genesis 38:20 (#1)****"Then Judah sent the kid goat by the hand of his friend the Adullamite"**

See how you translated "his friend ... the Adullamite" in verse 12 and **kid goat** in verse 17. Alternate translation: "After that, Judah sent his friend Hirah the Adullamite with a young goat"

**Genesis 38:20 (#2)****"to get back the pledge from the hand of the woman"**

Alternate translation: "to retrieve his things from the woman whom he had given them to." or "to exchange it for the things he had left with the woman" or "to get back from the woman the things he had left with her."

**Genesis 38:20 (#3)****"but he did not find her"**

Alternate translation: "but Hirah could not find her."

**Genesis 38:21 (#1)****"So he asked the men of her place, saying"**

Alternate translation: "So Hirah asked some men who lived near the place where she had been,"

**Genesis 38:21 (#2)****"Where {is} the temple prostitute who {was} at Enaim beside the road"**

Pagan religions had fertility rites at their temples or shrines that included professional prostitutes. Make sure your translation of **temple prostitute** does not refer to any temple built by the Israelites. Also be consistent here with how you translated **Enaim** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "Where is the shrine prostitute who was sitting beside the road near the town of Enaim?"

**Genesis 38:21 (#3)****"There has not been a temple prostitute"**

Alternate translation: "There has never been a shrine prostitute" or "No shrine prostitute has ever been"

**Genesis 38:21 (#4)****"in this place"**

Alternate translation: "in this town."

**Genesis 38:22 (#1)****"So he returned to Judah"**

Alternate translation: "So Hirah came back to Judah"

**Genesis 38:22 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and said to him," or "and informed him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 38:22 (#3)****"I did not find her"**

Alternate translation: "I was not able to find the woman"

**Genesis 38:22 (#4)****"And also"**

Alternate translation: "And besides that,"

**Genesis 38:22 (#5)****"the men of the place"**

Alternate translation: "the men who live around there" or "the men who live in that town"

**Genesis 38:22 (#6)****"said, 'There has not been a temple prostitute in this {place}'"**

See how you translated this same quote in verse 21. Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this as an indirect quote here in verse 22. Alternate translation: "say that there has never been a shrine prostitute near there."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 38:23 (#1)****"And Judah said"**

Alternate translation: "Then Judah said to him," or "Judah replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 38:23 (#2)****"so that we do not become a laughingstock"**

The pronouns **we** and "us" are inclusive here because Judah is including Hirah; some languages might use a dual pronoun. Use the pronouns that are best in your language in this context. Alternate translation: "so that people do not laugh at us," or "so that we are not publicly shamed."

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 38:23 (#3)****"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "After all,"

**Genesis 38:23 (#4)****"I sent this kid"**

Alternate translation: "I did try to deliver this goat to her," or "I sent you to deliver this goat to her,"

**Genesis 38:23 (#5)****"but you did not find her"**

Alternate translation: "but you could not find her."

**Genesis 38:24 (#1)****"Then it happened about three months later"**

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces an important part of the story and helps create suspense or anticipation, so that it leaves the audience wondering what will happen next. Some translations leave it implied. Do what is best in your language.

**Genesis 38:24 (#2)****"that it was told to Judah, saying"**

Alternate translation: "someone said to Judah," or "someone informed Judah,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins



**Genesis 38:24 (#3)****"Tamar your daughter-in-law"**

Consider again how you translated **daughter-in-law** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 11:31; 38:11, 16, 24.

**Genesis 38:24 (#4)****"has prostituted herself"**

Some languages have an idiom for this phrase. Do what is best in your language. See how you translated "prostitute" in Gen 34:31, 38:15 and "temple prostitute" in verses 21–22. Alternate translation: "has acted as a prostitute."

**Genesis 38:24 (#5)****"and also, behold, {she is} pregnant by her prostitutions"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "In fact, as a result of her immoral behavior she has become pregnant!" or "and even worse, she is now pregnant because of that!"

**Genesis 38:24 (#6)****"So Judah said"**

Alternate translation: "Judah said angrily,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 38:24 (#7)****"Bring her out"**

Executions were normally done outside of the city walls.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 38:24 (#8)****"and let her be burned"**

Alternate translation: "and punish her by burning her to death!"

**Genesis 38:25 (#1)****"She was being brought out"**

Alternate translation: "So they went to get Tamar, but as they were taking her out of the town,"

**Genesis 38:25 (#2)****"and she sent {a message} to her father-in-law, saying"**

See how you translated **father-in-law** in verse 13.

**Genesis 38:25 (#3)****"Then she said, "Please identify whose signet and cords and staff these {are}"**

For some languages it is more natural to omit the quote margin here, since what follows is a continuation of the message Tamar is sending to Judah. Do what is best in your language. See how you translated **signet** and "cord" and **staff** in verse 18. Alternate translation: "Please identify the man who owns this name thing with its string and this walking stick." or "Please look at this name seal with its cord and this walking stick. Do you know who they belong to?"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 38:26 (#1)****"And Judah identified {the things}"**

Alternate translation: "Judah saw that the things she had were his"

**Genesis 38:26 (#2)****"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and admitted,"

**Genesis 38:26 (#3)****"She is more righteous than I {am}"**

Alternate translation: "She is right, and I am wrong,"

### Genesis 38:26 (#4)

**"because I did not give her to Shelah my son"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Shelah** in verses 5, 11, 14. Alternate translation: "because I refused to have my son Shelah marry her as I was required to!" or "because I did not let her marry my son Shelah as I was required to!"

### Genesis 38:26 (#5)

**"And he did not continue to know her more"**

Consider again how you translated the idiom "knew" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 4:1 (and note), 17, 25; 19:8; 24:16; 38:26. It may be necessary to translate 38:26 differently, since the relationship in this verse was outside of marriage. Compare how you translated a related idiom ("went to") in verse 18. Alternate translation: "So they released her and after that he never again slept with her" or "... never had sexual relations with Tamar again."

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 38:27 (#1)

**"Then it happened when {it was} time for her to give birth"**

See how you translated **Then it happened** in verse 24. The same phrase occurs three times in verses 27–29 to draw attention to the peak of this chapter, the birth of Perez, who was the ancestor of King David and the Messiah.

### Genesis 38:27 (#2)

**"then behold, twins {were} inside her womb"**

Alternate translation: "amazingly there were twins inside her!" or "they saw that there were twins inside her!" or "it turned out that she was going to have twins!"

### Genesis 38:28 (#1)

**"And it happened, as she was giving birth"**

See how you translated **giving birth** in Gen 35:16. This may need to be translated differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: "As she was starting to deliver her babies,"

### Genesis 38:28 (#2)

**"then {one} put out a hand"**

Alternate translation: "one of the twins put out his hand"

### Genesis 38:28 (#3)

**"and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied {it} on his hand, saying"**

The midwife did this because it was her responsibility to identify which baby was the firstborn. See how you translated **midwife** in Gen 35:17. Alternate translation: "Then the midwife who was there tied a bright red thread on his wrist and said," or "So the midwife who was helping her ..."

### Genesis 38:28 (#4)

**"This {one} came out first"**

Alternate translation: "This one was born first."

### Genesis 38:29 (#1)

**"But it happened, when he drew his hand back in, then behold"**

Alternate translation: "But then that baby pulled his hand back inside, and suddenly"

### Genesis 38:29 (#2)

**"his brother came out"**

Alternate translation: "his brother came out first instead."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 38:29 (#3)****"Then she said"**

Alternate translation: "So the midwife said to the baby,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 38:29 (#4)****"How have you breached for yourself a breach"**

The midwife uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize how surprised she is that Perez was born first. Decide the best way to communicate this in your language. Alternate translation: "How did you burst yourself out like that?" or "What a powerful way for you to burst out!" or "Just look at how you have forced your way out!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 38:29 (#5)****"So he called his name"**

Although this phrase could mean that Judah (Perez's father) named Perez, most translations translate this in a general or indefinite way that does not specify who named him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 29:34. Alternate translation: "So they named him"

**Genesis 38:29 (#6)****"Perez"**

If you include the meaning of Perez' name in your translation or in a footnote, make sure it fits with how you translated the previous sentence.

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 38:30 (#1)****"And afterwards, his brother"**

Alternate translation: "After that, his twin brother"

**Genesis 38:30 (#2)****"came out"**

Alternate translation: "was born"

**Genesis 38:30 (#3)****"who {had} the scarlet thread on his hand"**

See how you translated **scarlet thread** in verse 28. Alternate translation: "who had the bright red thread on his wrist." or "with the bright red string on his wrist."

**Genesis 38:30 (#4)****"and he called his name"**

See how you translated **he called his name** in verse 29. Alternate translation: "So they named him"

**Genesis 39:1 (#1)****"Now Joseph had been taken down to Egypt"**

Chapter 39 picks up where 37:36 left off and repeats some events (that happened in chapter 37) to remind readers of what happened before chapter 38 interrupted the narrative. Make sure your translation does not sound like Joseph was taken to Egypt twice or sold to Potiphar twice. Alternate translation: "Now as you know, Ishmaelite merchants had brought Joseph down to the country of Egypt," or "Returning now to Joseph: Remember that he had been taken down to the country of Egypt by Ishmaelite traders"

See: Background Information

**Genesis 39:1 (#2)****"Potiphar, an Egyptian man, an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards"**

See how you translated **an official of Pharaoh, the chief of the guards** in Gen 37:36.

**Genesis 39:1 (#3)**

**"and" - "had bought him from the hand of the Ishmaelites who had taken him down there"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Now as you know, some Ishmaelite traders had taken/brought Joseph down to the country of Egypt, and an Egyptian named Potiphar had bought him as a slave/servant from them. Potiphar was one of Pharaoh's officials/officers, the captain over the king's personal guards." Do what is best in your language. See how you translated **Ishmaelites** in Gen 37:25, 27–28. Alternate translation: "had bought him as a slave from the Ishmaelites who had brought him there."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 39:2 (#1)**

**"And Yahweh was with Joseph"**

See how you translated **was with** in Gen 21:20; 26:28. Alternate translation: "But Yahweh was with Joseph and helped him,"

**Genesis 39:2 (#2)**

**"and he was a successful man"**

Alternate translation: "so that he succeeded in what he did" or "so that he did everything very well"

**Genesis 39:2 (#3)**

**"and he was in the house of his Egyptian master"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "As Joseph worked in his Egyptian master/owner's house, Yahweh was with him/Joseph and helped/blessed him, so that he succeeded in everything he did." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 39:3 (#1)**

**"And his master saw that Yahweh {was} with him"**

In verses 2 through 20, Potiphar is referred to as Joseph's master (verses 2–3, 7–8, 16, 19–20) and "the Egyptian" (verse 5); he is no longer mentioned by his name in the Hebrew text. Some translations continue to use Potiphar's name occasionally in verses 2 through 20 to prevent confusion and make it clear that all of these references refer to the same person, not two or three different people. Do what is best in your language. See how you translated **master** or "owner" in Gen 24:9–10.

**Genesis 39:3 (#2)**

**"and {that} Yahweh made all that he was doing successful in his hand"**

See how you translated **successful** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "and was helping Joseph to prosper in everything that he did." or "and was helping Joseph to do everything very well."

**Genesis 39:4 (#1)**

**"So Joseph found favor in his eyes, and he served him"**

Make sure that your translation of **in his eyes** refers here to Joseph's master, not Yahweh. Also, see how you translated the idiom "found favor in ... eyes" in Gen 6:8. Alternate translation: "So he was pleased with him and made him his personal servant"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 39:4 (#2)**

**"And he put him in charge over his house and gave into his hand all {that} was his"**

Make sure your translation of the pronouns ("he," "him," and **his**) in verses 2 through 6 refers to the correct person at each point in the text. Also see how you translated the idiom "gave ... into the hand of" in Gen 32:16. Alternate translation: "He also put Joseph in charge of managing his household and taking care of everything else that he owned." or "He also appointed him as the overseer of his entire

household and entrusted into his care everything that belonged to him."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 39:5 (#1)

**"And it happened from the time"**

Alternate translation: "Beginning from the time that"

### Genesis 39:5 (#2)

**"he put him in charge in his house and over all that was his"**

See how you translated "put him in charge ... his house and ... everything that was his" in verse 4. It is repeated in verse 5 in the Hebrew text to emphasize the authority that Joseph was given. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "he put him in charge of managing everything that belonged to him,"

### Genesis 39:5 (#3)

**"then Yahweh blessed the house of the Egyptian"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this chapter that "Egyptian," "master," and "Potiphar" all refer to the same person, not two or three different people.

### Genesis 39:5 (#4)

**"because of Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "because Joseph was working for him."

### Genesis 39:5 (#5)

**"So the blessing of Yahweh was on all that was his"**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh blessed everything that belonged to him," or "He caused everything that he owned to prosper,"

### Genesis 39:5 (#6)

**"in the house and in the fields"**

In this context, **house** especially refers to the people in the house and **fields** refers to what is in the fields. Alternate translation: "including everything in his household and in his fields." or "including his family and servants in his household, as well as the crops and livestock in his fields."

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 39:6 (#1)

**"And he left all that {belonged} to him in the hand of Joseph"**

See how you translated a similar idiom ("gave into his hand") in verse 4. Alternate translation: "In fact, he gave Joseph the responsibility of managing everything that he had, so that"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 39:6 (#2)

**"and he did not think to himself {about} anything except for the bread that he ate"**

For some languages, it is more natural to put the exception clause first in the sentence. Do what is best in your language. Also, Potiphar did more than decide what to eat; that was just one example of personal decisions which were all he had to concern himself with. Alternate translation: "he did not need to concern himself with anything in his household except for personal things like deciding what kind of food he wanted to eat." or "the only thing he needed to decide about in his household was personal things like what food he wanted to eat."

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

### Genesis 39:6 (#3)

**"Now Joseph was handsome in form and handsome in appearance"**

Some languages have a conjunction such as **Now** that introduces background information and a change of topic. For other languages a paragraph break is enough (without a conjunction). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation:

"Joseph was muscular and good-looking." or "Now Joseph was a very handsome young man."

See: Background Information

### Genesis 39:7 (#1)

**"And it happened after those things"**

The phrase **And it happened** introduces and emphasizes an important event. Many English translations do not include this phrase. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "After he had been there for a while,"

### Genesis 39:7 (#2)

**"then the wife of his master lifted her eyes toward Joseph"**

Many languages have a similar idiom that fits well here. Do what is best in your language.

See: Idiom

### Genesis 39:7 (#3)

**"and said"**

Translate this quote introduction in a way that fits well with what Potiphar's wife says to Joseph. Alternate translation: "and said to him," or "and demanded him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 39:7 (#4)

**"Lie with me"**

See how you translated the idiom "lie with" in Gen 19:32. Alternate translation: "Sleep with me!"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 39:8 (#1)

**"But he refused"**

Alternate translation: "But he rejected her demand"

### Genesis 39:8 (#2)

**"and said to the wife of his master"**

Alternate translation: "and told her,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 39:8 (#3)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Look" or "Notice that"

### Genesis 39:8 (#4)

**"with me {here}"**

Alternate translation: "with me in charge," or "since I am working here,"

### Genesis 39:8 (#5)

**"my master does not think {about}"**

Alternate translation: "my owner does not need to worry about" or "my owner does not need to concern himself with"

### Genesis 39:8 (#6)

**"what {is} in the house"**

Alternate translation: "managing anything in his household,"

### Genesis 39:8 (#7)

**"and all that is his he has given into my hand"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated the idiom "gave into ... hand" in verse 4. Alternate translation: "In fact, everything that he owns he has entrusted to my care" or "In fact, he has put me in charge of everything that he has"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 39:9 (#1)****"He is not greater than me in this house"**

As Joseph's master, Potiphar still had more authority than Joseph. But he had given Joseph authority to act in his place over everything in his household. Try to make that clear in your translation. Also, consider whether it is more natural in your language to begin verse 9 with a new sentence or to continue the sentence from verse 8. Alternate translation: "As a result, even he does not exercise more authority in his household than I do"

**Genesis 39:9 (#2)****"and he has not withheld anything from me except for you, because you {are} his wife"**

The phrase **has not withheld** is a litotes that emphasizes the freedom that Potiphar had given Joseph. Some languages must translate this in a way that does not use a negative word such as **not**. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and he has given me freedom with everything in his household, except you, of course, because you are his wife." or "He allows me to do anything in his household, except with you, his wife."

See: Litotes

**Genesis 39:9 (#3)****"So how can I do this great evil, and sin against God"**

Joseph uses this rhetorical question to emphasize why he will not do what Potiphar's wife wants. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So I refuse to do such an evil thing, which would be a terrible sin against God!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 39:10 (#1)****"Then it happened even though she kept speaking to Joseph day {after} day"**

The phrase "Then/And it happened" is used several times in this chapter (verses 5, 7, 10, 11, 13, 15, 18, 19) to introduce and emphasize important events

and to increase suspense so that the audience wonders what the outcome will be. Many English translations have omitted this phrase, possibly for reasons of naturalness. Consider whether you have an expression like this that is natural in your language.

**Genesis 39:10 (#2)****"yet he did not listen to her to lie beside her"**

Alternate translation: "he did not do what she wanted, but refused to lie with her," or "he refused her demands"

**Genesis 39:10 (#3)****"to be with her"**

Alternate translation: "and he stayed away from her." or "and would not even go near her."

**Genesis 39:11 (#1)****"Then it happened on such a day"**

Alternate translation: "But then on a day like that," or "But one such day" or "But one day"

**Genesis 39:11 (#2)****"and there were no other men of the house there in the house"**

Alternate translation: "none of the other household menservants were there."

**Genesis 39:12 (#1)****"So she caught him by his garment"**

The word **garment** is very general and probably refers to an outer article of clothing, such as a robe or tunic.

**Genesis 39:12 (#2)****"saying"**

See how you translated this quote introduction in verse 7. Alternate translation: “and said to him,” or “and said”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 39:12 (#3)

**"Lie with me"**

See how you translated this quote in verse 7. Alternate translation: “Sleep with me!”

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 39:12 (#4)

**"But he left his garment in her hand and fled and went outside"**

Make sure your translation does not sound here like Joseph put his garment in her hands. Rather, it came off in her hands as he was fleeing. Alternate translation: “But immediately he fled and left his tunic behind in her hands as he ran outside” or “But he immediately got away from her and fled outdoors, leaving his tunic behind in her hands.”

### Genesis 39:13 (#1)

**"Then it happened when she saw"**

Alternate translation: “After she saw”

### Genesis 39:13 (#2)

**"that he had left his garment in her hands and had fled outside"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 12. Alternate translation: “that Joseph had left his tunic behind in her hands as he ran outside,” or “that Joseph had fled outside and left his tunic behind in her hands,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 39:14 (#1)

**"then she called for the men of her house"**

See how you translated “men of the house” in verse 11. Alternate translation: “she called out for the other household menservants to come to her” or “she summoned the other menservants of her household to come”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 39:14 (#2)

**"and said to them, saying"**

Alternate translation: “Then when they came, she exclaimed to them,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 39:14 (#3)

**"Look"**

As Potiphar’s wife speaks, she is probably showing the servants Joseph’s garment in her hands. Alternate translation: “Look at this!” or “See what happened!”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 39:14 (#4)

**"He brought to us a Hebrew man"**

Make sure that your translation of **He brought** refers here to Potiphar (as verse 17 confirms), not Joseph. Alternate translation: “My husband brought this Hebrew slave here to us”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 39:14 (#5)

**"to laugh at us"**

In this context, **us** is general and includes Potiphar’s wife and the people she is talking to. Alternate translation: “to mock us!”

See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

### Genesis 39:14 (#6)

**"He came to me"**



Make sure your translation of **He came** refers here to Joseph, not Potiphar (who was the subject of the previous sentence in the Hebrew text). Alternate translation: "That man came here to me"

### Genesis 39:14 (#7)

#### "to lie with me"

Consider again how you translated the idiom **lie with** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 19:32–35; 26:10; 30:15–16; 34:2, 7; 35:22; 39:7, 10, 12, 14. It may be necessary to translate this in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "to force me to lie with him,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 39:14 (#8)

#### "but I called out with a loud voice"

Alternate translation: "but I cried out for help!" or "but I shouted loudly for help!"

### Genesis 39:15 (#1)

#### "Then it happened when he heard"

Alternate translation: "Then when"

### Genesis 39:15 (#2)

#### "Then it happened when he heard that I raised my voice and called out"

Alternate translation: "Then when he heard me cry out loudly," or "Then as soon as he heard me shout like that,"

### Genesis 39:15 (#3)

#### "then he left his garment beside me and fled and went outside"

See how you translated a similar clause in verses 12 and 13. Alternate translation: "he left his tunic with me and fled outside" or "he immediately fled outdoors and he left his tunic behind!"

### Genesis 39:16 (#1)

#### "Then she kept"

Alternate translation: "So she kept"

### Genesis 39:16 (#2)

#### "until his master"

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not sound like her husband and Joseph's master were two different people. Do what is best in your language.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 39:16 (#3)

#### "came to his house"

Alternate translation: "came back to his home." or "came home."

### Genesis 39:17 (#1)

#### "Then she spoke to him"

Alternate translation: "Then when he arrived, she told him"

### Genesis 39:17 (#2)

#### "according to those words"

Alternate translation: "the same thing she had told the others."

### Genesis 39:17 (#3)

#### "saying"

Alternate translation: "This is what she said:"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 39:17 (#4)

#### "The Hebrew slave whom you brought"

Alternate translation: "That Hebrew slave whom you brought"

**Genesis 39:17 (#5)****"to us"**

Here the pronoun **us** includes Potiphar, his wife and their household. Alternate translation: "to work for us"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 39:17 (#6)****"came to me to laugh at me"**

See how you translated **laugh at** in verse 14. Alternate translation: "just now came to me to mock me!"

**Genesis 39:18 (#1)****"Then it happened when I raised my voice and called out"**

See how you translated verse 15, which is similar to verse 18. Alternate translation: "But as soon as I shouted loudly," or "But when I shouted for help,"

**Genesis 39:18 (#2)****"then he left his garment beside me and fled outside"**

Consider again how you translated **garment** in verses 12–13, 15–16, 18. Alternate translation: "he left his tunic beside me and ran outside"

**Genesis 39:19 (#1)****"the words of his wife that she spoke to him, saying, 'Such {are} the things your slave did to me'"**

Make sure that your translation of **his** refers to Joseph's master here, not Joseph. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 39:19 (#2)****"then his anger burned"**

Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: "he burned with anger."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 39:20 (#1)****"Then Joseph's master took him and put him in the round-house"**

Potiphar probably had soldiers arrest Joseph for him, since he had the authority to do that as the captain of the guards. Consider again how you referred to Joseph and Joseph's master, Potiphar, in verses 1–20. As usual, after you finish translating a section like this, it is a good practice to read the section aloud at a normal pace and listen carefully to make sure you refer to everyone accurately and naturally at each point in the text. Alternate translation: "Then he had Joseph arrested and put in the jail" or "And he had soldiers arrest Joseph and put him in the jail"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 39:20 (#2)****"the place where the prisoners of the king were bound"**

Alternate translation: "where they imprisoned people who had committed crimes against the king."

**Genesis 39:20 (#3)****"So he was there in the round-house"**

Alternate translation: "So Joseph was there in the prison,"

**Genesis 39:21 (#1)****"and showed kindness to him"**

See how you translated "show kindness" in Gen 24:12. Alternate translation: "and was gracious to him"

**Genesis 39:21 (#2)**

**"and gave him favor in the eyes of the chief of the round-house"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("favor in ... eyes") in verse 4. Alternate translation: "and caused the prison warden to be pleased with him, so that he treated him favorably"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 39:22 (#1)**

**"And the chief of the round-house gave into the hand of Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "Soon the warden of the prison gave Joseph the responsibility for taking care of"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 39:22 (#2)**

**"all the prisoners who {were} in the round-house"**

Alternate translation: "all the other prisoners who were in the prison,"

**Genesis 39:22 (#3)**

**"and all that they were doing there, he was {the one} doing {it}"**

Alternate translation: "so that he was in charge of everything that was done there."

**Genesis 39:23 (#1)**

**"The chief of the round-house"**

Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So the warden" or "As a result the jail warden"

See: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

**Genesis 39:23 (#2)**

**"did not look {at} anything"**

Alternate translation: "did not need to supervise anything"

**Genesis 39:23 (#3)**

**"in his hand"**

Alternate translation: "that Joseph was managing,"

**Genesis 39:23 (#4)**

**"because Yahweh was with him"**

For some languages, it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Because/Since Yahweh was with Joseph and helped him to succeed in whatever he did, the warden did not need to supervise/oversee anything that Joseph was in charge of." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 39:23 (#5)**

**"and Yahweh made what he was doing successful"**

See how you translated a similar clause ("Yahweh made all that he was doing successful") in verse 3. Alternate translation: "and gave him success in whatever he did." or "and helped him to succeed at everything he did."

**Genesis 40:1 (#1)**

**"Then it happened after those things {that}"**

Alternate translation: "After some time, one day"

**Genesis 40:1 (#2)**

**"the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and the baker"**

The chief cupbearer was one of Pharaoh's most trusted servants. He was in charge of serving Pharaoh anything that he wanted to drink, especially wine. It was his job to test the drink

before Pharaoh had some, to make sure it was high quality and not poisoned. Some of that information could be put in a footnote. Also, it may be more natural to include here in verse 1 the fact that these were the head officials in these jobs, rather than wait until verse 2 to introduce that. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "the chief wine-server and the chief baker for the king over Egypt" or "the man who was in charge of those who served wine to the king over Egypt and the man who was in charge of those who baked bread for the king"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 40:1 (#3)

#### "sinned"

The text does not say what the officials did wrong that angered Pharaoh. They may have done their jobs poorly in some way. Translate this phrase in a way that fits this context well in your language. Alternate translation: "displeased" or "offended"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 40:1 (#4)

#### "against their lord, against the king of Egypt"

For some languages it is more natural to include here in verse 1 the fact that the king of Egypt was Pharaoh, rather than wait until verse 2 to introduce that. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "their master, who was Pharaoh the king over Egypt."

### Genesis 40:2 (#1)

#### "And Pharaoh broke out in anger"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Pharaoh (verse 2) is the same person as the king of Egypt (verse 1). See how you translated **Pharaoh** in Gen 12:15, and see the important note about this there. Alternate translation: "So he" or "So the king"

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 40:2 (#2)

#### "And Pharaoh broke out in anger against"

Consider whether or not your language has an idiom similar to **broke out in anger** that fits well here. Alternate translation: "was very angry at"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 40:2 (#3)

#### "his two officials, against the chief of the cupbearers and against the chief of the bakers"

It may be more natural to combine verses 1 and 2 and say, "Sometime after that, Pharaoh, the king of Egypt, became very angry at two of his officials, his chief wine-server and chief baker, because they had displeased him." In this case, you would also combine the verse numbers (1-2) to show it is a verse bridge combining two verses. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "the official in charge of serving wine to him and the official in charge of baking bread for him" or "his head wine-server and head baker" or "those two officials"

See: Verse Bridges

### Genesis 40:3 (#1)

#### "and he put them"

Often in the Bible (as here), when it says that a king (or someone else with authority) did something, it is implied that he had people who were under his authority actually do it. See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 39:20. Alternate translation: "So he had them arrested and put"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 40:3 (#2)

#### "in custody"

Alternate translation: "under guard"

### Genesis 40:3 (#3)

#### "in the house of the chief of the guards"

Apparently the round-house prison was part of the house where the chief of the guards lived and worked, perhaps a lower part (See: Joseph's use of the word "pit" in verse 15 to refer to this prison). See how you translated "chief/captain of the

guards" in Gen 37:36 and 39:1. Alternate translation: "in the house of the captain of the guards,"

### Genesis 40:3 (#4)

**"in the round-house, the place where Joseph was bound"**

See how you translated **bound** in Gen 39:20. Alternate translation: "that is, in the round-house jail, the same prison where Joseph was imprisoned"

### Genesis 40:4 (#1)

**"And the chief of the guards assigned Joseph to them"**

Alternate translation: "There the captain of the guards assigned Joseph to take care of them,"

### Genesis 40:4 (#2)

**"so he attended them"**

Alternate translation: "and so he waited on them,"

### Genesis 40:4 (#3)

**"and they were in custody"**

Some translations begin a new paragraph and sentence here that continues into verse 5 and say, "After they had been in prison for a while, 5 one night the king's head wine-server and head baker dreamed ..." Alternate translation: "and they were kept in custody" or "and they remained in custody"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 40:4 (#4)

**"for} days"**

The phrase **for days** is a general expression that refers to an unspecified length of time. Alternate translation: "for some days" or "for a while,"

### Genesis 40:5 (#1)

**"Then the two of them dreamed a dream. Each {had} his {own} dream in the same night"**

Alternate translation: "Then one night the two of them each had a dream," or "One night they both had a dream,"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 40:5 (#2)

**"and} each {man's} dream had its own interpretation"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and each of the dreams had its own meaning." or "each with its own meaning."

### Genesis 40:5 (#3)

**"They were} the cupbearer and the baker who {belonged} to the king of Egypt, who were bound in the round-house"**

Many translations leave this sentence implied because it repeats information from the previous verses and may sound too repetitive. Or you could put this sentence earlier in this verse and say, "One night, the king of Egypt's wine server and baker each had a dream while they were in prison, and each man's/one's dream had its own interpretation/meaning." Make sure it is clear in your translation that the cupbearer and baker in verse 5 are the same officials as those in verses 2-4. Alternate translation: "This is talking about the wine-server and the baker, who had served the king of Egypt but were in prison."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 40:6 (#1)

**"And Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them, and behold"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to have the time phrase **in the morning** first this verse. Alternate translation: "In the morning, Joseph came to serve them and was surprised to see that" or "The next morning, when Joseph came to serve them, he saw that"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 40:6 (#2)

**"they were upset"**

Alternate translation: "they were troubled." or "they looked distressed"

### Genesis 40:7 (#1)

**"So he asked Pharaoh's officials who {were} with him in custody {in} the house of his master, saying"**

Alternate translation: "And he asked them,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 40:7 (#2)

**"Why {are} your faces sad today"**

Some languages have an idiom that fits well here. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Why do your faces look so downcast today?" or "Why do you look so sad today?"

### Genesis 40:8 (#1)

**"And they said to him"**

Alternate translation: "They replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 40:8 (#2)

**"We dreamed a dream"**

Alternate translation: "Last night we each had a dream,"

### Genesis 40:8 (#3)

**"but {there is} no one to interpret it"**

Alternate translation: "but we do not have anyone here to explain them for us."

### Genesis 40:8 (#4)

**"Then Joseph said to them"**

Alternate translation: "So Joseph replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 40:8 (#5)

**"Don't interpretations {belong} to God"**

Joseph uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that God is the only one who interprets dreams. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "God is the only one who can explain the meaning of dreams." or "God is the only one who gives people the ability to interpret the meaning of dreams."

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 40:8 (#6)

**"Please tell {them} to me"**

Make sure that your translation of the last two sentences in this verse does not sound like Joseph is claiming to be God. Rather, he is saying that if the two officials tell their dreams to him, God will enable him to interpret the dreams. Alternate translation: "Please tell your dreams to me and God will reveal to me what they mean."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 40:9 (#1)

**"Then the chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph"**

See how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "So the head wine-server told Joseph what was in his dream" or "So the officer who was in charge over the wine-servers described to Joseph what he had seen in his dream"

### Genesis 40:9 (#2)

**"and said to him"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "by saying," or "This is what he said:"

### Genesis 40:9 (#3)

**"And behold, in my dream a grapevine"**

If grapevines and grapes are not known in your area, you could be more general in verses 9–11 and say "vine" and "fruit". See how you translated "vineyard" in Gen 9:20. Alternate translation: "In my dream there was a vine" or "While I was dreaming, I saw a grapevine"

### Genesis 40:10 (#1)

**"and on the grapevine {were} three branches"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "The vine had three branches."

### Genesis 40:10 (#2)

**"Then while it was budding"**

Alternate translation: "As soon as it started budding," or "Soon buds started forming on the vine Then"

### Genesis 40:10 (#3)

**"its blossoms came out"**

Alternate translation: "suddenly there were flowers," or "the buds became blossoms"

### Genesis 40:10 (#4)

**"and} its clusters ripened {into} grapes"**

Alternate translation: "and its clusters of flowers became clusters of ripe fruit." or "and the flowers became clusters of ripe fruit."

### Genesis 40:11 (#1)

**"and I took the grapes"**

Alternate translation: "so I picked some fruit from the vine"

### Genesis 40:11 (#2)

**"and squeezed them"**

Alternate translation: "and squeezed them so that the juice went"

### Genesis 40:11 (#3)

**"Then I put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "Then I gave the cup to Pharaoh and he drank from it."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 40:12 (#1)

**"Then Joseph said to him"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph told him,"

### Genesis 40:12 (#2)

**"This {is} its interpretation"**

Alternate translation: "This is the meaning of your dream:" or "Here is what your dream means:"

### Genesis 40:12 (#3)

**"The three branches {are} three days"**

Alternate translation: "The three branches symbolize three days."

### Genesis 40:13 (#1)

**"Within three days"**

Alternate translation: "In three more days" or "Three days from now"

### Genesis 40:13 (#2)

**"Pharaoh"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Pharaoh here in your language. Some languages need to include an honorific title with his name more often than other languages. Alternate translation: “the king”

See: Honorifics

### Genesis 40:13 (#3)

**"will lift up your head"**

The idiom **lift up your head** means that the wine-server will be summoned or brought out from the lowly or shameful place where he had been staying. Alternate translation: “will have you brought up out of prison”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 40:13 (#4)

**"and restore you to your position"**

Alternate translation: “and reappoint you to your previous work,” or “and give you back your status,”

### Genesis 40:13 (#5)

**"and you will put Pharaoh's cup into his hand"**

Alternate translation: “so that you will again serve wine to Pharaoh” or “so that you will again have the duty of serving him his cup of wine,”

### Genesis 40:13 (#6)

**"according to the former custom when you were his cupbearer"**

Alternate translation: “as you used to do when you were his cupbearer” or “the way you did before as his cupbearer”

### Genesis 40:14 (#1)

**"But if you remember me with you, when it goes well for you"**

Alternate translation: “When you are out of prison and everything is going well for you, remember that I was here with you,” or “Also, when you get

out of prison and your life is good, remember how well I served you,”

### Genesis 40:14 (#2)

**"then please show kindness to me"**

See how you translated “showed kindness to” in Gen 39:21. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: “and please be gracious to me,” or “and please do me a favor,”

### Genesis 40:14 (#3)

**"and mention me to Pharaoh"**

Make sure that the way Joseph refers to King Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: “and tell King Pharaoh about me and how I was falsely accused,”

See: Honorifics

### Genesis 40:14 (#4)

**"and get me out from this house"**

Alternate translation: “so that I can get out of this prison.” or “so that he frees me from this prison.”

### Genesis 40:15 (#1)

**"For indeed, I was stolen"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language to emphasize Joseph. Alternate translation: “Surely I was taken by force”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 40:15 (#2)

**"from the land of the Hebrews"**

The Hebrew people were the descendants of Abraham (See: note at Gen 14:13), and Joseph's people were known as **Hebrews** in Egypt (Gen 39:14, 17). Their land, which God gave them, was the land of Canaan (Gen 13:12, 14–15; 17:8, 23:19; 37:1). Some of that information could be put in a



footnote. Alternate translation: “from the land where the Hebrew people live.”

### Genesis 40:15 (#3)

**"And also here"**

Alternate translation: “And while I have been here in Egypt,”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 40:15 (#4)

**"I did not do anything"**

Alternate translation: “I have not done anything wrong”

### Genesis 40:15 (#5)

**"that they should put me in the pit"**

Alternate translation: “to be put into this prison.” or “to deserve being in a prison.”

### Genesis 40:16 (#1)

**"And the chief of the bakers saw that he interpreted favorably"**

See how you translated a related word (“interpreter”) in verse 8. Alternate translation: “When the head baker heard Joseph explain that dream in a positive way,” or “When the head baker heard the positive interpretation that Joseph gave for the first dream,”

### Genesis 40:16 (#2)

**"so he said to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: “he said to him,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 40:16 (#3)

**"I also {was} in my dream, and behold"**

Alternate translation: “I also had a dream, and in it there were”

### Genesis 40:16 (#4)

**"there were} three baskets of white bread"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “three baskets full of white/fine bread/cakes” or “three bread baskets” or (2) “three white/wicker baskets”. These baskets were open on top and were probably woven out of flexible strips of cane or willow branches.

### Genesis 40:16 (#5)

**"on my head"**

These baskets would have been carried on the head, each one above the other. Alternate translation: “stacked on top of each other on my head.”

### Genesis 40:17 (#1)

**"And in the top basket {were} all {kinds} of"**

Alternate translation: “The top basket was full of”

### Genesis 40:17 (#2)

**"all {kinds} of food for Pharaoh, baker's goods"**

Make sure that the way the chief baker refers to King Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. Alternate translation: “all kinds of baked goods for King Pharaoh to eat,” or “many kinds of special bread and cakes that had been made for King Pharaoh to eat,”

See: Honorifics

### Genesis 40:17 (#3)

**"but the birds were eating them out of the basket on my head"**

Alternate translation: “but some birds were eating everything up from the basket.” or “but instead, some birds came and devoured all the food in the basket on my head.”

**Genesis 40:18 (#1)****"Then Joseph responded and said"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph told the baker,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 40:18 (#2)****"This {is} its interpretation"**

See how you translated this in verse 12. Alternate translation: "This is the meaning of your dream:" or "Here is what your dream means:"

**Genesis 40:18 (#3)****"The three baskets {are} three days"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 12. Alternate translation: "The three baskets symbolize three days."

**Genesis 40:19 (#1)****"Within three days"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 13. Alternate translation: "Three days from now"

**Genesis 40:19 (#2)****"Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "the king"

**Genesis 40:19 (#3)****"will lift up your head from you"**

This phrase seems to have a literal meaning here (of having the baker beheaded) in contrast to the meaning of **lift up your head** in verse 13 (where it means to summon from a lowly or shameful place). Make sure your translation of this phrase is accurate and clear in both contexts. Alternate translation: "will have his soldiers cut off your head" or "will have you beheaded"

**Genesis 40:19 (#4)****"and hang you on a tree"**

Alternate translation: "and hang your body on a stake,"

**Genesis 40:19 (#5)****"and the birds will eat your flesh from you"**

These were birds such as vultures, buzzards, or condors, which eat carrion (dead animals); these were not birds that eat seeds or hunt live prey. You could use the name of a type of bird that is well-known in your language area. See how you translated "eating" in verse 17. Alternate translation: "and birds will eat all your flesh off your bones."

**Genesis 40:20 (#1)****"Then it happened on the third day, the day Pharaoh was born"**

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes a set of important events. Do what is natural in your language.

**Genesis 40:20 (#2)****"that he made a feast for all his servants"**

See how you translated **feast** or "banquet" in Gen 21:8. Alternate translation: "he held a banquet for all of his officials to attend." or "he invited all his officials to attend a birthday feast"

**Genesis 40:20 (#3)****"And he lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers"**

See how you translated similar clauses in verses 3 (See: note), 13, and 19, where Pharaoh had his soldiers do something. Also see how you translated "lifted up your head" in verse 13, where it has a similar meaning. Alternate translation: "During the feast he had soldiers bring his chief wine-server and chief baker out of prison to the banquet"

**Genesis 40:20 (#4)****"in the presence of his servants"**

Alternate translation: "in front of all his other officials" or "where all his other officers were."

**Genesis 40:21 (#1)****"Then he restored"**

See how you translated "restore ... to ... position" in verse 13. Alternate translation: "Then he reappointed"

**Genesis 40:21 (#2)****"the chief of the cupbearers to his position"**

Alternate translation: "the chief wine-server to his previous work,"

**Genesis 40:21 (#3)****"and he put the cup into the hand of Pharaoh"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 13. Alternate translation: "so that once again he served wine to him." or "so that once again he had the duty of serving him his cup of wine."

**Genesis 40:22 (#1)****"but the chief of the bakers he hanged"**

It is implied here that the baker was beheaded before his body was impaled on a stake (verse 19). Also, notice that **the chief of the bakers** is at the beginning of this clause in the Hebrew text to emphasize him and contrast him with what happened to the chief cupbearer. Do what is natural in your language. See how you translated "hang ... on a tree" in verse 19. Alternate translation: "But as for the chief baker, Pharaoh had him executed and hanged on a tree" or "But Pharaoh had his soldiers behead the head baker and impale his body on a pole"

**Genesis 40:22 (#2)****"just as Joseph had interpreted for them"**

Alternate translation: "Everything happened exactly the way Joseph had interpreted their dreams to them." or "which was exactly what Joseph had said would happen."

**Genesis 40:23 (#1)****"However, the chief of the cupbearers did not remember Joseph but forgot him"**

Alternate translation: "But the chief cupbearer did not remember to tell Pharaoh about Joseph, but instead, he forgot about him." or "... completely forgot about Joseph and did not remember to tell Pharaoh about him."

**Genesis 41:1 (#1)****"Then it happened {at} the end of two years of days"**

Alternate translation: "After two full years had passed," or "Two complete years later,"

**Genesis 41:1 (#2)****"that Pharaoh was dreaming and behold, he was standing"**

See how you translated **Pharaoh** in Gen 40:2. Alternate translation: "King Pharaoh dreamed that he was standing"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 41:1 (#3)****"beside the river"**

This phrase usually refers to the Nile River, which was the most important river in Egypt and was so well known by everyone there that it was referred to as **the river**. See how you translated a different Hebrew word for **river** in Gen 36:37.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 41:2 (#1)****"Then behold"**

Alternate translation: "Then suddenly," or "Then he saw that"

### Genesis 41:2 (#2)

**"from the river came up seven cows, fine-looking and fat-fleshed"**

Make sure your translation does not sound like the cows rose up out of the water into the air. Also see how you translated **cows** in Gen 32:15. Alternate translation: "seven cows that were healthy-looking and well-fed came up out of the river onto the bank" or "seven healthy-looking, well-fed cows came up out of the river onto the bank"

### Genesis 41:2 (#3)

**"and they grazed among the reeds"**

Alternate translation: "and started grazing on the grass that was there." or "and started eating the marsh grass beside the river."

### Genesis 41:3 (#1)

**"Then behold"**

Alternate translation: "Then suddenly," or "Then he saw that"

### Genesis 41:3 (#2)

**"seven other cows came up after them from the river, ugly-looking and thin-fleshed"**

Alternate translation: "seven cows that were sickly-looking and skinny walked up out of the river" or "seven sickly-looking, skinny cows came up out of the river"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 41:3 (#3)

**"and they stood beside the {other} cows"**

Alternate translation: "and stood next to the healthy cows"

### Genesis 41:3 (#4)

**"on the bank of the river"**

Consider again how you refer to **the river** in verses 1–3. If you refer to it as "the Nile River" in verse 1, it may be more natural to refer to it as **the river** after that. Do what is best in your language.

### Genesis 41:4 (#1)

**"Then the ugly-looking and thin-fleshed cows ate"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 3. Alternate translation: "Then the sickly-looking, skinny cows devoured" or "Then the cows that were sickly-looking and scrawny ate down"

### Genesis 41:4 (#2)

**"the seven fine-looking and fat cows"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 2. Alternate translation: "the seven healthy-looking, well-fed cows." or "the seven cows that were healthy-looking and fat"

### Genesis 41:4 (#3)

**"and Pharaoh woke up"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Pharaoh at each point/occurrence in this chapter. Alternate translation: "Just then King Pharaoh woke up." or "After that, the king woke up."

### Genesis 41:5 (#1)

**"Then he fell asleep"**

Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh" or "Then the king"

### Genesis 41:5 (#2)

**"Then he fell asleep"**

Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh went to sleep again" or "The the king went back to sleep"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 41:5 (#3)

**"and dreamed a second {time}"**

Alternate translation: "and started dreaming again."

### Genesis 41:5 (#4)

**"And behold"**

Alternate translation: "In this dream there were"

### Genesis 41:5 (#5)

**"seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, fat and good"**

The phrase **heads of grain** is one word in the Hebrew text. Consider whether it is better in your language to use a word or phrase to translate this. Alternate translation: "seven big beautiful heads of grain growing on the same stem"

### Genesis 41:6 (#1)

**"Then behold"**

Alternate translation: "Then suddenly," or "Next he saw that"

### Genesis 41:6 (#2)

**"seven heads of grain, thin and scorched {by} the east wind"**

This wind was from the desert in the east, so it was hot and dry. Alternate translation: "seven shriveled heads of grain that were dried out by the hot east wind" or "seven shriveled heads of grain that the hot east wind had dried out"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 41:6 (#3)

**"sprouted"**

Alternate translation: "grew up" or "were growing"

### Genesis 41:6 (#4)

**"after them"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to refer to the first heads here with a pronoun (**them**) or a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "next to them on the same stalk" or "on the same stalk beside the well-formed heads."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 41:7 (#1)

**"Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up"**

See how you translated **thin** in verse 6 and **heads of grain** in verses 5–6. Alternate translation: "Next, the shriveled heads of grain devoured" or "... ate up"

### Genesis 41:7 (#2)

**"the seven fat and full heads"**

The word **full** here describes heads of grain that have many seeds in them. See how you translated **fat** in verse 5. Alternate translation: "the seven plump, well-formed heads."

### Genesis 41:7 (#3)

**"Then Pharaoh woke up"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 4. Alternate translation: "Just then Pharaoh woke up" or "After that, Pharaoh woke up"

### Genesis 41:7 (#4)

**"and behold, {it was} a dream"**

Alternate translation: "and suddenly knew that he had been dreaming."

### Genesis 41:8 (#1)

**"Then it happened in the morning"**

The phrase **Then it happened** introduces and emphasizes an important event. It also increases suspense so that the audience wonders what the outcome will be. Many English translations do not include this phrase, possibly for reasons of naturalness. Do what is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "In the morning"

### Genesis 41:8 (#2)

**"that his spirit was agitated"**

Alternate translation: "Pharaoh felt upset about the dreams,"

### Genesis 41:8 (#3)

**"so he sent and called for"**

Alternate translation: "so he sent servants to summon" or "so he had messengers summon"

### Genesis 41:8 (#4)

**"all the magicians of Egypt and all its wise men"**

Magicians were some of the wise men whom Pharaoh regularly consulted for advice. They had power from demons to do miracles (Exodus 7:11, 22; 8:7) and to communicate with the spirits of people who had died. They may have also been astrologers or Egyptian priests who were skilled in sacred writings. Some of that information could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "all the magicians and other wise men in the country of Egypt to come to him."

### Genesis 41:8 (#5)

**"Then Pharaoh told his dreams to them"**

Alternate translation: "When they arrived, Pharaoh told them what he had dreamed," or "Then he related to them what he had seen in his dreams,"

### Genesis 41:8 (#6)

**"but no one"**

Alternate translation: "but none of those men"

### Genesis 41:8 (#7)

**"could interpret them for Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "could tell him what the dreams meant."

### Genesis 41:9 (#1)

**"the chief of the cupbearers"**

Consider again how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** and "cupbearer" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 40:1–2, 5, 9, 13, 20–21, 23; 41:9. Alternate translation: "But the head wine-server"

### Genesis 41:9 (#2)

**"Then the chief of the cupbearers spoke with Pharaoh, saying"**

Consider again how you translated **chief of the cupbearers** and "cupbearer" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 40:1–2, 5, 9, 13, 20–21, 23; 41:9. Alternate translation: "But the head wine-server spoke up and said to Pharaoh," or "But the head wine-server said to Pharaoh,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 41:9 (#3)

**"Today I remember"**

For many languages, it is necessary to use a respectful title to address a person of high status like Pharaoh. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Your Majesty I now remember"

See:

### Genesis 41:9 (#4)

**"my offenses"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "the time when I offended/displeased/wronged you." or (2) "something important I failed/forgot to do." The second interpretation refers to the cupbearer

forgetting to tell Pharaoh about Joseph. Alternate translation: “my sins”

### Genesis 41:10 (#1)

#### "Pharaoh broke out in anger against"

The events in verses 10–13 had happened two years earlier (verse 1); chapter 40 gives the details about those events. See how you translated the idiom **broke out in anger against** in Gen 40:2. Alternate translation: “Some time ago, King Pharaoh, you were very angry at”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 41:10 (#2)

#### "his servants"

In verses 10 and 13, the cupbearer uses third person (“Pharaoh ... his ... he...”) to show respect for Pharaoh. For some languages, it is confusing to do that, so second person (“you ... your ...you ...”) must be used instead. Some languages have an honorific such as “your Majesty/Honor” that could be used occasionally in these verses instead of third person. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “his officers,”

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 41:10 (#3)

#### "and he put me in custody {in} the house of the chief of the guards, me and the chief of the bakers"

See how you translated “put ... in custody in the house of the chief of the guards” in Gen 40:3. Also consider again how you translated **chief of the bakers** and “baker” in the book of Genesis. See Gen 40:1–2, 4–5, 16–17, 20, 22; 41:10, 13. Alternate translation: “and he put the head baker and me in the prison that is in the house of the captain of the guards.”

### Genesis 41:11 (#1)

"And we dreamed a dream in the same night, he and I"

See how you translated a similar sentence in Gen 40:5. In verses 11–13, the pronouns **we** and **us** exclude Pharaoh. Alternate translation: “One time while we were there, we each dreamed a dream during the same night,”

See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

### Genesis 41:11 (#2)

#### "each of us dreamed according to the interpretation of his dream"

Consider again how you translated **interpretation** in Gen 40:5, 8, 12, 18; 41:11 and the related verb “interpret” in Gen 40:16, 22. Alternate translation: “and each of our dreams had its own meaning.”

### Genesis 41:12 (#1)

#### "Now there with us {was} a young Hebrew man"

Translate “young ... man” in a way that fits with the fact that Joseph was 30 years old (verse 46) and was not yet married.

### Genesis 41:12 (#2)

#### "a servant for the chief of the guards"

Consider again how you translated **chief of the guards** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 37:36; 39:1; 40:3–4; 41:10, 12. Alternate translation: “who was a servant for the captain of the guards.”

### Genesis 41:12 (#3)

#### "And we told {our dreams} to him"

Consider again how you translated **told** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 24:66; 29:13; 37:9–10; 40:8–9; 41:8, 12. Alternate translation: “After we described our dreams to him,”

### Genesis 41:12 (#4)

#### "and he interpreted our dreams for us"

Alternate translation: “he told us what they meant.”

**Genesis 41:12 (#5)**

**"He interpreted {for} each according to his dream"**

Alternate translation: "He told each of us the meaning of our dreams."

**Genesis 41:13 (#1)**

**"And it happened, just as he interpreted for us, so it happened"**

Alternate translation: "And sure enough, everything happened exactly the way he had interpreted the dreams to us:"

**Genesis 41:13 (#2)**

**"me he restored to my position"**

See how you translated "restored to ... position" in Gen 40:21. Alternate translation: "you reinstated me to my previous work as your cupbearer"

**Genesis 41:13 (#3)**

**"and him he hanged"**

Consider again whether you referred to Pharaoh in third person (**he**) or second person ("you") in verses 10 and 13. Also see how you translated "hanged/impaled on a tree/pole" in Gen 40:22. Alternate translation: "but you had your soldiers execute the baker and hang his body on a pole" or "but you had your soldiers execute the baker."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 41:14 (#1)**

**"Then Pharaoh sent and called for Joseph"**

See how you translated **sent and called for** in verse 8. Alternate translation: "Immediately Pharaoh sent servants to summon Joseph." or "When Pharaoh heard that, immediately he had messengers summon Joseph."

**Genesis 41:14 (#2)**

**"So they quickly brought him from the pit"**

See how you translated **pit** in Gen 40:15. Alternate translation: "So they hurriedly got Joseph out of the dungeon" or "So they went right away and got ..."

**Genesis 41:14 (#3)**

**"Then he shaved and changed his clothes"**

Since Joseph lived in Egypt and Egyptian men kept their heads and faces clean-shaven, Joseph probably also shaved his head and his face. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to make this implied information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "Then he shaved his head and face, changed into suitable clothes and" or "Then after he shaved his head and face and changed into clean clothing, he"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 41:14 (#4)**

**"and came to Pharaoh"**

Your choice of **came** versus "went" in this context depends on whose perspective you take: **came** reflects things from Pharaoh's point of view, and "went" reflects things from Joseph's point of view. Do what is most natural in your language. Alternate translation: "came before Pharaoh."

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 41:15 (#1)**

**"Then Pharaoh said to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh told him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 41:15 (#2)**

**"but no one could interpret it"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 40:8.

**Genesis 41:15 (#3)**

**"But I heard about you, saying"**

Alternate translation: "But I was told"



**Genesis 41:15 (#4)**

**"that} you hear a dream {and are able} to interpret it"**

Consider again how you translated **interpret** and "interpreter" throughout the book of Genesis. See Gen 40:8, 16, 22; 41:8, 12, 13, 15, 16. Alternate translation: "that when you hear a dream, you are able to interpret what it means." or "that when someone tells you a dream, you are able to interpret its meaning."

**Genesis 41:16 (#1)**

**"And Joseph responded to Pharaoh, saying"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph replied to Pharaoh"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 41:16 (#2)**

**"It is} not in me"**

Make sure your translation of Joseph's response sounds polite. See what you did in verse 9. Alternate translation: "Your Majesty, I cannot do that by myself,"

See:

**Genesis 41:16 (#3)**

**"God will answer"**

Alternate translation: "but God will interpret your dream"

**Genesis 41:16 (#4)**

**"with Pharaoh's peace"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to use Pharaoh's name at the beginning of this quote (instead of here) and say, "King Pharaoh, I do not have that ability..." Alternate translation: "for your well-being King Pharaoh." or "so that you, King Pharaoh, will have peace in your spirit."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 41:17 (#1)**

**"Then Pharaoh spoke to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "So Pharaoh told him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 41:17 (#2)**

**"In my dream, behold, I was standing"**

Alternate translation: "I dreamed that I was standing"

**Genesis 41:17 (#3)**

**"on the bank of the river"**

See how you translated "the Nile River" in verse 1. Since this is the first time that Pharaoh mentions **the river** to Joseph, consider whether this is a good place in your translation to make it explicit again that this is the Nile River. Alternate translation: "on the bank of the Nile River."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 41:18 (#1)**

**"Then behold"**

Compare how you translated verse 2, which is similar but not identical to verse 18. Alternate translation: "Then I saw that"

**Genesis 41:18 (#2)**

**"from the river came up seven cows, fat-fleshed and of fine form"**

Alternate translation: "seven cows that were fat and healthy-looking came up out of the river onto the bank" or "seven well-fed, healthy-looking cows came up out of the river onto the bank"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 41:18 (#3)**

**"and they grazed among the reeds"**

Alternate translation: "and started grazing on"

### Genesis 41:18 (#4)

**"among the reeds"**

Alternate translation: "the plants that were there."  
or "the tall grass beside the river."

### Genesis 41:19 (#1)

**"Then behold"**

See how you translated verse 3, which is similar to the first half of verse 19. Alternate translation: "Then suddenly," or "Next I saw that"

### Genesis 41:19 (#2)

**"seven other cows came up after them"**

Alternate translation: "seven other cows came up out of the river behind the first cows;"

### Genesis 41:19 (#3)

**"poor and very ugly of form and thin-fleshed"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this information earlier in this sentence and say, "Then behold, seven poor/weak, very sickly-looking, scrawny cows came up out of the river behind the first cows/ones." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "they were in horrible condition, very sickly-looking and scrawny"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 41:19 (#4)

**"I have not seen"**

Alternate translation: "In fact, I have not seen"

### Genesis 41:19 (#5)

**"cows) as ugly as those"**

Alternate translation: "cows in such bad condition"

### Genesis 41:19 (#6)

**"in all the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "in the whole country of Egypt!" or "anywhere in the country of Egypt!"

### Genesis 41:20 (#1)

**"Then the thin and ugly cows ate"**

See how you translated **ate** in verse 4." Alternate translation: "Then the skinny, unhealthy cows devoured" or "Then the cows that were scrawny and sickly swallowed up"

### Genesis 41:20 (#2)

**"the first seven fat cows"**

See how you translated **fat** or "fat-fleshed" in verses 2, 4, 18 and 20. Alternate translation: "the seven well-fed cows."

### Genesis 41:21 (#1)

**"So they went into their bellies, but it could not be known"**

Alternate translation: "But even after they had eaten them, no one would ever know" or "But although the scrawny cows had swallowed the fat ones, it could not be seen"

### Genesis 41:21 (#2)

**"that they had gone into their bellies"**

Alternate translation: "that they had eaten them,"

### Genesis 41:21 (#3)

**"and their appearance {was} just as ugly as at the beginning"**

Alternate translation: "because they still looked just as scrawny as they had before."

### Genesis 41:21 (#4)

**"Then I woke up"**

Alternate translation: "At that point, I woke up."

### Genesis 41:22 (#1)

**"Then I saw in my dream, and behold"**

Alternate translation: "Then I fell asleep again and continued dreaming. This time I saw that there were" or "Then I went back to sleep and had another dream. In this dream there were"

### Genesis 41:22 (#2)

**"seven heads of grain came up on one stalk, full and good"**

See how you translated verse 5, which is similar to verse 22. Alternate translation: "seven heads of grain growing on a single plant. They were full of ripe grain kernels." or "seven full beautiful heads of grain growing on the same stalk"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 41:23 (#1)

**"Then behold"**

See how you translated verse 6, which is similar to verse 23. Alternate translation: "Next I saw that"

### Genesis 41:23 (#2)

**"seven heads of grain, withered, thin {and} scorched {by} the east wind"**

Alternate translation: "seven heads of grain that were small and withered because they were dried out by the hot east wind" or "seven small, withered heads of grain that the hot east wind had dried out"

### Genesis 41:23 (#3)

**"sprouted"**

Alternate translation: "grew up" or "were growing"

### Genesis 41:23 (#4)

**"after them"**

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of phrases in this verse and say, "Then seven small heads of grain sprouted on the same plant next to the first heads/ones. These had withered/wilted because the hot east/desert wind had dried them out." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "next to them on the same stalk" or "on the same stalk beside the first heads"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 41:24 (#1)

**"Then the thin heads of grain swallowed up"**

See how you translated the first half of verse 7, which is similar to the first half of verse 24. Alternate translation: "Then the small heads of grain ate up" or "... swallowed down" or "... devoured"

### Genesis 41:24 (#2)

**"the seven good heads of grain"**

See how you translated **good** in verses 5 and 22. Alternate translation: "the seven beautiful heads"

### Genesis 41:24 (#3)

**"And I told {this} to the magicians"**

See how you translated **magicians** in verse 8. Alternate translation: "I told my dreams to my magicians"

### Genesis 41:24 (#4)

**"but no one {could} explain {it} to me"**

See how you translated a different Hebrew word that means **explain** or "interpret" in verse 8. Alternate translation: "but they could not explain them for me."

### Genesis 41:25 (#1)

**"Then Joseph said to Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph responded to Pharaoh,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 41:25 (#2)

### "Pharaoh's dreams {are} one"

In verses 25, 28, 32–35, Joseph uses third person ("Pharaoh ... his ... he...") to show respect for Pharaoh. For some languages, it is confusing to do that, so second person ("you ... your... you ...") must be used instead. Some languages have an honorific such as "your Majesty/Honor" that could be used occasionally in these verses instead of third person. Do what is best in your language. Also see what you did in verses 10 and 13. Alternate translation: "Your Honor, both of your dreams mean the same thing."

See: First, Second or Third Person

## Genesis 41:25 (#3)

### "What God is doing he has shown to Pharaoh"

The Hebrew text emphasizes "what God is doing" by putting that phrase first in the sentence. Consider what is the most natural phrase order for this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: "Through them, God is showing to you what he will do." or "God has revealed to you, King Pharaoh, what he is planning to do."

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 41:26 (#1)

### "The seven good cows {are} seven years"

Alternate translation: "The seven healthy cows in your dream symbolize seven years,"

## Genesis 41:26 (#2)

### "and the seven good heads of grain {are} seven years"

Alternate translation: "and the seven beautiful heads of grain symbolize the same seven years."

## Genesis 41:26 (#3)

### "The dreams {are} one"

See how you translated **dreams are one** in verse 25. Alternate translation: "Both dreams have the same meaning."

## Genesis 41:27 (#1)

### "And the seven thin and ugly cows"

See how you translated **thin and ugly cows** in verse 20, and how you translated **thin** in verse 19. Alternate translation: "The seven skinny and sickly cows"

## Genesis 41:27 (#2)

### "that came up after them"

Alternate translation: "that came up out of the river behind the first cows"

## Genesis 41:27 (#3)

### "are} seven years, and {so are} the seven thin heads of grain"

See how you translated **thin** in verses 6 and 23, and consider again how you translated **heads of grain** in verses 5–7, 22–24, 26–27. Alternate translation: "symbolize a different seven years, and so do the seven small heads of grain"

## Genesis 41:27 (#4)

### "scorched by the east wind"

See how you translated this phrase in verses 6 and 23. Also consider again how you translated **east** in the book of Genesis; see Gen 2:8; 3:24; 10:30; 11:2; 12:8; 13:11; 14; 25:6; 28:14; 29:1, 41:6, 23, 27. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "that the hot east wind had dried up." or "that the desert wind from the east had dried up."

**Genesis 41:27 (#5)****"There will be seven years of famine"**

A **famine** is a prolonged period of time when people are starving because crops are failing, often due to a lack of rain or other severe weather conditions. See how you translated this term in Gen 12:10 and 26:1. Alternate translation: "Both dreams mean that there will be seven years when food will be very scarce."

**Genesis 41:28 (#1)****"That {is} the word that I have spoken to Pharaoh"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Pharaoh here in your language. See what you did in verse 25. Alternate translation: "Your Honor, as I told you before,"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 41:28 (#2)****"What God is doing he has shown to Pharaoh"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 25. Alternate translation: "God is showing to you what he will do." or "God has shown to you what he is about to do."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 41:29 (#1)****"of} great abundance"**

Alternate translation: "when crops are abundant" or "when everyone will have plenty of food to eat"

**Genesis 41:29 (#2)****"in all the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "throughout the whole land of Egypt."

**Genesis 41:30 (#1)****"But seven years of famine will rise up after them"**

See how you translated **famine** in verse 27. Alternate translation: "But after them there will be a famine that lasts seven years," or "But after those prosperous years, there will be seven years when food is very scarce,"

**Genesis 41:30 (#2)****"so that all the abundance in the land of Egypt will be forgotten"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "So people in the country of Egypt will forget how good it was during the time when they had plenty of food,"

**Genesis 41:30 (#3)****"and the famine will consume the land"**

The phrase **the land** here probably also includes the people who lived in that country. Alternate translation: "because the famine will destroy the land and the people." or "because the severe food shortage will ravage the land so that many people will starve."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 41:31 (#1)****"And the abundance in the land will not be remembered"**

Verse 31 restates much of the content of verse 30, so keep that in mind as you translate the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: "Indeed, there will be no evidence left that there were years when there was more than enough food,"

See: Connecting Words and Phrases

**Genesis 41:31 (#2)****"because of that famine after it, because it {will be} very heavy"**

For some languages, it clearer and more natural to put this clause near the beginning of this verse and say, "Yes, the famine that is coming will be so severe/terrible that people will completely forget about the time/years when food was abundant/plentiful in the land." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because the famine that happens after that will be very oppressive." or "because the following years when food is scarce will be so terrible."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 41:32 (#1)

**"And as for the repeating of the dream to Pharaoh twice, {it is} because"**

Alternate translation: "The reason you had the same dream in two different ways is that"

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 41:32 (#2)

**"the matter has been established by God"**

Alternate translation: "God has firmly decided what he is going to do," or "God wants you to know that this will definitely happen,"

### Genesis 41:32 (#3)

**"and God will soon do it"**

Alternate translation: "and he will cause it to happen very soon."

### Genesis 41:33 (#1)

**"And now let Pharaoh seek a man"**

Alternate translation: "So King Pharaoh, you should now look for a man" or "So now, your Highness, I recommend that you choose a man"

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 41:33 (#2)

**"who is} discerning and wise"**

Alternate translation: "who is insightful and knows what to do," or "who is wise and can make good decisions,"

### Genesis 41:33 (#3)

**"and set him over"**

Alternate translation: "and put him in charge of" or "and give him authority over"

### Genesis 41:33 (#4)

**"the land of Egypt"**

See how you translated **the land** in verse 30. Alternate translation: "the country of Egypt and its people."

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 41:34 (#1)

**"Let Pharaoh do {this}: Let him set supervisors"**

Alternate translation: "King Pharaoh, I also recommend that you appoint regional administrators" or "Sir, you should also appoint ..."

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 41:34 (#2)

**"over the land"**

Alternate translation: "to be in charge of different regions of the country," or "to manage different regions of the country,"

### Genesis 41:34 (#3)

**"and let him take a fifth"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "and have them gather from the people one-fifth" or "Then command them to collect ..."

### Genesis 41:34 (#4)

**"of the land of Egypt"**

In this context, “the land/country” refers to the crops that were growing in Egypt. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: “of all the grain that they harvest in the country of Egypt” or “of everything the land of Egypt produces”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 41:34 (#5)

**"in the seven years of abundance"**

See how you translated **abundance** in verses 29–31. Alternate translation: “during the seven years when crops are abundant” or “during the seven years when there will be more than enough crops”

### Genesis 41:35 (#1)

**"And they should gather"**

Alternate translation: “Have them gather”

### Genesis 41:35 (#2)

**"all the food of the good years that are coming"**

Alternate translation: “all that extra grain from the prosperous years that will come.” or “all that extra food during the good years ahead when there will be plenty of food.”

### Genesis 41:35 (#3)

**"And they should store {that} grain"**

Alternate translation: “Have them stockpile that grain” or “Command them to store up that grain”

### Genesis 41:35 (#4)

**"under Pharaoh's hand"**

Consider again how you translated the use of the third person to address Pharaoh respectfully in verses 10, 13, 25, 32–35. Also, for some languages it may be better to put this phrase earlier and say, “Using your authority, King Pharaoh, have them stockpile that grain in storehouses...” Do what is

best in your language. Alternate translation: “with your authority, King Pharaoh,”

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 41:35 (#5)

**"for} food in the cities and guard {it"**

Alternate translation: “in the cities for food and have soldiers keep it safe.”

### Genesis 41:36 (#1)

**"And the food should be in reserve"**

Alternate translation: “That extra food should be kept in storage” or “That grain should stay in storage” or “They must continue to store that surplus grain”

### Genesis 41:36 (#2)

**"for the land"**

The phrase **the land** refers here to the people who live in the land of Egypt. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: “for the people of the land to eat” or “so that the people of the land have it to eat”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 41:36 (#3)

**"for the seven years of famine that will come"**

Alternate translation: “during the seven years when food is very scarce”

### Genesis 41:36 (#4)

**"on the land of Egypt"**

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to repeat “the land/country” in this sentence. Alternate translation: “in Egypt,”

### Genesis 41:36 (#5)

**"so that the land will not be cut off"**

Make sure the way you translated “the people of/in the land/country” at the beginning of this verse fits with how you translate it here. It is helpful to read your translation aloud to make sure it is clear and natural. Alternate translation: “so that the people in the land” or “so that the people”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 41:36 (#6)

**"so that the land will not be cut off"**

See how you translated the idiom **cut off** in Gen 9:11. It may be necessary to translate it differently here because of the different context. Alternate translation: “will not be destroyed by”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 41:36 (#7)

**"by the famine"**

Alternate translation: “the severe food scarcity”

### Genesis 41:37 (#1)

**"And the word was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants"**

See how you translated the idiom **in the eyes of** in Gen 34:18. Alternate translation: “What Joseph said seemed like a good plan to King Pharaoh and all his servants” or “King Pharaoh and all his servants agreed that what Joseph had proposed was good.”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 41:38 (#1)

**"Then Pharaoh said to his servants"**

Alternate translation: “So Pharaoh said to his officials,”

### Genesis 41:38 (#2)

**"Can we find a man like this"**

Pharaoh uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that no one is more qualified than

Joseph. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this quote using a question or a statement. Alternate translation: “It is obvious that we will never find a man as qualified as Joseph,”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 41:38 (#3)

**"who {has} the Spirit of God in him"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “who has God’s Spirit in him” or “whom God’s Spirit guides” or (2) “who has a divine spirit in him” or “who has a spirit of the gods in him”. Most translations follow the first interpretation, since Joseph had just talked to Pharaoh about God (verses 16, 28, 32) and Pharaoh acknowledges God in verse 39.

### Genesis 41:39 (#1)

**"Then Pharaoh said to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: “Then he turned to Joseph and said,”

### Genesis 41:39 (#2)

**"Since God has shown all this to you"**

Alternate translation: “God has revealed to you what he is going to do, so”

### Genesis 41:39 (#3)

**"there is} no one {as} discerning and wise as you"**

See how you translated **discerning and wise** in verse 33. Alternate translation: “no one else is as insightful as you are and knows what to do in this situation.” or “... or knows how to manage this situation wisely.”

### Genesis 41:40 (#1)

**"You will be over my house"**



The phrase **my house** refers here to Pharaoh's household and all the other people he rules as king. Alternate translation: "So I am putting you in charge of my household and my country," or "So I am giving you authority over the people in my palace and the rest of my country,"

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 41:40 (#2)

**"and all my people will kiss on your mouth"**

Consider whether you have a similar idiom in your language or if you need to say this without an idiom. Alternate translation: "so that all the people in my kingdom must do whatever you say" or "so that all the people I reign over will respect and obey whatever you tell them to do."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 41:40 (#3)

**"Only I {on} the throne will be greater than you"**

In this context, **the throne** refers to Pharaoh's position as the king. Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "Only I who sit on the throne as king will have more authority than you." or "Only I who am king will ..."

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 41:41 (#1)

**"Then Pharaoh said to Joseph"**

Some languages leave **Joseph** or even this entire quote margin implied here, since Pharaoh is still talking to the same person. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Pharaoh added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 41:41 (#2)

**"See, I have put you over"**

The word **See** emphasizes what Pharaoh says next. Alternate translation: "Look I now put you in charge of" or "I am now appointing you to be the supervisor over"

### Genesis 41:41 (#3)

**"all the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "the whole land of Egypt."

### Genesis 41:42 (#1)

**"Then Pharaoh removed his signet ring from his hand"**

The signet ring was the identification ring that the king used to seal official documents. See how you translated **signet** in Gen 38:18. Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh took off his royal identification ring" or "Then Pharaoh took from his finger the ring that he used to mark letters"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 41:42 (#2)

**"and put it on Joseph's hand"**

The signet ring showed that Joseph represented Pharaoh and had his complete authority.

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 41:42 (#3)

**"And he dressed him {in} garments of fine linen"**

The Hebrew word for **fine linen** refers to a special kind of white cloth that was woven out of flax and had a fine texture. Clothes made from linen were expensive and were worn by the king and high officials. If linen is not known in your language area, you could be more general and refer to expensive, high-quality clothes. Alternate translation: "He also had Joseph put on fine linen robes" or "He also gave Joseph high-quality robes to wear"

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 41:42 (#4)

**"and put a gold chain on his neck"**

Alternate translation: “and put a collar made of gold around his neck.” or “and put around his neck a necklace made of gold.”

### Genesis 41:43 (#1)

**"in the second chariot that {belonged} to him"**

A chariot is a cart with two or four wheels that was pulled by one or more horses. It was used as transportation and was especially used in battles. Translate this in a way that fits with this description. It may be helpful to include a picture of a chariot in your translation. Alternate translation: “in a royal horse-drawn cart as his second-in-command” or “in the horse-drawn cart that showed he was the second highest ruler in the country.”

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 41:43 (#2)

**"and they shouted before him"**

Make sure the way you translate **shouted** does not sound angry. Rather they were calling out loudly enough for people to hear them. Alternate translation: “As he rode, heralds walked in the streets ahead of him calling out to everyone,”

### Genesis 41:43 (#3)

**"Bow down"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could be: (1) a transliteration of an Egyptian word that means “Bow down in reverence/respect!” or “Make way for the king’s appointed one!” or “Welcome/Honor your new leader!” which is what people would be told to do to honor an important person; or (2) a combination of Hebrew words that means “This is the father of the king!”, which is similar to what Joseph says in Gen 45:8.

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 41:43 (#4)

**"So he put him over"**

See how you translated a similar sentence in verse 41. Alternate translation: “So Pharaoh put Joseph in

charge of” or “In that way, Pharaoh officially installed Joseph to be the manager over”

### Genesis 41:43 (#5)

**"all the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: “the whole land of Egypt.”

### Genesis 41:44 (#1)

**"I {am} Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: “I, Pharaoh, hereby decree that”

### Genesis 41:44 (#2)

**"and without you a person will not lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt"**

The phrase “will not lift his hand or foot” is hyperbole (exaggeration) that is used to emphasize Joseph’s authority. Consider whether or not it is clear and natural to do that here in your language. Alternate translation: “no one throughout the entire country of Egypt may do anything unless you tell them to do it!” or “throughout the entire country of Egypt, everyone must only do what you tell them to do!”

See: Hyperbole

### Genesis 41:45 (#1)

**"Then Pharaoh called Joseph’s name"**

Alternate translation: “Then Pharaoh called Joseph by the Egyptian name”

### Genesis 41:45 (#2)

**"and he gave to him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, as a wife"**

Potiphera was a pagan priest, and he led people in worshipping the Egyptians’ gods, not Yahweh. See how you translated **priest** in Gen 14:18. Alternate translation: “and he gave him a woman named Asenath to be his wife. She was the daughter of

Potiphera, who was a priest at the temple at the city of On."

### Genesis 41:45 (#3)

**"Then Joseph went out over the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph started going around all over the land of Egypt." or "Then Joseph started his work and traveled throughout the land of Egypt."

### Genesis 41:46 (#1)

**"Now Joseph {was} a son of thirty years"**

Consider what is the best way to begin this new paragraph in your language.

### Genesis 41:46 (#2)

**"when he stood before"**

This phrase refers to when Joseph stood before Pharaoh and was commissioned to serve as the second-highest ruler in Egypt. Alternate translation: "when he had that audience with"

### Genesis 41:46 (#3)

**"and passed through all the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "and traveled throughout the entire country of Egypt doing his work." or "and began traveling from place to place throughout ..."

### Genesis 41:47 (#1)

**"in the seven years of abundance"**

Compare how you translated **seven years of abundance** in verse 34. Alternate translation: "During the seven years when food was abundant" or "For seven years the harvests were plentiful and"

### Genesis 41:47 (#2)

**"And" - "the land produced {grain} by the handfuls"**

The idiom **by the handfuls** refers here to large amounts of grain. Consider whether your language has a similar idiom you could use here. Alternate translation: "the land produced large amounts of grain." or "the people harvested large amounts of grain from the land."

See: Idiom

### Genesis 41:48 (#1)

**"So he gathered"**

When the Bible says that a leader such as Joseph did something, it often means that he had it done by people under his authority. Decide whether you want to include this information in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: "So Joseph told the supervisors under him to collect" or "So Joseph had his helpers gather"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 41:48 (#2)

**"all the food of the seven years that were in the land of Egypt"**

See how you translated **all the food** in verse 35. Alternate translation: "all the extra food that was produced in the land of Egypt during those seven years," or "all the extra grain that people produced during those seven years in the land of Egypt,"

### Genesis 41:48 (#3)

**"and he put the food in the cities"**

Alternate translation: "and he had them store that grain in the cities."

### Genesis 41:48 (#4)

**"The food of the fields that surrounded {each} city he put inside it"**

Consider what phrase order is best for this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: "The food that people had harvested from the fields, he had his supervisors stockpile in the nearby cities." or "In each city he had them store the food that people had harvested from the nearby fields."

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 41:49 (#1)

### "So Joseph stored up"

See how you translated "store/stockpile" in verse 35. Alternate translation: "Joseph had his helpers store up"

## Genesis 41:49 (#2)

### "grain like the sand of the sea"

See how you translated "as the sand of the sea" in Gen 32:12 and a similar phrase in Gen 22:17. Alternate translation: "so much grain that it looked as plentiful as grains of sand beside the sea" or "... as plentiful as the grains of sand on the beach."

## Genesis 41:49 (#3)

### "very much, until"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "In fact, there was so much that" or "In fact, it was so plentiful that after a while"

## Genesis 41:49 (#4)

### "he stopped measuring {it}"

It was probably Joseph's helpers who measured the grain and kept records of it. See how you handled this at the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: "he had them stop keeping track of it" or "they had to stop writing down how much there was,"

## Genesis 41:49 (#5)

### "because it was without number"

Alternate translation: "because there was so much that they could no longer record it."

## Genesis 41:50 (#1)

### "before the years of the famine came"

Consider what is the best way to change topics and begin this new paragraph in your language. Alternate translation: "Now it so happened that before the seven years of famine came"

See: Introduction of a New Event

## Genesis 41:50 (#2)

### "And" - "two sons were born to Joseph, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On, bore for him"

See how you translated **Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, the priest of On** in verse 45. Alternate translation: "Joseph had two sons with his wife Asenath, a daughter of Potiphera, who was a priest in the city of On." or "Joseph and his wife Asenath had two sons. Remember that Asenath was a daughter of Potiphera, a priest in the city of On."

## Genesis 41:51 (#1)

### "And Joseph called the name of"

See how you translated the idiom **called the name of** in Gen 21:3.

## Genesis 41:51 (#2)

### "the firstborn {son}"

Alternate translation: "his first son"

## Genesis 41:51 (#3)

### "Manasseh"

If you include the meaning of the name **Manasseh** in your translation or in a footnote, it should fit with the way you translate **forget** in the following clause.

See: How to Translate Names

## Genesis 41:51 (#4)

### "because {he said}, 'God has made me forget'"

Your translation should not sound like Joseph had lost his memory of these things, rather God had blessed him so much that it helped him stop

thinking about those things. Alternate translation: "... to stop thinking about"

### Genesis 41:51 (#5)

"all my toil and"

Alternate translation: "all my hardships and about"

### Genesis 41:51 (#6)

"all of my father's house"

Alternate translation: "how much I have missed all of my family back home."

### Genesis 41:52 (#1)

"And the name of the second {son} he called"

Alternate translation: "And Joseph named his second son"

### Genesis 41:52 (#2)

"Ephraim"

If you include the meaning of Ephraim's name in your translation or in a footnote, it should fit with the way you translate **fruitful** in the following clause.

See: How to Translate Names

### Genesis 41:52 (#3)

"because {he said}, "God has made me fruitful"

Consider again how you translated the idiom **fruitful** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 17:6; 26:22; 41:52.

See: Idiom

### Genesis 41:53 (#1)

"Then the seven years of abundance that was" - "ended"

See how you translated **the seven years of abundance** in verses 34 and 47, and a similar

phrase in verse 29. Alternate translation: "Finally the seven years when food was abundant"

### Genesis 41:53 (#2)

"Then" - "ended"

For some languages it is better to put this phrase earlier in the sentence and say, "Finally the seven years were over when food was plentiful in the country of Egypt. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "came to an end,"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 41:54 (#1)

"and the seven years of famine started to come"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then the seven years of famine began,"

### Genesis 41:54 (#2)

"just as Joseph had said"

Alternate translation: "just as Joseph had predicted would happen." or "which is exactly what Joseph had said would happen."

### Genesis 41:54 (#3)

"And there was famine in all the lands"

Alternate translation: "The severe food shortage began to affect all countries,"

### Genesis 41:54 (#4)

"but in all the land of Egypt"

Alternate translation: "but everywhere in the land of Egypt" or "but throughout the entire land of Egypt"

### Genesis 41:54 (#5)

"there was bread"

In this context, **bread** refers to all food in general. Alternate translation: “there was still plenty of food stored up.”

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 41:55 (#1)

**"Then all the land of Egypt became famished"**

The phrase **all the land** refers here to the people living in Egypt. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. Alternate translation: “Then all the people in the land of Egypt began to suffer from the famine, so”

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 41:55 (#2)

**"and the people cried to Pharaoh for the bread"**

Alternate translation: “they begged Pharaoh for food.” or “they pleaded with Pharaoh to give them food.”

### Genesis 41:55 (#3)

**"So Pharaoh said to all the Egyptians"**

Alternate translation: “So King Pharaoh told them,” or “So he told them,”

### Genesis 41:55 (#4)

**"Go to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: “Go ask Joseph for food,” or “You must go to Joseph and ask him for help,”

### Genesis 41:55 (#5)

**"Whatever he says to you, do {it}"**

Consider whether or not it is best to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: “and do whatever he tells you to do.”

### Genesis 41:56 (#1)

**"And the famine was over all the face of the land, so" - "opened"**

Alternate translation: “Since the famine had spread throughout the whole country,” or “Since the severe food shortage was affecting the entire country,”

### Genesis 41:56 (#2)

**"so Joseph opened"**

See how you translated verses 48 and 49, where Joseph is said to do something that he had his helpers do. Alternate translation: “Joseph ordered the supervisors under him to open up”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 41:56 (#3)

**"all {the buildings} that {had grain} in them"**

Alternate translation: “all the storage barns where grain was being stored,”

### Genesis 41:56 (#4)

**"and sold {grain} to the Egyptians"**

Alternate translation: “and they started selling the grain to the people of Egypt.”

### Genesis 41:56 (#5)

**"And the famine was severe"**

Alternate translation: “Then the famine kept getting more and more severe”

### Genesis 41:56 (#6)

**"in the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: “throughout the land of Egypt.” or “throughout their country.”

**Genesis 41:57 (#1)****"Then all the earth"**

This phrase refers to the people living on the earth. Consider whether or not you need to make that explicit in your language. See how you translated a similar metonymy ("all the land") in verse 55. Alternate translation: "In fact, people from all over the earth"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 41:57 (#2)****"came to Egypt to Joseph to buy {grain}"**

Alternate translation: "started traveling to Egypt to buy food from Joseph,"

**Genesis 41:57 (#3)****"because the famine was severe in all the earth"**

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this clause near the beginning of verse 57 and say, "In fact, the famine was/became so severe/terrible in/throughout the entire/whole world that people started coming/traveling to Egypt from all over the world to buy grain from Joseph." Do what is best in your language. See how you translated "severe/terrible" in verse 56. Alternate translation: "because the food shortage was so severe throughout the entire world."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 42:1 (#1)****"Then Jacob saw that there was grain in Egypt"**

This verse begins a new episode which overlaps in time with some of what was happening in chapter 41. Consider what is the best way to begin this episode in your language. Alternate translation: "Meanwhile in the land of Canaan, when Jacob learned that there was grain for sale in the country of Egypt," or "... when Jacob found out that he could buy grain in Egypt,"

See: Introduction of a New Event

**Genesis 42:1 (#2)****"so Jacob said to his sons"**

Alternate translation: "he asked his sons,"

**Genesis 42:1 (#3)****"Why are you looking at each other"**

Jacob uses this rhetorical question to get his sons to take action and do what he says next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "What are you waiting for?" or "Do not just sit here staring at each other!" or "Do not just stand there doing nothing!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 42:2 (#1)****"And he said"**

For some languages it is more natural to omit the quote margin here, because the same person (Jacob) is still talking to the same people (his sons). Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then he added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 42:2 (#2)****"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Look,"

**Genesis 42:2 (#3)****"I have heard"**

Alternate translation: "I learned" or "Someone told me"

**Genesis 42:2 (#4)****"that there is grain in Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "that there is much grain for sale in the country of Egypt." or "that the country of Egypt has a lot of grain that people can buy."

**Genesis 42:2 (#5)****"Go down there"**

Make sure that the way you translate Jacob's command to his sons does not sound rude or harsh. Alternate translation: "So I want you to go there" or "So please go down there"

See:

**Genesis 42:2 (#6)****"and buy {some} for us from there"**

Alternate translation: "and buy some grain for us all"

**Genesis 42:2 (#7)****"so that we will live"**

Alternate translation: "so that we will survive" or "so that we will stay alive"

**Genesis 42:2 (#8)****"and not die"**

Alternate translation: "and not die from hunger."

**Genesis 42:3 (#1)****"Then ten of Joseph's brothers went down"**

These ten brothers were older than Joseph and had different mothers than he did. Also, the verb **went down** refers to the fact that Egypt was lower in elevation than the land of Canaan. It is also located southwest of Canaan. See how you translated "go down" in verse 2 and **went down** in Gen 12:10.

See: Kinship

**Genesis 42:4 (#1)****"But Jacob did not send Benjamin, the brother of Joseph"**

Benjamin was younger than Joseph and had the same mother (Rachel) and father.

See: Kinship

**Genesis 42:4 (#2)****"with his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "with his other brothers,"

**Genesis 42:4 (#3)****"because he said, 'So that harm does not meet him'"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "But Jacob was concerned that harm might come to Joseph's younger brother Benjamin, so he did not send him with the rest of his brothers to Egypt." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because Jacob thought that he might be harmed." or "because he was concerned that something terrible might happen to him."

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 42:5 (#1)****"And the sons of Israel came"**

If it is not clear that **Israel** (verse 5) and "Jacob" (verse 4) refer to the same person, you could include the name Jacob here in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: "The sons of Israel that is, Jacob" or "So the sons of Jacob, who was also called Israel,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 42:5 (#2)****"And" - "came"**

Alternate translation: "came to Egypt"

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 42:5 (#3)****"among {those} who came"**

Alternate translation: "along with many other people who were going there" or "along with many other travelers"



**Genesis 42:5 (#4)****"because the famine"**

See how you translated **because the famine** in Gen 41:57. Alternate translation: "because the extreme food shortage" or "because the extreme lack of food"

**Genesis 42:5 (#5)****"was in the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "was also affecting everyone in the land of Canaan." or "was also affecting the entire land of Canaan."

**Genesis 42:6 (#1)****"Now Joseph {was} the governor over the land"**

Alternate translation: "Since Joseph was the administrator over the land of Egypt,"

See: Background Information

**Genesis 42:6 (#2)****"the land"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "the country of Egypt", which is what it means earlier in verse 6; or (2) "the earth/world."

**Genesis 42:6 (#3)****"So the brothers of Joseph came"**

So/Then Joseph's brothers also came/went

**Genesis 42:6 (#4)****"and bowed down to him {with} {their} noses to the ground"**

See how you translated "bow down" in Gen 37:7, 9–10. Alternate translation: "before him like everyone else and bowed down with their foreheads toward the ground to show him respect."

or "to him and prostrated themselves before him to show respect."

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 42:7 (#1)****"And Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph immediately recognized his brothers"

**Genesis 42:7 (#2)****"but he acted like a stranger to them"**

For some languages it is better to divide the first sentence in this verse into shorter sentences. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "but he treated them like strangers" or "But he pretended that he did not know them"

**Genesis 42:7 (#3)****"and he spoke with them harshly"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "and spoke to them in a harsh way" or "In fact, he spoke to them roughly"

**Genesis 42:7 (#4)****"and said to them"**

Alternate translation: "and questioned them," or "and demanded,"

**Genesis 42:7 (#5)****"Where did you come from"**

Alternate translation: "Where are you from?"

**Genesis 42:7 (#6)****"From the land of Canaan to buy food"**

For some languages it is necessary to begin with a respectful title or form of address when someone

talks to a person of high status like Joseph. See how Joseph's brothers address him in verse 10. Alternate translation: "Sir, we came from the land of Canaan to buy some grain." or "Sir, we are from the land of Canaan and we came to buy some grain."

See:

### Genesis 42:8 (#1)

**"And Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him"**

Alternate translation: "Although Joseph recognized his brothers, they did not know who he was."

### Genesis 42:9 (#1)

**"about them"**

Alternate translation: "about them long ago,"

### Genesis 42:9 (#2)

**"and he said to them"**

Alternate translation: "so he told them,"

### Genesis 42:9 (#3)

**"You {are} spies"**

Alternate translation: "You are spying on our country!"

### Genesis 42:9 (#4)

**"You have come"**

Alternate translation: "The reason you came here is"

### Genesis 42:9 (#5)

**"to see the nakedness of the land"**

Alternate translation: "to find out where our country is vulnerable!"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 42:10 (#1)

**"No, my lord"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase sounds polite. In some cultures it is rude to say **No** too directly. See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 23:11. Alternate translation: "No, sir,"

See: Politeness

### Genesis 42:10 (#2)

**"but your servants have come"**

The brothers referred to themselves as **your servants** to show respect to Joseph and to acknowledge his high position. Translate this phrase in a polite way that shows respect toward Joseph. Alternate translation: "but rather we come before you humbly" or "Rather, we are just humble men who have come here"

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 42:10 (#3)

**"to buy food"**

Alternate translation: "only to buy some food"

### Genesis 42:11 (#1)

**"sons of one man"**

Alternate translation: "the sons of the same man"

### Genesis 42:11 (#2)

**"We {are} honest. Your servants are not spies"**

Alternate translation: "We are trustworthy people who highly respect you. We are not spies." or "We are humble, honest people, not spies."

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 42:12 (#1)

**"But he said to them"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph replied," or "But he accused them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 42:12 (#2)

#### "No, indeed you have come"

Different languages use "yes" and "no" in different ways, depending on the context. Do what is accurate and natural in this context in your language. Also see how you translated **No** in Gen 18:15.

### Genesis 42:12 (#3)

#### "to see the nakedness of the land"

See how you translated this phrase in verse 9. Alternate translation: "to find out where our country is vulnerable!"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 42:13 (#1)

#### "But they said"

Alternate translation: "Then they responded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 42:13 (#2)

#### "Your servants {are} twelve brothers"

Alternate translation: "Sir, there are twelve of us brothers."

### Genesis 42:13 (#3)

#### "We {are} sons of one man"

Alternate translation: "We are all sons of the same man" or "We all have the same father"

### Genesis 42:13 (#4)

#### "in the land of Canaan"

Alternate translation: "who lives in the land of Canaan." or "and we live in the land of Canaan."

### Genesis 42:13 (#5)

#### "And behold, the youngest"

The word **behold** calls attention to what the brothers say next. Some translations leave it implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "In fact, our youngest brother"

### Genesis 42:13 (#6)

#### "is} with our father today"

Alternate translation: "is presently back at home with our father," or "is there with our father right now,"

### Genesis 42:13 (#7)

#### "and the one"

Alternate translation: "but the other one"

### Genesis 42:13 (#8)

#### "is not {alive}"

In this context, **is not** is an idiom that means "has died." Consider whether or not your language has a similar idiom that would fit well here. Alternate translation: "is no more." or "is no longer with us."

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 42:14 (#1)

#### "Then Joseph said to them"

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph accused them," or "Then Joseph responded,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 42:14 (#2)

#### "It {is} just as I told you, saying, 'You {are} spies'"

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate the embedded quote **You are spies** as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "What I told you is right You are spying on our country!" or "I was right when I said that you

are secretly gathering information about our country!"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 42:15 (#1)

**"By this"**

Alternate translation: "In this way"

### Genesis 42:15 (#2)

**"you will be tested"**

Alternate translation: "I will test whether or not you told me the truth:" or "I am going to test you to find out if your claims are true:"

### Genesis 42:15 (#3)

**"By} the life of Pharaoh"**

Joseph uses King Pharaoh's name here to make an oath that emphasizes the certainty of what he says next. Make sure that the way he refers to Pharaoh sounds respectful in your translation. See how you translated other vows in Gen 14:22 and 21:23–24. Alternate translation: "As certain as King Pharaoh lives, I vow that"

### Genesis 42:15 (#4)

**"you will not leave"**

Alternate translation: "you will definitely not leave" or "I will not let you leave"

### Genesis 42:15 (#5)

**"from this {place}"**

Alternate translation: "from here"

### Genesis 42:15 (#6)

**"unless your youngest brother comes here"**

For some languages it may be better to change the wording of this sentence and say, "By the life of Pharaoh, the only way you will ever leave Egypt is

if your youngest brother comes here." or "By the life of Pharaoh, your youngest brother must come here, or else you will definitely not/never leave Egypt!" Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "until your youngest brother comes here." or "until I see that your youngest brother is here."

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

### Genesis 42:16 (#1)

**"Send one of you"**

Alternate translation: "Choose one of you to go home"

### Genesis 42:16 (#2)

**"and let him bring your brother"**

Alternate translation: "to get your youngest brother and bring him here."

### Genesis 42:16 (#3)

**"and you"**

In this verse, the pronouns **you** and **your** are plural. Alternate translation: "You who are left"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

### Genesis 42:16 (#4)

**"will be bound"**

See how you translated **bound** in Gen 39:20; 40:3, 5. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "will be put in prison."

### Genesis 42:16 (#5)

**"Then your words will be tested {as to whether} the truth {is} in you"**

Alternate translation: "That way I can verify whether or not you told me the truth." or "If you do that, I will know that what you told me is true."

**Genesis 42:16 (#6)****"And if not"**

Alternate translation: "But if you are not telling the truth,"

**Genesis 42:16 (#7)****"by} the life of Pharaoh"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 15.

**Genesis 42:16 (#8)****"surely you {are} spies"**

Alternate translation: "that means you are definitely spies!"

**Genesis 42:17 (#1)****"Then he put them together in custody {for} three days"**

See how you translated **in custody** in Gen 40:3–4, 7. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph had his soldiers put them in custody for three days."

**Genesis 42:18 (#1)****"Then Joseph said to them on the third day"**

See how you translated **on the third day** in Gen 22:4, 31:22, 40:20. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "After three days, Joseph said to them,"

**Genesis 42:18 (#2)****"Do this"**

Alternate translation: "Do what I say and" or "If you do this," or "If you do what I say,"

**Genesis 42:18 (#3)****"and live"**

Alternate translation: "you will live," or "I will spare your lives,"

**Genesis 42:18 (#4)****"because} I fear God"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "I am a man who reveres/respects God. So if you do what I say, I will let you live." Do what is best in your language. See how you translated **fear God** in Gen 22:12. Alternate translation: "since I respect and obey God:"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 42:19 (#1)****"If you {are} honest"**

See how you translated **honest** in verse 11. Alternate translation: "If you truly are honest men as you say" or "Since you claim to be honest men,"

**Genesis 42:19 (#2)****"let one of your brothers be bound in your prison house"**

See how you translated **be bound** in verse 16. Alternate translation: "I will make just one of you brothers remain where you have been, in prison," or "just one of you brothers must remain confined where you have been,"

**Genesis 42:19 (#3)****"and you go take grain back"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "while the rest of you go back home now with grain" or "The rest of you may go and take grain back home"

**Genesis 42:19 (#4)****"for} the famine of your households"**

Alternate translation: "for your hungry families to eat." or "to feed your hungry households"

### Genesis 42:20 (#1)

**"Then you will bring your youngest brother to me"**

Alternate translation: "After that, you must come back here to me with your youngest brother"

### Genesis 42:20 (#2)

**"so that your words will be verified"**

See how you translated a similar clause in verse 16.  
Alternate translation: "so that what you have told me will be proven to be true,"

### Genesis 42:20 (#3)

**"and you will not die"**

In this context, the word **die** refers to execution, not death by natural causes. Alternate translation: "and I will spare your lives and not execute you for being spies."

See: Litotes

### Genesis 42:20 (#4)

**"And they did so"**

Alternate translation: "... agreed to do what he said" or "... accepted his proposal."

### Genesis 42:21 (#1)

**"We {are} truly guilty concerning our brother"**

Alternate translation: "This is happening because we sinned badly against our brother Joseph long ago."

### Genesis 42:21 (#2)

**"because we saw the distress of his soul"**

The phrase **his soul** refers here to Joseph. Alternate translation: "We saw how distressed he was" or "We saw how terribly he was suffering"

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 42:21 (#3)

**"when he pleaded with us"**

Alternate translation: "when he urgently asked us to free him,"

### Genesis 42:21 (#4)

**"but we did not listen"**

Alternate translation: "but we refused to let him go."

### Genesis 42:21 (#5)

**"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: "That is the reason that"

### Genesis 42:21 (#6)

**"this distress has come upon us"**

Alternate translation: "we are now experiencing so much trouble." or "we are suffering like this now."

### Genesis 42:22 (#1)

**"Then Reuben responded to them, saying"**

Alternate translation: "Reuben reproached them by saying,"

### Genesis 42:22 (#2)

**"Did I not tell you, saying"**

Reuben uses this rhetorical question to scold his brothers. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Remember that I told you"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 42:22 (#3)****"Do not sin against the lad"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated **lad** in Gen 37:30, and keep in mind that Joseph was seventeen years old when his brothers sold him. Alternate translation: "that you must not harm the boy!"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 42:22 (#4)****"But you did not listen"**

Alternate translation: "But you did not obey me,"

**Genesis 42:22 (#5)****"so now behold"**

Alternate translation: "so now, see what is happening;" or "so now look,"

**Genesis 42:22 (#6)****"his blood is being accounted for"**

The phrase **his blood** refers to Joseph's death; if you do not translate that phrase literally, you could put the literal text in a footnote since **blood** is such an important term throughout the Bible. Alternate translation: "we are being held responsible by God for his death!" or "We are getting what we deserve for causing his death!"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 42:23 (#1)****"that Joseph understood {them}"**

Alternate translation: "that Joseph could understand what they were saying to each other," or "that he was listening to what they were saying,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 42:23 (#2)****"because the interpreter {was} between them"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Now Joseph had been using an interpreter to speak to his brothers, so they did not realize that Joseph could understand them." Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 42:24 (#1)****"And he turned away"**

Throughout this section make sure it is clear at each point who is being referred to, using nouns (including names) and pronouns naturally in your language. Alternate translation: "So he turned"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 42:24 (#2)****"And he turned away from them"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "turned his back to them" or (2) "went/stepped away from them". Either way, Joseph was hiding his face from his brothers so they could not see that he was crying.

**Genesis 42:24 (#3)****"and cried"**

Alternate translation: "to hide his tears."

**Genesis 42:24 (#4)****"Then he turned back toward them"**

Make sure that the way you translate this sentence fits with the way you translated the last sentence in verse 23. Alternate translation: "Then after he recovered, Joseph turned back around" or "When he had composed himself, he came back to them"

**Genesis 42:24 (#5)****"and spoke to them"**

Alternate translation: "and spoke to them again using his translator." or "and continued speaking to them."

**Genesis 42:24 (#6)****"Then he took Simeon from them"**

Alternate translation: "Next he chose Simeon from among them" or "Then he separated Simeon from the rest of the brothers"

**Genesis 42:24 (#7)****"and bound him"**

Joseph probably had soldiers bind Simeon. See how you translated a similar case in Gen 40:3. Alternate translation: "and had him bound" or "and had his soldiers confine him with ropes"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 42:24 (#8)****"before their eyes"**

Alternate translation: "as they watched." or "in front of them."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 42:25 (#1)****"Then Joseph ordered {his servants} and they filled"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph commanded his servants to fill" or "Then Joseph had his servants fill"

**Genesis 42:25 (#2)****"their bags {with} grain"**

Two different words, "bag" and **sack**, are used in this verse to refer to the bags of grain that the brothers had. Some languages use just one of these

terms in order to prevent confusion. Do what is best in your language.

**Genesis 42:25 (#3)****"And {he ordered them} to return {each} man's silver to his sack"**

Joseph had his servants to do this without his brothers knowing about it.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 42:25 (#4)****"and to give provisions to them for the road"**

Alternate translation: "and to supply them with food to eat on the journey home." or "and to give them food to eat as they traveled home."

**Genesis 42:25 (#5)****"And he did that for them"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to end this sentence here (and begin verse 26 with a new sentence) or to continue this sentence into verse 26. Alternate translation: "So, that is what was done for them." or "That is what Joseph did for them."

**Genesis 42:26 (#1)****"Then they loaded"**

Make sure your choice here fits with the way you translated the end of verse 25. Alternate translation: "Then his brothers put" or "they put" or "his brothers put"

**Genesis 42:26 (#2)****"and went from there"**

The way you translate this phrase should reflect the fact that Joseph's brothers were just starting their journey back home; they did not reach their home until several days later (verse 29). Alternate translation: "and left there to go home."



**Genesis 42:27 (#1)**

**"Then one {of them} opened his sack to give fodder to his donkey at the lodging place"**

See how you translated **fodder** in Gen 24:25, 32. Alternate translation: "Later, when they stopped at a place to lodge for the night, one of them opened his sack to get some feed to feed his donkey."

**Genesis 42:27 (#2)**

**"and he saw his silver, and behold, it {was} in the mouth of his sack"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Suddenly he saw that the silver he had paid for the grain was right there in the opening of his sack!" or "There in the top of his sack he saw the money that he had paid to buy grain!"

**Genesis 42:28 (#1)**

**"So he said to his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "Then he exclaimed to his brothers," or "Then he exclaimed to the others,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 42:28 (#2)**

**"My silver has been returned"**

Alternate translation: "Somebody has returned my grain money to me!" or "Someone gave my grain money back to me!"

**Genesis 42:28 (#3)**

**"And indeed behold, {it is} in my sack"**

Alternate translation: "Here it is in my grain sack!" or "It is right here in my grain sack!"

**Genesis 42:28 (#4)**

**"Then their hearts went out"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "They looked, and their hearts sank,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 42:28 (#5)**

**"and each {man} trembled to his brother, saying"**

Alternate translation: "and they all started shaking with fear and said to each other," or "and they trembled with fear. They asked each other,"

**Genesis 42:28 (#6)**

**"What {is} this God has done to us"**

Alternate translation: "What is God doing to us?" or "Why is God making this happen to us?"

**Genesis 42:29 (#1)**

**"Then they came to Jacob their father in the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "When they got back home to their father Jacob in the region of Canaan," or "When they reached their home in the land of Canaan where their father Jacob was,"

**Genesis 42:29 (#2)**

**"and they reported to him all"**

See how you translated **reported to** in Gen 38:13. Alternate translation: "they explained to him all"

**Genesis 42:30 (#1)**

**"The man, the lord of the land"**

Alternate translation: "The man who is the ruler over the land of Egypt" or "The man who controls the land of Egypt"

**Genesis 42:30 (#2)**

**"spoke to us harshly"**

See how you translated **harshly** in verse 7.  
Alternate translation: “spoke to us roughly” or “was very harsh when he spoke to us”

### Genesis 42:30 (#3)

**"and treated us as {if we were} spying out"**

Alternate translation: “He even accused us of being spies!”

### Genesis 42:31 (#1)

**"But we said to him, 'We {are} honest. We are not spies'"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also, see how you translated “... honest ... not spies” in verse 11.  
Alternate translation: “We told him that we are not spies, but rather trustworthy men.”

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 42:32 (#1)

**"We {are} twelve brothers"**

Make sure that the way you translate verse 32 fits with whether you used a direct or indirect quote in verse 31. Alternate translation: “We told him that we are twelve brothers,”

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 42:32 (#2)

**"the sons of our father"**

Alternate translation: “sons of one father.”

### Genesis 42:32 (#3)

**"is not {alive}"**

See how you translated this idiom in verse 13.  
Alternate translation: “is no more,” or “is no longer with us,”

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 42:32 (#4)

**"and the youngest"**

Alternate translation: “and our youngest one”

### Genesis 42:32 (#5)

**"is} with our father today"**

Alternate translation: “is right now with our father at home”

### Genesis 42:33 (#1)

**"Then the man, the lord of the land, said to us"**

See how you translated **the man, the lord of the land** in verse 30. Alternate translation: “Then the ruler of the land said to us,” or “But the man who rules the land told us,”

### Genesis 42:33 (#2)

**"By this"**

See how you translated **By this** in verse 15.  
Alternate translation: “In this way”

### Genesis 42:33 (#3)

**"I will know that you {are} honest"**

Alternate translation: “I will know that you are trustworthy men”

### Genesis 42:33 (#4)

**"Leave one of your brothers with me"**

Alternate translation: “One of you brothers will stay here with me,”

### Genesis 42:33 (#5)

**"and take {grain} {for} the famine of your households and go"**

Alternate translation: “while the rest of you buy grain to relieve the hunger of your families and go

home." or "and the rest of you go home with grain for your hungry households"

### Genesis 42:34 (#1)

**"Then bring your youngest brother to me"**

See how you translated a similar clause at the beginning of verse 20. Alternate translation: "Then bring your youngest brother back here to me" or "After that, you must come back here to me with your youngest brother."

### Genesis 42:34 (#2)

**"so that I will know that you {are} not spies"**

Consider again how you translated **spies** in Gen 42:9–11, 14, 16, 30, 31, 34. Alternate translation: "Then I will know that you are not spies,"

### Genesis 42:34 (#3)

**"that you {are} honest"**

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this sentence and say, "Then I will know that you are honest/trustworthy men/people and not spies." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "but are honest men"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 42:34 (#4)

**"Then} I will give your brother to you"**

Alternate translation: "Then I will release to you your brother who is in prison,"

### Genesis 42:35 (#1)

**"Then it happened they were emptying their sacks"**

Alternate translation: "Sometime after that, the brothers began to empty the grain from their sacks,"

### Genesis 42:35 (#2)

**"and behold, each {man's} pouch of his silver {was} inside his sack"**

Alternate translation: "and they were surprised to see their bags of money inside their sacks!"

### Genesis 42:35 (#3)

**"And they and their father saw the pouches of their silver, and they were afraid"**

Alternate translation: "When they and their father Jacob saw the bags of silver they were terrified."

### Genesis 42:36 (#1)

**"Then Jacob their father said to them"**

If you make **Jacob** explicit in verse 35, you could leave it implied here in verse 36. Alternate translation: "Then their father said to them,"

### Genesis 42:36 (#2)

**"You have bereaved me"**

Alternate translation: "You have deprived me of my sons!"

### Genesis 42:36 (#3)

**"Joseph is not {here}! And Simeon is not {here}"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph and Simeon are no longer with us!"

### Genesis 42:36 (#4)

**"All {these} things are against me"**

Alternate translation: "Everything is against me!" or "Everything is going badly for me!"

### Genesis 42:37 (#1)

**"Then Reuben said to his father, saying"**

Alternate translation: "Then Reuben responded to his father,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 42:37 (#2)

**"You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him to you"**

For some languages, it is necessary to change the order of clauses in this sentence (so that the condition comes first), as in the second alternate above. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "You may punish me by killing my sons if I do not bring Benjamin back to you." or "If I fail to bring Benjamin back to you safely, you can punish me by killing my two sons."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 42:37 (#3)

**"Put him in my hand"**

The phrase **in my hand** is used here as an idiom that means that Reuben was going to be responsible for Benjamin's welfare. Alternate translation: "Entrust him to my care as we travel to Egypt," or "Let me be responsible for taking care of Benjamin on our trip to Egypt,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 42:37 (#4)

**"and I will return him to you"**

For some languages it is more natural to change the order of clauses in this quote and say, "Father, let me be responsible for taking Benjamin down to Egypt. If I fail to bring him back to you safely, you can punish me by killing my two sons." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and I promise that I will bring him back to you safely."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 42:38 (#1)

**"But he said"**

Alternate translation: "But his father insisted,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 42:38 (#2)

**"My son will not go down with you"**

Notice that the pronoun **you** is plural in this verse. Also, see how you translated **go down** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "My son Benjamin may not go with you to Egypt,"

### Genesis 42:38 (#3)

**"because his brother is dead"**

Joseph was Benjamin's older brother from the same father and mother. Consider whether your language has a special kinship term for that. Also consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language.

See: Kinship

### Genesis 42:38 (#4)

**"and he alone is left"**

You could include a footnote here that explains that Joseph and Benjamin were the only two sons of Rachel, Jacob's favorite wife who died after giving birth to Benjamin (Gen 35:16–20). Alternate translation: "so he is the only one I have left from his mother."

### Genesis 42:38 (#5)

**"And {if} harm were to meet him on the road that you are going on"**

Jacob is saying what would happen if he lost Benjamin too. Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical statement in your language. Also, see how you translated "harm ... meet him" in verse 4. Alternate translation: "So if he were to be killed during your journey," or "So if anything bad happened to him while you are traveling,"

See: Hypothetical Situations

### Genesis 42:38 (#6)

**"then you would bring my gray head down in sorrow"**

Jacob uses the phrase **my gray head** to refer to himself as their aged father. Consider whether your language has a similar phrase that is natural and works well here. Alternate translation: “you would cause me, your gray-haired father, to grieve so deeply that I would die and go down” or “you would cause me, your gray-haired father, so much grief that I would die and go down”

## Genesis 42:38 (#7)

### "to Sheol"

The Hebrew term **Sheol** is the name of the place where the spirits of people went after they died. If you transliterate the name **Sheol** in your translation, you could put its meaning in a footnote. See how you translated this term in Gen 37:35, and see the note about that there.

See: Translate Unknowns

## Genesis 43:1 (#1)

### "Now the famine"

The setting changes here to focus on what is happening in Canaan. Some languages use a special conjunction (like **Now**) to indicate that, while others do not use a conjunction here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “The food shortage”

See: Connect — Background Information

## Genesis 43:1 (#2)

### "was} heavy"

The word **heavy** is used here as an idiom that means the famine caused everyone much suffering. See how you translated the same idiom in Gen 12:10 and Gen 41:31. Alternate translation: “was oppressive”

See: Idiom

## Genesis 43:1 (#3)

### "in the land"

Alternate translation: “in the land of Canaan.”

## Genesis 43:2 (#1)

### "So it happened"

This phrase introduces an important event and helps create suspense so that readers will wonder what the outcome will be. Many translations omit **it happened** because it is not natural in their language. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “So it happened that”

## Genesis 43:2 (#2)

### "when they finished"

Consider whether it is clearer in your language to use a pronoun or a noun phrase here. Alternate translation: “when Jacob and his family had finished eating” or “... had used up”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 43:2 (#3)

### "the grain that they had brought"

The pronoun **they** refers here to Jacob’s sons, not Jacob’s family (as it did earlier in this sentence). Alternate translation: “all the grain that his sons had bought and brought home”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 43:2 (#4)

### "then their father said to them"

Alternate translation: “their father Jacob told them,” or “he told them,”

## Genesis 43:2 (#5)

### "buy a little food"

Alternate translation: “and buy some more food”

## Genesis 43:2 (#6)

### "for us"

The pronoun **us** includes Jacob and his sons and their families here. Alternate translation: “for our family.”

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Genesis 43:3 (#1)

**"But Judah said to him, saying"**

Alternate translation: "His son Judah replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 43:3 (#2)

**"The man"**

The brothers did not realize yet that Joseph was the governor they had spoken to in Egypt, so Judah referred to him generally here as "the man." See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 42:30. Alternate translation: "The man who governs the country there"

### Genesis 43:3 (#3)

**"strongly warned us, saying"**

Alternate translation: "sternly told us" or "was serious when he warned us"

### Genesis 43:3 (#4)

**"You will not see my face"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "that we cannot see him again" or "that we cannot come to him again to buy grain"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 43:3 (#5)

**"unless your brother {is} with you"**

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous part of this sentence. For some languages it is necessary to put this clause before the previous clause and say, "... that our youngest brother must be with us or else we will not be permitted to see him again!" Alternate translation: "unless our youngest brother is with us!"

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

### Genesis 43:4 (#1)

**"If you will send our brother with us"**

In verses 3–5, the pronouns **us** and **we** are exclusive since they do not include Jacob (whom Judah is talking to). Alternate translation: "So if you will permit our youngest brother to go with us," or "So if you will let our youngest brother go with us,"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

### Genesis 43:4 (#2)

**"we will go down"**

Alternate translation: "then we can travel to Egypt"

### Genesis 43:4 (#3)

**"and buy food for you"**

Alternate translation: "and buy more grain for you and the rest of the family."

### Genesis 43:5 (#1)

**"send {him}"**

See how you translated **send** in verse 4. Alternate translation: "allow him to go with us,"

### Genesis 43:5 (#2)

**"we will not go down"**

See how you translated **go down** and "went down" in Gen 42:2–3. Alternate translation: "we cannot go down there," or "we must not go there to buy grain,"

### Genesis 43:5 (#3)

**"because the man said to us"**

Alternate translation: "because the man told us"

**Genesis 43:5 (#4)****"You will not see my face"**

See how you translated this quote in verse 3.  
 Alternate translation: "that we cannot see him again" or "that we cannot go to him again to buy grain"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 43:5 (#5)****"unless your brother {is} with you"**

See how you translated this clause in verse 3.  
 Alternate translation: "unless our youngest brother is with us!"

See: Connect — Exception Clauses

**Genesis 43:6 (#1)****"Then Israel said"**

If it is not clear that **Israel** (verse 6) and "their father" (verse 2) refer to the same person, you could include "their father" here in your translation or in a footnote. See what you did for a similar case in Gen 42:5.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 43:6 (#2)****"Why did you treat me badly by telling"**

Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to scold his sons and to show how upset he is. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language.  
 Alternate translation: "Why did you cause distress for me by telling" or "You caused me a lot of distress because you told"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 43:6 (#3)****"the man"**

See how you translated **the man** in verses 3 and 5.  
 Alternate translation: "that man" or "that governor"

**Genesis 43:6 (#4)****"you have yet {another} brother"**

If you translate this rhetorical question as a statement, make sure that you end it with a period or exclamation point. Alternate translation: "that you have another brother!"

**Genesis 43:7 (#1)****"The man asked persistently"**

Alternate translation: "The man questioned us intensely" or "The man asked us many questions"

**Genesis 43:7 (#2)****"about us and our relatives, saying"**

In verses 7–8, the pronouns "us," "our," and **we** are exclusive since they do not include Jacob (whom the sons are talking to). Alternate translation: "about ourselves and about the rest of our family."

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 43:7 (#3)****"Is your father still alive? Do you have {another} brother"**

Consider whether it is more natural in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "He specifically asked us whether our father was still alive and if we had another brother."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 43:7 (#4)****"And we answered him according to those words"**

Alternate translation: "So we just answered his questions honestly" or "All we did was answer his questions."

**Genesis 43:7 (#5)****"How could we possibly know"**

Jacob's sons use a rhetorical question here to emphasize their innocence and express strong emotion. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "We could not possibly have known"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 43:7 (#6)

**"that he would say, 'Bring your brother down'"**

If you translate this rhetorical question as a statement, make sure that you end it with a period or exclamation point. Alternate translation: "that he would tell us to bring our brother down there to him!"

### Genesis 43:8 (#1)

**"Then Judah said to Israel his father"**

For some languages it is necessary to make "Benjamin" explicit here in the quote margin so that it is clear that **young man** refers to him in the following quote. Do what is best in your language.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 43:8 (#2)

**"Send the young man with me"**

See how you translated **young man** in Gen 37:2; 41:12. Use a term here in your language that fits with the fact that Benjamin was probably in his 30's. Alternate translation: "Allow the young man to come with me and I will watch over him"

### Genesis 43:8 (#3)

**"and we will get up and go"**

Alternate translation: "so we can leave right away to buy grain in Egypt"

### Genesis 43:8 (#4)

**"so that both we and you and our little ones will live"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Also, see how you translated **will live and not die** in Gen 42:2. Alternate translation: "Then all of us, including our children, will survive" or "... can stay alive"

### Genesis 43:8 (#5)

**"and not die"**

Alternate translation: "and not die from hunger."

### Genesis 43:9 (#1)

**"I myself will guarantee him"**

Alternate translation: "I personally guarantee to keep him safe." or "I personally guarantee his safety."

### Genesis 43:9 (#2)

**"From my hand you can require him"**

See how you translated a similar idiom in Gen 31:39. Alternate translation: "You can make me liable for him,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 43:9 (#3)

**"If I do not bring him {back} to you and set him before you"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical sentence in your language. Alternate translation: "so that if I do not bring him back home to you alive"

See: Hypothetical Situations

### Genesis 43:9 (#4)

**"then I will have sinned against you"**

Alternate translation: "you can blame me for this sin"



**Genesis 43:9 (#5)****"all the days"**

Alternate translation: "all the days of my life." or "forever."

**Genesis 43:10 (#1)****"Surely if we had not delayed"**

This sentence refers to something that could have happened, but did not actually happen. Consider what is the best way to translate this contrary-to-fact statement in your language. Alternate translation: "As it is, if we had not delayed such a long time," or "In any case, if we had not delayed this long,"

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 43:10 (#2)****"surely we could have returned here twice by now"**

Alternate translation: "certainly we could have made two round trips there and back by now." or "we certainly would have had enough time to go down there and back two times already."

**Genesis 43:11 (#1)****"Then Israel their father said to them"**

See how you translated **Israel their father** in verse 8.

**Genesis 43:11 (#2)****"If {it must be} so"**

Alternate translation: "If that is how it must be," or "Okay, if that is the only way we can get more grain,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 43:11 (#3)****"then do this"**

Alternate translation: "then this is what you must do:"

**Genesis 43:11 (#4)****"Take {some} of the choice produce of the land in your bags"**

Alternate translation: "Put some of the best goods from our land in your sacks," or "Put in your sacks some of the most valuable things that our land produces,"

**Genesis 43:11 (#5)****"and take {it} down to the man"**

Alternate translation: "and take them to the man in Egypt"

**Genesis 43:11 (#6)****"as} a gift"**

Consider what punctuation is best to use here in your language.

**Genesis 43:11 (#7)****"a little balm, and a little honey"**

Consider what is the best way to make a list of things like this in your language. Also see how you translated **balm** in Gen 37:25. Alternate translation: "including some sweet-smelling tree sap, some honey," or "Include some healing salve, honey,"

See:

**Genesis 43:11 (#8)****"spices and myrrh"**

See how you translated **spices** and **myrrh** in Gen 37:25. Alternate translation: "some food spices and incense,"

See:

**Genesis 43:11 (#9)****"pistachio nuts and almonds"**

Alternate translation: "and some sweet-tasting tree nuts."

See:

**Genesis 43:12 (#1)****"And take double the silver in your hand{s}"**

Alternate translation: "Also take with you twice as much silver as you took the first time,"

**Genesis 43:12 (#2)****"because you must return in your hand{s} the silver"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "because you must give back the silver" or "You must give back the silver"

**Genesis 43:12 (#3)****"that was returned"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active clause here. Alternate translation: "that was given back to you by someone"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 43:12 (#4)****"in the mouth of your sacks"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 42:27. Alternate translation: "in the top of your sacks."

**Genesis 43:12 (#5)****"Perhaps it {was} a mistake"**

Alternate translation: "That might have happened by mistake." or "Maybe someone did that by mistake."

**Genesis 43:13 (#1)****"So take your brother"**

Alternate translation: "So then take your youngest brother"

**Genesis 43:13 (#2)****"and get up, return to the man"**

See how you translated "get up and ..." in verse 8. Alternate translation: "and return right away to the man" or "and immediately go back to the man"

**Genesis 43:14 (#1)****"And may God Almighty give"**

Alternate translation: "May Almighty God"

**Genesis 43:14 (#2)****"And may God Almighty give you mercies before the man"**

Alternate translation: "be kind to you as you go before the man" or "cause the man to be kind to you," or "cause him to treat you mercifully"

**Genesis 43:14 (#3)****"and may he send"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "so that he will" or "and I pray that the man/governor will" or (2) "and may he/God" or "and I pray that God will"

**Genesis 43:14 (#4)****"and may he send your other brother and Benjamin"**Notice that **other brother** refers to Simeon, who is older or younger (and has the same or different mother) than his brothers that Israel is talking to here. Also see how you translated **send** in verses 4–5. Alternate translation: "allow your other brother

and Benjamin to go” or “let your brothers Simeon and Benjamin go”

See: Kinship

### Genesis 43:14 (#5)

**"And I, if"**

The pronoun **I** is emphatic here in the Hebrew text. If possible, keep that emphasis in your translation. Alternate translation: “As for me, if I”

### Genesis 43:14 (#6)

**"I am bereaved, I am bereaved"**

See how you translated **bereaved** in Gen 42:36. Alternate translation: “must be deprived of them, then I will be deprived.” or “must suffer loss, then I will suffer loss.”

### Genesis 43:15 (#1)

**"Then the men took that gift"**

See how you translated **gift** in verse 11 and in Gen 33:10–11. Alternate translation: “So the brothers packed those gifts in their sacks” or “So the brothers got all those gifts and packed them”

### Genesis 43:15 (#2)

**"and they took double the silver in their hand{s}"**

See how you translated this phrase in verse 12. Alternate translation: “along with twice as much silver as the grain would cost.” or “and they also packed double the amount of silver that they needed to pay for the grain.”

### Genesis 43:15 (#3)

**"and Benjamin. Then they got up and went down {to} Egypt"**

See how you translated “get up and go” in verse 8. Alternate translation: “They also got Benjamin and together they immediately traveled down to the country of Egypt” or “Then they took Benjamin

with them and immediately traveled down to the country of Egypt”

### Genesis 43:15 (#4)

**"and stood before Joseph"**

Alternate translation: “and presented themselves to Joseph.” or “and came directly to Joseph.”

### Genesis 43:16 (#1)

**"And Joseph saw Benjamin with them. Then he said"**

Alternate translation: “Joseph saw Benjamin with the rest of his brothers. So he told” or “When Joseph saw Benjamin with his other brothers, he told”

### Genesis 43:16 (#2)

**"to {the one} who {was} over his house"**

Alternate translation: “the servant who managed his household,”

### Genesis 43:16 (#3)

**"Take the men to the house"**

Alternate translation: “Lead the men to my house”

### Genesis 43:16 (#4)

**"and slaughter an animal"**

The Hebrew word for **animal** here is general and refers to an animal that was raised to be killed and eaten, such as a calf or goat. Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: “then kill one of my livestock” or “Then butcher an calf”

### Genesis 43:16 (#5)

**"and prepare {a meal}"**

Alternate translation: “and cook the meat to prepare a meal” or “and prepare a feast with its meat,”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 43:16 (#6)

**"because the men will eat with me at noon"**

Alternate translation: "because I have planned that the men will eat the noon meal with me at my house."

### Genesis 43:17 (#1)

**"So the man did just as Joseph {had} said"**

Alternate translation: "The servant did exactly what Joseph had commanded him to do"

### Genesis 43:17 (#2)

**"and the man brought"**

Alternate translation: "and led"

### Genesis 43:17 (#3)

**"the men to Joseph's house"**

Make sure that the way you translate this phrase does not sound like Joseph's brothers went inside the house yet. They did not actually go inside until later (verse 24).

### Genesis 43:18 (#1)

**"and they said"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then they said to each other,"

### Genesis 43:18 (#2)

**"Because of the matter of the silver that was returned in our sacks the first time, we have been brought"**

Alternate translation: "We have been brought here because of the money that was returned to us in our sacks the first time we came here." or "He has taken us here because of our silver that someone gave back to us in our sacks on our first trip here."

### Genesis 43:18 (#3)

**"He wants} to roll himself over us and throw himself on us"**

Consider what is the best way to translate these idioms in your language. Alternate translation: "He is planning to seize us by force"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 43:18 (#4)

**"and take us as slaves"**

Alternate translation: "and keep us as slaves" or "and make us his slaves"

### Genesis 43:18 (#5)

**"and our donkeys"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He will also take our donkeys!"

### Genesis 43:19 (#1)

**"Then they went near to"**

Alternate translation: "So they went up to" or "So they approached"

### Genesis 43:19 (#2)

**"the man who {was} over Joseph's house"**

See how you translated a similar phrase in verse 16.

### Genesis 43:19 (#3)

**"and spoke to him {at} the entrance of the house"**

Alternate translation: "to speak to him at the door to his house." or "outside the door to the house in order to speak to him."

**Genesis 43:20 (#1)****"And they said"**

Alternate translation: "They said to him," or "One of them said to him on behalf of them all,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 43:20 (#2)****"Please, my lord"**

The brothers are asking the servant for permission to speak. Translate this in a way that is respectful in your language. Alternate translation: "Excuse me sir," or "Sir, please allow us to speak to you."

See:

**Genesis 43:20 (#3)****"we surely came down {here} the first time to buy food"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "the previous time we came down here to Egypt, we came to buy some food" or "one time before this, we traveled all the way down here to Egypt and bought some food"

**Genesis 43:21 (#1)****"But it happened"**

This phrase introduces an important event and helps create suspense so that readers will wonder what the outcome will be. Many translations omit **it happened** because it is not natural in their language. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "But it so happened that"

**Genesis 43:21 (#2)****"when we came to the lodging place, we opened our sacks"**

See how you translated **the lodging place** in Gen 42:27. Alternate translation: "when we arrived at

the place where we stayed for the night, we opened our sacks"

**Genesis 43:21 (#3)****"and behold, {each} man's silver {was} in the mouth of his sack"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, see how you translated "in the mouth of ... sacks" in verse 12. Alternate translation: "and we were surprised to see that our bags of money were in the top of each of our sacks!" or "There in the opening of each of our sacks was the silver we had given to you for the grain!"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 43:21 (#4)****"our silver {was there} in its {full} weight"**

The silver was weighed in shekels (Gen 20:16; 23:15–16; 37:28) to determine how much to pay for something. See how you translated **silver** in Gen 42:25, 27, 35. Alternate translation: "The full weight of money was there!" or "The silver was all there!"

See: Biblical Money

**Genesis 43:21 (#5)****"So we have brought it back"**

Alternate translation: "But we brought it all back" or "So we brought all that money back"

**Genesis 43:21 (#6)****"in our hand{s}"**

Alternate translation: "with us to return to you."

**Genesis 43:22 (#1)****"And we have brought down other silver"**

Alternate translation: "We also brought enough extra money with us" or "We have also brought additional money with us"

**Genesis 43:22 (#2)****"to buy food"**

Alternate translation: "so that we can buy some more food now"

**Genesis 43:22 (#3)****"who put our silver in our sacks"**

Alternate translation: "who gave that money back to us in our sacks." or "how our silver got into our sacks like that."

**Genesis 43:23 (#1)****"Peace {be} to you"**

The phrase "Peace to you" is a blessing that wishes someone to be well and at peace. Consider whether your language has a similar blessing or possibly an idiom that would work well here. Alternate translation: "Be at peace, and" or "All is well for you, so" or "Everything is all right, so"

**Genesis 43:23 (#2)****"do not be afraid"**

Alternate translation: "do not be anxious."

**Genesis 43:23 (#3)****"Your God and the God of your father"**

Make sure that your translation of these phrases refers to the same God, not two different Gods. Alternate translation: "The God whom you and your father worship"

**Genesis 43:23 (#4)****"has given you hidden treasure in your sacks"**

Alternate translation: "must have put the silver in your sacks,"

**Genesis 43:23 (#5)****"your silver came to me"**

Alternate translation: "because I definitely received the silver that you paid for the grain." or "because I know that you paid me money to pay for the grain."

**Genesis 43:24 (#1)****"and they washed their feet"**

Consider again how you translated "wash ... feet" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 18:4; 19:2; 24:32; 43:24. Alternate translation: "and they washed the dirt off their feet,"

**Genesis 43:24 (#2)****"and he gave fodder to their donkeys"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Also, see how you translated **fodder** in Gen 42:27. Alternate translation: "and he provided feed for their donkeys."

**Genesis 43:25 (#1)****"for Joseph's arrival at noon"**

Alternate translation: "to give to Joseph when he got home at noon,"

**Genesis 43:25 (#2)****"because they had heard"**

Alternate translation: "because they had been told" or "because someone had told them"

**Genesis 43:25 (#3)****"that they would eat bread there"**

For some languages it is more natural to put the last half of this verse at the beginning of the verse and say, "When Joseph's brothers heard that they were going to eat the noon meal with Joseph at his house, they got their gifts ready to give him when he came/got home." Do what is best in your language.

Alternate translation: "that they were going to eat a meal with him there at his house."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 43:26 (#1)

**"Then Joseph came to the house"**

Alternate translation: "When Joseph came to his house," or "When Joseph got home,"

### Genesis 43:26 (#2)

**"and they brought to him the gift that {was} in their hand{s} into the house"**

Alternate translation: "his brothers presented to him the gift that they had brought with them into the house."

### Genesis 43:26 (#3)

**"and they bowed down to him to the ground"**

See how you translated "bowed down ... ground" in Gen 42:6. Alternate translation: "Then they bowed themselves down before him with their faces to the ground to show him honor." or "Then they prostrated themselves on the ground to respect him."

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 43:27 (#1)

**"Then he asked them about {their} wellbeing"**

Alternate translation: "Then he greeted them"

### Genesis 43:27 (#2)

**"and he said"**

Consider whether or not it is more natural in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He also asked them,"

### Genesis 43:27 (#3)

**"Are things} well {for} your aged father"**

Alternate translation: "Is your aged father doing well" or "Is your aged father in good health,"

### Genesis 43:27 (#4)

**"whom you spoke about"**

Alternate translation: "whom you spoke about to me before?"

### Genesis 43:28 (#1)

**"Things are} well for your servant our father. He {is} still alive"**

The brothers refer to their father as **your servant** here to show respect to Joseph and to acknowledge his high position. Translate this phrase in a polite way that shows respect toward Joseph. Also, the pronoun **our** is exclusive here because Joseph's brothers did not yet know that they were talking to Joseph. Alternate translation: "Yes sir, our father, who highly respects you, is still alive and blessed."

See:

### Genesis 43:28 (#2)

**"Then they bowed"**

In this verse, the terms **bowed** and **bowed down** translate two different Hebrew words that together describe and emphasize the process of bowing down to the ground. Alternate translation: "Then they knelt"

### Genesis 43:28 (#3)

**"and bowed down"**

See how you translated **bowed down** in verse 26. Alternate translation: "and prostrated themselves in front of him again."

See: Symbolic Action

### Genesis 43:29 (#1)

**"Then he lifted his eyes and saw Benjamin his brother"**

Benjamin was younger than Joseph. Also, consider again how you translated the idiom “lifted ... eyes” in the book of Genesis. See Gen 13:10, 14; 18:2; 22:4, 13; 24:63–64; 31:10; 33:1, 5; 37:25; 39:7; 43:29. Alternate translation: “Then Joseph looked up and saw his brother Benjamin,” or “When Joseph looked around at them all, he saw his brother Benjamin,”

See: Kinship

### Genesis 43:29 (#2)

#### "the son of his mother"

Alternate translation: “who was the only other son of his own mother,”

### Genesis 43:29 (#3)

#### "and he said"

Alternate translation: “and he asked them,”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 43:29 (#4)

#### "Is this your youngest brother"

This question could be an actual question or a rhetorical question. The fact that Joseph does not wait for an answer suggests that this is a rhetorical question, especially since he already realized that the new brother in the group was Benjamin (verse 16). Alternate translation: “So this young man must be your youngest brother” or “I suppose this young man is your youngest brother”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 43:29 (#5)

#### "whom you spoke to me {about}"

Make sure that your punctuation here fits with the way you translated this sentence, either as a question or a statement.

### Genesis 43:29 (#6)

#### "May God be gracious to you"

See how you translated “God has been gracious to ...” in Gen 33:11. Also see how you translated “grace” in 24:12, 14, 27, 49; 39:21. Alternate translation: “I pray that God will be gracious to you,”

### Genesis 43:29 (#7)

#### "my son"

The phrase **my son** is a kind way to address a man who is younger or of lower status; it does not mean that Benjamin was Joseph’s actual son. Also, for some languages it is necessary to put this address first in this quote. Do what is natural in your language.

### Genesis 43:30 (#1)

#### "Then Joseph hurried out"

Alternate translation: “Then Joseph quickly left the room” or “Then Joseph rushed out of the room”

### Genesis 43:30 (#2)

#### "because his emotions boiled over for his brother"

Alternate translation: “because he was feeling deeply emotional about his brother,” or “because he felt overwhelmed with emotions for his brother”

### Genesis 43:30 (#3)

#### "and he sought to cry"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “and desired/wanted to cry,” or “and felt like crying,” or “and was about to cry,” or (2) “and was looking for a place to cry,” or “and went to find a place to cry,”

### Genesis 43:30 (#4)

#### "and he went to the inner room"

Alternate translation: “so he went to his private room”



**Genesis 43:30 (#5)****"and cried there"**

Alternate translation: "so that he could cry there."

**Genesis 43:31 (#1)****"Then he washed his face and came out. Then he controlled himself"**

Alternate translation: "After a while, he stopped crying, washed the tears off his face and came out of his room"

**Genesis 43:31 (#2)****"and said"**

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and told his servants," or "Then he told his servants,"

**Genesis 43:31 (#3)****"Serve the bread"**The word **bread** refers to all the food they ate at this meal, not just bread. Alternate translation: "Serve the meal to us." or "It is time to serve the meal to us."

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 43:32 (#1)****"So they served to him by himself"**

Alternate translation: "Then they brought food to Joseph at his own table,"

**Genesis 43:32 (#2)****"and to the Egyptians who were eating with him by themselves"**

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and the Egyptians who were eating as his guests at their own table."

or "They also served food to some Egyptian guests at a separate table."

**Genesis 43:32 (#3)****"because Egyptians cannot eat bread with Hebrews, because that {is} an abomination to Egyptians"**Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also consider again how you translated **Hebrews** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 14:13, 39:14, 17; 40:15, 41:12; 43:32. Alternate translation: "Egyptians do not eat at the same table as Hebrew people, because they consider it detestable to do that." or "The servants did that, because Egyptians consider it unacceptable to eat with Hebrew people at the same table."**Genesis 43:33 (#1)****"before him"**

Alternate translation: "in front of him"

**Genesis 43:33 (#2)****"the firstborn according to his birthright and the youngest according to his youth"**

Alternate translation: "according to their age order, from oldest to youngest," or "in the order of their ages, from the firstborn to the youngest,"

**Genesis 43:33 (#3)****"and the men were astonished each to his neighbor"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "so they looked at each other in amazement." or "When they saw that, they were amazed and stared at one another."

**Genesis 43:34 (#1)****"Then he served to them servings {of food} from before him"**

As a person of high position and status, Joseph probably had his servants serve the food rather than doing it himself. Decide whether you want to make that information explicit in your translation or include it in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph served his brothers food from his table,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 43:34 (#2)

**"but Benjamin's serving was five times larger"**

Alternate translation: "but the amount of food that was served to Benjamin was five times more"

### Genesis 43:34 (#3)

**"than any of their servings"**

Alternate translation: "than the amount of food that was served to any of the rest of them."

### Genesis 43:34 (#4)

**"And they drank and became drunk with him"**

The Hebrew verb for **became drunk** is the same word that is used in Gen 9:21 to describe Noah when he had drunk so much wine that he had fallen asleep. Here, it probably means that they had drunk enough wine that they were feeling happy and sociable. Alternate translation: "Then they ate food, drank wine and feasted with him." or "Then they feasted and drank wine freely with him until they were very merry."

### Genesis 44:1 (#1)

**"the one} who {was} over his house"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 43:16. Alternate translation: "the servant who managed his household,"

### Genesis 44:1 (#2)

**"saying, 'Fill the men's sacks {with} food, as much as'"**

These grain sacks were carried by the brother's donkeys and were probably fairly large since donkeys are able to carry around 50 kilos (about 110 pounds).

### Genesis 44:1 (#3)

**"they are able to carry"**

Alternate translation: "the bags can hold,"

### Genesis 44:1 (#4)

**"and put the silver of each {one} in the mouth of his sack"**

See how you translated "silver/money" in Gen 42:25, 27–28. Alternate translation: "and put their grain money in the opening of their grain bags." or "and in the top of their sacks put the silver that each of them paid for the grain."

### Genesis 44:2 (#1)

**"And put my cup, the silver cup"**

Notice that this cup was made out of silver; it was not just silver in color. Alternate translation: "And put my cup, the one that is made of silver,"

### Genesis 44:2 (#2)

**"and his grain's silver"**

Alternate translation: "and his grain money" or "along with the silver that he paid for the grain."

### Genesis 44:2 (#3)

**"So he did according to Joseph's word that he spoke"**

See how you translated "according to ... words" in Gen 43:7. Alternate translation: "So the servant did exactly as he had told him to do."

### Genesis 44:3 (#1)

**"The morning became light"**

Alternate translation: "The next morning as it was becoming light," or "The next morning at dawn,"

### Genesis 44:3 (#2)

**"and the men were sent off, they and their donkeys"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive sentence in your language. Alternate translation: "the brothers were sent on their way with their donkeys by Joseph." or "Joseph sent the men on their way, along with their donkeys."

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 44:4 (#1)

**"They had left the city, they had not gone far"**

Alternate translation: "But after they left the city, before they had gone very far,"

### Genesis 44:4 (#2)

**"and Joseph said to {the one} who {was} over his house"**

See how you translated **the one who was over his house** in verse 1." Alternate translation: "he told the servant who managed his household," or "he ordered his head-servant,"

### Genesis 44:4 (#3)

**"Get up"**

Alternate translation: "Immediately"

### Genesis 44:4 (#4)

**"follow after the men"**

Alternate translation: "go after the men"

### Genesis 44:4 (#5)

**"and {when} you overtake them"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "When you reach them,"

### Genesis 44:4 (#6)

**"then say to them"**

Make sure that the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "tell them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 44:4 (#7)

**"Why have you repaid evil for good"**

Joseph's servant uses this rhetorical question to scold the brothers and express his outrage. Consider what is the best way to communicate those things in your language. Alternate translation: "Why have you treated my master so badly when he was so good to you?" or "My master was very good to you. Why have you treated him so badly?" or "My master treated you so well, but in return you have treated him very badly!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 44:5 (#1)

**"Is this not what my lord drinks from"**

The servant uses this rhetorical question to further express his outrage about the missing cup. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Why do you have the cup that my master drinks from"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 44:5 (#2)

**"and what he indeed divines with"**

The word **divines** refers to the practice of interpreting omens (signs) or using supernatural means to find out things. See how you translated a similar term ("divination") in Gen 30:27. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate

translation: "It is the one he regularly uses for divination!"

### Genesis 44:5 (#3)

**"You have done evil {in} what you have done"**

The phrase **you have done** is repeated in this sentence for emphasis. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: "What you have done is very evil"

### Genesis 44:6 (#1)

**"Then he overtook them"**

Consider again how you translated "overtake" or **overtook** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 19:19; 31:25; 44:4, 6.

### Genesis 44:6 (#2)

**"and spoke those words to them"**

Alternate translation: "he said to them what Joseph had told him to say."

### Genesis 44:7 (#1)

**"But they said to him"**

Alternate translation: "But they exclaimed,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 44:7 (#2)

**"Why does my lord speak words like those"**

The brothers use this rhetorical question to express their shock at being accused of something they had not done. They also address the servant as **my lord** to show him respect. Decide what is the best way to communicate those things in your language. Alternate translation: "Master we do not know why you are saying that!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 44:7 (#3)

**"Far be it from your servants to do"**

The brothers refer to themselves as **your servants** in order to show respect to Joseph's head-servant. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "We swear as your humble servants that we would never even think of doing" or "We would never even consider doing"

See:

### Genesis 44:7 (#4)

**"something like that"**

Alternate translation: "such a thing!"

### Genesis 44:8 (#1)

**"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "After all,"

### Genesis 44:8 (#2)

**"the silver that we found in the mouth of our sacks we brought back to you from the land of Canaan"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to order the clauses in this sentence. Alternate translation: "we returned to you the money that we found in our grain sacks last time. We brought it all the way from our home in the land of Canaan!" or "as soon as we came back here from the land of Canaan, we returned to you the money we had discovered inside our grain sacks"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 44:8 (#3)

**"So how would we steal"**

The brothers use this rhetorical question to strongly emphasize that they would never steal from the servant's master. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So why would we ever take" or "So we

would never take” or “So there is no reason that we would ever take”

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 44:8 (#4)

**"silver or gold"**

The brothers are emphasizing that they would never steal anything from Joseph, especially not valuable things made out of gold or silver.

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 44:9 (#1)

**"Whoever of your servants is found with it"**

The brothers refer to themselves as **your servants** in order to show respect to Joseph's head-servant. Alternate translation: "In fact, sir, if you discover that any of us does have the cup," or "If any one of us does have the cup, sir,"

See:

### Genesis 44:9 (#2)

**"then he will die"**

Alternate translation: "then he must die," or "then he should be executed" or "then you may kill that man,"

### Genesis 44:9 (#3)

**"and we also will be slaves for my lord"**

See how you translated **my lord** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "and besides that, the rest of us will become servants for you, sir." or "and the rest of us, sir, will become your servants."

See:

### Genesis 44:10 (#1)

**"Indeed now"**

Alternate translation: "So then," or "Very well then,"

### Genesis 44:10 (#2)

**"according to your words, so it {will be}"**

Alternate translation: "based on what you have said I will do this:"

### Genesis 44:10 (#3)

**"will be a slave for me"**

Alternate translation: "is the only one who will be my slave"

### Genesis 44:10 (#4)

**"but you {others} will be blameless"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "but the rest of you will be free to go"

### Genesis 44:11 (#1)

**"Then they each hurried and lowered his sack to the ground"**

Alternate translation: "So each of them immediately lowered his bag of grain from his donkey to the ground," or "Then each of the men immediately took his grain sack off his donkey and put it on the ground,"

### Genesis 44:11 (#2)

**"and they each opened his sack"**

Alternate translation: "and each of them opened his own sack" or "and opened it."

### Genesis 44:12 (#1)

**"Then he searched"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph's servant in verses 6, 10 and 12. Also see how you translated **searched** in Gen 31:35.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 44:12 (#2)****"beginning with the oldest and ending with the youngest"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "beginning with the oldest brother and finishing with the youngest one," or "He started with the oldest brother and continued until he came to the youngest one,"

**Genesis 44:12 (#3)****"and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language.

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 44:13 (#1)****"Then they tore their clothes"**

See how you translated "tore ... clothes in distress" in Gen 37:29, 34. Alternate translation: "In response to that, the brothers tore their clothes in grief."

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 44:13 (#2)****"and each {one} loaded up his donkey"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to the brothers in each context throughout this chapter. Alternate translation: "Then each of them put his sack back on his own donkey," or "Then each of the men loaded up his own donkey again,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 44:13 (#3)****"and they returned to the city"**

Alternate translation: "and they all returned to the city." or "then they all turned around and went back to the city."

**Genesis 44:14 (#1)****"and he was still there"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph was still there,"

**Genesis 44:14 (#2)****"so they fell to the ground before him"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then they prostrated themselves on the ground before him to show respect." or "So they bowed all the way to the ground in front of him to honor him."

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 44:15 (#1)****"Then Joseph said to them"**

Make sure the way you translate this quote margin fits with the way you translate the following rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph told them,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 44:15 (#2)****"What {is} this deed that you have done"**

Joseph uses rhetorical questions in this verse to express anger and scold his brothers. Some languages must use strong statements or exclamations here instead. Do what is best in your language. See what you did for a similar case in Gen 20:9. Alternate translation: "Why did you do such a terrible thing?" or "You should never have done such a thing!"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 44:15 (#3)****"that a man who {is} like me"**

Alternate translation: "that a ruler like me"

**Genesis 44:15 (#4)****"indeed divines"**

See how you translated **divines** in verse 5.  
 Alternate translation: "regularly practices divination!" or "could use divination to find out what you did!"

**Genesis 44:16 (#1)****"And Judah said"**

Alternate translation: "Judah answered,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 44:16 (#2)****"What can we say to my lord"**

Judah uses a series of rhetorical questions in this verse to express how upset he is about what has happened and to emphasize that there is nothing that they can say to convince Joseph that they are innocent. Consider what is the best way to communicate those things in your language.

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 44:16 (#3)****"What can we speak"**

Alternate translation: "We cannot explain this."

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 44:16 (#4)****"And how can we justify ourselves"**

Alternate translation: "We do not know how to show to you that we did not do this." or "There is no way we can show to you that we are innocent."

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 44:16 (#5)****"God has found out the sin of your servants"**

Judah refers to himself and his brothers as **your servants** to show humility and to honor Joseph.

Also, Judah is probably referring here to the sin of selling their brother Joseph into slavery years ago. You could include that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "God has exposed our guilt for our past sin." or "God is punishing us, your humble servants, for our past sin" or "God is using this occasion to punish us for our past sin."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 44:16 (#6)****"Behold, we {are} slaves for my lord"**

Alternate translation: "Here we all are, ready to be servants for you, sir," or "So now, sir, we are all here to be your servants,"

See:

**Genesis 44:16 (#7)****"both we and {the one}"**

Alternate translation: "including the man"

**Genesis 44:16 (#8)****"the one} in whose hand the cup was found"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "who was found with your cup in his grain sack" or "in whose grain bag your house-servant found the cup." or "whom your house-servant found with your cup in his sack"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 44:17 (#1)****"But he said"**

Alternate translation: "But Joseph exclaimed,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 44:17 (#2)****"Far be it from me to do that"**

See how you translated "Far be it from ..." in verse 7.

See: Idiom

### Genesis 44:17 (#3)

**"The man in whose hand the cup was found, he"**

See how you translated **in whose hand the cup was found** in verse 16. Alternate translation: "Only the one who was found with my cup in his bag" or "Only the man in whose bag my servant found the cup" or "Rather only the one whom my servant found with my cup in his bag"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 44:17 (#4)

**"will be a slave for me"**

Alternate translation: "will become my slave." or "will stay and serve me as a slave."

### Genesis 44:17 (#5)

**"But you, go up in peace to your father"**

The phrase **go up** refers to the fact that the land of Canaan was higher in elevation than the country of Egypt. Some translations leave **up** implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "But you others may return to your father in peace." or "As for the rest of you, you may go back home to your father without any trouble."

### Genesis 44:18 (#1)

**"Then Judah went near to him and said"**

See how you translated **went near** in Gen 43:19. Alternate translation: "Then Judah came up to Joseph and said,"

### Genesis 44:18 (#2)

**"Please, my lord"**

Compare how you translated this phrase in Gen 43:20. Alternate translation: "Please, master," or "Excuse me, sir"

See:

### Genesis 44:18 (#3)

**"please let your servant speak a word in my lord's ears"**

Make sure your translation of **your servant** refers here to Judah, not to someone else. Throughout verses 18–34, Judah uses phrases such as "my lord," "your servant," and "your servants" to be polite and show respect to Joseph. At each point in these verses, make sure it is clear in your translation whom he is referring to. Alternate translation: "I humbly ask you to let me speak plainly to you." or "will you please allow me your humble servant to say something to you."

See:

### Genesis 44:18 (#4)

**"and do not let your anger burn against your servant"**

Compare how you translated the idiom "his anger burned" in Gen 39:19. Alternate translation: "Please do not be angry at me,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 44:18 (#5)

**"since you {are} like"**

Alternate translation: "even though you are equal in rank to"

### Genesis 44:18 (#6)

**"Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "the king himself."

### Genesis 44:19 (#1)

**"My lord asked"**

Alternate translation: "Sir, the last time we were here, you asked"



**Genesis 44:19 (#2)****"his servants"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation of **his servants** that Judah is referring to himself and his brothers. Alternate translation: "us your humble servants"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 44:19 (#3)****"saying, 'Do you have a father or {another} brother'"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate the embedded quotes in verses 19–23 as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: "Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?" or "whether our father was still alive and whether we had any other brothers."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:20 (#1)****"And we said to my lord"**

Alternate translation: "We answered you, sir, that"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 44:20 (#2)****"We have an aged father"**

Alternate translation: "our aged father is still alive"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:20 (#3)****"and the youngest son of {his} old age"**

Alternate translation: "and with him is his youngest son whom our father had when he was already old."

**Genesis 44:20 (#4)****"But his brother is dead, so he is left by himself from his mother"**

In this sentence, **brother** refers to an older brother from the same father and mother. Some languages have a special kinship term for that. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "That son is the only one left alive from his mother, since his brother died."

See: Kinship

**Genesis 44:20 (#5)****"and his father loves him"**

Alternate translation: "So his father loves him very much." or "So his father especially loves our youngest brother."

**Genesis 44:21 (#1)****"Then you said to your servants"**

Judah uses the humble term **your servants** to show respect and honor to someone of higher status and authority. Alternate translation: "Then you told us, who are your humble servants,"

See:

**Genesis 44:21 (#2)****"Bring him down to me, and I will set my eyes on him"**

The verb "bring ... down" refers to the fact that Egypt was lower in elevation than the region of Canaan. Some translations leave **down** implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Bring your youngest brother to me so that I can meet him." or "to bring our youngest brother here to you so that you can see him for yourself."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:22 (#1)****"And we said to my lord, 'The young man is not able to leave his father'"**

Alternate translation: "But we told you, sir, that the young man must not leave his father and come here,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:22 (#2)**

**"because {if} he leaves his father, then he will die"**

Make sure the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the previous clause, as either a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "because if he did his father will die from anxiety."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:23 (#1)**

**"But you said to your servants"**

Alternate translation: "But you told us that"

**Genesis 44:23 (#2)**

**"If your youngest brother does not come down with you"**

Consider again whether to translate the embedded quotes in verses 19–23 as direct or indirect quotes. Alternate translation: "if our youngest brother did not come back here with us,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:23 (#3)**

**"you will not see my face again"**

Make sure that the way you translate this clause fits with how you translated the beginning of this verse, either as a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "you would not allow us to see you again."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:24 (#1)**

**"Then it happened when we went up"**

The phrase, **Then it happened** introduces an important event and helps create suspense so that readers will wonder what the outcome will be. Many translations omit **it happened** because it is not natural in their language. Do what is best in

your language. Alternate translation: "So after we got back home again"

**Genesis 44:24 (#2)**

**"to your servant my father"**

See how you translated "your servant ... father" in Gen 43:28. Alternate translation: "to my father, who is your humble servant," or "to my father, who highly respects you,"

See:

**Genesis 44:24 (#3)**

**"then we related to him"**

Alternate translation: "we told him"

**Genesis 44:24 (#4)**

**"the words of my lord"**

Alternate translation: "what you had said to us."

**Genesis 44:25 (#1)**

**"Then our father said"**

The pronouns **our** and **us** are exclusive here because they do not include Joseph.

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 44:25 (#2)**

**"Return, buy a little food for us"**

The pronoun **us** is inclusive here because what Judah's father (Jacob) had said included the brothers whom he was talking to. See how you translated this same quote in Gen 43:2. Alternate translation: "Go back to Egypt and buy some more grain for all of us."

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 44:26 (#1)**

**"We cannot go down. {But} if our youngest brother is with us, then we will go"**

See how you translated "... down" in verses 21 and 23. Alternate translation: "We can only go down there if our youngest brother is with us."

**Genesis 44:26 (#2)**

**"For we are not able to see the man's face"**

The phrase **the man's face** refers to the governor (Joseph) himself. Translate this in a way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "We will not be allowed to go to the man who sells grain there" or "The man who sells grain there will not permit us to see him again"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 44:27 (#1)**

**"Then your servant my father said to us"**

See how you translated **your servant my father** in verse 24. Also notice that the pronoun **us** does not include Joseph here. Some languages use an exclusive pronoun for this. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then my father who is your humble servant said to us," or "Then my father said to us,"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 44:27 (#2)**

**"You know that"**

The pronoun "you" is plural here, referring to all the brothers. Alternate translation: "As you all know,"

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 44:27 (#3)**

**"my wife bore two {sons} for me"**

Alternate translation: "my wife Rachel bore only two sons for me."

**Genesis 44:28 (#1)**

**"And the one went away from me"**

Alternate translation: "One of those sons left here one day," or "One of them has disappeared,"

**Genesis 44:28 (#2)**

**"and I have said, 'He was surely torn to pieces,' and I have not seen him until now"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this doubly embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated "torn. ... to pieces" in Gen 37:33. Alternate translation: "I have thought that he must have been killed and torn to pieces by a fierce animal. I have never seen him again." or "and I have not seen him since then. I am sure that a fierce animal must have killed him and torn him apart."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:29 (#1)**

**"So {if} you also take this {one} from my presence"**

Consider what is the best way to translate the hypothetical sentence in this verse. Make sure all the parts of the sentence fit together well. Alternate translation: "So if you also take this son away from me,"

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 44:29 (#2)**

**"and harm were to meet him"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 42:38. Alternate translation: "and something terrible happens to him," or "and if anything bad happens to him,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 44:29 (#3)**

**"then you would bring my gray head down in misery"**

See how you translated **bring my gray head down** in Gen 42:38. Alternate translation: “you will cause me, your elderly father, to grieve so deeply that I will die and go down” or “you will cause me, your elderly father, so much sorrow that I will die and go down”

See: Idiom

## Genesis 44:29 (#4)

### "to Sheol"

Sheol is the Hebrew name for the world of the dead, that is, the place where the spirits of all people go after they die. You could put that information in a footnote. Your translation of **Sheol** should not refer to hell or a place of punishment. Some translations have “the grave” here, but that leaves out the idea of an afterlife that this sentence implies.

See: Translate Unknowns

## Genesis 44:30 (#1)

### "And now"

This phrase introduces the conclusion to what Judah said in verses 24–29. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: “So then,”

## Genesis 44:30 (#2)

### "when I go to your servant my father"

See how you translated **your servant my father** in verses 24 and 27. Alternate translation: “when we return home to my father, who highly respects you,” or “if I go home to my father, sir,”

See:

## Genesis 44:30 (#3)

### "since his soul is bound to his soul"

This idiom reflects how close the relationship was between Judah’s father and youngest brother. Consider what is the best way to say this in your language. Alternate translation: “since our father is deeply attached to his son,”

See: Idiom

## Genesis 44:31 (#1)

### "then it will happen when he sees that the young man is not {there}, then he will die"

The phrase **then it will happen** introduces an important hypothetical event here and helps create suspense so that readers will wonder what the outcome will be. Many translations omit the phrase because it is not natural in their language. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “if he sees that his son is gone he will die!” or “then he will die when he sees that his youngest son is not with us!”

See: Hypothetical Situations

## Genesis 44:31 (#2)

### "And your servants will bring the gray head of your servant our father down in sorrow"

Consider what is the best way to translate this hypothetical situation in your language. Also, see how you translated “bring ... gray head down in sorrow to Sheol” in Gen 42:38, and a similar phrase in 44:29. Alternate translation: “Yes, we would bring our elderly father so much sorrow that he would die and go” or “In that way, we would be responsible for bringing our elderly father ...”

See: Hypothetical Situations

## Genesis 44:31 (#3)

### "to Sheol"

Consider again how you translated **Sheol** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 37:35; 42:38; 44:29, 31.

## Genesis 44:32 (#1)

### "For your servant guaranteed the young man to my father, saying"

See how you translated the verb “guarantee” in Gen 43:9. Alternate translation: “Besides that, sir, I guaranteed my father that I would return his son to him safely. I told him that”

**Genesis 44:32 (#2)****"If I do not bring him {back} to you"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote.

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 44:32 (#3)****"then I will have sinned against my father"**

See how you translated a similar clause in Gen 43:9. Alternate translation: "then this would be a terrible sin against him"

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 44:32 (#4)****"all the days"**

Be consistent here with your choice in Gen 43:9. Alternate translation: "all the days of my life." or "for the rest of my life."

**Genesis 44:33 (#1)****"And now"**

This phrase introduces the conclusion to what Judah said in verses 30–32. See how you translated this phrase in verse 30. Alternate translation: "So now"

**Genesis 44:33 (#2)****"please let your servant stay"**

Consider again how you translated **your servant** and "your servants" throughout this chapter. See verses 7, 9, 18, 24, 27, 30–32. Alternate translation: "I urge you to allow me your servant to be the one to stay here" or "sir, I urge you to let me stay here"

See:

**Genesis 44:33 (#3)****"as} a slave for my lord"**

Throughout this chapter, the same Hebrew word is translated as **slave** when the context has negative connotations (verses 9–10, 16–17, 33), but is translated as **servant** when the context has more positive connotations (verses 7, 9, 16, 18–19, 21, 23–24, 27, 30–32). Do what is best in your language in each context. Alternate translation: "as a slave for you" or "and be your servant"

**Genesis 44:33 (#4)****"instead of"**

Alternate translation: "to take the place of"

**Genesis 44:34 (#1)****"For how will I go up"**

Judah uses this rhetorical question to emphasize how difficult it would be for him to return to his father without his brother. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "I could never"

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 44:34 (#2)****"will I go up to my father"**

Consider again how you translated "... up" in verses 17, 24, 33–34. Contrast that to how you translated "... down" in verses 21, 23, and 26. Some translations leave **up** or "down" implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "return home to my father"

**Genesis 44:34 (#3)****"if the young man is not with me"**

Alternate translation: "if our youngest brother is not with me!"

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 44:34 (#4)****"I fear to see"**

Alternate translation: "I do not want to see"

**Genesis 44:34 (#5)****"the misery that would find my father"**

See how you translated **misery** in verse 29.  
 Alternate translation: "the terrible grief that it would cause my father!" or "how much my father would grieve!"

See: Hypothetical Situations

**Genesis 45:1 (#1)****"Then Joseph was not able"**

Alternate translation: "When Joseph heard what Judah said, he was no longer able to"

**Genesis 45:1 (#2)****"to control himself"**

Alternate translation: "hide his feelings"

**Genesis 45:1 (#3)****"before all who were standing by him"**

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Joseph's servants, not his brothers.  
 Alternate translation: "in front of all his servants who were with him," or "in front of all his attendants"

**Genesis 45:1 (#4)****"and he called out"**

Alternate translation: "and he shouted to them," or "so he said loudly to them,"

**Genesis 45:1 (#5)****"Have every man leave"**

Alternate translation: "All of you, leave"

**Genesis 45:1 (#6)****"So no man stood with him when Joseph revealed himself to his brothers"**

Make sure your use of nouns or pronouns to refer to Joseph and his brothers here is clear and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "So Joseph was alone with his brothers when he made himself known to them." or "Immediately his servants left the room, so that no one else was with him when he told his brothers who he was."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 45:2 (#1)****"And he gave his voice in crying"**

Consider whether your language has an idiom such as **gave his voice in crying**. Also see how you translated "cried" in Gen 42:24; 43:30. Alternate translation: "Then he raised his voice and cried loudly so that"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 45:2 (#2)****"and the Egyptians heard, and the house of Pharaoh heard"**

The word **house** refers here to Pharaoh's family members and servants, not a literal building.

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 45:3 (#1)****"Then Joseph said to his brothers"**

In this chapter, the word **brothers** refers to Joseph's older brothers (from different mothers) and his younger brother (from the same mother).  
 Alternate translation: "Then Joseph exclaimed to his brothers in their language,"

See: Kinship

**Genesis 45:3 (#2)****"I {am} Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "I am Joseph, your brother!"

**Genesis 45:3 (#3)****"Is my father still alive"**

Joseph uses **my father** to emphasize his relationship with his father. Make sure your translation does not sound like he had a different father than his brothers. Alternate translation: "Is our father still alive?"

**Genesis 45:3 (#4)****"But his brothers were not able to answer him"**

Alternate translation: "His brothers could not say a word,"

**Genesis 45:3 (#5)****"because they were terrified at his presence"**

For some languages it is necessary to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "But his brothers were so terrified to see him that they could not answer him." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because they were shocked to realize that they were in his presence."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 45:4 (#1)****"Please come close to me"**

Alternate translation: "Please come near to me."

**Genesis 45:4 (#2)****"So they came close, and he said"**

Alternate translation: "When they went closer to him, he said to them," or "After they did that, he said to them,"

**Genesis 45:4 (#3)****"I {am} Joseph your brother"**

Alternate translation: "I truly am your brother Joseph,"

**Genesis 45:4 (#4)****"whom you sold into Egypt"**

Joseph's brothers sold him to slave traders who were going to Egypt. If necessary, you could make some of that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "whom you sold as a slave that was taken here to Egypt."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 45:5 (#1)****"do not be grieved"**

Alternate translation: "do not be distressed"

**Genesis 45:5 (#2)****"and do not let it burn in your eyes"**

Consider again how you translated various idioms for "anger" or "be angry" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 4:5-6; 30:2; 31:35-36; 34:7; 44:18; 45:5. It may be necessary to translate these idioms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "or angry at yourselves"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 45:5 (#3)****"that you sold me here"**

Alternate translation: "that you sold me and caused me to be a slave here," or "for selling me as a slave,"

**Genesis 45:5 (#4)****"because God sent me"**

Alternate translation: "because God sent me here"

**Genesis 45:5 (#5)****"ahead of you"**

Alternate translation: "before you got here,"

### Genesis 45:5 (#6)

**"for the preservation of life"**

Alternate translation: "to keep many people from dying."

See: Abstract Nouns

### Genesis 45:6 (#1)

**"For this {is} two years"**

Alternate translation: "The past two years"

### Genesis 45:6 (#2)

**"the famine {has been} in the midst of the land"**

See how you translated **famine** in Gen 12:10. Alternate translation: "there has been a famine throughout this country" or "a famine has been affecting this whole region,"

### Genesis 45:6 (#3)

**"and {there are} still five years {in} which"**

Alternate translation: "and for another five years it will be so bad that" or "and during the next five years it will be even worse, so that" or "and there will be five more years when"

### Genesis 45:6 (#4)

**"there will} not be plowing and harvesting"**

Alternate translation: "there will be no plowing of fields or harvesting of crops."

### Genesis 45:7 (#1)

**"But God sent me"**

Alternate translation: "God caused me to come here"

### Genesis 45:7 (#2)

**"ahead of you"**

Alternate translation: "before you got here,"

### Genesis 45:7 (#3)

**"to preserve a remnant for you"**

Alternate translation: "so that you will have descendants living" or "to help you survive and have descendants"

### Genesis 45:7 (#4)

**"on the earth"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) **on the earth** or (2) "in the/this land"

### Genesis 45:7 (#5)

**"and to keep you alive"**

Alternate translation: "by helping you stay live" or "by saving your lives"

### Genesis 45:7 (#6)

**"by a great deliverance"**

For some languages it is better to put the last two phrases earlier in this sentence and say, "But God sent me ahead of you to save your lives in this amazing way so that you will survive and have descendants on the earth." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "through his amazing rescue." or "in this powerful way."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 45:8 (#1)

**"it was} not you"**

Alternate translation: "you are not the ones"

### Genesis 45:8 (#2)

**"who} sent me here"**



Alternate translation: "who brought me here,"

### Genesis 45:8 (#3)

**"but God"**

Alternate translation: "but rather it was God who brought me." or "but rather God is the one who did it"

### Genesis 45:8 (#4)

**"And he has made me father to Pharaoh"**

Joseph was like a father to Pharaoh in that Pharaoh highly honored him and Joseph took care of Pharaoh's household and all their needs. Alternate translation: "He has even made me like a father to King Pharaoh,"

See: Metaphor

### Genesis 45:8 (#5)

**"and lord over all his house"**

See how you translated **lord** in Gen 42:30, 33, and how you translated **house** in Gen 41:40. Alternate translation: "so that I am the master of his entire household"

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 45:8 (#6)

**"and the ruler"**

Alternate translation: "and also the highest official"

### Genesis 45:8 (#7)

**"in all the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "in the whole country of Egypt."

### Genesis 45:9 (#1)

**"Hurry and go up"**

In this verse, the words **up** and **down** reflect the fact that Canaan was higher in elevation than Egypt. Many languages leave those words implied. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Hurry up" or "Leave quickly and go back" or "Return quickly"

### Genesis 45:9 (#2)

**"to my father"**

See how you translated **my father** in verse 3.

### Genesis 45:9 (#3)

**"and say to him, 'This {is what} your son Joseph says'"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote.

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 45:9 (#4)

**"God has made me lord over all Egypt"**

Consider whether it is best in your language to translate this doubly embedded quote (which continues through verse 11) as a direct or indirect quote. An example of an indirect quote would be: "God has made him the ruler over all Egypt. He urges you to come down there to live near him, without delay. He also says that you and your family may live in Goshen Province and that way you will live near him ... He will provide for you there ..." Alternate translation: "God has made me ruler over the entire country of Egypt."

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 45:9 (#5)

**"do not delay"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, "So please do not take very long, but rather come down/here quickly to live near me." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and do not wait." or "and do not take very long to come."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 45:10 (#1)

#### "And you will live"

The pronouns **you** and **your** in this verse are singular, but Joseph's message to his father includes the whole family. Alternate translation: "You and your family may live"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 45:10 (#2)

#### "in the land of Goshen"

Goshen was a region or territory that was part of the country of Egypt. Make sure your translation of **land** does not sound like Goshen was its own country. Alternate translation: "in the region of Goshen" or "in Goshen County"

### Genesis 45:10 (#3)

#### "so that you will be near to me"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and that way you can be near me" or "That way you can live close to me"

### Genesis 45:10 (#4)

#### "and your flocks and your herds"

Alternate translation: "as well as all your domestic animals"

### Genesis 45:10 (#5)

#### "and all that {belongs} to you"

Alternate translation: "and all your other belongings."

### Genesis 45:11 (#1)

#### "And I will provide for you there"

Alternate translation: "I will support you there,"

### Genesis 45:11 (#2)

#### "because {there are} still five years of famine"

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "There are still five more years of famine ahead/coming, so I will provide for you there in Goshen." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "since there are still five more years of famine ahead" or "because the famine will last five more years."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 45:11 (#3)

#### "so that you will not become impoverished, you and your household and all that {belongs} to you"

The verb **become impoverished** can include losing livestock, other belongings, and the lives of their servants and family members. Alternate translation: "That way you and your extended family will not become poor and die." or "Please come so that the famine does not cause you and your family to lose everything you own and die."

### Genesis 45:12 (#1)

#### "And behold"

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph's message to his father was completed in verse 11, and that here in verse 12 he is talking directly to his brothers again. Alternate translation: "Now look" or "Then Joseph said to his brothers, Look!"

### Genesis 45:12 (#2)

#### "your eyes"

The word **eyes** is used figuratively here (and in the next phrase) to refer to the persons themselves; it also emphasizes the fact that they were seeing Joseph in person. Consider what is the best way to translate this phrase in your language. Alternate translation: "I can tell that all of you,"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 45:12 (#3)****"and the eyes of my brother Benjamin"**See how you translated **brother** in Gen 43:29.

See: Kinship

**Genesis 45:12 (#4)****"see that {it is} my mouth"**

Here the phrase **my mouth** refers to Joseph himself; it also emphasizes the fact that it was Joseph himself who was talking to them. Consider what is the best way to translate this figure of speech in your language. Alternate translation: "can see that I Joseph am the one"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 45:13 (#1)****"So report to my father"**

Alternate translation: "So go and tell my father"

**Genesis 45:13 (#2)****"all my glory in Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "about my high position in Egypt" or "about how honored I am in Egypt"

**Genesis 45:13 (#3)****"Then hurry and bring my father down here"**

See how you translated **down** in verse 9. Alternate translation: "Then hurry and bring him down here to me." or "Then quickly bring him here to me."

**Genesis 45:14 (#1)****"Then he fell on the neck of Benjamin his brother"**

See how you translated the idiom "fell on his neck" in Gen 33:4. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph hugged his brother Benjamin strongly"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 45:14 (#2)****"and cried"**

Alternate translation: "and started crying because he was so happy."

**Genesis 45:14 (#3)****"and Benjamin cried on his neck"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Benjamin also cried as he hugged him back."

**Genesis 45:15 (#1)****"Then he kissed all his brothers"**

See how you translated "kissed ... on the cheeks" in Gen 33:4. Alternate translation: "Next Joseph kissed all his brothers on their cheeks" or "Next Joseph greeted all his brothers with a kiss on their cheeks"

**Genesis 45:15 (#2)****"and cried over them"**

For some languages it is more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Then as Joseph continued to cry, he kissed all his brothers on the/their cheeks." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "with tears of joy."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 45:15 (#3)****"And after that his brothers talked with him"**

Previously Joseph's brothers had been too afraid to speak (verse 3). Now they felt free to start talking to him.

**Genesis 45:16 (#1)****"The brothers of Joseph have come"**

Consider whether it is better to use a direct or indirect quote here in your language.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 45:16 (#2)

**"And it was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants"**

Alternate translation: "it was pleasing to Pharaoh and all his officials." or "Pharaoh and all his officials were pleased"

### Genesis 45:17 (#1)

**"Then Pharaoh said to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh told Joseph," or "Then Pharaoh gave these instructions to Joseph:"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 45:17 (#2)

**"Say to your brothers, 'Do this: Load your animals"**

These animals were donkeys (Gen 43:18, 44:3), not any other kind of animal. Also, consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Tell your brothers to load their pack animals with grain"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 45:17 (#3)

**"and leave; go"**

The two verbs **leave** and **go** emphasize that Joseph's brothers should go back immediately to their father in Canaan. Alternate translation: "and quickly return"

### Genesis 45:17 (#4)

**"to the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "to region of Canaan."

### Genesis 45:18 (#1)

**"Then get your father and your households, and come to me"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that verse 18 is still part of Pharaoh's message to Joseph's brothers. Also make sure the pronouns that you use throughout verses 17 and 18 fit with whether you translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Then tell them to bring their father and their families back here to me."

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 45:18 (#2)

**"and I will give to you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "I will give them"

See: Quotes within Quotes

### Genesis 45:18 (#3)

**"the best of the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "the best land in the country of Egypt to live in,"

### Genesis 45:18 (#4)

**"and you will eat the fat of the land"**

This idiom means that they would live comfortably with the best of everything; it does not just refer to food. Consider whether or not you have a similar idiom in your language.

See: Idiom

### Genesis 45:19 (#1)

**"And you are commanded"**

The pronoun **you** is singular here and refers to Joseph. This clause is not part of Pharaoh's message to Joseph's brothers (verses 17–20). Make sure that is clear in your translation. Alternate translation: "You are also directed to tell them"

**Genesis 45:19 (#2)****"Do this: Take carts with you"**

These carts or wagons had two or four wheels and were pulled by animals such as oxen or donkeys. Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. See what you did for a similar case in verses 17–18. Alternate translation: "Take some of my carts with you" or "to take some of my carts with them"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 45:19 (#3)****"for your little ones and for your wives"**

For some languages it is more natural (and respectful) to put **wives** before **little ones** in this phrase. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **little ones** in Gen 43:8. Alternate translation: "for your young children and wives to ride in," or "for your wives and young children to ride in,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 45:19 (#4)****"and get your father and come"**

Make sure the pronouns you use throughout verses 19 and 20 fit with whether you translate the embedded quote with a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated **get your father** in verse 18. Alternate translation: "then bring them and your father back here to live." or "Then tell them to bring their father and their families back here to live."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 45:20 (#1)****"And do not let your eyes grieve"**

Alternate translation: "And do not be concerned" or "You should not worry"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 45:20 (#2)****"over your belongings"**

Alternate translation: "about leaving some of your belongings behind," or "if you have to leave behind some of your possessions,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 45:20 (#3)****"because the best of all the land of Egypt"**

This phrase refers generally to the wealth of Egypt that will be available to Jacob's family, including fertile land and anything else that they need. Alternate translation: "because the best of everything in the land of Egypt" or "because the most valuable things in all the land of Egypt"

**Genesis 45:21 (#1)****"Then the sons of Israel did so"**

Jacob is referred to by his other name Israel here (also in verse 28). If that is not clear in your translation, you could put that information in a footnote. If possible in your translation, it is best to keep the name that the author chose to use in each case so that you do not change what is being emphasized. Alternate translation: "... agreed to do what Pharaoh said"

**Genesis 45:21 (#2)****"And Joseph gave to them carts"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph gave them carts to use"

**Genesis 45:21 (#3)****"according to the mouth of Pharaoh"**

This phrase refers to what Pharaoh said. Alternate translation: "as King Pharaoh had directed him,"

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 45:21 (#4)****"and he gave provisions to them"**

Alternate translation: "and he provided them with food to eat" or "and he gave them food"

**Genesis 45:21 (#5)****"for the road"**

Alternate translation: "to eat on their trip home."

**Genesis 45:22 (#1)****"To all of them, to each {one}, he gave changes of clothes"**

Alternate translation: "To each of them he gave a new set of clothes," or "He also gave a new change of clothes to each one of his brothers,"

**Genesis 45:22 (#2)****"but to Benjamin he gave 300 {shekels} of silver and five changes of clothes"**

For some languages it is better to mention the gift of clothes to Benjamin before the gift of silver, to more clearly contrast how many clothes he received with how many his brothers received. Do what is best in your language. Also, see how you translated **shekels of silver** in Gen 20:16 (and see the note there). Three hundred shekels of silver was equal to about 3.5 kilos (7.5 pounds). Alternate translation: "but to Benjamin he gave 300 pieces of silver money and five new changes of clothes." or "but to Benjamin he gave five new changes of clothes plus 300 pieces of silver money."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 45:23 (#1)****"And to his father he sent this"**

Alternate translation: "Besides that, he sent with them the following gifts for his father:" or "He also gave them the following things to give to his father:"

**Genesis 45:23 (#2)****"with the best of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "some of the best products from Egypt," or "some of the most valuable things produced in the country of Egypt,"

**Genesis 45:23 (#3)****"grain and bread and provisions"**

Alternate translation: "bags of grain, bread, and other food" or "food provisions, including grain and bread,"

**Genesis 45:23 (#4)****"for his father"**

Alternate translation: "for his father and family"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 45:23 (#5)****"for the road"**

See how you translated "provisions ... for the road" in verse 21 and Gen 42:25. Alternate translation: "to eat on his trip to Egypt." or "to eat as he traveled to Egypt."

**Genesis 45:24 (#1)****"Then he sent his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph saw his brothers off on their way home." or "After that, Joseph got his brothers started on their journey home."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 45:24 (#2)****"and {as} they left"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 45:24 (#3)****"then he said to them, "Do not quarrel"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here. Alternate translation: "he told them not to argue with one another"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 45:24 (#4)****"on the road"**

Alternate translation: "on the journey." or "as you travel."

**Genesis 45:25 (#1)****"Then they went up from Egypt"**

See how you translated **up** in verse 9.

**Genesis 45:25 (#2)****"and came {to} the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father"**

Alternate translation: "and went back home to their father Jacob in the land of Canaan."

**Genesis 45:26 (#1)****"And they reported to him, saying"**

Alternate translation: "They immediately announced to him," or "When they arrived, they exclaimed to him,"

**Genesis 45:26 (#2)****"Joseph {is} still alive! And in fact, he {is} the ruler over all the land of Egypt"**

See how you translated **ruler** in verse 8. Alternate translation: "Joseph is still alive! In fact, he is the governor of the entire country of Egypt!"

**Genesis 45:26 (#3)****"But his heart went numb"**

This idiom means that Jacob was so shocked that he did not know which way to go with his emotions or what to think, say, or do; it does not mean that he died. Some languages have a similar idiom. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "When Jacob heard that, he was completely shocked,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 45:26 (#4)****"because he did not believe them"**

Alternate translation: "because he thought it could not be true."

**Genesis 45:27 (#1)****"Then they told him"**

Alternate translation: "But then they reported to him"

**Genesis 45:27 (#2)****"and he saw the carts"**

See how you translated **carts** in verses 19 and 21. Alternate translation: "and when he saw the carts"

**Genesis 45:27 (#3)****"then the spirit of Jacob their father revived"**

Alternate translation: "their father Jacob felt much better."

**Genesis 45:28 (#1)****"And Israel said"**

Consider again whether to include in this chapter a footnote which explains that **Israel** (verses 21 and 28) and "Jacob" (verses 25 and 27) refer to the same person, not two different people. Alternate translation: "Then Israel exclaimed to them,"

**Genesis 45:28 (#2)****"Joseph my son {is} still alive"**

Alternate translation: "My son Joseph must still be alive!"

**Genesis 46:1 (#1)****"Then Israel set out and all that {belonged} to him"**

Alternate translation: "So Israel started the journey to Egypt with all his family members and belongings" or "So Israel and his family started traveling toward Egypt with all his belongings."

**Genesis 46:1 (#2)****"and he sacrificed sacrifices"**

See how you translated **sacrificed** in Gen 31:54. Alternate translation: "he offered offerings" or "burned some of his animals on an altar there as sacrifices"

**Genesis 46:1 (#3)****"to the God of his father Isaac"**

Alternate translation: "to God, whom his father Isaac had served."

**Genesis 46:2 (#1)****"And God spoke to Israel in visions of the night and said, 'Jacob! Jacob!'"**

God repeats Jacob's name to communicate that he has something urgent or important to tell him. Make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound angry or critical. Also see how you translated "vision" in Gen 15:1.

**Genesis 46:2 (#2)****"And he said"**

For some languages, it is more natural to put this quotation margin (**he said**) after the quote. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Jacob replied to him,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 46:2 (#3)****"Behold me"**

Consider again how you translated the idiom **Behold me** throughout the book of Genesis. See Gen 22:1, 7, 11; 27:1, 18; 31:11; 37:13; 46:2. Alternate translation: "Here I am, Lord" or "Yes, Master?" or "I am listening, Lord."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 46:3 (#1)****"I {am} God, the God of your father"**

See how you translated **the God of** in verse 1. Alternate translation: "I am God, the God whom your father served"

**Genesis 46:3 (#2)****"Do not be afraid"**

Alternate translation: "You must not be afraid"

**Genesis 46:3 (#3)****"to go down to Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "to move down to the country of Egypt," or "to go to the country of Egypt and settle there,"

**Genesis 46:3 (#4)****"because I will make you"**

See how you translated **I will make you into a great nation** (and similar phrases) in Gen 12:2; 17:20; 18:18; 21:13, 18. Alternate translation: "because I will make you and your descendants" or "because I will make your family" or "because I will give you many descendants, who will"

See: Metonymy



**Genesis 46:3 (#5)****"into a great nation there"**

Alternate translation: "multiply and become an important ethnic group there."

**Genesis 46:4 (#1)****"I myself will go down with you to Egypt"**

Consider what is the best way to translate the emphatic pronoun **I** here and in the next clause. Also see how you translated **down** and **up** in Gen 45:9. Alternate translation: "I personally will go with you to Egypt,"

**Genesis 46:4 (#2)****"and I myself will also surely bring you up"**

The pronoun **you** refers here to Jacob's descendants.

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 46:4 (#3)****"And Joseph will put his hand over your eyes"**

This clause refers to the custom of closing a person's eyes after he died and means that Joseph would be with Jacob when he died. Alternate translation: "And when you die, Joseph will be right there to close your eyes."

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 46:5 (#1)****"Then Jacob got up from Beersheba"**

Be consistent with how you spell **Beersheba** throughout the book of Genesis. See Gen 21:14, 31–33; 22:19; 26:23, 33; 28:10; 46:1, 5. Alternate translation: "So Jacob left the city of Beersheba," or "After that, Jacob whose other name was Israel left the city of Beersheba,"

**Genesis 46:5 (#2)****"and the sons of Israel carried Jacob their father"**

"and his sons, the sons of Israel, took/transported him their father" or "and his sons, that is the sons of Israel, took/transported him" or "and his sons took/transported him". **Israel** is the name that God gave to Jacob (Gen 32:28, 35:10). In chapters 45 and 46, the text repeatedly switches back and forth between both of Jacob's names. Make sure it is clear in your translation that these two names refer to the same person. You could include a footnote that helps readers understand what is happening. Alternate translation: "and his sons, the sons of Israel, took him their father" or "and his sons, that is the sons of Israel, took him" or "and his sons transported him"

**Genesis 46:5 (#3)****"and their little ones and their wives"**

See how you translated "little ones and ... wives" in Gen 45:19. Alternate translation: "as well as their children and wives"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 46:5 (#4)****"in the carts"**

See how you translated **carts** in Gen 45:19, 21, 27.

**Genesis 46:5 (#5)****"that Pharaoh"**

For a note about how **Pharaoh** is used like a name in the Bible, see Gen 12:15. Alternate translation: "that Pharaoh the king of Egypt" or "that the king of Egypt"

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 46:5 (#6)****"had sent"**

Alternate translation: "had sent to Canaan"

**Genesis 46:5 (#7)****"to carry him"**

The pronoun **him** refers to Jacob, the head of his family, and includes Jacob's wives and children. It may be necessary to use the plural pronoun "them" to make that clear. Alternate translation: "to transport him to Egypt." or "for them to ride on to Egypt."

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 46:6 (#1)****"And they took their livestock"**

Alternate translation: "They also took with them their animals"

**Genesis 46:6 (#2)****"and their possessions"**

Consider again how you translated **possessions** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:5 (and note); 13:6; 14:11–12, 16, 21; 15:14; 31:18; 36:7; 46:6. It may be necessary to translate this term in slightly different ways, depending on the context.

**Genesis 46:6 (#3)****"that they had acquired"**

Consider again how you translated **acquired** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:5; 31:18; 36:6; 46:6. Alternate translation: "that they had accumulated"

**Genesis 46:6 (#4)****"in the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "in Canaan."

**Genesis 46:7 (#1)****"his sons and his sons' sons with him, his daughters and his sons' daughters"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to list these descendants. Alternate translation: "including his sons and grandsons, and his

daughters and granddaughters." or "including his sons, daughters, grandsons, and granddaughters."

See: Kinship

**Genesis 46:7 (#2)****"So all his offspring he brought with him to Egypt"**

For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of the clauses in this verse and say, "He/Jacob brought his entire extended family with him to Egypt, including his sons ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Yes, Jacob brought his entire family with him to Egypt." or "Jacob had all his descendants with him when he arrived in Egypt."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 46:8 (#1)****"the firstborn of Jacob {was} Reuben"**

Some translations put verses 8–14, 16–17, and 19–24 in list format, beginning a new paragraph with each of Jacob's sons.

**Genesis 46:9 (#1)****"And the sons of Reuben {were}"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the sentence from the previous verse. Also, throughout this section (verses 9–27), some translations use a colon before each list of names instead of **were** or "who were". Do what is best in your language.

**Genesis 46:9 (#2)****"Hanoch and Pallu and Hezron and Carmi"**

For some languages it is more natural to include **and** between every name in a list like this. For other languages it is more natural to use commas between names and leave **and** implied, except before the last name in the list. See how you translated similar lists of names in Genesis 10.

**Genesis 46:10 (#1)****"and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman"**

In this list, only Shaul had a Canaanite mother. See how you translated **Canaanite** in Gen 38:2. Alternate translation: "and Shaul, whose mother was a Canaanite." or "and Shaul. (Shaul had a Canaanite mother.)"

**Genesis 46:12 (#1)****"Er and Onan and Shelah and Perez and Zerah"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled these names in Gen 38:3–11, 26, 29–30.

**Genesis 46:12 (#2)****"but Er and Onan had died in the land of Canaan"**

Alternate translation: "actually, Er and Onan had already died in the land of Canaan."

**Genesis 46:12 (#3)****"And the sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul"**

Alternate translation: "Perez had sons named Hezron and Hamul."

**Genesis 46:13 (#1)****"Tola and Puvah and Job and Shimron"**

Numbers 26:24 and 1 Chronicles 7:1 have the same list of Issachar's sons as here, but instead of **Puvah** and "Job," they have "Puah" and "Jashub." Some translations keep the spelling for these names the same in all three locations to avoid confusion. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron."

See: How to Translate Names

**Genesis 46:15 (#1)****"Those {were} the sons of"**

Alternate translation: "All those were the descendants"

**Genesis 46:15 (#2)****"Leah, whom she bore for Jacob"**

Alternate translation: "of Leah and Jacob who were born"

**Genesis 46:15 (#3)****"in Paddan Aram"**

Alternate translation: "in the land of Paddan Aram,"

**Genesis 46:15 (#4)****"and Dinah his daughter"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, be consistent with how you spell the name **Dinah** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 30:21; 34:1–5, 11, 13, 25–26; 46:15. Alternate translation: "as well as Dinah their daughter." or "in addition to their daughter Dinah."

**Genesis 46:15 (#5)****"All the souls of his sons and his daughters {were} thirty-three"**

Alternate translation: "All together those sons, daughters and grandchildren totaled thirty-three persons"

**Genesis 46:16 (#1)****"And the sons of Gad {were}"**

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. Decide what is the best way to begin this new section in your language.

**Genesis 46:17 (#1)****"and Serah their sister"**

Alternate translation: "and their sister, who was Serah." or "and their sister, whose name was Serah." or "Their sister was Serah."

**Genesis 46:17 (#2)**

**"And the sons of Beriah {were} Heber and Malkiel"**

Alternate translation: "Beriah had sons named Heber and Malkiel."

**Genesis 46:18 (#1)**

**"Those {were} the sons of Zilpah"**

Be consistent with how you spell the name **Zilpah** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 29:24; 30:9–10,12; 35:26; 37:2; 46:18. Alternate translation: "Those were the descendants of Jacob and Zilpah,"

**Genesis 46:18 (#2)**

**"And she bore those sixteen souls for Jacob"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Those were sixteen descendants that Jacob had with his concubine Zilpah, whom Laban had given to his daughter Leah as a maidservant/servant." Alternate translation: "Zilpah and Jacob had those sixteen descendants." or "The total number of those descendants that Zilpah and Jacob had together was sixteen."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 46:19 (#1)**

**"The sons of Rachel, the wife of Jacob, {were} Joseph and Benjamin"**

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. Decide what is the best way to begin this new section in your language.

**Genesis 46:20 (#1)**

**"whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera the priest of On, bore for him"**

See how you translated "Asenath ... daughter of Potiphera the priest of On" in Gen 41:45.

**Genesis 46:21 (#1)**

**"Ehi and Rosh, Muppim and Huppim and Ard"**

Remember to use (or not use) **and** between the names in this list in a way that is natural in your language.

**Genesis 46:22 (#1)**

**"Those {were} the sons of"**

Alternate translation: "All those were the descendants"

**Genesis 46:22 (#2)**

**"Rachel, whom she bore for Jacob"**

Your punctuation here will depend on how you translate the rest of this verse. Alternate translation: "that Jacob and his wife Rachel had together," or "who came from Rachel and Jacob."

**Genesis 46:22 (#3)**

**"all the souls {were} fourteen"**

Alternate translation: "The total number of those descendants was fourteen."

**Genesis 46:23 (#1)**

**"And the sons of Dan {were} Hushim"**

This verse begins a new section in the list of Jacob's descendants. See how you started verse 16, which is similar.

**Genesis 46:24 (#1)**

**"Jahziel and Guni and Jezer and Shillem"**

Consider again how you translated these lists of names in this chapter (verses 9–24).

**Genesis 46:25 (#1)**

**"Those {were} the sons of Bilhah"**

Be consistent in how you spell **Bilhah** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 29:29; 30:3–5, 7; 35:22, 25; 37:2; 46:25. Also see how you translated verse 18, which is similar in structure to verse 25. Alternate translation: “Those were the descendants of Jacob and Bilhah,”

### Genesis 46:25 (#2)

**"whom Laban had given to Rachel his daughter"**

Alternate translation: “who was the servant woman whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel.”

### Genesis 46:25 (#3)

**"And she bore those for Jacob; all the souls {were} seven"**

For some languages it is better to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, “All those were seven descendants that Jacob had with his concubine Bilhah, whom Laban had given to his daughter Rachel as a maidservant/servant.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “The total number of those descendants that Bilhah and Jacob had together was seven.” or “Those descendants that Bilhah had with Jacob totaled seven persons”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 46:26 (#1)

**"All the souls who went with Jacob to Egypt"**

Alternate translation: “The total number of people who traveled with Jacob to Egypt,”

### Genesis 46:26 (#2)

**"who came out of his thigh"**

Make sure that your translation of this idiom can be read in public without offending or embarrassing listeners. See how you translated a similar idiom in Gen 35:11. Alternate translation: “who came from him,” or “who were his blood relatives,” or “who were his biological descendants,”

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 46:26 (#3)

**"apart from the wives of Jacob's sons"**

Alternate translation: “not including his wives or the wives of his sons,”

### Genesis 46:26 (#4)

**"all the souls {were} sixty-six"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, “Altogether Jacob had sixty-six blood relatives who went with him to Egypt. That number does not include his wives or his sons’ wives.” Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “was sixty-six people in all.”

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 46:27 (#1)

**"And the sons of Joseph who were born for him in Egypt {were} two souls"**

Alternate translation: “Joseph and his two sons were already in Egypt, so, including Jacob,”

### Genesis 46:28 (#1)

**"And he sent Judah"**

Alternate translation: “Then he told Judah to go” or “When they reached Egypt, he had Judah go”

### Genesis 46:28 (#2)

**"before him to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: “ahead of them to Joseph”

### Genesis 46:28 (#3)

**"to show {the way} before him"**

Alternate translation: “to find out which way to go” or “to ask him how to get”

**Genesis 46:28 (#4)****"to Goshen"**

Goshen was a region or territory that was part of the country of Egypt. For some languages it is better to make that explicit here, rather than wait until the end of the verse. Do what is best in your language. Also be consistent here with how you spelled **Goshen** in Gen 45:10. Alternate translation: "to the region of Goshen." or "to Goshen County."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 46:28 (#5)****"And they came"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to here. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob and his family traveled to"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 46:28 (#6)****"to the land of Goshen"**

If you use **the land of Goshen** earlier in this verse, it may be better to just say **Goshen** here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "the region of Goshen." or "Goshen County."

**Genesis 46:29 (#1)****"Then Joseph harnessed his chariot"**

Joseph may have harnessed his horses to his chariot himself, or he may have had his servants do that for him (which was usual for a powerful person like him). Consider how you translated similar situations in Gen 41:48. Also see how you translated **chariot** in Gen 41:43. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph got his cart ready" or "Then Joseph had his servants get his cart ready"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 46:29 (#2)****"and went up to meet Israel his father in Goshen"**

See how you translated **went up** in Gen 13:1 and "go up" in Gen 45:9.

**Genesis 46:29 (#3)****"And he appeared to him"**

Alternate translation: "When he got there, Joseph went up to his father"

**Genesis 46:29 (#4)****"and he fell on his neck"**

See how you translated "fell on ... neck" in Gen 45:14. Alternate translation: "and put his arms around his neck" or "and hugged him strongly"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 46:30 (#1)****"Then Israel said to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "Then Israel exclaimed to him,"

**Genesis 46:30 (#2)****"Now I can die"**

Jacob did not die until 17 years later (Genesis 47:28). Make sure your translation of this clause does not mean or imply that Jacob wanted to die soon or that he thought he would die soon. Alternate translation: "Now I will die happy,"

**Genesis 46:30 (#3)****"since I have seen your face"**

In this context, **your face** refers to Joseph, not just his face. Decide what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "since I have seen you face to face" or "since I have seen you in person"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 46:31 (#1)****"Then Joseph said to his brothers"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph told his brothers"

**Genesis 46:31 (#2)****"I will go up and report to Pharaoh, and I will say to him"**

Make sure that the way Joseph refers to Pharaoh here sounds respectful in your translation. See what you did in Gen 41:35. Alternate translation: "I will go to King Pharaoh and tell him,"

See:

**Genesis 46:31 (#3)****"My brothers and the household of my father"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote (in verses 31–32) with a direct or indirect quote.

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 46:31 (#4)****"who {were living} in the land of Canaan have come to me"**

Alternate translation: "have come here from the land of Canaan to live near me."

**Genesis 46:32 (#1)****"And the men {are} herders of sheep"**

Be consistent here with whether you are translating this embedded quote (that began in verse 31) as an direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "The men of my family tend sheep and goats." or "I will also tell him that you men in my family raise sheep and goats."

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 46:32 (#2)****"for they are livestock men"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "for they are livestock raisers"

**Genesis 46:32 (#3)****"and everything"**

Alternate translation: "as well as everything else"

**Genesis 46:32 (#4)****"that {belongs} to them"**

Alternate translation: "that they have." or "that is theirs."

**Genesis 46:33 (#1)****"Then it will be"**

This phrase introduces and emphasizes what Joseph says next. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language.

**Genesis 46:33 (#2)****"when Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "when King Pharaoh"

**Genesis 46:33 (#3)****"calls for you and says, 'What {is} your work'"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this embedded quotation with a direct or indirect quote. Alternate translation: "summons you and asks you what your work is,"

See: Quotes within Quotes

**Genesis 46:34 (#1)****"then you should say"**

Alternate translation: "you must tell him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 46:34 (#2)**

**"Your servants have been livestock men from our youth and until now"**

The phrase "your servants" shows respect to Pharaoh and acknowledges his high position; it does not mean that Pharaoh actually owns Joseph's brothers as servants. Translate this in a polite way that shows respect toward Pharaoh. Also, see how you translated **livestock men** in verse 32. Alternate translation: "Your Majesty we have raised livestock since the time we were young,"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 46:34 (#3)**

**"both we {and} also our fathers"**

See how you translated **fathers** in Gen 15:15. Alternate translation: "which is the same occupation that our forefathers had."

**Genesis 46:34 (#4)**

**"so that"**

Alternate translation: "If you say that, then"

**Genesis 46:34 (#5)**

**"you can settle"**

The idea here is that Jacob's family would be permitted to live in rural areas to raise their livestock away from most Egyptians, who despised sheep herders. Alternate translation: "you will be allowed to live privately" or "he will permit you to live privately"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 46:34 (#6)**

**"in the land of Goshen"**

Alternate translation: "in the region of Goshen," or "in Goshen County,"

**Genesis 46:34 (#7)**

**"because"**

Alternate translation: "especially because"

**Genesis 46:34 (#8)**

**"every herder of sheep {is} an abomination {to} Egyptians"**

For some languages it is clearer and more natural to change the order of phrases in this clause. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **abomination** in Gen 43:32. Alternate translation: "sheep herders are detestable to Egyptians." or "the people of Egypt have disdain for sheep herders." or "Egyptians detest everyone who raises sheep."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 47:1 (#1)**

**"Then Joseph went and reported to Pharaoh and said"**

See how you translated "report to Pharaoh" in Gen 46:31. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph went to King Pharaoh and told him,"

**Genesis 47:1 (#2)**

**"My father and my brothers"**

It is implied that the brothers brought their families with them. Consider whether or not to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "My father, my brothers and their families,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 47:1 (#3)**

**"and their flock{s} and their herd{s}"**

Alternate translation: "and their flocks of sheep and goats and their herds of cattle" or "along with their sheep, goats, cattle,"



**Genesis 47:1 (#4)****"have come from the land of Canaan"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause and the rest of this verse earlier in this sentence. For example: "My father and my brothers and their families have come to Egypt from the region of Canaan and are now in Goshen Province. They brought with them their sheep ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "have come here from the land of Canaan."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 47:1 (#5)****"and behold, they {are}"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "They are staying now" or "and they have already arrived"

**Genesis 47:1 (#6)****"in the land of Goshen"**

Alternate translation: "in the region of Goshen." or "in Goshen County."

**Genesis 47:2 (#1)****"Then he took five men from among his brothers, and he presented them before Pharaoh"**

Joseph probably brought his father and brothers with him from Goshen (46:31) to Pharaoh's palace. It is not clear whether or not they were in the room yet when Joseph spoke to Pharaoh about them (47:1). Alternate translation: "Then he took five of his brothers to Pharaoh and presented them to him." or "Joseph had brought five of his brothers with him from Goshen, so he brought them before Pharaoh and presented them to him."

**Genesis 47:3 (#1)****"Then Pharaoh said to his brothers"**

Make sure that your translation of **his brothers** refers to Joseph's brothers, not Pharaoh's.

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 47:3 (#2)****"What {is} your work"**

Alternate translation: "What kind of work do you do?" or "What do you do for a living?"

**Genesis 47:3 (#3)****"And they said to Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "They answered Pharaoh" or "One of them said"

**Genesis 47:3 (#4)****"Your servants"**

See how you translated "your servants" in Gen 46:34. Alternate translation: "We, your humble servants," or "Your Majesty we" or "Sir, we"

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 47:3 (#5)****"are} herders of sheep"**

Alternate translation: "are herdsmen,"

**Genesis 47:3 (#6)****"both we and our fathers"**

Alternate translation: "just as our ancestors were" or "which is the same kind of work that our forefathers did"

**Genesis 47:4 (#1)****"Then they said to Pharaoh"**

For some languages it is more natural here to omit this quote margin, because the same people (Joseph's brothers) are still talking to the same person (Pharaoh). However, the words emphasize

what Joseph's five brothers say next and may indicate that there was a pause between what they said in verse 3 and verse 4. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Then they added,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 47:4 (#2)

**"We have come to sojourn"**

Alternate translation: "We have come here to stay for a while" or "We came here to stay temporarily"

### Genesis 47:4 (#3)

**"in the land"**

Alternate translation: "in this country," or "in your land"

### Genesis 47:4 (#4)

**"because there is not pasture for the flock{s} that {belong} to your servants"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "because there was not enough grass for our flocks of sheep and goats" or "Our flocks, sir, did not have enough grass to eat"

### Genesis 47:4 (#5)

**"because the famine {is} heavy in the land of Canaan"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence. For example: "The famine is so severe/terrible in the region of Canaan where we are/come from that there is not enough grass in the fields for our flocks." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "in the region of Canaan where we are from, because the famine is so severe there."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 47:4 (#6)

**"So now, please let your servants settle"**

See how you translated **your servants** in verse 3 to show respect. Alternate translation: "So now please let us your humble servants live" or "So then, sir, please let us settle"

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 47:4 (#7)

**"in the land of Goshen"**

Alternate translation: "in the region of Goshen."

### Genesis 47:5 (#1)

**"Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, saying"**

Alternate translation: "Then Pharaoh turned to Joseph and said," or "When Pharaoh heard that, he said to Joseph,"

### Genesis 47:5 (#2)

**"Your father and your brothers have come to you"**

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Pharaoh was telling Joseph something he did not already know. Rather, he is stating shared knowledge as the basis for what he says next.

### Genesis 47:6 (#1)

**"The land of Egypt {is} before you"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the sentence from verse 5. Alternate translation: "the entire land of Egypt is available to you to choose from."

### Genesis 47:6 (#2)

**"Settle your father and your brothers"**

Alternate translation: "So have your father and your brothers settle" or "In fact, they may settle"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 47:6 (#3)**

**"in the best land; let them settle in the land of Goshen"**

Alternate translation: "in the finest land in the country, in Goshen Province." or "in the region of Goshen, which is the finest land in the country."

**Genesis 47:6 (#4)**

**"And if you know that there are men of ability among them"**

Alternate translation: "And if you know that some of them are very skilled at raising livestock,"

**Genesis 47:6 (#5)**

**"then appoint them overseers of livestock over {those} that {belong} to me"**

Alternate translation: "then make them herdsmen over my livestock also."

**Genesis 47:7 (#1)**

**"Then Joseph brought Jacob his father"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph brought his father Jacob"

**Genesis 47:7 (#2)**

**"and presented him before Pharaoh"**

See how you translated **presented** in verse 2. Alternate translation: "and presented him to King Pharaoh," or "to King Pharaoh and introduced them to each other,"

**Genesis 47:7 (#3)**

**"and Jacob blessed Pharaoh"**

In Hebrew, there is a common greeting which means "peace be to you," so it is possible that Jacob used this blessing of peace here to greet Pharaoh. Alternate translation: "and Jacob greeted and blessed Pharaoh." or "and Jacob asked God to prosper Pharaoh." or "and Jacob greeted Pharaoh with a blessing."

**Genesis 47:8 (#1)**

**"How many {are} the days of the years of your life"**

Make sure your translation of Pharaoh's question about Jacob's age sounds polite. Also, for some languages, a title of respect (such as "Sir") is necessary whenever someone addresses a distinguished old man such as Jacob.

See:

**Genesis 47:9 (#1)**

**"And Jacob said to Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "Jacob replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 47:9 (#2)**

**"The days of the years of my sojournings {are} 130 years"**

Consider again how you translated "sojournings," "sojourn," and "sojourner" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:10; 15:13; 17:8; 19:9; 20:1; 21:23, 34; 23:4; 26:3; 28:4; 32:4; 35:27; 37:1; 47:4, 9. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "The length of my life so far has been 130 years."

**Genesis 47:9 (#3)**

**"The days of the years of my life have been few and difficult"**

Alternate translation: "I have not lived very long, and I have had many difficulties" or "My life has been short, with many difficulties"

**Genesis 47:9 (#4)**

**"and they have not reached the days of the years of my fathers' lives"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate

translation: "In fact, I have lived less years than my forefathers did" or "In fact, I have not lived nearly as long as my forefathers did"

### Genesis 47:9 (#5)

**"in the days of their sojournings"**

Alternate translation: "during the time that they lived on earth." or "during their years on earth."

### Genesis 47:10 (#1)

**"Then Jacob blessed Pharaoh"**

It was customary in Hebrew to use the blessing "peace be to you" both when greeting and when leaving someone. See how you translated **blessed** in verse 7. Alternate translation: "Then Jacob said goodbye to Pharaoh with a blessing"

### Genesis 47:10 (#2)

**"and left from the presence of Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "and left his presence."

### Genesis 47:11 (#1)

**"Then Joseph settled his father and his brothers, and he gave them property in the land of Egypt, in the best land, in the land of Rameses"**

It is implied that Rameses (verse 11) was another name for Goshen (verses 1, 4, 6). If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Later in Egypt's history, some of the Pharaohs were named Rameses and a city was named after one of them (Exodus 1:11). Alternate translation: "So Joseph gave his father and his brothers the choicest land in the country of Egypt, and they and their families settled there. The property was in Rameses Count, that is, Goshen County," or "After that, Joseph helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them the choicest property in Egypt, which was in Goshen Province, also known as Rameses Province."

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 47:11 (#2)

**"as Pharaoh had commanded"**

It may be more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "After that, Joseph did what Pharaoh had commanded/told him to do: He helped his father and brothers settle in the country of Egypt. He gave them property in Rameses Province/County, that is, Goshen Province/County, which was the choicest land in Egypt." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "just as Pharaoh had told him to do." or "He did exactly as Pharaoh had commanded him to do."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 47:12 (#1)

**"bread, according to the mouth{s} of the little ones"**

The children are mentioned to emphasize that all the members of the families were well-provided for, including the youngest ones. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph was providing food for everyone in each family, not just the children. Alternate translation: "food, based on how many children were in each family." or "as much food as each family needed to feed all the children in their family."

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 47:13 (#1)

**"Now there was no bread"**

This clause is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that there was so little food that the people were starving. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Also consider what is the best way in your language to begin this new section that returns to the famine and how it was progressing. Alternate translation: "Now meanwhile, there was no more food" or "Meanwhile, there was almost no food" or "After a while, there was very little food available"

See: Hyperbole

### Genesis 47:13 (#2)

**"in all the earth"**

This phrase is ambiguous in the Hebrew text. It could mean: (1) "in all the earth," or "in the entire known world," or "anywhere," which might be an exaggeration (like the previous phrase); or (2) "in all the land," or "in the/that entire area/region of the earth/world," which includes Egypt and Canaan (mentioned later in the verse) and other nearby regions and countries. See how you translated **all the earth** in Gen 41:57.

### Genesis 47:13 (#3)

**"because the famine {was} very heavy"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this sentence and say, for example: "Now after a while, the famine was/became so severe/terrible in the entire world that there was very little food available anywhere." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "because the famine was so severe"

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 47:13 (#4)

**"and the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan were languishing"**

Make sure your translation of this phrase refers to the people who live in Egypt and Canaan, not just the lands. Alternate translation: "As a result, the people in the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan" or "In fact, the people living in the lands of Egypt and Canaan"

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 47:13 (#5)

**"and" - "were languishing"**

The verb **languishing** refers in general to the suffering that the famine was causing, including things such as weakness, fainting and other distress. Some languages have an idiom (like "were wasting away") that fits well here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "were weak" or "were suffering terribly" or "were wasting away"

### Genesis 47:13 (#6)

**"because of the famine"**

Alternate translation: "because of the severe lack of food." or "from hunger."

### Genesis 47:14 (#1)

**"And Joseph collected all the silver that was found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan for the grain which they were buying"**

Alternate translation: "So the people spent their money buying grain from Joseph until he had collected all their money." or "So they bought grain from Joseph until there was no more silver left in the country of Egypt or the land of Canaan."

### Genesis 47:14 (#2)

**"and Joseph brought the silver to the house of Pharaoh"**

Joseph probably had servants do this for him. See what you did for a similar case in Gen 41:48.

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 47:15 (#1)

**"So the silver was consumed from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a passive or active clause here. Alternate translation: "So when all the silver in the country of Egypt and the region of Canaan had been used up," or "After the people in Egypt and Canaan had spent all their money,"

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 47:15 (#2)

**"all Egypt"**

The word **all** is an exaggeration (hyperbole) which emphasizes that a large number of Egyptians went to Joseph. Consider whether or not it is best to use hyperbole here in your language. Alternate translation: "all the people in Egypt" or "the Egyptians all"

See: Hyperbole

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 47:15 (#3)

#### "and" - "came to Joseph"

Consider whether **came** or "went" is more natural here in your language.

See: Go and Come

### Genesis 47:16 (#1)

#### "And Joseph said"

Alternate translation: "Joseph said to them," or "Joseph replied,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 47:15 (#4)

#### "saying"

Alternate translation: "and pleaded with him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 47:16 (#2)

#### "Bring your livestock"

The word **livestock** is general here and includes all the different kinds of animals that are specified in verse 17. Alternate translation: "Give me your animals"

### Genesis 47:15 (#5)

#### "Give us bread"

Make sure your translation of the people's request sounds polite, not rude or disrespectful. Also see how you translated **bread** in verses 12-13. Alternate translation: "Sir, please give us food"

See: Synecdoche

### Genesis 47:16 (#3)

#### "and I will give {grain} to you {in exchange} for your livestock"

Alternate translation: "and I will sell you grain when you give me your animals to pay for it," or "and in exchange for them I will give you grain"

### Genesis 47:15 (#6)

#### "And why should we die before you"

The people use a rhetorical question here to emphasize how desperate they feel. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "so that we do not die right here in front of you!" or "and do not let us starve to death!"

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 47:16 (#4)

#### "since the silver is gone"

For some languages it may be more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, "Since your silver/money is gone, bring/give me your livestock to pay for the grain/food that I will give you." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "since all your money is gone." or "since you have spent all your money."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 47:15 (#7)

#### "For the silver is gone"

It may be more natural to put this clause first in this quote and say, "Sir, we have no more money to buy grain/food! Please give us food so that we do not starve to death!" Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "There is no more money to buy food" or "We have no more money to buy food"

### Genesis 47:17 (#1)

#### "So they brought their livestock to Joseph"

Alternate translation: "So the people took their animals to Joseph."

**Genesis 47:17 (#2)**

**"and Joseph gave bread to them {in exchange} for the horses and for the herd{s} of sheep and for the herd{s} of cattle and for the donkeys"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and gave him their horses, sheep, goats, cattle, and donkeys to pay for the food that he gave them." or "They gave him their horses, ..."

**Genesis 47:17 (#3)**

**"So he provided them with bread in that year"**

Alternate translation: "In that way Joseph supplied the people with grain that year,"

**Genesis 47:17 (#4)**

**"in exchange} for all their livestock"**

Alternate translation: "and they gave him all their animals to pay for it."

**Genesis 47:18 (#1)**

**"And {when} that year had ended"**

Alternate translation: "When that year was over,"

**Genesis 47:18 (#2)**

**"then they came to him in the second year"**

Alternate translation: "the people came to Joseph again in the next year"

See: Go and Come

**Genesis 47:18 (#3)**

**"and said to him"**

Alternate translation: "and told him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 47:18 (#4)**

**"We cannot hide {it} from my lord that since"**

For some languages, it may be more natural to put the address "my/our lord" or "sir" first in this quote. Also notice that this address is used three times in this verse to show extra respect to Joseph. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "Our lord we cannot hide from you the fact that"

See:

**Genesis 47:18 (#5)**

**"the silver is consumed and the herd{s} of livestock"**

Consider again how you translated **silver** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 13:2; 20:16; 23:15-16; 24:35, 53; 31:15; 37:28; 42:25, 27-28, 35; 43:12, 15, 18, 21-23; 44:1-2, 8; 45:22; 47:14-16, 18. It may be necessary to translate this word in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "our money is gone and our animals" or "not only is our silver all gone, but all our animals also"

**Genesis 47:18 (#6)**

**"belong} to my lord"**

In this verse, the people use the third person ("my/our lord") to address Joseph in a respectful manner. Consider what is the best way to do that in your language. Alternate translation: "belong to you, our lord" or "are yours, sir."

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 47:18 (#7)**

**"there is nothing left before my lord except our bodies and our lands"**

Consider what is the best way to translate the Hebrew word for "land" here (and in verses 19-26), which refers to cultivated land (such as farmland or fields), not to the planet earth or to a country. It is different from the word for "land" in the rest of this chapter (in verses 1, 4, 6, 11, 13-15, 27-28). Alternate translation: "We have nothing left to pay you, sir, for grain except ourselves and our land" or "The only way we can pay you for grain is to give you our land and work for you, sir."

**Genesis 47:19 (#1)**

**"Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land"**

For many languages, the verb **die** does not fit with both people and land, so a different verb must be used for each one. The end of verse 19 specifies how the land would "die." See how you translated a similar rhetorical question in verse 15. Alternate translation: "What good would it do for us to die and our fields to become ruined" or "Please do not just watch us die or let our land become empty."

See: Rhetorical Question

**Genesis 47:19 (#2)**

**"Buy us and our land {in exchange} for the bread"**

Consider again how you translated the synecdoche **bread** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 3:19 (and note); 14:18; 21:14; 28:20; 37:25; 38:6; 41:54–55; 43:31; 47:12, 15, 17, 19. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "Instead, please take us and our fields in exchange for food." or "Instead please give us food and we will give you our farmland and ourselves to pay for it."

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 47:19 (#3)**

**"and we and our land will be slaves to Pharaoh"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Then our fields will belong to King Pharaoh and we will work for him as his servants."

**Genesis 47:19 (#4)**

**"Give {us} seed"**

Alternate translation: "Please give us seeds to sow"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 47:19 (#5)**

**"so that we will live"**

Alternate translation: "so that we can survive" or "so that we will stay alive"

**Genesis 47:19 (#6)**

**"and not die"**

See how you translated **so that we will live and not die** in Gen 42:2. Alternate translation: "and not die from hunger,"

**Genesis 47:19 (#7)**

**"and the land will not be desolate"**

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to put this clause earlier in this sentence and say, "Please just give us seeds to plant so that the land will produce/grow food crops again and then we will survive and not die from hunger!" Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and so that the land will grow crops again!"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 47:20 (#1)**

**"Then Joseph bought"**

For some languages it may be necessary to make explicit that Joseph agreed to do what the people suggested. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "So Joseph agreed and bought" or "Joseph did what they asked and bought"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 47:20 (#2)**

**"all the {farm}land of Egypt for Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "all the farmland in the country of Egypt for Pharaoh."

**Genesis 47:20 (#3)**

**"because every Egyptian sold his field"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate



translation: "All the Egyptians gave their fields to him in exchange for grain"

### Genesis 47:20 (#4)

**"because" - "the famine"**

Consider again how you translated **famine** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:10; 26:1; 41:27, 30–31, 36, 50, 54–57; 42:5; 43:1; 45:6, 11; 47:4, 13, 20. It may be necessary to translate it in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "because the food scarcity"

### Genesis 47:20 (#5)

**"was heavy for them"**

See how you translated **heavy** in verses 4 and 13. For some languages, it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "The famine was very severe for all the Egyptian people, so Joseph agreed with their request/suggestion and let them sell their fields to him in exchange for grain/food. In that way, Joseph/he bought/acquired all the land/farmland in the country of Egypt for King Pharaoh, so that all the land became Pharaoh's property." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "was very severe" or "was so severe that they did not have enough to eat."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 47:20 (#6)

**"So the land became Pharaoh's"**

Alternate translation: "That is how all the farmland eventually belonged to King Pharaoh."

### Genesis 47:21 (#1)

**"And {as for} the people, he moved them to the cities"**

The Masoretic Hebrew text has **moved them to the cities** here, which Joseph may have done in order to make the grain more readily accessible to them. The Samaritan Pentateuch (a different Hebrew version) and the Septuagint (Greek translation of the Hebrew text) have "made the

people slaves" instead, which may refer to the fact that all the people would now be working for Pharaoh, since all the fields belonged to him. The textual variant that is not used in your translation could be put in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Joseph also moved all the people from their farmlands to the nearby cities"

See: Textual Variants

### Genesis 47:21 (#2)

**"from {one} end of the border of Egypt to its {other} end"**

Alternate translation: "in every part of the country of Egypt."

### Genesis 47:22 (#1)

**"because {there was} an allotment for the priests from Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "because Pharaoh gave them a regular food allowance,"

### Genesis 47:22 (#2)

**"and they ate {from} their allotment that Pharaoh gave to them"**

Alternate translation: "so that they had plenty to eat."

### Genesis 47:22 (#3)

**"For that {reason} they did not sell their land"**

Alternate translation: "That is why they did not need to sell their farmland to buy food."

### Genesis 47:23 (#1)

**"Then Joseph said to the people"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph declared to the Egyptian people,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 47:23 (#2)****"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Look"

**Genesis 47:23 (#3)****"today I have bought you and your land for Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "now that I have acquired you and your fields for King Pharaoh," or "now that you and your fields belong to King Pharaoh,"

**Genesis 47:23 (#4)****"Here {is} seed for you"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "I am giving you some seeds"

**Genesis 47:23 (#5)****"so that you can sow the ground"**

See how you translated "sowed" in Gen 26:12. Alternate translation: "to plant in the fields."

**Genesis 47:24 (#1)****"And it will happen in the harvests"**

Alternate translation: "Then whenever you gather the crops," or "Then every harvest time,"

**Genesis 47:24 (#2)****"that you must give a fifth to Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "you are required to give one-fifth of the crops to him," or "you must give Pharaoh one-fifth of the crops you gather."

**Genesis 47:24 (#3)****"and the four parts"**

Consider whether or not it is best in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation:

"but the other four-fifths" or "The other four-fifths of your harvest" or "The rest of what you gather"

**Genesis 47:24 (#4)****"will be for you"**

Alternate translation: "you may keep for yourselves"

**Genesis 47:24 (#5)****"as seed of the field"**

Alternate translation: "as seed to plant the fields" or "to plant seeds in the fields"

**Genesis 47:24 (#6)****"and as your food and for those in your houses"**

Alternate translation: "and as food for you and your households" or "and for you and your households to eat,"

**Genesis 47:25 (#1)****"And they said"**

Alternate translation: "Then they responded," or "The people said to him,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 47:25 (#2)****"You have kept us alive"**

Alternate translation: "You have made it so we can live!"

**Genesis 47:25 (#3)****"Let us find favor in the eyes of my lord"**

Alternate translation: "May we continue to find favor in your eyes sir," or "Please continue to be kind to us, master"

**Genesis 47:25 (#4)****"and we will be slaves for Pharaoh"**

Alternate translation: "and we will serve King Pharaoh as his slaves"

**Genesis 47:26 (#1)****"And Joseph established it as a law"**

Alternate translation: "So Joseph established a law"

**Genesis 47:26 (#2)****"to this day"**

This phrase refers to the time that Moses was writing the book of Genesis. You could put that information in a footnote. For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase at the end of the sentence and say, "That law is still in effect/force today/now." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "that is still in force now"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 47:26 (#3)****"concerning the {farm}land of Egypt, {that} the fifth {belongs} to Pharaoh"**

See how you translated "a fifth" in verse 24. Alternate translation: "concerning the fields in the country of Egypt: one-fifth of the crops belongs to Pharaoh." or "that required people to give to Pharaoh one-fifth of all the crops they harvested from the farmland in Egypt."

**Genesis 47:26 (#4)****"Only the land of the priests by itself did not become Pharaoh's"**

See how you translated "only the land of the priests" in verse 22. Also, consider again how you translated "land/farmland" in verses 18–26. Alternate translation: "The only land that Pharaoh did not own was the land that belonged to the priests."

**Genesis 47:27 (#1)****"And" - "settled"**

It was already mentioned in verse 11 that Israel (Jacob) had settled in the country of Egypt. Your translation of verse 27 should not imply that he settled there again. Alternate translation: "So" or "Meanwhile"

See: Connect — Background Information

**Genesis 47:27 (#2)****"Israel"**

The name **Israel** and the name "Jacob" refer to the same person. To make that clear, you could make "Jacob" explicit here in your translation or in a footnote. Alternate translation: "Israel that is, Jacob,"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 47:27 (#3)****"And" - "settled"**

Alternate translation: "had settled with his family" or "was dwelling with his family"

**Genesis 47:27 (#4)****"in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen"**

See how you translated **in the land of Goshen** in Gen 45:10. Alternate translation: "in the region of Goshen in the land of Egypt," or "in Goshen County in the country of Egypt,"

**Genesis 47:27 (#5)****"and they acquired {possessions}"**

This phrase is general here and refers to acquiring land and other possessions. Alternate translation: "and they gained many possessions" or "and owned much land"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 47:27 (#6)****"in it"**

Alternate translation: "in that region"

**Genesis 47:27 (#7)****"And they were fruitful"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("be fruitful and multiply") in Gen 35:11. Alternate translation: "They were fruitful"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 47:27 (#8)****"and multiplied greatly"**

Alternate translation: "and their numbers increased greatly." or "and became very many."

**Genesis 47:28 (#1)****"And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years"**

Alternate translation: "When Jacob had lived in the country of Egypt for seventeen years,"

**Genesis 47:28 (#2)****"and the days of Jacob, the years of his life, were 147 years"**

Alternate translation: "he reached the age of 147 years."

**Genesis 47:29 (#1)****"and the days of Israel drew near {for him} to die"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "When it was almost time for Israel to die," or "He knew that it was almost time for him to die, so"

**Genesis 47:29 (#2)****"So he called for his son, for Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "he asked for his son Joseph to come to him"

**Genesis 47:29 (#3)****"If, please, I have found favor in your eyes"**

Alternate translation: "Please show your favor toward me and" or "Please, if you truly love me,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 47:29 (#4)****"please put your hand under my thigh"**

See how you translated this clause in Gen 24:2, and see the note about this custom there. Alternate translation: "put your hand under my leg to show that you will do what I ask," or "make a vow by putting your hand under my leg,"

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 47:29 (#5)****"and deal with me {in} kindness and faithfulness"**Consider again how you translated **kindness** in Gen 19:19; 20:13; 21:23; 24:12, 14, 27, 49; 32:10; 39:21; 40:14; 47:29, and how you translated **faithfulness** in Gen 24:27, 48, 49; 32:10; 42:16; 47:29.**Genesis 47:29 (#6)****"Please do not bury me"**Make sure your translation of **bury me** does not sound like Israel would still be alive when he was buried. Alternate translation: "Please promise that you will not bury my bones"**Genesis 47:29 (#7)****"in Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "here in the land of Egypt."

**Genesis 47:30 (#1)****"And {when} I lie down with my fathers"**

The phrase **lie down with my fathers** is a idiom that refers to Jacob's death. See how you translated an idiom with a similar meaning in Gen 15:15. Alternate translation: "When I die and rest with my ancestors," or "Rather, after I die and join my ancestors who have gone before me,"

See: Euphemism

**Genesis 47:30 (#2)****"then carry me out of Egypt"**

See how you translated **me** in verse 29. Alternate translation: "carry my body out of Egypt to the region of Canaan"

**Genesis 47:30 (#3)****"and bury me in their tomb"**

Jacob is referring here to the cave near the city of Hebron that Abraham had bought as a family burial place, to bury Sarah there. Abraham, Isaac and Rebekah were also buried there (Gen 23:19–20; 25:9–10; 49:31). You could put some of that information in a footnote. Also see how you translated "grave" in Gen 35:20 and a different word with a similar meaning ("burial place") in Gen 23:4, 6, 9, 20. Alternate translation: "and bury me in the same burial place where their bodies are."

**Genesis 47:30 (#4)****"And he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph is the one speaking here. It may be helpful to read this paragraph aloud to make sure it is clear who is talking at each point in the conversation. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph replied to him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 47:30 (#5)****"I will do according to your word"**

Alternate translation: "I will do as you requested of me." or "I will do exactly what you asked me to do."

**Genesis 47:31 (#1)****"Then he said"**

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph's father Israel here in your language. Alternate translation: "But he urged him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 47:31 (#2)****"Swear to me"**

See how you translated "swear to me" in Gen 21:23. Alternate translation: "Vow to me by Yahweh that you will do it" or "With God as your witness, make an oath to me that you will do it"

**Genesis 47:31 (#3)****"And he swore to him"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Joseph is the one speaking here. Alternate translation: "So Joseph swore that he would do it" or "So Joseph promised his father with an oath to do what he had requested."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 47:31 (#4)****"Then Israel bowed"**

If it is not clear in your culture why Israel bowed, you could make that explicit. Alternate translation: "Then Israel bowed down to thank God" or "Then his father Israel bowed his head and thanked God"

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 47:31 (#5)****"at the head of the bed"**

The Hebrew text has **at the head of the bed** here, while the Septuagint (Greek translation of the Old Testament) has "on the top of his staff" instead,

which is quoted in Hebrews 11:21. You could include some of that information in a footnote. The difference between versions may be due to the fact that the Hebrew words for **bed** and “staff” are very similar in spelling. Or it could be that Jacob did both; for example, he may have been sitting at the head of his bed and leaning on his staff when he bowed his head and worshiped God. Alternate translation: “as he sat at the top of his bed.” or “as he was lying on his bed.”

### Genesis 48:1 (#1)

#### "Then it happened after those things"

Consider again how you translated these two phrases in the book of Genesis. See Gen 22:1, 20; 39:7; 40:1; 48:1.

See: Introduction of a New Event

### Genesis 48:1 (#2)

#### "that {someone} said to Joseph, “Behold, your father is sick”"

For some languages it may be more natural to use an indirect quote here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “Joseph was told by someone that his father was sick.”

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 48:1 (#3)

#### "So he took his two sons with him, Manasseh and Ephraim"

Consider what is the best way to refer to Joseph in this sentence in your language. Alternate translation: “So Joseph took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him to visit his father.” or “So he went to visit his father and took his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim with him.”

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 48:2 (#1)

#### "And {someone} announced to Jacob and said, “Behold, your son Joseph has come to you”"

Consider whether it is better in your language to use a direct or indirect quote here.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 48:2 (#2)

#### "Then Israel gathered his strength"

Consider whether your language has a similar idiom that fits well here. Also, make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that **Israel** (verses 2, 8, 11, 13–14, 21) and **Jacob** (verses 2–3) refer to the same person, not two different people. Alternate translation: “Then Israel rallied his strength” or “Immediately Israel, who was lying down, used all his strength”

See: Idiom

### Genesis 48:2 (#3)

#### "and sat up on the bed"

The context (verse 12) shows that Jacob sat on the edge of his bed with his feet resting on the floor and his knees facing Joseph’s sons. Also, for some languages it may be necessary (for politeness) to make it explicit that they greeted each other first before continuing their conversation. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: “and sat up on the edge of his bed and they greeted each other.”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 48:3 (#1)

#### "Then Jacob said to Joseph"

Alternate translation: “Then Jacob recounted to Joseph the following:”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

### Genesis 48:3 (#2)

#### "God Almighty"

Consider again how you translated **God Almighty** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 17:1; 28:3; 35:11; 43:14. Alternate translation: “Almighty God”

**Genesis 48:3 (#3)****"appeared to me"**

Consider again how you translated "appear" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 8:5; 12:7; 17:1; 18:1; 26:2, 24; 35:1, 9; 46:29; 48:3. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "came to me in a vision long ago"

**Genesis 48:3 (#4)****"at Luz in the land of Canaan"**

For some languages it is more natural to put the larger place (Canaan) first before the smaller place (Luz) that is located inside it. It may also be more natural to put the time and place phrases first in this verse and say, "Long ago when I was at the town of Luz in the land/region of Canaan, God Almighty ..." Do what is best in your language. Also see how you spelled the name **Luz** in Gen 28:19 and 35:6. Alternate translation: "when I was at the town of Luz in the land of Canaan," or "in the land of Canaan at the town of Luz,"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 48:3 (#5)****"and he blessed me"**

For some languages it is more natural to begin a new sentence here. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "He pronounced a blessing over me there"

**Genesis 48:4 (#1)****"and said to me"**

Make sure your translation of "blessed ... and said" (verses 3–4) refers to the same event, not two separate events. Alternate translation: "He said,"

**Genesis 48:4 (#2)****"Behold, I am making you fruitful, and I will multiply you and make you"**

See how you translated "make you fruitful and multiply you" in Gen 28:3 and "make him fruitful

and ... multiply him" in Gen 17:20. Alternate translation: "Look I will give you many descendants who will increase in number and become" or "Look I will give you and your descendants many children so that your descendants will become"

**Genesis 48:4 (#3)****"into a community of peoples"**

See how you translated this phrase in Gen 28:3, and a similar phrase ("a community of nations") in 35:11. Alternate translation: "many ethnic groups."

**Genesis 48:4 (#4)****"as} an everlasting possession"**

Alternate translation: "for an eternal possession." or "and it will always belong to them."

**Genesis 48:5 (#1)****"And now, your two sons"**

The phrase **And now** shows that there is a change of topic. Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is no longer quoting God's words in verse 5.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 48:5 (#2)****"in the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "here in the land of Egypt"

**Genesis 48:5 (#3)****"before I came to you in Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "before I arrived,"

**Genesis 48:5 (#4)****"they {are} mine, Ephraim and Manasseh"**

Alternate translation: "Ephraim and Manasseh, they now belong to me," or "Ephraim and Manasseh, will be my sons,"

**Genesis 48:5 (#5)****"just as Reuben and Simeon are mine"**

For some languages it may be clearer and more natural to put the names of these sons earlier in the verse and say, "Now then, your two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, who were born to you here in the country of Egypt before I joined you here, I will treat as my sons, just as/like ..." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "just as Reuben and Simeon are my sons." or "just as my sons Reuben and Simeon."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 48:6 (#1)****"But your children whom you father after them will be yours"**

Alternate translation: "But any other children that you have later on will be yours." or "If you father any other children, they will belong to you."

**Genesis 48:6 (#2)****"They will be called by the name of their brothers in their inheritance"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here or to continue the previous sentence. Alternate translation: "So they will share in some of what their brothers inherit from me."

**Genesis 48:7 (#1)****"And I"**

Jacob is probably explaining in verse 7 that since his favorite wife Rachel died with only two sons, that is why he is treating her son Joseph's two sons as his sons (verses 5–6). You could make some of that information explicit in your translation or include it in a footnote. Alternate translation: "I want it this way because"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 48:7 (#2)****"as I was coming"**

Jacob is in focus here, but he was traveling with his family, not alone. Decide whether or not it is necessary to make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: "as I and our family were coming home" or "as our family was coming home"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 48:7 (#3)****"from Paddan"**

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Paddan Aram" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 25:20 (and note); 28:2, 5–7; 31:18; 33:18; 35:9, 26; 46:15; 48:7. Also, be consistent with how you spelled "Aram" in those verses and in Gen 10:22–23; 22:21; 24:10. Alternate translation: "from the land of Paddan Aram,"

**Genesis 48:7 (#4)****"Rachel"**

Alternate translation: "my beloved wife Rachel"

**Genesis 48:7 (#5)****"died beside me"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here because the preposition can have different meanings. It could mean: (1) **died beside me** or "died by my side"; or (2) "died, bringing sorrow/grief on/to me"

**Genesis 48:7 (#6)****"on the way, while {there was} still a distance of land to go to Ephrath"**

Be consistent here with how you spelled **Ephrath** in Gen 35:16, 19, and how you spelled **Bethlehem** in 35:19.

**Genesis 48:7 (#7)****"which {is} Bethlehem"**



The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. This phrase might be: (1) Jacob's words; or (2) the author's words. If you follow the second interpretation, you could put this phrase within parentheses, outside of the quote marks.

### Genesis 48:8 (#1)

**"and said"**

Alternate translation: "and asked Joseph,"

### Genesis 48:8 (#2)

**"Who {are} these"**

Joseph's two sons were in their 20s at this time, so refer to them here with a term that fits with that fact. They were born before the famine started (Gen 41:50–52), and Jacob had now been in Egypt for 17 years (47:28). Alternate translation: "Whose sons are these?"

### Genesis 48:9 (#1)

**"And Joseph said to his father"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph said to him," or "Joseph replied"

### Genesis 48:9 (#2)

**"They {are} my sons whom God has given to me"**

Alternate translation: "They are my sons whom God gave to me"

### Genesis 48:9 (#3)

**"Then he said"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is speaking here. Alternate translation: "Then Israel said to him,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

### Genesis 48:9 (#4)

**"Please bring them to me"**

Some languages have a dual pronoun that works well to refer to Joseph's two sons here (and throughout chapter 48). Do what is best in your language.

See: Forms of 'You' — Dual/Plural

### Genesis 48:9 (#5)

**"and I will bless them"**

Alternate translation: "so that I can ask God to prosper them."

### Genesis 48:10 (#1)

**"Now the eyes of Israel were heavy"**

Consider whether or not it is natural in your language to use a conjunction (**Now**) to begin this clause that gives background information about Israel. Also, the word **heavy** is used here as an idiom that means Israel's eyesight was getting bad, but he could still see some (as indicated in verses 8 and 11). Many languages have a similar idiom. A translation of verse 10 should not imply that Israel was completely blind. Alternate translation: "Israel had very bad eyesight"

See: Background Information

### Genesis 48:10 (#2)

**"from age"**

Alternate translation: "because he was very old,"

### Genesis 48:10 (#3)

**"so that} he was not able to see"**

For some languages it is more natural to switch the order of the clauses in this sentence and say, "Now Israel was very old, so his eyesight was failing and he was not able to see very well." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "so that he could not see very well."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 48:10 (#4)****"So he brought them near to him"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation whom is being referred to at each point in this sentence. Alternate translation: "So Joseph brought his sons near to his father," or "So he had his sons stand near to his father,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 48:10 (#5)****"and he kissed them"**

It may be helpful to read this sentence aloud in your translation to make sure the use of nouns and pronouns is natural and accurate in your language. Alternate translation: "and Israel kissed them on the cheeks" or "and his father kissed ..."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 48:10 (#6)****"and embraced them"**

Consider again how you translated the word **embraced** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 29:13; 33:4; 48:10. Also compare that to how you translated an idiom ("fell on ... neck") that has a similar meaning in Gen 33:4; 45:14, 46:29. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context.

**Genesis 48:11 (#1)****"I did not expect to see your face"**

Alternate translation: "I did not think I would ever see you again,"

**Genesis 48:11 (#2)****"but behold"**

Alternate translation: "but amazingly,"

**Genesis 48:11 (#3)****"God has let me see also your offspring"**

Alternate translation: "God has allowed me to see even your offspring" or "God has also allowed me to see your offspring"

**Genesis 48:12 (#1)****"Then Joseph removed them"**

Alternate translation: "Then Joseph took his sons away" or "Then Joseph had his sons step away"

**Genesis 48:12 (#2)****"from beside his knees"**

Joseph's sons (who were in their 20s) were near Israel's knees, so that he could hug them; they were not sitting on his knees or lap. Also make sure your translation of **his** refers to Joseph's father (Israel/Jacob), not Joseph. Alternate translation: "from near his father,"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 48:12 (#3)****"and he bowed down"**

Alternate translation: "and he prostrated himself before him"

**Genesis 48:12 (#4)****"with his nose to the ground"**

Joseph bowed to the ground to show thankfulness and respect to his father and possibly also to God. If necessary, you could make that information explicit in your translation or put it in a footnote. Alternate translation: "with his face toward the ground in thankfulness and respect."

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 48:13 (#1)****"Then Joseph took"**

Alternate translation: "Then he took"

**Genesis 48:13 (#2)****"both of them"**

Alternate translation: "both of his sons,"

**Genesis 48:13 (#3)****"Ephraim on his right"**

Alternate translation: "with Ephraim at his right hand"

**Genesis 48:13 (#4)****"and Manasseh on his left"**

Alternate translation: "and with Manasseh at his left hand"

**Genesis 48:13 (#5)****"and brought {them} near to him"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this clause first in this verse and say, "Then he took/brought his sons close to his father again. He had Ephraim stand in front of Israel's left hand/side, and he had Manasseh stand in front of Israel's right hand/side." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "and he took them close to his father again."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 48:14 (#1)****"and {he placed} his left hand on the head of Manasseh. He guided his hands"**

In the Hebrew culture, the right side was the place of highest honor and using the right hand to bless someone was symbolic of giving greater honor to that person. The oldest son was also the one who normally received the greater blessing. Israel reverses that here and gives Joseph's younger son the greater blessing. It may be important to include a footnote in your translation that gives this information.

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 48:14 (#2)****"because"**

Make sure that the way you translate **because** fits with the fact that Israel wanted to place his right hand on Ephraim (to give him the greater blessing), even though Manasseh was the firstborn (who would normally receive the greater blessing in that culture). Alternate translation: "in spite of the fact that"

**Genesis 48:15 (#1)****"Then he blessed Joseph and said"**

Israel blessed Joseph by blessing Joseph's sons (verses 15–16, 19–20). Alternate translation: "Then Israel blessed Joseph by blessing his sons and saying,"

**Genesis 48:15 (#2)****"May the God"**

For some languages it may be necessary to make it explicit here that this prayer is a blessing for Joseph's sons (rather than waiting until that is made clear in verse 16). Do what is best in your language. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to break up the long sentence in verses 15–16 into shorter sentences. Alternate translation: "May God bless your sons, the God" or "I pray that God will bless your sons, the God" or "I ask God to bless your sons. He is the God"

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 48:15 (#3)****"whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac"**

Alternate translation: "whom my forefathers Abraham and Isaac"

**Genesis 48:15 (#4)****"walked before"**

See how you translated the idiom "walk/live before" in Gen 17:1 and 24:40. You may need to translate it differently in different contexts. Alternate translation: "walked with according to"

his will," or "lived obediently in the presence of," or "obeyed,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 48:15 (#5)

**"the God who has been shepherding me"**

The word "shepherded" includes guiding, protecting, and providing food and water, such as a shepherd would do for his sheep. Here it is used as a metaphor that refers to God's complete care of Israel throughout his life. Consider whether or not it is best in your language to use a similar metaphor here. For example, you could say, "He is the same God who, for my entire life, has taken care of all my needs, just as a good shepherd takes care of his sheep." Alternate translation: "the same God who has watched over me" or "He is the same God who has taken care of me"

See: Metaphor

### Genesis 48:15 (#6)

**"from since I {was born} until this day"**

Alternate translation: "from the beginning of my life until the present day"

### Genesis 48:16 (#1)

**"the Angel who has redeemed me from all evil"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also consider again how you translated "angel" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 16:7, 9–11; 19:1, 15; 21:17; 22:11, 15; 24:7, 40; 28:12; 31:11; 32:3, 6; 48:16. Alternate translation: "He is also the Angel who rescued me continually from all harm"

See: Making a Key Terms Spreadsheet

### Genesis 48:16 (#2)

**"may he bless {these} boys"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here; your decision will depend on how you translated verse 15. Also, since Joseph's sons were probably in their

20s, make sure your translation of this phrase does not sound like they were little boys. The Hebrew word for "boy" here can also be translated as "lad," "servant," or "young man," depending on the context and who is speaking to whom. With that in mind, consider again how you translated this word in the book of Genesis. See Gen 14:24; 18:7; 19:4; 21:12, 17–20; 22:3, 5, 12, 19; 25:27; 34:19; 37:2; 41:12; 43:8; 44:22, 30–34; 48:16. Alternate translation: "I ask that he will cause these young men to prosper greatly,"

### Genesis 48:16 (#3)

**""and may my name be called in them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac,"**

Alternate translation: "so that my family name and the family name of my ancestors Abraham and Isaac will continue through them and so that they will have many descendants on the earth." or "I pray that they will have many descendants on the earth who will carry on the family name for me and for my forefathers Abraham and Isaac."

### Genesis 48:17 (#1)

**"And Joseph saw that his father had placed his right hand on the head of Ephraim"**

See how you translated **placed** in verse 14.

### Genesis 48:17 (#2)

**"and it was displeasing in his eyes"**

Alternate translation: "it displeased him," or "he was unhappy about it,"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 48:17 (#3)

**"so he took hold of the hand of his father"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 48:18 (#1)**

**"Not so, my father, because that {one} {is} the firstborn son"**

Alternate translation: "Not like that, Father. It is the other son who is my firstborn" or "That is the wrong one Father. The other one is my oldest son."

**Genesis 48:18 (#2)**

**"Put your right hand on his head"**

Alternate translation: "So you need to put your right hand on his head."

**Genesis 48:19 (#1)**

**"But his father refused"**

Alternate translation: "But his father refused to move his hands"

**Genesis 48:19 (#2)**

**"I know, my son, I know"**

Alternate translation: "I know it my son, I know what I am doing." or "I know what I am doing, my son."

**Genesis 48:19 (#3)**

**"He will also become a people, and he will also be great"**

Consider what is the best way in your language to refer to Joseph's firstborn in these two clauses. Alternate translation: "In fact, the descendants of your firstborn son will also become a ethnic group, and he will be a great man." or "In fact, your firstborn son will also be a important man, and he will be the ancestor of a people group."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 48:19 (#4)**

**"Nevertheless his younger brother will be greater than he"**

Alternate translation: "However, his younger brother Ephraim will be even greater than he will be,"

**Genesis 48:19 (#5)**

**"and his offspring"**

Make sure that your translation of this phrase refers to Ephraim's descendants, not Manasseh's. Alternate translation: "with many descendants, who"

**Genesis 48:19 (#6)**

**"will become a multitude of nations"**

Compare how you translated a similar phrase ("a community of peoples") in verse 4. Alternate translation: "will become many ethnic groups."

**Genesis 48:20 (#1)**

**"And he blessed them on that day"**

Alternate translation: "That same day, Israel blessed both of them"

**Genesis 48:20 (#2)**

**"saying"**

Alternate translation: "and said,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 48:20 (#3)**

**"By you Israel will bless {people}"**

Alternate translation: "The people of Israel will use your names when they bless someone" or "When the people of Israel say a blessing over someone, they will use your names"

**Genesis 48:20 (#4)**

**"May God make you"**

Alternate translation: "May God bless you" or "We ask God to make you great"

**Genesis 48:20 (#5)****"like Ephraim and like Manasseh"**

Alternate translation: "like he blessed Ephraim and Manasseh."

**Genesis 48:20 (#6)****"So he put Ephraim before Manasseh"**

Alternate translation: "When he said that, he put Ephraim ahead of Manasseh." or "In that way, he made Ephraim greater than Manasseh."

**Genesis 48:21 (#1)****"Then Israel said to Joseph"**

Alternate translation: "Next Israel spoke to Joseph. He said,"

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 48:21 (#2)****"Behold"**

Alternate translation: "Look"

**Genesis 48:21 (#3)****"I am dying"**

Alternate translation: "I will die soon,"

**Genesis 48:21 (#4)****"and God will be with you"**

The pronouns **you** and **your** are plural throughout this verse and probably refer to all Israel's family, including Joseph, his brothers, and their descendants. Alternate translation: "but God will always stay with all of you and help you," or "but God will always stay with you and your brothers and all your descendants and help you."

See: Forms of 'You' — Singular

**Genesis 48:21 (#5)****"and he will bring you back"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He will also bring you back"

**Genesis 48:21 (#6)****"to the land of your fathers"**

Alternate translation: "to the land that he gave to your forefathers"

**Genesis 48:22 (#1)****"And I give you"**

The pronouns **you** and **your** shift to singular in verse 22. Alternate translation: "And I bequeath to you as part of your inheritance"

**Genesis 48:22 (#2)****"Shechem"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could refer to: (1) "the city of Shechem," or (2) "a mountain slope/ridge." This second interpretation comes from the meaning of the Hebrew word "shekem" ("shoulder"), which can be used as a metaphor to refer to a mountain slope or ridge.

See: Metaphor

**Genesis 48:22 (#3)****"one {portion} above your brothers"**

Alternate translation: "which is more land than I am giving to your brothers and"

**Genesis 48:22 (#4)****"which I took from the hand of"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "which I took control of from" or "I took that land from"

**Genesis 48:22 (#5)****"the Amorite{s} with my sword and with my bow"**

For some languages it may be clearer to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "Besides that, I hereby give you the city of Shechem, which I took/captured from the Amorites when I defeated them in battle. This is more land than I am giving to your brothers." Do what is best in your language. Also consider again how you translated **Amorites** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 10:16; 14:7, 13; 15:16, 21; 48:22. Alternate translation: "the Amorites in battle using my sword and my bow."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 49:1 (#1)****"Then Jacob called for his sons"**

The events in chapter 49 may have occurred on the same day as the events in chapter 48, or not very long after that. Consider again how you translated **called for** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:18; 14:14; 20:2, 8–9; 24:57–58; 26:9; 27:1, 42; 28:1; 31:4; 39:14; 41:8, 14; 46:33; 47:29; 49:1.

**Genesis 49:1 (#2)****"and said"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 49:1 (#3)****"Gather together"**

Much of what Jacob says to his sons in verses 1–27 is Hebrew poetry, which is characterized by the use of parallelisms and metaphors to emphasize important points. Many translations put these verses in poetry format (starting here); many others use regular paragraph formatting. Do what is best in your language. For a complete list of verses that some translations treat as poetry in the book of Genesis, see the introduction to the book. Alternate translation: "Gather yourselves together before me,"

See: Poetry

**Genesis 49:1 (#4)****"and I will reveal to you"**

Alternate translation: "and I will declare to you" or "so that I can inform you"

**Genesis 49:1 (#5)****"what will meet you"**

Much of what Jacob prophesies in this chapter about his sons also applies to their descendants. Some translation teams may prefer to put that information in a footnote rather than make it explicit in the text. Do what is best in your language. Also see how you translated **meet** in Gen 42:4, 38.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 49:1 (#6)****"in the end of days"**

In this context, this phrase refers to a period of years in the future. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "in the days ahead." or "in future days"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 49:2 (#1)****"Assemble and listen, sons of Jacob"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation of this verse that Jacob is talking to his own sons and is referring to himself as both Jacob and as Israel. Also, for some languages it is more natural to put the address **sons of Jacob** first in verse 2, or even first in the quote (which begins in verse 1). Do what is best in your language.

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 49:2 (#2)****"and listen to Israel your father"**

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause to emphasize that Jacob wants his sons to listen to him carefully. Try to keep both halves of

this parallelism in your translation, since each half has a slightly different focus. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Pay attention to me, your father Israel."

### Genesis 49:3 (#1)

#### "Reuben, you {are} my firstborn"

Consider again how you translated **firstborn** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 4:4; 10:15; 19:31, 33–34, 37; 22:21; 25:13, 27; 27:19, 32; 29:26; 35:23; 36:15; 38:6–7; 41:51; 43:33; 46:8, 14; 48:18; 49:3. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

### Genesis 49:3 (#2)

#### "my might and the first of my strength"

This phrase is used here as a euphemistic idiom that refers to Jacob's ability to have children. Other languages may have a similar idiom. Translate this in a way that will not embarrass or offend listeners. Alternate translation: "the result of my fertility, and the first child I had as a young man." or "You are the first sign of my manhood and strength"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 49:3 (#3)

#### "excelling {in} rank and excelling {in} power"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "You had higher honor and authority than all your brothers."

### Genesis 49:4 (#1)

#### "Turbulent"

Alternate translation: "However, you are uncontrollable" or "However, you are reckless"

### Genesis 49:4 (#2)

#### "like waters"

Here Jacob compares Reuben's reckless, uncontrolled sexual behavior to turbulent water that is out of control and destructive. Consider whether or not you have a similar simile in your language that would fit well here. Alternate translation: "like a flood of water,"

See: Simile

### Genesis 49:4 (#3)

#### "you will not excel"

Alternate translation: "so you will no longer have your high position in our family," or "so you will no longer be first among your brothers,"

### Genesis 49:4 (#4)

#### ""because you went up {onto} your father's bed,"

This clause, along with the rest of the verse, is a euphemistic way of referring to Reuben committing adultery by sleeping with his father's concubine (secondary wife) Bilhah (Genesis 35:22). Alternate translation: "because you got into my bed with my wife and dishonored me!" or "because you dishonored me by getting into my bed and committing adultery with my concubine"

See: Euphemism

### Genesis 49:4 (#5)

#### "He went up {onto} my couch"

Here Jacob repeats part of what he said in the previous clause, in order to emphasize Reuben's sin against him and to communicate how upset he is about it. He may have still been talking to Reuben (switching from second to third person), or he may have been exclaiming about Reuben to himself and the rest of his sons.

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 49:5 (#1)

#### "Simeon and Levi"

In verses 3–27, Jacob sometimes refers to his sons using second person ("you"), and sometimes (as



here) he uses third person ("they" or "he"). Consider whether or not it is better in your language to use second person throughout these verses, especially since Jacob is talking to his sons who are right there with him. Also, some languages have dual pronouns that fit well in verses 5–7. Alternate translation: "As for Simeon and Levi, they"

See: First, Second or Third Person

## Genesis 49:5 (#2)

### "are} brothers"

This phrase is used here as an idiom that emphasizes the fact that Simeon and Levi thought alike and acted together to do evil things. Alternate translation: "are close brothers." or "are partners in crime." or "do evil things together."

## Genesis 49:5 (#3)

### "Their swords {are} weapons of violence"

Make sure in your translation that the pronouns you use here (and in verses 6–7) fit with the way you translated the beginning of this verse. Alternate translation: "They use their weapons to do violent things together."

## Genesis 49:6 (#1)

### "Do not let my soul enter"

Here Jacob uses the phrase **my soul** to refer to himself and to emphasize how strongly he feels about what he is saying. Consider what is the best way to communicate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Do not ever let me" or "May I never"

See: Synecdoche

## Genesis 49:6 (#2)

### "Do not let" - "enter into their council"

In verses 5–7, Jacob is probably referring to the time when Simeon and Levi killed all the males in the city of Shechem out of revenge (Genesis 34:25–26, 30). Jacob was very upset that they did that. Alternate translation: "take part in their evil plans"

or "participate with them when you plan evil things!"

## Genesis 49:6 (#3)

### "Do not let my glory join in their assembly"

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes that Jacob is upset and does not want to participate with these two sons in their evil behavior. Consider what is the best way to translate that in your language. Alternate translation: "Do not let my honor be associated with your evil plans," or "I never want to be linked with their evil plans," or "I refuse to make evil plans with them"

See: Parallelism

## Genesis 49:6 (#4)

### "because in their anger they killed a man"

The phrase **a man** probably refers collectively here to all the men whom these two sons killed in the city of Shechem (Gen 34:25–26, 30). Alternate translation: "because you became angry and murdered many men"

## Genesis 49:6 (#5)

### "and for their pleasure they hamstrung an ox"

This may have happened during the time that Simeon and Levi took revenge on the people of Shechem. Alternate translation: "and just to please yourselves, you crippled some oxen so they could not walk." or "and you cut the leg tendons of some oxen just for the fun of it."

## Genesis 49:7 (#1)

### "'Cursed {be} their anger because {it is} strong,"

Consider what is the best way to translate this parallelism in your language. Also, consider again how you translated "cursed" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 3:14 (and note), 17; 4:11; 5:29; 8:21; 9:25; 12:3; 27:12–13, 29; 49:7. Alternate translation: "May God curse them for your intense anger and

your malicious fury!” or “I ask God to punish them for being so intensely angry and malicious!”

See: Parallelism

## Genesis 49:7 (#2)

### "I will divide them"

The last half of verse 7 specifies how Jacob is asking God to curse Simeon and Levi. Alternate translation: “I ask God to disperse them and their descendants” or “May he cause them and their descendants to be spread out”

## Genesis 49:7 (#3)

### "in Jacob"

In this context, the name **Jacob** refers to his family and especially his descendants. Alternate translation: “among the family of Jacob.”

See: Metonymy

## Genesis 49:7 (#4)

### "and I will scatter them"

The clauses “I will divide ...” and “I will scatter ...” form a parallelism that emphasizes the way Jacob is asking God to curse Simeon and Levi. If possible, it is best to keep both parts of a parallelism in your translation. Alternate translation: “Yes, I will”

See: Parallelism

## Genesis 49:7 (#5)

### "and I will scatter them"

Consider again how you translated **scatter** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 10:18, 32; 11:4, 8–9; 49:7. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. If the pronoun “you” is used here in your translation, it should be plural. Alternate translation: “disperse you” or “cause them to be spread out”

## Genesis 49:7 (#6)

### "in Israel"

Jacob’s prophecy in verse 7 came true many years later: the tribe of Simeon was absorbed by the tribe of Judah (Joshua 19:1), and the tribe of Levi never had its own territory, but rather lived in cities scattered throughout the other tribes of Israel (Joshua 21:1–42). You could put this information in a footnote. Alternate translation: “throughout the descendants of Israel.”

## Genesis 49:8 (#1)

### "Judah, {it is} you your brothers will praise"

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic, and it has an emphatic position in the sentence. Consider what is the best way to communicate that emphasis in your language. Alternate translation: “Judah, you are the one whom your brothers will praise.” or “Judah, you and your descendants will be highly praised by your brothers and their descendants.”

## Genesis 49:8 (#2)

### "Your hand {will be} on the neck of"

Consider what is the best way to translate this Hebrew idiom in your language. Also, if your translation includes Judah’s descendants in the previous sentence, make sure that the pronouns **your** and **you** are plural in this sentence. Alternate translation: “You will be victorious over” or “You will defeat”

See: Idiom

## Genesis 49:8 (#3)

### "those opposing you"

Alternate translation: “those who are against you.” or “your adversaries.”

## Genesis 49:8 (#4)

### "The sons of your father"

Make sure that your translation of **your father** refers to Jacob. Alternate translation: “Your brothers”

See: First, Second or Third Person

See: Rhetorical Question

## Genesis 49:8 (#5)

### "will bow down to you"

Consider again how you translated **bow down** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 18:2; 19:1; 22:5; 23:7, 12; 24:26, 48, 52; 27:29; 33:3, 6–7; 37:7, 9–10; 42:6; 43:26, 28; 47:31; 48:12; 49:8. Also see how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 17:3, 17. Alternate translation: "and their descendants will bow themselves before you and your descendants in submission."

See: Symbolic Action

## Genesis 49:9 (#1)

### ""Judah {is} the cub of a lion."

Alternate translation: "Judah, you, my son, are like a powerful young lion that kills its prey and returns to its den."

See: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

## Genesis 49:9 (#2)

### "He crouches {and} lies down like a lion"

Here in verse 9 Jacob switches to using third person references ("he, his, him") for Judah. For some languages it is better to use second person references ("you, your") throughout verses 8–12. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "You are like a lion that stretches out and lies down to rest after eating."

See: Simile

## Genesis 49:9 (#3)

### "And like a lioness, who will rouse him"

This sentence forms a parallelism with the previous sentence to emphasize Judah's authority. Also, Jacob uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize the respect that people will have for Judah. Some languages must use a statement here instead. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "Yes, you are like a lion that no one dares to awaken" or "No one dares to disrespect that lion."

## Genesis 49:10 (#1)

### "The scepter will not depart from Judah"

A scepter, or a king's staff, is a special, decorated rod that a king holds to symbolize his authority to rule the people who are under him. Alternate translation: "Judah, the authority to rule will always belong to you and your descendants."

See: Metonymy

## Genesis 49:10 (#2)

### "nor the staff from between his feet"

This phrase forms a parallelism with the previous clause and emphasizes the authority that Judah and his descendants will have.

See: Parallelism

## Genesis 49:10 (#3)

### "until Shiloh comes"

Jacob is probably prophesying here about the coming of the Messiah/Christ. This fits with the fact that Jesus was a descendant of the tribe of Judah and is now ruling as the true King over heaven and earth. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "until the highest king arrives" or "until the One whom the scepter belongs to comes"

## Genesis 49:10 (#4)

### "and to him {belongs} the obedience of the peoples"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "and the nations of the earth obey him." or "and all people obey him." or "All people will obey him."

## Genesis 49:11 (#1)

### "He will tether"

In verse 11, the pronouns “he” and **his** refer to Judah and his descendants. To make that clear, you could make that explicit here and then use plural pronouns “they” and “their” throughout the verse. Or if you are using the second person throughout this section, you could say, “You and your descendants ...” and use plural pronouns “you” and “your” after that. Alternate translation: “Judah and his descendants”

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

### Genesis 49:11 (#2)

#### **"He will tether his donkey to the {grape}vine"**

In Jacob's culture grapevines were valuable plants, so unless a person was very rich, he would never tether a donkey to his grapevines because it would eat the fruit and the vines. If necessary, you could make some of that information explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: “will be so wealthy that they will tie their donkeys to your grapevines to eat the valuable fruit.” or “let your donkeys eat your valuable grapevines.”

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 49:11 (#3)

#### **"and the son of his donkey to the choice branch"**

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous one to emphasize how wealthy Judah and his descendants will be.

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 49:11 (#4)

#### **""He will wash his garment{s} in wine"**

This sentence is another parallelism that emphasizes how wealthy Judah and his descendants will be. The phrase **blood of grapes** is an idiom that refers to red wine made from the juice of grapes. Alternate translation: “They will still have so much wine from other vines that you could even use the wine like water to wash your robes and other clothes.”

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 49:12 (#1)

#### **"His} eyes"**

Alternate translation: “Their eyes” or “You will be so blessed that your eyes”

### Genesis 49:12 (#2)

#### **"will be} brilliant from wine"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “will be bright from drinking abundant wine,” or (2) “will be darker than wine,” In both interpretations the emphasis is that Judah's descendants will be blessed with an abundance of the best foods, including wine and milk, which are examples of the most valuable foods that were produced in the land.

### Genesis 49:12 (#3)

#### **"and {his} teeth {will be} white from milk"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) “and their/your teeth will be white from drinking abundant milk.” or (2) “and their/your teeth will be whiter than milk.” Make sure that the way you translate this phrase fits with the interpretation you used for the first part of this verse. For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of some of these phrases and say, “They/You will be so blessed/wealthy that they/you will have plenty of the best foods, including abundant wine and milk.” Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 49:13 (#1)

#### **"Zebulun"**

Throughout this chapter, decide whether it is best in your language to use third person or second person when Jacob refers to each of his sons (and their descendants). Alternate translation: “As for Zebulun, he and his descendants”

### Genesis 49:13 (#2)

#### **"will settle at the shore of the sea"**

Alternate translation: "will live at the coast,"

### Genesis 49:13 (#3)

**"and he {will live} at the shore of ships"**

This clause forms a parallelism with the previous clause to emphasize where Zebulun and his descendants will live. Alternate translation: "yes, they will settle at a harbor for ships," or "where there will be a safe place for ships to load and unload their cargo,"

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 49:13 (#4)

**"and his border {will reach}"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "Their territory will extend"

### Genesis 49:13 (#5)

**"to Sidon"**

Alternate translation: "all the way up to the city of Sidon."

### Genesis 49:14 (#1)

**"Issachar"**

Alternate translation: "As for Issachar, he and his descendants"

### Genesis 49:14 (#2)

**"is} a strong donkey"**

Consider again how you translated **donkey** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:16; 16:12; 22:3, 5, 6; 24:35; 30:43; 32:5, 15; 34:28; 36:24; 42:26–27; 43:18, 24; 44:3, 13; 45:23; 47:17; 49:14. Alternate translation: "will be like a strong donkey"

See: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

### Genesis 49:14 (#3)

**"lying down"**

Alternate translation: "lying down resting"

### Genesis 49:14 (#4)

**"between two saddlebags"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "between two saddlebags/loads." or (2) "between the two parts of a sheep pen." Both interpretations imply that the donkey is lying down to rest after it worked hard.

### Genesis 49:15 (#1)

**""And he sees {his} resting place that {it is} good"**

Alternate translation: "They will have a good place to live, in a enjoyable land."

See: Parallelism

### Genesis 49:15 (#2)

**"Then he will bend his shoulder"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this Hebrew idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "However, you will also have to exert yourselves" or "But you will work hard"

See: Idiom

### Genesis 49:15 (#3)

**"to bear {the loads}"**

Alternate translation: "to carry heavy loads,"

### Genesis 49:15 (#4)

**"and he will be a forced labor servant"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "In fact, you will be forced to be slaves." or "They will have to work very hard for others as slaves." or "People will force you to be their slaves."

**Genesis 49:16 (#1)****"Dan"**

Alternate translation: "As for Dan, he and his descendants"

**Genesis 49:16 (#2)****"will judge his people"**

Alternate translation: "will govern their own people group"

**Genesis 49:16 (#3)****"as one of the tribes of Israel"**

Alternate translation: "just as the other tribes of Israel govern their own people."

**Genesis 49:17 (#1)****"Dan"**

Be consistent with your choice of third person or second person (singular or plural) references to Dan (and his descendants) throughout verses 16 and 17. Alternate translation: "They"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 49:17 (#2)****""will be a snake beside the road,"**

Alternate translation: "will be cunning like a poisonous snake lying beside a road"

See: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

**Genesis 49:17 (#3)****"and its rider falls off backward"**

Alternate translation: "so that it rears up and the rider falls off backward to the ground." or "... is thrown off the horse and defeated."

**Genesis 49:18 (#1)****"I am waiting for your salvation, Yahweh"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation that Jacob is talking to God in verse 18, not Dan any more.

See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

**Genesis 49:19 (#1)****"raider{s} will attack him"**

Alternate translation: "a group of robbers will attack him and his descendants," or "you and your descendants will be attacked by enemies,"

**Genesis 49:19 (#2)****"but he will attack {their} heel{s}"**

Make sure it is clear in your translation who is being referred to at each point in this sentence. Alternate translation: "but they will hunt them down and defeat them."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 49:20 (#1)****"From Asher, his bread {will be} fat"**

Here the word **bread** refers to food in general and **fat** refers to the best kinds of food. Alternate translation: "Asher and his descendants will produce rich food," or "Asher, you and your descendants will be wealthy and produce the finest food."

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 49:20 (#2)****"and he will provide king's delicacies"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, the word **delicacies** refers to special, delicious foods that only rich people can afford to eat. Alternate translation: "He will even supply food that is fancy enough for a king." or "In fact, they will supply fine foods that are fit for kings to eat."

**Genesis 49:21 (#1)****"Naphtali"**

Alternate translation: "As for Naphtali, he and his descendants"

**Genesis 49:21 (#2)****"is} a doe"**

This metaphor pictures a deer that swiftly runs away after being released from captivity. Alternate translation: "will be swift like a doe" or "will be warriors who are swift like a deer"

See: Metaphor

**Genesis 49:21 (#3)****"that is let loose"**

Alternate translation: "that is set free." or "that has been released to run freely." or "that is free to go wherever it wants."

**Genesis 49:21 (#4)****"He gives words of beauty"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "He/They/You will also speak eloquently." or "They/You will also be gifted/excellent speakers/negotiators." or (2) "and that bears/has beautiful/healthy fawns." or "He/They/You will have beautiful children." If you made Naphtali's descendants explicit at the beginning of this verse, make sure you use a plural pronoun ("they" or "you") here.

See: First, Second or Third Person

**Genesis 49:22 (#1)****"Joseph {is}"**

Alternate translation: "As for Joseph, he and his descendants"

**Genesis 49:22 (#2)**

**"the son of a fruit-bearing {vine},"**

The same phrase is repeated here to emphasize how prosperous and productive Joseph (and his descendants) will be. Instead of saying the same phrase twice, many translations combine the two phrases and form one clause that communicates the emphasis in a different way. Do what is accurate and natural in your language. Alternate translation: "will be like the branch of a fruitful tree, yes, like a fruitful tree" or "will be very successful and flourish like a fruitful branch of a vine" or "will be very fruitful like the fruit on a fruitful vine"

See: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

**Genesis 49:22 (#3)****"beside a spring"**

Alternate translation: "that is planted next to a spring of water,"

**Genesis 49:22 (#4)****"whose} daughters go up"**

This phrase probably continues the metaphor of the fruitful vine that symbolizes how prosperous and numerous Joseph and his descendants will be. Consider what is the best way to translate this metaphor in your language. Alternate translation: "with branches extending" or "with branches full of fruit that extend"

See: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

**Genesis 49:22 (#5)****"over a wall"**

Alternate translation: "over a surrounding wall."

**Genesis 49:23 (#1)****"And" - "will attack him"**

Be consistent with your choice of third person or second person (singular or plural) references to Joseph (and his descendants) throughout verses 22–26. Alternate translation: "Skillful bowmen will fiercely attack them and their descendants" or "Enemy soldiers will ..." or "Your enemies will ..."

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

## Genesis 49:23 (#2)

**"and shoot"**

Alternate translation: "and shoot arrows at them"

## Genesis 49:23 (#3)

**"and harass him"**

Alternate translation: "and treat them hatefully." or "and try to destroy them"

## Genesis 49:24 (#1)

**"But his bow will remain in strength"**

Make sure that the way you translate **his** in this verse fits with whether you use second or third person (singular or plural) to refer to Joseph (and his descendants) in verses 22–26. Alternate translation: "But as they fight back, you will hold your bows steady" or "... you will use your bows well"

## Genesis 49:24 (#2)

**"and the arms of his hands will be made limber"**

Alternate translation: "and their powerful arms will stay agile"

## Genesis 49:24 (#3)

**"by the hands of the Mighty {One} of Jacob"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this idiom in your language. Alternate translation: "because of the power"

See: Idiom

## Genesis 49:24 (#4)

**"the Mighty {One} of Jacob"**

For some languages, it is clearer or more natural to change the order of the phrases in this verse and say, "But the Mighty/Powerful God whom I

worship/serve will keep you strong and help you use your bows/weapons well/effectively as you fight back." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "of the Powerful God whom I worship" or "that the Powerful God of Jacob gives you,"

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 49:24 (#5)

**"by the name of the Shepherd"**

A shepherd takes care of his sheep and provides for all of their needs. In the same way God takes care of his people and provides for all of their needs. See Psalm 23 which also talks about God as our Shepherd. You could put some of that information in a footnote. Alternate translation: "He takes care of his people the way that a shepherd takes care of his sheep."

See: Metaphor

## Genesis 49:24 (#6)

**"the Rock of Israel"**

In verses 24 and 25, several different titles are used to refer to Yahweh, the only true God. Make sure that your translation of these verses does not sound like there is more than one God. Also make sure it is clear in your translation or in a footnote that Jacob is referring to himself in this verse as Jacob and Israel.

See: First, Second or Third Person

## Genesis 49:25 (#1)

**"by the God of"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "That power is from"

## Genesis 49:25 (#2)

**"by the God of your father, and he will help you"**

Alternate translation: "the God who has always taken care of me, your father. He will also help you and your descendants."



**Genesis 49:25 (#3)****"and with the Almighty, and he will bless you"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of some of the clauses in the first half of this verse and say, "That strength/power comes from the God who has always taken care of me, your father. He is the all-powerful God who will help you and your descendants and bless you all". Do what is best in your language. Also, compare how you translated "God Almighty" in Gen 48:3. Alternate translation: "He is the all-powerful God, who will bless you all"

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 49:25 (#4)****"with} blessings of the heavens above"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He will provide you with rain from the sky"

**Genesis 49:25 (#5)****"blessings of the deep that lies below"**

This phrase refers to water that comes from under the ground and supplies springs, wells, and rivers. Alternate translation: "and bless you with water from under the ground."

**Genesis 49:25 (#6)****"blessings of breasts and womb"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this metonymy in your language. Also consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "May your wives bear many children and your animals bear many young."

See: Metonymy

**Genesis 49:26 (#1)****""The blessings of your father have surpassed"**

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "God has blessed me your father more than he blessed my ancestors," or (2) "The blessings your father is blessing you with are greater than the blessings my ancestors blessed me with," or (3) "The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings/riches of the ancient mountains," The third interpretation is based on the Greek Septuagint, which interprets the Hebrew word for **ancestors** as "mountains" (which has a similar spelling in Hebrew).

See: Textual Variants

**Genesis 49:26 (#2)****"even to the bounties of"**

The meaning of the Hebrew text is uncertain here. It could mean: (1) "He has blessed me with bounties/riches that are greater than the bounties/riches that come from" or (2) "My blessings are so great that they extend to the utmost/farthest boundaries/limits of". Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 49:26 (#3)****"the eternal hills"**

Alternate translation: "the everlasting mountains."

**Genesis 49:26 (#4)****"May they rest on the head of Joseph"**

The words **head** and **top of the head** refer to Joseph and are connected with the custom of laying hands on the head of the person being blessed. Alternate translation: "May God also give those blessings to you Joseph, as" or "I pray that God will abundantly bless you too, Joseph, since you are"

See: Synecdoche

**Genesis 49:26 (#5)****"the one consecrated from {among}"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive phrase in your language. Alternate translation: "the one who has been set apart by God"

as ruler” or “the one who is honored by God” or “the one whom he chose to set apart and honor”

See: Active or Passive

### Genesis 49:26 (#6)

**"his brothers"**

Make sure your choice of **his** or **your** here fits with how you translated the beginning of this sentence. Alternate translation: “over his brothers.”

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 49:27 (#1)

**"Benjamin"**

Consider again whether you make “and ... descendants” explicit for each of Jacob’s sons in this chapter or whether you leave it implied and possibly put that information in a footnote. See verses 1, 7–8, 11, 13–14, 16, 19–23, 27. Alternate translation: “As for Benjamin, he and his descendants” or “Benjamin, you and your descendants”

### Genesis 49:27 (#2)

**"is} a ravenous wolf"**

Wolves are a type of large, fierce, wild dog that lives and hunts together in groups. If wolves are unknown in your language area, you could say “wild dog” or “a pack of wild dogs.” Consider again how you translated the metaphors and similes that Jacob uses in verses 4, 9–11, 14, 17, 21–22, 24, 27. Alternate translation: “is like a fierce wolf.” or “will be fierce warriors like hungry wolves.”

See: Biblical Imagery — Extended Metaphors

### Genesis 49:27 (#3)

**""In the morning it devours {its} prey,"**

Consider again whether to use second person or third person (singular or plural) in verses 3–27, and make sure your translation of the pronouns is clear and natural. To do that, it is helpful to read your translation of this section aloud. Alternate translation: “You defeat their enemies in the

morning and share the plunder of battle with your warriors in the evening.”

See: First, Second or Third Person

### Genesis 49:28 (#1)

**"All those {are} the twelve tribes of Israel"**

This clause refers back to Jacob’s sons who are mentioned in verses 1–27. Alternate translation: “Those twelve sons are the forefathers of the twelve tribes that came from Israel,”

### Genesis 49:28 (#2)

**"and that {is} what their father said to them"**

Alternate translation: “and those were the words that their father spoke to them.”

### Genesis 49:28 (#3)

**"And he blessed"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “when he blessed”

### Genesis 49:28 (#4)

**"them, each one"**

Alternate translation: “each of them” or “each son”

### Genesis 49:28 (#5)

**"according to his blessing he blessed them"**

Alternate translation: “with blessings that were right for them and their descendants.” or “in a way that was fitting for them and their descendants.”

### Genesis 49:29 (#1)

**"Then he commanded them"**

Alternate translation: “After that, he instructed his sons”

**Genesis 49:29 (#2)****"and said to them"**

Make sure that your translation of "commanded ... and said ..." refers to a single action, not two different actions.

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

**Genesis 49:29 (#3)****"I am being gathered to"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "I will soon die and be taken by God to be with" or "God will soon take my spirit to be with"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 49:29 (#4)****"my people"**

Alternate translation: "my relatives who have already died." or "my relatives who have gone before me." or "my deceased ancestors"

**Genesis 49:29 (#5)****"Bury me"**

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not mean or imply that Jacob was asking to be buried while he was still physically alive. Alternate translation: "Please bury my body" or "When that happens, please bury me"

**Genesis 49:29 (#6)****"with my fathers"**

Alternate translation: "with the bodies of my ancestors" or "next to them"

**Genesis 49:29 (#7)****"in the cave that {is} in the field of Ephron the Hittite"**

Make sure your translation of this clause does not sound like Ephron still owned that property."

Alternate translation: "inside the cave that is located in the field that Ephron the Hittite used to own." or "... the field that used to belong to Ephron the Hittite."

**Genesis 49:30 (#1)****"in the cave that {is} in the field of Machpelah"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. See how you translated **Machpelah** in Gen 23:9.

**Genesis 49:30 (#2)****"that {is} in front of Mamre"**

Alternate translation: "that is east of the city of Mamre"

**Genesis 49:30 (#3)****"as property {for} a burial place"**

Alternate translation: "to use for a family burial site." or "in order to possess a place to bury his dead relatives."

**Genesis 49:31 (#1)****"There they buried Abraham and Sarah his wife"**

The pronoun **they** is general in this verse and does not specify who buried these people. Many languages have a similar general word. Other languages make this a passive clause without specifying the subject. Do what is best in your language.

**Genesis 49:31 (#2)****"and there"**

Alternate translation: "That is also where"

**Genesis 49:32 (#1)****"The purchase of the field and the cave that {is} in it {was}"**

In verse 32, Jacob repeats some of what he said in verses 29–30. Make sure your translation does not sound like it was the first time he said this. Also consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: “That field and cave were bought by Abraham”

See: Active or Passive

## Genesis 49:32 (#2)

### "from the sons of Heth"

Compare how you translated “Hittite” in verse 29, which refers to the same people group as here. Alternate translation: “from the descendants of Heth.” or “from the Hittite people.”

## Genesis 49:33 (#1)

### "and he drew his feet into the bed"

This clause means that Jacob lay back down after being in a sitting position on the side of his bed (Gen 48:2). Alternate translation: “he lay down and lifted his feet up into his bed.”

## Genesis 49:33 (#2)

### "and exhaled"

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also consider again how you translated the idiom **exhaled** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 6:17; 7:21; 25:8, 17; 35:29; 49:33. Alternate translation: “and breathed out his last breath” or “Then he took his final breath and died”

See: Euphemism

## Genesis 49:33 (#3)

### "and was gathered to his people"

Consider again how you translated this phrase in the book of Genesis. See Gen 25:8 (and note), 17; 35:29; 49:29, 33. Alternate translation: “and was taken by God to be with his deceased relatives”

## Genesis 50:1 (#1)

### "Then Joseph fell on"

Make sure that your translation of this phrase does not imply that Joseph fell down accidentally. Rather he intentionally threw himself on his father to embrace him and express his love and grief for him. See how you translated a similar phrase in Gen 46:29. Alternate translation: “Immediately Joseph embraced his father in sorrow”

See: Idiom

## Genesis 50:1 (#2)

### "and he wept over him"

For some languages it may be better to put this clause earlier and say, “Then Joseph cried in his sorrow/grief, and he hugged his father tightly and kissed him.” Do what is best in your language.

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 50:1 (#3)

### "and kissed him"

Consider again how you translated **kissed** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 27:26–27; 29:11, 13; 31:28, 55; 33:4; 45:15; 48:10; 50:1. Alternate translation: “and kissed him goodbye on the forehead.”

## Genesis 50:2 (#1)

### "Then Joseph commanded"

Alternate translation: “Then he told”

See: Quotations and Quote Margins

## Genesis 50:2 (#2)

### "his servants the physicians"

Alternate translation: “his servants who were doctors” or “his physicians who served him”

## Genesis 50:2 (#3)

### "to embalm his father"

The word **embalm** refers here to the special process that the Egyptians did to slow down the decaying process of a dead body in order to preserve it for burial.

See: Translate Unknowns

### Genesis 50:3 (#1)

**"and they completed forty days for him"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "which took them forty days," or "The work took forty days,"

### Genesis 50:3 (#2)

**"for so they complete the days of embalmings"**

Alternate translation: "because that is the usual amount of time needed to embalm a body." or "which is how long it usually takes to embalm a body."

### Genesis 50:3 (#3)

**"And the Egyptians wept for him seventy days"**

The seventy days of mourning included the forty days of embalming, so do not begin your translation of this sentence with a word like "Then". Alternate translation: "The people in Egypt wept for him for seventy days." or "For seventy days the people of Egypt mourned for him"

### Genesis 50:4 (#1)

**"And the days of his mourning passed"**

Alternate translation: "When those seventy days of mourning for him were over"

### Genesis 50:4 (#2)

**"then Joseph spoke to the house of Pharaoh, saying"**

The phrase **the house of Pharaoh** refers to members of the royal court.

See: Metonymy

### Genesis 50:4 (#3)

**"Please, if I have found favor in your eyes"**

Alternate translation: "Please do this kindness for me:" or "Please show me kindness and do this:"

### Genesis 50:4 (#4)

**"please speak in the ears of Pharaoh, saying"**

Alternate translation: "please speak to King Pharaoh for me and say to him,"

### Genesis 50:5 (#1)

**"My father made me swear, saying, 'Behold, I am dying. In my grave that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan, there you must bury me'"**

For some languages it may be better to translate this embedded quote as an indirect quote and say, "that when my father was about to die, he had me swear/vow/promise to him that I would bury his body in the region of Canaan, in a grave/tomb that he had prepared for himself there." Do what is best in your language.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 50:5 (#2)

**"So now, please let me go up {there} and bury my father"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as an indirect quote. Also see how you translated **go up** in Gen 45:9.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

### Genesis 50:5 (#3)

**"then I will return"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "After I have done that, I will return to Egypt."

**Genesis 50:6 (#1)****"And Pharaoh said"**

Alternate translation: "Pharaoh sent back this reply to him"

**Genesis 50:6 (#2)****"Go up and bury your father just as he made you swear"**

Consider whether it is better in your language to translate this sentence as a direct or indirect quote. Also see how you translated "go up" in verse 5.

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 50:7 (#1)****"So Joseph went up"**

Joseph did not arrive in Canaan until later (verse 10). Alternate translation: "So Joseph started traveling to Canaan" or "So Joseph started the journey to Canaan" or "So Joseph left Egypt"

**Genesis 50:7 (#2)****"and with him went up all the servants of Pharaoh"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Also, consider again how you translated **Pharaoh** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:15 (and note), 16–18, 20; 37:36; 39:1; 40:2, 11, 13, 14, 17, 19; 41:1, 4, 7–10, 14–17, 25, 28, 32–35, 37–39, 41–46, 55; 42:15–16; 44:18; 45:2, 8, 16–17, 21; 46:5, 31, 33–34; 47:1–5, 7–11, 14, 19–26; 50:4, 6–7. Also consider again how you translated **servants** and "officials" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 20:8; 40:2, 4, 7, 20; 41:10, 37–38; 45:16; 50:7. Alternate translation: "All the officials of Pharaoh went with him to escort him,"

**Genesis 50:7 (#3)****"the elders of his house"**

The **elders** were probably older men who had served Pharaoh for a long time and held important positions in his court.

**Genesis 50:7 (#4)****"and all elders of the land of Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "and all the other senior men in the country of Egypt."

**Genesis 50:8 (#1)****"and all of the house of Joseph"**

The word **house** refers here to Joseph's whole extended family, not just to the people in his own household. Also, consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here.

**Genesis 50:8 (#2)****"Only their little ones"**

Alternate translation: "Only their children"

**Genesis 50:8 (#3)****"and their flock{s} and their herd{s}"**

Consider again how you translated "flocks and herds" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:16; 13:5; 20:14; 21:27; 24:35; 26:14; 32:8; 33:13; 34:28; 45:10; 46:32; 47:1, 17; 50:8. Also see how you translated "herd" in Gen 18:7–8, and how you translated "flock" in Gen 4:2, 4; 21:28; 27:9; 29:2–3, 6–10; 30:31, 32, 36, 38–43; 31:4, 8, 10, 12, 19, 38, 41, 43; 32:6; 37:2, 12, 14; 38:12, 13, 17; 46:34; 47:1, 17. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "and their sheep and cattle"

**Genesis 50:8 (#4)****"they left"**

The children and animals were probably left with servants who took care of them during the funeral. For some languages it may be better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "They left behind only their children and their livestock in Goshen Province." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "they left behind" or "were left behind with servants"

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 50:8 (#5)

### "in the land of Goshen"

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Goshen" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 45:10; 46:28-29, 34; 47:1, 4, 6, 27; 50:8. Alternate translation: "in the region of Goshen."

## Genesis 50:9 (#1)

### "And with him went up both chariot{s} and horsemen"

Consider again how you translated "chariot" in Gen 41:43; 46:29; 50:9. Alternate translation: "There were men riding chariots and men riding horses who also went with Joseph," or "Many soldiers also escorted him including those who were riding chariots and those who were riding horses,"

## Genesis 50:9 (#2)

### "and the company was very great"

Alternate translation: "so that the entire group of people was very large." or "so that there was a very large group of people traveling together."

## Genesis 50:10 (#1)

### "Then they came to"

Alternate translation: "Then when they came to" or "When they arrived at"

## Genesis 50:10 (#2)

### "the threshing floor of Atad"

The Hebrew text is ambiguous here. It could mean: (1) "Atad's threshing floor/place," or "a place owned by a man named Atad where people separated grain from chaff," or (2) "the threshing floor/place near the city/town of Atad," or "Goren Ha-Atad," or (3) "the grain/wheat threshing place that was surrounded by thornbushes," The Hebrew word "atad" means "thorns," but most Bible

scholars think it refers here to the name of a person or city.

## Genesis 50:10 (#3)

### "which {is} beyond the Jordan, and they lamented"

For some languages it may be better to put this clause earlier in this verse and say, "They traveled to the other side of the Jordan River and stopped at a grain threshing place owned by a man named Atad." The location of Atad's threshing floor is not certain. It was most likely on the west side of the Jordan River, since that is where the cave was located and that is where the Canaanites would have been most likely to observe Joseph's family and the Egyptians mourning (verse 11). However, since its location is not certain, it is best to translate **beyond the Jordan** in a general way (like the Hebrew text is). Alternate translation: "which was located across the Jordan River,"

See: Information Structure

## Genesis 50:10 (#4)

### "and they lamented there"

Alternate translation: "they began to mourn"

## Genesis 50:10 (#5)

### "with} a very great and heavy lamentation"

Alternate translation: "with a very loud and sorrowful lamentation"

## Genesis 50:10 (#6)

### "And he did seven days {of} mourning for his father"

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to combine the last two sentences in this verse and say, "There Joseph and the others mourned for his father very loudly and sorrowfully for seven days." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "For seven days Joseph and the others grieved the death of his father." or "and for seven days, Joseph led everyone in mourning the death of his father."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 50:11 (#1)

**"And the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning at the threshing floor of Atad"**

See how you translated **threshing floor of Atad** in verse 10.

### Genesis 50:11 (#2)

**"This {is} a heavy mourning for the Egyptians"**

Consider again how you translated "Egyptian" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 12:14; 16:1, 3; 21:9; 25:12; 39:1, 2, 5; 41:55–56; 43:32; 45:2; 46:34; 47:15, 20; 50:3, 11. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "Wow! Those people of Egypt are mourning very sorrowfully for someone who died!"

### Genesis 50:11 (#3)

**"For that {reason}"**

Alternate translation: "That is the reason that"

### Genesis 50:11 (#4)

**"they called its name"**

Consider again how you translated "For that (reason) he/they called/call ..." in the book of Genesis. See Gen 11:9; 16:14; 19:22; 21:31; 25:26, 30; 31:48; 33:17; 35:8; 38:29–30; 50:11. Alternate translation: "people call that place" or "the name of that place is" or "that place is called"

### Genesis 50:11 (#5)

**"which {is} beyond"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "which is located" or "The place is"

### Genesis 50:11 (#6)

**"beyond the Jordan"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence and say, "That is why the name of that place on the other side of the Jordan River is Abel Mizraim, which means 'Egyptians' mourning place.'" Do what is best in your language. Also, be consistent here with how you translate this phrase in verse 10.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 50:12 (#1)

**"he had commanded them"**

Alternate translation: "he had told them to do:"

### Genesis 50:13 (#1)

**"And his sons carried him"**

Alternate translation: "They brought his body"

### Genesis 50:13 (#2)

**"to the land of Canaan"**

Consider again how you translated "the land/region of Canaan" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 11:31; 12:5; 13:12, 14; 16:3; 17:8; 23:2, 19; 31:18; 33:18; 35:6; 36:5–6; 37:1; 42:5, 7, 13, 29, 32; 44:8; 45:17, 25; 46:6, 12, 31; 47:1, 4, 13, 15, 27; 48:3, 7; 49:30; 50:5, 13. Also be consistent with how you spelled the name of the man named Canaan in 9:18, 22, 25–27; 10:6, 15, and compare that to how you translated "the Canaanites" in 10:18–19; 12:6; 13:7; 15:21; 24:3, 37; 28:1, 6, 8; 34:30; 36:2; 38:2; 46:10; 50:11.

### Genesis 50:13 (#3)

**"and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah"**

Consider again how you translated **cave** and **the cave of the field of Machpelah** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 19:30; 23:9 (and note), 11, 17, 19–20; 25:9; 49:29–30, 32; 50:13. Alternate



translation: "and buried him in the cave that is in the field in the Machpelah area,"

### Genesis 50:13 (#4)

**"which Abraham had bought with the field as property for a burial place from Ephron the Hittite"**

Consider again how you translated **property for a burial place** in Gen 23:4, 9, 20, and how you translated **Hittite** or **Ephron the Hittite** in Gen 10:15; 15:20; 23:3, 5, 7, 10, 16,18; 25:9-10; 26:34; 27:46; 36:2; 49:29-30; 50:13. Be consistent with how you spelled **Ephron** in those verses and in Gen 23:8, 13-14, 16-17. Alternate translation: "It was the field and cave that Abraham had bought from Ephron the Hittite as a property to bury his dead relatives"

### Genesis 50:13 (#5)

**"in front of Mamre"**

For some languages it is clearer or more natural to put this phrase earlier in this sentence (after **Machpelah**) and say, "... the field of Machpelah near the city of Mamre. It was the field and cave that Abraham ..." Do what is best in your language. Also, consider again how you translated **in front of Mamre** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 23:17, 19; 25:9; 49:30; 50:13. Be consistent with how you spelled **Mamre** in those verses and in Gen 13:18; 14:13, 24; 18:1.

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 50:14 (#1)

**"Then" - "Joseph returned to Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph returned to the country of Egypt,"

### Genesis 50:14 (#2)

**"who had gone up with him"**

Alternate translation: "who had gone to Canaan with him"

### Genesis 50:14 (#3)

**"to bury his father"**

Consider again how you translated **bury** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 15:15; 23:4, 6, 8, 11, 13, 15, 19; 25:9-10; 35:8, 19, 29; 47:29-30; 48:7; 49:29, 31; 50:5-7, 13-14. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context.

### Genesis 50:15 (#1)

**"What if Joseph hates us"**

Alternate translation: "What if Joseph is holding a grudge against us?"

### Genesis 50:15 (#2)

**"Then he will surely repay us"**

Consider whether or not it is better to begin a new sentence here in your language. Alternate translation: "Then certainly he will pay us back" or "then he will certainly take revenge on us and punish us severely"

### Genesis 50:15 (#3)

**"for} all the evil that we did to him"**

It may be clearer or more natural to put this clause before the previous clause and say, "If Joseph is angry at us for the terrible way that we treated him, he might punish us severely for what we did." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "for all the ways that we harmed him!" or "for the completely evil way that we treated him!" or "because we treated him so badly."

See: Information Structure

### Genesis 50:16 (#1)

**"Then they ordered {a messenger to go} to Joseph, saying"**

Alternate translation: "So they sent a message to Joseph which said,"

**Genesis 50:16 (#2)**

**"Your father commanded before his death, saying"**

Consider again how you translated **commanded** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 2:16; 3:11, 17; 6:22; 7:5, 9, 16; 12:20; 18:19; 21:4; 26:5, 11; 27:8; 28:1, 6; 32:4, 17, 19; 42:25, 44:1; 45:19; 47:11; 49:29, 33; 50:2, 12, 16. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Also, the pronoun "us" is exclusive here since it does not include Joseph. Alternate translation: "Our father commanded us before he died," or "Before your father died, he commanded us"

See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

**Genesis 50:17 (#1)**

**"This you must say to Joseph: 'I beg {you}'"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to translate this embedded quote as a direct or indirect quote. See what you did for doubly-embedded quotes in Gen 32:4. Alternate translation: "to tell you that he asks you to" or "to ask you on his behalf to"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 50:17 (#2)**

**"please forgive the crime of your brothers and their sin, because they did evil to you"**

Consider again how you translated **sin** in Gen 4:7; 18:20; 31:36; 50:17, and consider again how you translated the synonym **crime** in Gen 31:36; 50:17. It may be necessary to translate these terms in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "please forgive your brothers for all the evil they did to you and for their offenses against you, even though what they did was very evil"

See: Direct and Indirect Quotations

**Genesis 50:17 (#3)**

**"So now, please forgive the crime of the servants of your father's God"**

Consider again how you translated "the God of" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 9:26; 24:12, 27, 42, 48; 26:24; 28:13; 31:5, 29, 42, 53; 32:9; 43:23; 46:1, 3;

49:24–25; 50:17. Alternate translation: "So then, as servants of God whom our father served, we beg you to forgive us for sinning against you."

**Genesis 50:17 (#4)**

**"And Joseph cried when they spoke to him"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph cried when he heard that message."

**Genesis 50:18 (#1)**

**"and fell before him and said"**

See how you translated "fell ... before him" in Gen 44:14. Compare that to how you translated "bowed down to/before ..." (See: 49:8). Alternate translation: "and threw themselves on the ground in front of him and said,"

See: Symbolic Action

**Genesis 50:18 (#2)**

**"Behold us"**

See how you translated a similar phrase ("Behold me") in 22:1, 7. It may be necessary to translate this phrase in different ways, depending on the context.

**Genesis 50:18 (#3)**

**"we belong} to you as slaves"**

If you use an exclamation point here in your translation, make sure it does mean that Joseph's brothers were angry. Rather, they were worried and desperate. Alternate translation: "we will be your slaves" or "we will serve you as slaves"

**Genesis 50:19 (#1)**

**"Do not be afraid"**

Alternate translation: "You have nothing to fear."

**Genesis 50:19 (#2)**

**"For {am} I in place of God"**

Joseph uses a rhetorical question here to emphasize that he will not take God's place and punish his brothers. Some languages must use a statement or exclamation here instead. Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "After all, I am not God! So I have no right to judge you."

See: Rhetorical Question

### Genesis 50:20 (#1)

**"And {as for} you, you intended evil against me"**

In the Hebrew text, the pronoun **you** is emphatic in form and position to emphasize Joseph's brothers and contrast them with God. Consider what is the best way to translate that contrast in your language. Alternate translation: "Although you intentionally treated me very badly,"

See: Connect — Contrast Relationship

### Genesis 50:20 (#2)

**"but} God intended it for good"**

Alternate translation: "God is using that evil to benefit us all" or "God planned that what you did would turn out to be good for me and everyone else"

### Genesis 50:20 (#3)

**"in order to do as {he is doing} this day"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "to accomplish what he is doing these days,"

### Genesis 50:20 (#4)

**"to save many people"**

Consider again how you translated "save (lives)" or "keep alive" in the book of Genesis. See Gen 7:3; 12:12; 19:19; 45:7; 47:25; 50:20. Alternate translation: "to save the lives of many people." or "to keep many people alive." or "keeping many people from dying."

### Genesis 50:21 (#1)

**"So now"**

Alternate translation: "So again I tell you,"

### Genesis 50:21 (#2)

**"do not be afraid"**

Consider again how you translated **do not be afraid** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 15:1; 21:17; 26:24; 35:17; 43:23; 46:3; 50:19, 21. Alternate translation: "you have nothing to fear."

### Genesis 50:21 (#3)

**"I will support you and your little ones"**

In the Hebrew text here, **I** is an emphatic pronoun. Consider what is the best way to translate that in your language. Also, consider again how you translated **little ones** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 34:29; 43:8; 45:19; 46:5; 47:12, 24; 50:8, 21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "I myself will take care of you and your children."

### Genesis 50:21 (#4)

**"So he comforted them"**

Consider again how you translated **comforted** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 24:67; 27:42; 37:35; 38:12; 50:21. It may be necessary to translate this term in different ways, depending on the context. Alternate translation: "In that way, Joseph consoled them that he had forgiven them,"

### Genesis 50:21 (#5)

**"and he spoke to their heart{s}"**

The phrase **spoke to their hearts** is an idiom that means Joseph said things to comfort and encourage his brothers. Consider whether or not your language has an idiom with the same meaning that would work well here. Alternate translation: "and he also said other things to comfort them."

See: Idiom

**Genesis 50:22 (#1)****"Then Joseph stayed"**

Alternate translation: "Joseph remained" or "Joseph continued to stay"

**Genesis 50:22 (#2)****"in Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "in the land of Egypt,"

**Genesis 50:22 (#3)****"And Joseph lived 110 years"**

Consider whether or not it is better in your language to begin a new sentence here. Alternate translation: "He lived to be 110 years old."

**Genesis 50:23 (#1)****"And Joseph saw"**

Alternate translation: "So he was able to see" or "He lived long enough to know"

See: Pronouns — When to Use Them

**Genesis 50:23 (#2)****"were born on the knees of Joseph"**

For some languages it is better to change the order of the phrases in this sentence and say, "He also lived to see his son Manasseh's son Machir grow up, as well as Machir's children." or "He also lived to see the children of his grandson Machir grow up, who was Manasseh's son." Do what is best in your language. Also, the phrase "born on Joseph's knees" is an idiom that means Joseph recognized Machir's children as his descendants and that they grew up during his lifetime and spent time with him.

See: Idiom

**Genesis 50:24 (#1)****"I am dying"**

Consider again how you translated **I am dying** in Gen 35:18; 48:21; 50:5, 24.

**Genesis 50:24 (#2)****"and God will surely visit you"**

The word **visit** is used here as an idiom that refers to God helping his people in a powerful way. See how you translated this idiom in Gen 21:1, where it has a slightly different meaning. Alternate translation: "but God will certainly help you"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 50:24 (#3)****"and take you up from this land"**

Alternate translation: "and lead you and your descendants from this land"

**Genesis 50:24 (#4)****"to the land that he swore"**

Alternate translation: "to the land that he swore with an vow"

**Genesis 50:25 (#1)****"Then Joseph made the sons of Israel swear {an oath}, saying"**

Consider again how you translated **swear** in the book of Genesis. See Gen 21:23 (and note), 24, 31; 22:16; 24:3, 7, 9, 37; 25:33; 26:3, 31; 31:53; 47:31; 50:5–6, 24–25. Alternate translation: "Then Joseph told his brothers and the rest of the descendants of Israel to promise with an oath that they would do something for him. He said,"

**Genesis 50:25 (#2)****"Surely God will visit you"**

See how you translated **visit you** in verse 24. Alternate translation: "Yes, God will definitely help you, and when he does," or "When God helps you that way,"

See: Idiom

**Genesis 50:25 (#3)**

**"and you must take my bones up from this {place}"**

For some languages it may be clearer or more natural to change the order of clauses in this verse and say, "When God does that, you must take my body back to Canaan with you and bury it there.' Then Joseph made/had his brothers and the rest of the descendants of Israel swear/promise with an oath that they would do that." Do what is best in your language. Alternate translation: "you must take my bones back to Canaan with you and bury it there."

See: Information Structure

**Genesis 50:26 (#1)**

**"Then Joseph died, a son of 110 years"**

Alternate translation: "So Joseph died when he was 110 years old."

**Genesis 50:26 (#2)**

**"Then they embalmed him"**

See how you translated **embalmed** in verses 2–3, and how you translated "physicians/doctors" in verse 2. Alternate translation: "And his morticians preserved his body for burial,"

**Genesis 50:26 (#3)**

**"and he was put"**

Consider what is the best way to translate this passive clause in your language. Alternate translation: "and they put him" or "and put his body"

See: Active or Passive

**Genesis 50:26 (#4)**

**"in a coffin"**

Alternate translation: "in a burial chest"

**Genesis 50:26 (#5)**

**"in Egypt"**

Alternate translation: "in the land of Egypt."